Gulf **E**cosystem **M**onitoring and Research Program (GEM)

Review Draft – July 6, 2001

Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Trustee Council
645 G Street, Suite 401
Anchorage, Alaska 99501
www.oilspill.state.ak.us
restoration@oilspill.state.ak.us
907-278-8012
800-478-7745 (Within Alaska)
800-283-7745 (Outside Alaska)

CONTENTS

Chapter **Page**

Overview

OVERVIEW OF THE GEM DOCUMENT

Editorial Notes:

1. ***Overview Table could be a figure, but see Bob's overview figure; Bob's figure and the overview table work well together***
2. ***This section needs to be edited once the organization of the chapters has been decided.***

Overview Table

Chapter	Title & Question Addressed	Products
1 - 3	Vision, Human Uses and Activities, Lingering Effects of the Oil Spill *Why do this and what do we hope to achieve?*	Mission & goals Program context
4 - 5	Building on Lessons of the Past, Scientific Background *What is published that can help us?*	Our current knowledge of the Gulf of Alaska General research questions
6	Conceptual Foundation *How do we think the ecosystem works?*	Central hypothesis Key questions
7	Current Information Gathering *What information is now being pursued?*	Status of current information gathering programs
8	Definition of GEM Information Needs *What information do we need?*	Specific questions and information needs
9	Definitions of Key Components and Strategies *How can we get the information we need?*	Key components &implementation strategies
10	Monitoring Plan & Research Agenda *What are we going to do to get the information, when will we do it, and with whom?*	Starting point for implementation process
11	Program Management *What are the processes and policies for monitoring and research?*	The Gulf Ecosystem Monitoring and Research Program
12	Modeling *What is the role of modeling in GEM implementation?*	Modeling definitions and options for program implementation
13	**Data Management and Information Transfer** *What are the roles of data management and information transfer in GEM implementation?*	Data management and information transfer options for program implementation
A	Appendix A. Lists of Fish and Invertebrates	Chapter 5.10 and other Ch 5
B	Appendix B. North Pacific Models	Chapter 12 summary of models
C	Appendix C. Information Gathering Projects	Chapter 7, summary of database
D	Appendix D. NPRB Desk Reference	Chapter 7 and most other chapters, agencies, acronyms, Web links

Overview and Guide to Use of the GEM Document

The Gulf Ecosystem Monitoring and Research (GEM) program is the end result of a series of steps represented by chapters in this document (see Overview Table above). Each chapter answers a question and develops a product (or products) that becomes an essential building block of the GEM program. The chapters of the document are described below.

Chapters 1 to 3. The mission and goals form the foundation of the GEM program and the products of the first three chapters. They define the purpose of the overall program and provide the context for the following chapters.

Chapters 4 and 5. Synthesizing GEM program knowledge about biological and physical phenomena relevant to the mission and goals is a critical initial step in developing a long-term program. This synthesis leads to broad, "general research" questions that provide context for specific research questions in Chapter 8. Aspects of these questions that relate to the central hypothesis and key questions (Chapter 6) and are not being addressed by current information-gathering programs (Chapter 7) appear again later in the document–in Chapter 8, as specific information needs and critical ecological processes, and in Chapter 10, as part of the monitoring plan and research agenda.

Chapter 6. Whereas Chapter 5 summarizes the current state of published information about the northern Gulf of Alaska, Chapter 6 provides a conceptual understanding of how that ecosystem is believed to work. The central hypothesis is an overarching summary of how natural forces and human activities control changes in the productivity of biological resources. Key questions carve the central hypothesis into smaller, more manageable pieces based on habitat types representative of the region. The four habitat types were chosen as an organizational device because they accommodate the critical aspect of spatial scale inherent in the central hypothesis, as well as having unique aspects and processes of their own. The key questions appear again in Chapter 8 as the starting points for developing specific questions and defining specific information needs.

Chapter 7. Knowledge of other programs is essential to allow the GEM program to find its place in the monitoring and research community of the North Pacific. The status of current information-gathering efforts directs the GEM program toward aspects of the central hypothesis and key questions that are not being well studied, and then further, to specific questions and information needs (Chapter 8). Individual monitoring and research activities of the GEM program (Chapter 10) must also be developed in the context of these current information-gathering efforts.

Chapter 8. Defining information needs of the GEM program starts by carving the key questions of Chapter 6 into more specific questions, in conjunction with relevant general research questions identified in Chapter 5. The information needed to answer these questions leads directly to identifying monitoring activities to be developed (Chapter 10).

Chapter 9. In this chapter the key components of the GEM program are presented and defined, and implementation strategies are described. Defining monitoring, research, synthesis, modeling, and data management is necessary before these components are used in the monitoring plan and research agenda itself, as described in Chapter 10.

Chapter 10. The monitoring plan and research agenda are presented in this chapter–the fruition of questions and information needs from Chapters 5, 6, and 8. The plan describes the monitoring activities by the four habitat types. This sets the stage, in turn, for program implementation in Chapter 11.

Chapter 11. By using the key components and strategies identified in Chapter 9, this chapter explains the process and policies that will make the monitoring and research activities in Chapters 10 a reality. The approach includes working within the guidelines established by the mission, goals, and other policies of the *Exxon Valdez* Trustee Council. A proposed scientific oversight process and other administrative procedures are explained as the tools to develop and implement the monitoring program during a period of 5 years, from Fiscal Year 2003 through Fiscal Year 2007,

Chapter 12. The modeling chapter picks up the definition of modeling in Chapter 9, expands on it, and presents materials that were too detailed for Chapter 9. The purpose is to more precisely define the different kinds of models and their uses, summarize some existing models relevant to the Gulf of Alaska, and describe where models may fit within the overall GEM hierarchy.

Chapter 13. This chapter on data management and information transfer takes off from the data management and modeling sections in Chapter 9 to more precisely define the possible ways and means of implementing the "end-to-end" data management and information transfer system. Options for implementation with a suggested sequence and schedule for basic actions needed to implement the system are presented.

Appendices. During the course of preparing the GEM program documents, a wealth of useful supporting information was acquired that could not be included in the text of the chapters without compromising clarity. Each appended document is a useful reference in its own right; however, references to appendices have been placed in the chapters for the benefit of those who want to explore a chapter's topics in more detail.

1. VISION FOR GEM IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF ALASKA

In This Chapter

- History of the Restoration Program
- Explanation of the mission identified for the program
- Identification of goals, geographic scope, and funding

1.1 Introduction

A program rooted in the science of a large-scale ecological disaster is uniquely suited to form the foundation for ecosystem-based management. The knowledge and experience gained during 10 years of biological and physical studies in the aftermath of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill (EVOS) confirmed that a solid historical context is essential to understand the sources of changes in valued natural resources. Toward this end, in March 1999 the *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill Trustee Council (Trustee Council) dedicated approximately $120 million for long-term monitoring and research in the northern Gulf of Alaska (GOA). The new fund will be in place by October 2002 and will function as an endowment, with an annual program funded through investment earnings, after allowing for inflation-proofing and modest growth of the corpus.

Prudent use of the natural resources of the spill area requires increased knowledge of critical ecological information about the northern GOA.

In making the decision to allocate these funds for a long-term program of monitoring and research, referred to herein as the Gulf Ecosystem Monitoring and Research (GEM) program, the Trustee Council explicitly recognized that complete recovery from the oil spill may not occur for decades and that through long-term observation and, as needed, restoration actions, the injured resources and services are most likely to be fully restored. The Trustee Council further recognized that conservation and improved management of these resources and services would require substantial ongoing investment to improve understanding of the marine and coastal ecosystems that support the resources, as well as the people, of the spill region. Improving the quality of information available to resource managers should result in improved resource management. In addition, prudent use of the natural resources of the spill area without compromising their recovery requires increased knowledge of critical ecological information about the northern GOA. This knowledge can only be provided through a long-term monitoring and research program that will span decades, if not centuries. There are both immediate, short-term needs to complete the understanding of the lingering effects of the oil spill and long-term needs to understand the sources of changes in valued natural resources.

1.2 Mission

The original mission of the Trustee Council's Restoration Program, adopted in 1993, was to "efficiently restore the environment injured by the EVOS to a healthy, productive, world-renowned ecosystem, while taking into account the importance of the quality of life and the need for viable opportunities to establish and sustain a reasonable standard of living."

Consistent with this mission and with the ecosystem approach adopted by the Trustee Council in the Restoration Plan, the mission of the GEM program is to "sustain a healthy and biologically diverse marine ecosystem in the northern Gulf of Alaska (GOA) and the human use of the marine resources in that ecosystem through greater understanding of how its productivity is influenced by natural changes and human activities." In pursuit of this mission, the GEM program will accomplish the following:

- Sustain the necessary institutional infrastructure to provide scientific leadership in identifying research and monitoring gaps and priorities;
- Sponsor monitoring, research, and other projects that respond to these identified needs;
- Encourage efficiency in and integration of GOA monitoring and research activities through leveraging of funds and interagency coordination and partnerships; and
- Promote local stewardship by involving stakeholders and having them help guide and carry out parts of the GEM program.

In adopting this mission, the Trustee Council acknowledges that, at times, sustaining a healthy ecosystem and ensuring sustainable human uses of the marine resources may be in conflict. In those instances, the goal of achieving a healthy ecosystem will be paramount. The Trustee Council also acknowledges that, at this time, clearly defined measures for assessing "ecosystem health" are lacking (NRC 2000). These measures will be incorporated into the program as they are developed

1.3 Goals

Five major goals have been identified as necessary to accomplish the GEM mission. Attaining all five, however, will require several decades. Two of these goals should be attainable within the early decades of operating the GEM program, given sufficient funding:

1. **Detect:** Serve as a sentinel (early warning) system by detecting annual and long-term changes in the marine ecosystem, from coastal watersheds to the central gulf; and

2. **Understand:** Identify causes of change in the marine ecosystem, including natural variation, human influences, and their interaction.

Two other goals provide an essential piece of the foundation for a long-term program and are likely to be fully realized only on an irregular basis until after the first decade of operating the GEM program:

3. **Inform:** Provide integrated and synthesized information to the public, resource managers, industry and policy makers in order for them to respond to changes in natural resources; and

4. **Solve:** Develop tools, technologies and information that can help resource managers and regulators improve management of marine resources and address problems that may arise from human activities.

The fifth goal is inherently long-term and difficult to achieve, but of considerable potential value to resource users and managers. It serves more as a long-range beacon to guide the design of monitoring activities, than as a goal that may be attained within the near term:

5. **Predict:** Develop the capacity to predict the status and trends of natural resources for use by resource managers and consumers.

During the process of learning how to detect and understand change in the northern GOA, it will be critical to look toward the day when resource managers and the concerned public collect on their investment in GEM. In the long run, GEM must provide some of the information that enables resource-dependent people, such as subsistence users, recreationalists, and commercial fishers, to better cope with changes in marine resources. The data and information produced by GEM during its first decade may be of limited value for solving problems for the public, commercial interests, resource managers, and policy makers faced with environmental change. Nonetheless, as information accumulates, the ability for GEM to provide problem-solving information and tools can and must increase.

Given the size and complexity of the northern GOA ecosystem and the available funding, it will not be possible to meet these goals with only the data collected by GEM. Addressing the program goals will require achieving the following institutional goals:

- **Synthesize** monitoring and research results to advise in setting priorities;
- **Prioritize** monitoring and research needs;
- **Identify** monitoring and research gaps currently not addressed by existing programs;
- **Fund** monitoring of core variables;
- **Leverage** funds to augment ongoing monitoring work funded by other entities;

- Track work of other entities relevant to understanding biological production in the GOA; and
- Involve other government agencies, non-governmental organizations, stakeholders, policy makers, and the general public in a collaborative process to achieve the mission and goals of GEM.

The substantial experience of the EVOS Restoration Program indicates that these seven institutional goals are not only reasonable and necessary, but also attainable.

1.4 Geographic Scope

Consistent with the Restoration Plan, the primary focus of the GEM program is within the area affected by the 1989 oil spill, which is generally the northern GOA, including Prince William Sound (PWS), Cook Inlet, Kodiak Island, and the Alaska Peninsula (Figure 1). Recognizing that the marine ecosystem affected by the oil spill does not have a discrete boundary, some monitoring and research activities will necessarily extend into adjacent areas of the northern GOA.

Figure 1

THIS IS FIGURE 1 OF PREVIOUS REPORT. NEED THE ELECTRONIC FILE.

It is important to note that the northern GOA includes watersheds and shorelines, the nearshore environment, the continental shelf, and offshore waters. It is also important to note that waters from the shelf and basin of the GOA eventually enter the Bering Sea and the Arctic Ocean (through the Bering Strait). Although GEM has a regional (GOA) outlook, the program will be of vital importance in understanding the downstream Bering Sea and Arctic Ocean ecosystems. In addition to the linkages provided by the movements of ocean waters, the GOA is linked to other regions by the many species of birds, fishes, and mammals that also move through these regions. It is also becoming increasingly clear that environmental conditions in the GOA, such as levels of persistent organic pollutants, as well as the temperature of GOA waters, can originate many thousands of miles away.

1.5 Funding and Governance

The Trustee Council will fund the GEM program beginning in October 2002 with funds allocated for long-term monitoring and research, estimated to be approximately $120 million. The Trustee Council will manage these funds as an endowment, with the annual program funded by investment earnings after inflation-proofing, thus providing for a stable program through time. The Trustee Council also may choose to fund a smaller program in the early years to build the corpus of the fund. The Trustee Council's long-term goal is to allow for additional deposits and donations to the fund from other sources to increase the corpus. Achieving this goal might require changes in state or federal legislation and possibly a change in the consent decree and will be pursued at a later time.

Under existing law and court orders, three state and three federal trustees have been designated by the Governor of Alaska and the President of the United States to administer the restoration fund, which includes funding for GEM, and to restore the resources and services injured by the oil spill. The State of Alaska trustees are the Commissioner of the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation, the Commissioner of the Alaska Department of Fish and Game, and the Attorney General. The federal trustees are the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Agriculture, and the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce.

The trustees established the Trustee Council to administer the restoration fund. The state trustees serve directly on the Trustee Council. The federal trustees each have appointed a representative in Alaska to serve on the Trustee Council. They currently are the U.S. Interior Department's Special Assistant to the Secretary for Alaska, the Alaska Director of the National Marine Fisheries Service, and the Supervisor of the Chugach National Forest for the Department of Agriculture. All decisions by the Trustee Council are required to be unanimous. It is expected that the current Trustee Council will make policy and funding decisions for the GEM program.

It has been suggested that at some time in the future, a new board or oversight structure be established to administer or guide the GEM fund. It is also possible that an existing board, either under its current structure or with minor modifications, could take over management of the fund. Use of a new governance structure, if justified, would require changes in law and the applicable court decrees. Such changes would take considerable time and are not anticipated in the near future.

1.6 References

NRC. 2000. Ecological indicators for the nation. National Academy Press. Washington, D.C.

2. HUMAN USES AND ACTIVITIES IN THE NORTHERN GULF OF ALASKA

In This Chapter

- Discussion of the human impact in the GOA
- Population centers in the area
- Identification of human activities occurring

The growing population of Alaska and the existing and potentially greater human use of the resources of the northern GOA are important considerations for development of GEM. To achieve the GEM mission of sustaining a healthy ecosystem, as well as sustaining human use of the marine resources of the GOA, it is essential to assess and understand the impacts that human activities may have on important fish and wildlife species, their habitat, and the northern GOA ecosystem overall.

The economy of Alaska depends heavily on extraction of natural resources, primarily oil, fish, and shellfish, followed by timber and minerals. In the northern GOA, commercial fishing, recreation, and tourism (including sport fishing), oil and gas development, logging, roadbuilding and urbanization, marine transportation, and subsistence harvests are all activities that have the potential to affect fish and wildlife populations and habitat.

The human impact on Alaska's marine ecosystems is relatively small, compared to impacts in most of the developed world. Other regions are faced with marine dead zones caused by eutrophication (decline of a water body caused by oxygen deficiency) from pesticide runoff; overfishing and depletion of fish stocks; serious industrial pollution; and degradation of important habitat such as coral reefs and coastlines. Alaska is pristine in comparison. Even here, however, natural resource managers have concerns about localized pollution, the potential impacts of some fisheries, extreme changes in some fish and wildlife populations, and the little known impacts of contaminants and global warming.

Natural resource managers in Alaska are concerned about the impacts of pollution on marine ecosystems.

State and federal laws and permitting systems are designed to identify and mitigate the direct impact of these activities. Secondary and cumulative impacts are not as routinely assessed, however. There is concern that local problems, if left unidentified or unmonitored, could grow into regional problems.

Experience with the EVOS Restoration Program has demonstrated that, unless an impact is very large, it is usually extremely difficult to isolate the human impact from the natural variability. Because GEM will be a long-term program, however, it is important to assess the potential impacts of human activities on a regular basis to determine their influence on changes in the abundance and distribution of important resources.

2.1 Socioeconomic Profile of the Northern Gulf of Alaska

About 71,000 full-time residents live within the area directly affected by the oil spill (Figure 1), and two to three times that number use the area seasonally for work and recreation. The spill area population, combined with that of the nearby population centers of Anchorage and Wasilla, totals 62% of the state's 627,000 permanent residents When the resident population is combined with more than 1 million tourists who visit the state each year, it becomes clear that the natural resources of the northern GOA cannot be immune to the pressures associated with human uses and activities.

2.1.1 Prince William Sound

PWS lies north of the GOA and west of Cordova. About 7,000 people live and make their living in this area. The largest communities–Cordova, Valdez, and Whittier–are all coastal and predominantly non-Native, although Valdez and Cordova are home to Alaska Native village corporations and tribes. Chenega Bay and Tatitlek are Alaska Native villages. All five communities are accessible by air or water, and all have dock or harbor facilities. In the north, the ports of Valdez and Whittier link the area to the state's main road system.

The economic bases of the five communities in PWS are heavily resource dependent. The Cordova economy is based on commercial fishing, primarily for pink and red salmon. As the terminus of the Trans-Alaska Pipeline System, Valdez is dependent on the oil industry, but commercial fishing and fish processing, government, and tourism also are important to the local economy. Large oil tankers routinely traverse PWS and the northern GOA to and from the Port of Valdez. In addition to working as oil industry employees, Whittier residents also work as government employees, longshoremen, commercial fishermen, and service providers to tourists. The people of Chenega Bay and Tatitlek augment commercial fishing, aquaculture, and other cash-based activities with subsistence fishing, hunting, and gathering.

2.1.2 Kenai Peninsula

The Kenai Peninsula, on the northwest margin of the GOA, separates Cook Inlet from PWS. The central peninsula is on the main road system, only a few hours by car from the major population center of Anchorage. Because of this road connection to Anchorage, the Kenai Peninsula is the fastest growing area in the northern GOA. About 50,000 people live on the peninsula, with about two-thirds living near the cities of Kenai and Soldotna. The economy of this area depends on the oil and gas industry, commercial fishing, and tourism. This area was the site of the first major Alaska oil strike in 1957 and has been a center for oil and gas exploration and production since that time. Seward is a seaport on the eastern Kenai Peninsula near the western entrance of PWS. It is the southern terminus of the Alaska Railroad, which transports marine cargo and passengers to and from Anchorage.

The southern Kenai Peninsula contains the cities of Homer and Seldovia and the Alaska Native villages of Nanwalek and Port Graham. Homer, on the north side of Kachemak Bay, is the southern terminus of the state's main road system on the peninsula. Seldovia, Nanwalek, and Port Graham, all located south of Kachemak Bay, are accessible only by air and sea. Nanwalek and Port Graham depend largely on subsistence hunting and fishing and on village corporation enterprises, such as the salmon hatchery, cannery, and logging enterprise at Port Graham. Homer is the economic and population hub of this part of the peninsula and depends on commercial fishing, tourism, and forest products.

Tourism is an important and growing part of the Kenai Peninsula economy. Marine sport fishing out of Seward and Homer is a major attraction for the tourist industry. Cruise ships dock at the Seward harbor, and commercial vessels take passengers on tours of the nearby Kenai Fjords National Park. The Kenai River and its tributary, the Russian River, are major sport fishing rivers, attracting tourists from Anchorage and all over the world.

2.1.3 Kodiak Island Archipelago

The Kodiak Island archipelago lies to the west of the northern GOA. This region includes the city of Kodiak and the six Alaska Native villages of Port Lions, Ouzinkie, Larsen Bay, Karluk, Old Harbor, and Akhiok. About 14,000 people live in this region, although the population swells in the fishing season. Communities on Kodiak Island are accessible by air and sea. Approximately 140 miles of state roads connect communities on the east side of the island.

The economy of the archipelago depends heavily on commercial fishing and seafood processing. Kodiak is one of the world's major centers of seafood production and has long been among the largest ports in the nation for seafood volume or value of landings. Village residents largely depend on subsistence hunting and fishing. Kodiak Island is also home to a commercial rocket-launch facility that held its first successful launch in 1999. The U.S. Coast Guard Station near Kodiak is a major landowner and employer.

2.1.4 Alaska Peninsula

The Alaska Peninsula is on the western edge of the northern GOA. Five communities on the south side of the Alaska Peninsula lie within the area affected by the EVOS: Chignik, Chignik Lagoon, Chignik Lake, Ivanof Bay, and Perryville.

The population of the area is about 450 year-round residents, but doubles during the fishing season. All five communities are accessible by air and sea. The cash economy of the area depends on the success of the fishing fleets.

Chignik and Chignik Lagoon serve as regional salmon-fishing centers, and Dutch Harbor, southwest of Perryville and outside the spill area, is a major center for crab and other marine fisheries. In addition to salmon and salmon roe, fish processing plants in Chignik produce herring roe, halibut, cod, and crab. About half the permanent population of these communities is Alaska Native. Subsistence on fish and caribou is important to the people who live in Chignik and Chignik Lagoon.

Chignik Lake, Ivanof Bay, and Perryville are predominantly Alaska Native villages and maintain a subsistence lifestyle, relying on salmon, trout, marine fish and shellfish, crab, clams, moose, caribou, and bear. Commercial fishing provides cash income. Many residents leave during summer months to fish from Chignik Lagoon or work at the fish processors in Chignik.

2.2 Description of Human Activities

2.2.1 Commercial Fishing

Commercial fishing is by far the predominant human activity in the northern GOA and is thought at this time to have the potential for the most significant impacts on the GOA ecosystem. Within the GOA, the major commercial fisheries are salmon, Pacific herring, pollock, cod, halibut, and shellfish. [redacted]

The period before the 1989 oil spill was a time of relative prosperity for many commercial fishermen. Since 1989, these drastic changes have occurred in the commercial fishing industry:

- Low prices have reduced the value of the pink and sockeye salmon fisheries.
- Sharp declines in herring populations in PWS, possibly caused by disease related to the EVOS, have resulted in closures that have devastated the fishery.
- The listing of the Steller sea lion under the federal Endangered Species Act has resulted in restrictions on groundfish fisheries.
- GOA crab stocks have continued their plummet.

A major ecological concern with all types of removals by fishing activities is the sustainability of fish stocks, which could be affected by directed fisheries or as a result of discarded bycatch in other fisheries and high seas interception. Overfishing could lead to stock depletion. The predominant fishery stocks historically fluctuate because of natural variability and climate cycles. Setting harvest rates without a complete understanding of those fluctuations could lead to unintentional overharvest, resulting in population declines that could take years to rebound.

Another ecological concern with all types of fishing is the removal of marine nutrients (nitrates, phosphates, iron) that are key to sustaining the long-term productivity of watersheds (Finney et al. 2000). Fishing for a dominant anadromous species such as salmon may lower the productive capacity of a watershed not only for salmon, but for a wide range of plants, fish, and mammals that are known to depend on marine nutrients. When combined with the loss of nutrients associated with development of riparian (river and other waterfront) habitats and wetlands, the loss of marine nutrients may contribute to the process known as oligotrophication or "starvation" of the watershed. Unfortunately, not enough monitoring data on marine nutrients in tributaries of the GOA is available to understand the degree to which oligotrophication is occurring.

A third ecological concern with fishing is the potential for degradation of habitats, and attendant losses of unintended species. Sport-fishing activities in watersheds have substantially degraded some riparian habitats in Southcentral Alaska, resulting in lost vegetation, lost fish habitat, and siltation. Various types of marine fishing methods and gear, such as pots and hard-on-bottom trawls (baglike nets), also have the potential for degrading sea-bottom habitat and reducing populations of sedentary species such as corals and seaweeds.

Protection has already been afforded to marine habitats in some cases by excluding gear types that are thought to be injurious to habitat. For example, the eastern GOA is now closed to trawling and dredging in part to protect coral habitats from possible trawling impacts. [redacted] In addition there are numerous trawl-and-dredge closure areas near Kodiak Island, the Alaska Peninsula, and the Aleutian Islands. Areas where marine mammals feed and adjacent to their haul-out areas also have been closed to commercial fishing in parts of the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands and GOA. Given the amount of marine habitats already subject to closure, more information on how to define critical marine habitats, a possible role for GEM, is essential to balancing fishing opportunities and protection of habitat.

More information on how to define critical marine habitats is essential to balancing fishing opportunities and protection of habitat.

Commercial fishing also has the potential to affect other elements of the marine ecosystem, such as bird and marine mammal populations. Effects result either directly, through entanglement in fishing nets or disturbance to haul-outs and rookeries, or indirectly, through impacts on food supplies. A recent National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Biological Opinion concludes that lack of food is the reason why the endangered Steller sea lion is not recovering from serious declines in the GOA and Bering Sea. On the basis of this opinion, NMFS has severely limited fixed-gear and trawl fishing for several groundfish species, a major food source for the Steller sea lion.

Salmon fisheries in the GOA are notable because hatcheries produce the majority of some salmon species in some areas and, in specific fisheries, the majority of salmon harvested. Billions of juvenile salmon are released annually from hatcheries in three areas within the northern GOA: Cook Inlet, Kodiak, and PWS. Within this region, 56% of the salmon in the traditional commercial harvest were of hatchery origin in 1999. The percentage is higher if cost-recovery fisheries are also included. In PWS in particular, hatchery production provides a majority of the pink and chum salmon harvested and a substantial fraction of the sockeye and coho salmon harvested. In 1999, hatchery pink salmon contributed 84% of the number of pink salmon harvested by commercial fisheries in PWS.

Information on the interactions between hatchery and wild fish appears to be essential to long-term fishery management programs.

Ecological concerns related to hatcheries include reduced production of wild fish because of competition between hatchery and wild salmon during all stages of the life cycle, loss of genetic diversity in wild salmon, and overharvest of wild salmon during harvest operations targeting hatchery salmon. Information on the interactions between hatchery and wild fish in specific locations, and on the impact of salmon produced in hatcheries in both Asia and North America on food webs in the GOA, appears to be essential to long-term fishery management programs.

2.2.2 Recreation and Tourism

Major recreational and tourist attractions within the spill area include Portage Glacier, Kenai Fjords National Park, Columbia Glacier, Kachemak Bay, and Katmai National Park. World-class salmon fishing attracts residents and visitors alike to the Kenai River, the Russian River, and other rivers on the Kenai Peninsula. Charter halibut fishing is an important and growing recreational activity, especially for Seward and Homer. More than 500 vessels are active in this industry. Camping, hiking, kayaking, and wildlife viewing attract visitors to the Kodiak Island National Wildlife Refuge, the Chugach National Forest, and numerous state park units within the spill area.

Growth of the Alaska population and increases in nonresident visitation to Alaska will increase the potential impacts of GOA resource use. Between 1990 and 1998 alone, the number of nonresident visitors to Alaska increased from 900,000 to 1.35 million per year, averaging a 5% annual rate of increase during this period. Cruise ship traffic to the state has been increasing by more than 10% a year, although the rate may be slowing somewhat.

Increased tourism and recreational use could result in a variety of impacts on marine fish and wildlife and their habitats. Sport fishing could contribute to localized depletion of fish stocks, as well as degradation of streambank habitat in watersheds. Increased recreational boat traffic can disturb wildlife on their rookeries and haul-outs, as well as increase oil and gas residue in harbors and adjacent waters. Cruise ships often carry more people than populate many Alaska towns, and cause concerns about their disposal of garbage and other waste, impacts on air quality, and potential for diesel fuel spills. The growing use of jet skis for recreational use and their potential for disturbing nesting waterfowl has led to a jet ski ban in Kachemak Bay by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G). Increased hiking and camping on coastal areas and riverbanks can lead to trampling, erosion, and related impacts on local water quality. The Whittier road, opened in 2000, is expected to increase visitation to northwestern PWS, with potential impacts to shorelines, tidelands, and nearshore waters, as well as the fish and wildlife populations that rely on these habitats.

2.2.3 Oil and Gas Development

The oil and gas industry is a major economic force in PWS and Cook Inlet. Crude oil pumped from fields on the North Slope is transported by pipeline to Valdez, where it is loaded onto tankers and shipped to the lower 48 states. Tankers traverse PWS on the journey south. The number of tanker voyages from the Port of Valdez has declined from 640 in 1995 to 411 in 1999, because of the sharp reduction in North Slope crude oil production. Any additional North Slope development could increase tanker traffic.

Discovered in 1957, the Swanson River oilfield in the Kenai National Wildlife Refuge is the site of the first commercial oil development in Alaska. Much of the oil and gas development in the Cook Inlet area occurs on offshore platforms. Underwater pipelines transport product to terminals on both sides of Cook Inlet. Tankers ship crude oil and refined product to the lower 48 states.

In April 1999, the State of Alaska offered for lease all available state-owned acreage (approximately 2.8 million acres) in its first Cook Inlet Areawide Oil and Gas Lease Sale. As a result of the first sale, oil and gas leases have been issued on about 115,000 acres of land. [redacted] Additional sales are planned in 2002 and 2003.

The major concerns about oil and gas development include the potential for oil spills from vessel traffic, as happened during the 1989 EVOS, as well as small, chronic spills, pipeline corrosion and subsequent leaks, disposal of drilling wastes and potential impact on water quality, and the introduction of exotic species from ballast waters. In 1995, local conservation groups negotiated a settlement with Cook Inlet oil and gas producers for more than 4,000 violations of the federal Clean Water Act in Cook Inlet. [redacted]

2.2.4 Subsistence Harvest

Fifteen predominantly Alaska Native communities in the GEM region [redacted], with a total population of about 2,200 people, rely heavily on harvests of subsistence resources such as fish, shellfish, seals, deer, and waterfowl. Subsistence harvests in 1998 varied among communities from 250 to 500 pounds per person, indicating strong dependence on subsistence resources. Many families in other communities also rely on the subsistence resources of the spill area.

Subsistence use is a form of resource exploitation and must be considered as a factor potentially affecting resource abundance and distribution. It is monitored under state and federal authorities. Subsistence harvest of marine mammals is probably of greatest concern because marine mammals are an important component of subsistence diets in the GEM region and because subsistence harvests are the only legal take of marine mammals, are usually unlimited, and may affect species with small populations.

2.2.5 Timber Harvest

No major timber operations are currently occurring in PWS, but logging continues on Afognak Island in the Kodiak archipelago and small-scale timber operations are planned for parts of the Kenai Peninsula. Of the three major logging operators on Afognak Island, only Afognak Native Corporation is still logging in a major way, with 30 million board feet in 2000 and another 30 million board feet planned for 2001. Poor lumber markets, increased competition, and a dwindling timber supply have all led to decreased logging activities on Afognak. Logging operations on Port Graham Corporation lands on the southern Kenai Peninsula have concluded, but some logging may take place on Native allotments near Port Graham. On the Alaska Peninsula, Ninilchik Native Corporation and Cook Inlet Region Inc. are preparing a major logging operation to begin in 2001 on the Crescent River, a major salmon producer in Cook Inlet.

The State of Alaska has announced a five-year Schedule of Timber Sales for the Kenai Peninsula and Kodiak area from 2000 through 2004. One significant factor affecting forest planning in the Kenai area is a major epidemic of the spruce bark beetle. The proposed timber sales are designed to use dead and dying timber or to harvest timber with a high likelihood of infestation in the next few years. During this 5-year period, the state plans to hold 31 timber sales on about 23,000 acres of state land on the Kenai Peninsula. Harvest from these lands is estimated to be 125 million board feet of spruce and hemlock and 410,000 cubic board feet of birch, cottonwood, and aspen. [redacted]

Concerns about logging include water quality effects, long-term effects on the marine system of bark from log transfer facilities, and impacts on anadromous streams from siltation and habitat destruction. The Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC) reported that 24% of the water bodies on the state's list of polluted sites are due to some aspect of logging. (ADEC 2000) A significant issue related to logging is the increased access to previously remote lands provided by logging roads. Logging operations on the Kenai Peninsula alone have added more than 3,000 miles of roads in the region. This increased access has encouraged all-terrain vehicle use in sensitive habitats, such as the headwaters of salmon streams.

2.2.6 Other Industrial Activity

Large spills like the EVOS are rare. More common are smaller discharges of refined oil products, crude oil, and hazardous substances. Small spills have been caused by a variety of industries, such as oil and gas, timber, fishing, and seafood processing industries, as well as small commercial establishments such as gas stations and dry cleaners.

Under state law, the release of hazardous substances and oil must be reported to ADEC. In 1998 and 1999, 1,325 spills were reported in the EVOS region, resulting in a total discharge of 218,000 gallons of refined oil products, crude oil and hazardous substances. Although small spills were reported throughout the spill area, by far the largest number of spills (1,037) and greatest volume of discharge (198,000 gallons) occurred in the Cook Inlet region. Most spills (87%) involved refined oil products; these spills accounted for about 90% of the total volume discharged. Only 6,000 gallons of crude oil were reported spilled in the region from 1998 to 1999 (ADEC 2001).

Figures reported to ADEC include spills onshore as well as discharges into the marine environment. The effects of these small spills depend on such variable factors as the volume of the discharge, its toxicity and persistence in the environment, the time of year the spill occurred and the significance of the affected environment in the life history of species of concern.

2.2.7 Road Building and Urbanization

Community growth and urbanization often go hand in hand with loss of water quality and fisheries habitat. The greatest concentration of roads, subdivisions, and other aspects of increased urbanization affecting the GEM region are within the Municipality of Anchorage and on the west side of the Kenai Peninsula. [redacted] In 1999, the Kenai Peninsula Borough approved plats for 250 subdivisions. Most of the subdivisions were small, but a few were 40 acres or more. The borough recently initiated a road-permitting program that will address placement and design of new roads.

Continued expansion of urban areas and resulting expansion of suburban zones inevitably degrade habitat. Changes in land surfaces can change entire hydrologic systems and add to water pollution problems. Urban growth leads to increasing disposal of human wastes. Even treated wastes may lead to changes in species composition and productivity in watersheds, estuaries, and nearshore areas.

Increased areas of impervious surfaces through new roads and subdivisions usually increase stormwater runoff. Stormwater runoff is the largest single source of pollution in Alaska and is caused by runoff and erosion from pavement, parking lots and ditches, commercial and residential construction, and septic systems. Thirty-eight percent of the sites on a 1998 state list of polluted water are affected by such community runoff. The pollutants include chemicals, bacteria, and excess soil.

Increased stormwater runoff tends to lower base flows in streams and increase peak flows. Stream macroinvertebrates (large animals that lack backbones) and fish populations are sensitive to these changes. As part of its stormwater discharge permit through ADEC, the Municipality of Anchorage is mapping the impervious surfaces within its area and studying the response of stream macroinvertebrates. Under a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) 319 grant from ADEC, the U.S. States Department of Agriculture Cooperative Extension Service is also studying the effects of impervious surfaces. A pilot project is planned for the Anchorage area, and if successful, the methodology may be applied to other areas in the future.

Increased urbanization also results in filling wetlands, which play an important ecological role in filtration for water quality and stormwater protection. The Municipality of Anchorage has a wetlands plan, with high- and low-value wetlands identified. There is no plan delineating the extent of wetlands and analyzing their function and values for the rest of the region, however. [redacted]

Human access to streams increases as the number of miles of road increases. Trampling of stream banks, changes in stream configuration created by culverting of roads, reduction in riparian zone vegetation, and a multitude of other problems created by road building and access lead to aquatic habitat degradation and loss of basic productivity. Increased human access to small rivers and streams containing relatively large animals such as salmon and river otters also usually leads to loss of aquatic species through illegal taking, despite the best efforts of law enforcement. Indeed, limitations in budgets usually lead resource management and protection agencies to focus scarce resources on sensitive areas during critical seasons, leaving degradation to take its course in less sensitive locations.

Human access to streams usually leads to degradation of aquatic habitat.

2.2.8 Contaminants and Food Safety

The presence of industrial and agricultural contaminants in aquatic environments has resulted in worldwide concerns about potential effects on marine organisms and on human consumers. Polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), and organochlorine pesticides, such as dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) and its derivatives, are distributed around the world in marine and coastal waters and in the rivers and watersheds that feed fresh water into these environments. Such pollutants can be transported great distances by winds and ocean currents following their releases from industrial and agricultural sources, most of them far from Alaska. In addition, mercury and other metals, such as inorganic arsenic, cadmium, and selenium, are naturally present in the environment at low concentrations, but man-made sources can contribute additional quantities to the environment.

The remoteness of the northern GOA from centers of industry and human population might be expected to protect much of this region from deposition of environmental contaminants. Nonetheless, there is limited evidence suggesting wide geographic distribution of persistent organochlorines (DDT, dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene [DDE], PCB), other organic pollutants and heavy metals in the Arctic, Subarctic, and areas adjacent to the GOA (Crane and Galasso 1999). For example, measurable amounts of organochlorines have been found in precipitation, and fishes of the Copper River Delta, a tributary of the GOA that forms the eastern boundary of PWS (Ewald et al. 1998).

A variety of geophysical pathways bring these materials into the GOA, including ocean currents and prevailing winds. In particular, the prevailing atmospheric circulation patterns transfer various materials as aerosols from Asia to the east across the North Pacific (Pahlow and Riebsell 2000) where they enter the marine environment in the form of rain. Some of these contaminants, such as PCBs and DDT, can bioaccumulate in living marine organisms. For example, research sampling of transient killer whales that had eaten marine mammals in PWS indicated concentrations of PCBs and DDT derivatives that are many times higher than those concentrations found in fish-eating resident whales. The sources of these contaminants are not specifically known. It has been established, however, that these contaminants are passed from nursing female killer whales to their calves.

There is also concern about the potential effects of contaminants on people, especially those who consume fish and shellfish, waterfowl, and marine mammals. At higher levels of exposure, many of the chemicals noted above can cause adverse effects in people, such as the suppression of the immune system caused by PCBs.

The State of Alaska does not monitor environmental pollutants in the marine environment or in marine organisms on a regular basis, although federal funding for a joint federal-state-Native initiative has been requested from Congress. [redacted] Similarly, there is no ongoing program for sampling food safety in subsistence resources in coastal communities, although the oil spill provided the opportunity to sample subsistence resources for hydrocarbons in the affected areas from 1989 through 1994.

2.2.9 Global Warming

Although driven by forces outside the control of Alaska's natural resource managers, global warming is an essential consideration for development and implementation of the GEM program. The earth's climate is predicted to change because human activities–the combustion of fossil fuels and increased agriculture, deforestation, landfills, industrial production, and mining–are altering the chemical composition of the atmosphere through the buildup of greenhouse gases. These gases are primarily carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide. Their heat-trapping property is undisputed, as is the fact that global temperatures are rising. Observations collected during the last century suggest that the average land surface temperature has risen 0.45° to 0.6° C in the last century. Precipitation has increased by about 1% over the world's continents in the last century, with high-latitude areas tending to see more significant increases in rainfall and rising sea levels. This increase is consistent with observations that indicate the northern GOA seasurface temperature has increased by 0.5° C since 1940 [redacted]

Increasing concentrations of greenhouse gases are likely to accelerate the rate of climate change. The changes seen in the northern GOA and their relationship to other warming and cooling cycles in the North Pacific and the combined effects on global climate are important for understanding how humans affect biological production. Some populations of fish and marine mammals that show longtime trends, up or down, or sharp rapid changes in abundance, are actively managed through harvest restraints. The extent to which harvest restraints may be effective in establishing or altering trends in abundance of exploited species can only be understood within the context of climate change.

2.3 References

ADEC. 2000. Strategy document. Alaska's nonpoint source pollution strategy. Juneau, Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation.

ADEC. 2001. Spills database. Juneau, Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation.

Crane, K. and Galasso, J. L. 1999. Arctic environmental atlas. U.S. Naval Research Laboratory, Office of Naval Research. Washington, D.C.

Ewald, G., Larsson, P., Linge, H., Okla, L., and Szarzi, N. 1998. Biotransport of organic pollutants to an inland Alaska lake by migrating sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Arctic 51: 40-47.

Finney, B. P., Gregory-Eaves, I., Sweetman, J., Douglas, M. S. V., and Smol, J. P. 2000. Impacts of climatic change and fishing on Pacific salmon abundance over the past 300 years. Science 290: 795-799.

Pahlow, M. and Riebsell, U. 2000. Temporal trends in deep ocean Redfield ratios. Science 287: 831-833.

3. LINGERING EFFECTS OF THE *EXXON VALDEZ* OIL SPILL

In This Chapter

- Description of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill
- Background of restoration funding
- Concerns and how they are being addressed

On March 24, 1989, the *T/V Exxon Valdez* ran aground on Bligh Reef in PWS, spilling almost 11 million gallons of North Slope crude oil. The event was the largest tanker spill in U.S. history, contaminating about 1,500 miles of Alaska's coastline, killing birds, mammals and fish, and disrupting the ecosystem in the path of the spreading oil.

In 1991 Exxon Corporation agreed to pay the United States and the State of Alaska $900 million over 10 years to restore, replace, enhance, or acquire the equivalent of natural resources injured by the spill, and the reduced or lost human services they provide (United States of America and State of Alaska 1991)(. Under the court-approved terms of the settlement, the Trustee Council was formed to administer the restoration funds. Twelve years after the spill, total recovery has still not been achieved.

There are two main concerns about the lingering effects of oiling from the 1989 EVOS. The first is the potential effect of pockets of residual oil in the environment. Laboratory studies have shown that contact with petroleum hydrocarbons from weathered oil, even in very small amounts, can kill or harm early life stages of pink salmon and Pacific herring. It is not yet known, however, whether such effects are actually occurring to any significant degree in PWS or at other localities with residual oil. Tissue samples from higher vertebrates, such as sea otters and harlequin ducks, also indicate possible ongoing exposure to petroleum hydrocarbons in PWS. The effects of this exposure are not well established at the level of individual animals or at the population level.

Long-term environmental monitoring and ecosystem studies will be designed to increase our understanding of the biological processes of the spill area ecosystem in the context of natural forces and human activities.

The second concern is the ability of populations to fully recover by overcoming the demographic effects of the initial oil-related mortalities and the interaction of these effects with the effects of other kinds of changes and disturbances in the marine ecosystem. Sea otters around northern Knight Island are an example of a species that have experienced prolonged demographic effects in the heavily oiled western portion of PWS. The combined effects of the oil spill and the 1998 El Niño event on common murres in the Barren Islands is an example of possible interactive, or cumulative, impacts. The implication of changes in the availability of forage fishes on recovery of seabirds, such as the pigeon guillemot, from the effects of the oil spill is another example.

Studies of lingering oil spill injury and recovery will be drawn to a conclusion in the near term and, increasingly, replaced by long-term environmental monitoring and ecosystem studies. The latter studies will be designed to increase our understanding of the biological processes of the spill area ecosystem in the context of natural forces and human activities.

3.1 References

United States of America and State of Alaska. 1991. Memorandum of agreement and consent decree, A91-081 CIV.

4. BUILDING ON THE LESSONS OF THE PAST

In This Chapter

- Background on other relevant programs
- Studies supported by Trustee Council funding
- Relationship of GEM monitoring activities to the GLOBEC program concepts

The GEM program is not the first attempt to look at large areas of Alaska's marine ecosystems from a broader perspective. A number of other programs, including the *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill Restoration Program, provide valuable guidance.

As explained in the previous chapter, long-term environmental monitoring and ecosystem studies will be designed to increase our understanding of the biological processes of the spill area ecosystem in the context of natural forces and human activities.

4.1 Alaska Regional Marine Research Plan (1993)

The *Alaska Regional Marine Research Plan* (ARMRP) (ARMRB 1993) is a marine science planning document with a broad geographic scope that was prepared under the U.S. Regional Marine Research Act of 1991. For all marine areas of Alaska, including the GOA, the plan provided five elements of interest to the GEM program:

1. An overview of the status of marine resources;
2. An inventory and description of current and anticipated marine research
3. A statement of short- and long-term marine research needs and priorities
4. An assessment of how the research and monitoring activities under the program take advantage of existing projects; and
5. Descriptions, time tables, and budgets for research and monitoring to be conducted under the program.

Goals of other major programs are relevant to the GEM effort.

ARMRP goals express the scientific needs of the Alaska region as of 1992 and are still relevant to the GEM effort because they will accomplish the following:

- Distinguish between natural and human-induced changes in marine ecosystems of the Alaska region;
- Distinguish between natural and human-induced changes in water quality of the Alaska Region;
- Stimulate the development of a data gathering and sharing system that will serve scientists in the region from government, academia, and the private sector in dealing with water quality and ecosystem health issues; and
- Provide a forum for enhancing and maintaining broad discussion among the marine scientific community on the most direct and effective way to understand and address issues related to maintaining the health of the water quality and ecosystem health in the region.

4.2 Bering Sea Ecosystem Research Plan (1998)

The Bering Sea has received a good deal of attention because of to concern about long-term declines in populations of high-profile species such as king and tanner crab, Steller sea lions, spectacled eider, Steller's eider, common murres, thick-billed murres, and red-legged and black-legged kittiwakes (DOI et al. 1998b). The GEM mission statement is consistent with the vision of the federal-state regulatory agencies for the *Bering Sea Ecosystem Research Plan* (DOI et al. 1998a), which follows: "We envision a productive, ecologically diverse Bering Sea ecosystem that will provide long-term, sustained benefits to local communities and the nation." The basic concepts of the GEM program are also consistent with the overarching hypotheses of the Bering Sea plan:

- Natural variability in the physical environment causes shifts in trophic (food web) structure and changes in the overall productivity of the Bering Sea.
- Human impact leads to environmental degradation, including increased levels of contaminants, loss of habitats, and increased mortality on certain species in the ecosystem that may trigger changes in species composition and abundance.

In addition, four of the research themes of the Bering Sea plan–variability and mechanisms in the physical environment, individual species responses, food web dynamics, and contaminants and other introductions--are closely aligned with the conceptual foundation of the GEM program (see Chapter 6). Current research programs for the Bering Sea (DOI et al. 1997) often overlap with the programs identified in the database of ongoing and historical GOA projects (discussed in Chapter 9, Section 4).

4.3 Scientific Legacy of the *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill (1989 to 2002)

Ecological knowledge gained in the years following the 1989 EVOS forms a substantial portion of the foundation of the GEM program. The recovery status of each affected resource (Table 1) is based to the extent possible on knowledge of the resource role in the ecosystem. The Trustee Council's scientific legacy creates the need to understand the causes of population trends in individual species of plants and animals through time and the need to separate human effects from those of climate and interactions with related species.

Table 1. Status of Resources Injured by the *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill as of March 1999

Not Recovering	Recovering	Recovered	Recovery Unknown
Common loon	Archaeological resources	Bald eagle	Cutthroat trout
Cormorants (3 species)	Black oystercatcher	River otter	Designated Wilderness Areas
Harbor seal	Clams		Dolly Varden
Harlequin duck	Common Murre		Kittlitz's murrelet
Killer whale (AB pod)	Intertidal communities		Rockfish
Pigeon guillemot	Marbled murrelet		
	Mussels		
	Pacific herring		
	Pink salmon		
	Sea otter		
	Sediments		
	Sockeye salmon		
	Subtidal communities		

The following injured human services are considered to be recovering: commercial fishing, passive use recreation and tourism, and subsistence.

The studies supported by the Trustee Council since 1989 include 164 damage assessment studies costing more than $100 million, as well as hundreds of restoration studies costing approximately $167 million. These studies have resulted in more than 400 peer-reviewed scientific publications, including numerous dissertations and theses. In addition, hundreds of peer-reviewed project reports are available through the Alaska Resources Library Information System (ARLIS) and state and university library systems. Many final reports are available in electronic format through the Trustee Council offices or ARLIS. A current bibliography of publications sponsored by the Trustee Council is available on its Web site (www.oilspill.state.ak.us) or on request to the Trustee Council. A list of Trustee Council projects as well as a complete list of final and annual project reports also is available on the Web site or on request.

In addition to much specific information on the effects of oil on the plant and animal life in the spill area, the studies also provide a wealth of ecological information. Most prominent among the Trustee Council's studies are three ecosystem-scale projects, known by their acronyms: SEA, NVP, and APEX.

The Sound Ecosystem Assessment (SEA) is the largest of the three studies. Funded at $22 million for a seven-year period, SEA brought together a team of scientists from many different disciplines to understand the biological and physical factors responsible for producing herring and salmon in PWS. When completed, the data collected during SEA are expected to form the basis of numerical models capable of simulating the oceanographic processes that influence the survival and productivity of juvenile pink salmon and herring in PWS. SEA has already provided new insights into the critical factors that influence fisheries production, including ocean currents, nutrient levels, mixing of water masses, salinity, and temperatures. These observations have made it possible to model how physical factors influence production of plant and animal plankton, prey, and predators in the food web.

The Nearshore Vertebrate Predator (NVP) project is a 6-year, $6.5 million study of factors limiting recovery of two fish-eating species, river otters and pigeon guillemots, and two invertebrate-eating species that inhabit nearshore areas, harlequin ducks and sea otters. The project looked at oil exposure, as well as natural factors such as food availability, as potential factors in the recovery of these indicator species, and has contributed to increased understanding of the linkages between terrestrial and marine ecosystems (see Chapter 6, Section 2).

The Alaska Predator Ecosystem Experiment (APEX) is an 8-year, $10.8 million study of ecological relations among seabirds and their prey species. The APEX project explored the critical connection between productivities of marine bird populations and forage fish species, in an attempt to understand how wide-ranging ecological changes might be related to fluctuating seabird populations. In addition, analyzing the food of marine birds shows promise in providing abundance estimates for key fish species, such as sand lance and herring.

These topics also have been covered by other Trustee Council-funded studies and the results are available in published scientific literature:

- Physical and biological oceanography;
- Marine food web structure and dynamics;
- Predator-prey relationships among birds, fish, and mammals;
- The source and fate of carbon among species
- Developmental changes in trophic level within species;
- Marine growth and survival of salmon;
- Intertidal community ecology; and

- Early life history and stock structure in herring.

Many of these studies have focused on key individual species injured by the oil spill, including pink and sockeye salmon, cutthroat trout, Pacific herring, black oystercatchers, river otters, harbor seals, mussels, and kelp.

One of the most extensive series of single-species investigations, for example, is the $14 million suite of pink salmon studies. These include monitoring the toxic effect of oil, conducting genetic studies related to survival, and supplementing select populations. Another extensive series of studies was done on Pacific herring. Roughly $6 million has been spent on the restoration of Pacific herring in addition to the funding for the herring component of SEA. Since the crash of 1993, the population has yet to recruit a highly successful post-spill year-class. Current investigative strategies are focused on the full range of causes of the crash, such as disease and ecological factors, including the effects of oceanographic processes on year-class strength and adult distribution.

More than $5 million has been spent on the restoration of marine mammals, primarily harbor seals, a major source of subsistence food in the diet of Native Alaskans in the northern GOA. Harbor seal populations were declining before the spill, took a big hit at the time of the spill event, and have continued to decline ever since, although the rate of decline seems to have slowed. Food availability is the major focus of current research, because disease and other factors have been ruled out as causes.

4.4 GLOBEC (1991 to Present)

The Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research (SCOR) and the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) established the Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics (GLOBEC) program in late 1991. GLOBEC is the core project of the International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme responsible for understanding how global change will affect abundance, diversity, and productivity of marine populations. The program focuses on the regulatory control of zooplankton dynamics on the biomass of many fish and shellfish.

The GLOBEC Science Plan (U.S. GLOBEC 1997) describes an approach that uses a combination of field observations and modeling to concentrate on the middle and upper trophic levels of the ecosystem. The GLOBEC goal is as follows: "To advance our understanding of the structure and functioning of the global ocean ecosystem, its major subsystems, and its response to physical forcing so that a capability can be developed to forecast the responses of the marine ecosystem to global change."

The overarching concept is that marine and terrestrial ecosystems have close connections among energy flow, chemical cycling, and food web structure. GEM monitoring activities will be consistent with these additional GLOBEC concepts:

- Changes in abundances of birds, fish, shellfish, and mammals (higher trophic levels) usually reflect changes in physical and chemical processes;
- The actual effects on abundances of higher trophic level animals may depend on how these physical and chemical changes act on food production through effects on lower trophic level species;
- Changes in the dominant species at each trophic level are consistent with changes in the physical and chemical systems; and
- Understanding how the dominant species at each trophic level change through time requires knowledge of the energy and nutrient budgets of the ecosystem.

4.5 References

ARMRB. 1993. Alaska Regional Marine Research Board, Alaska research plan. School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska. Fairbanks.

DOI, NOAA, and ADF&G. 1997. Bering Sea ecosystem workshop report. Anchorage, Alaska, December 4-5, 1997. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Anchorage.

DOI, NOAA, and ADF&G. 1998a. Draft Bering Sea ecosystem research plan. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Commercial Fisheries Division. Juneau.

DOI, NOAA, and ADF&G. 1998b. Bering Sea ecosystem - a call to action. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Commercial Fisheries Division. Juneau.

U.S. GLOBEC. 1997. Global Ocean Ecosystems Dynamics (GLOBEC) science plan. IGBP Secretariat, The Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences. Stockholm, Sweden.

5. SCIENTIFIC BACKGROUND

In This Chapter

- Description of the scientific understanding of the Gulf of Alaska
- Identification of physical, chemical, and biological characteristics
- Discussion of changes in populations, predators, and prey

5.1 The Gulf of Alaska

The GOA encompasses watersheds and waters south and east of the Alaska Peninsula from Great Sitkin Island (176° W), north of 52° N to the Canadian mainland on Queen Charlotte Sound (127° 30' W). Twelve and a half percent of the continental shelf of the United States lies within GOA waters (Hood 1986).

The area of the GOA directly affected by the EVOS (Figure 2) encompasses broadly diverse terrestrial and aquatic environments. Within the four broad habitat types of the watersheds, intertidal-subtidal, Alaska Coastal Current (ACC), and offshore (continental shelf break and Alaska Gyre), the geological, climatic, oceanographic, and biological processes interact to produce the highly valued natural beauty and bounty of this region.

Human uses of the GOA are extensive. The GOA is a major source of food and recreation for the entire nation, a source of traditional foods and culture for indigenous peoples, and a source of food and enjoyment for all Alaskans. Serving as a "lung" of the planet, GOA resources are part of the process that provides oxygen to the atmosphere. In addition, the GOA provides habitat for diverse populations of plants, fish, and wildlife and is a source of beauty and inspiration to those who love natural things.

The eastern boundary of the GOA is a geologically young, tectonically active area that contains the world's third largest permanent icefield, after Greenland and Antarctica. Consequently, the watersheds of the eastern boundary of the GOA lie in a series of steep, high mountain ranges. Glaciers head many watersheds in this area, and the eastern boundary mountains trap weather systems from the west, making orographic, or mountain-directed, forcing important in shaping the region's climate. From the southeastern GOA limit (52° N at landfall) moving north, the eastern GOA headwater mountain ranges and height of the highest peaks are the Pacific Coast (10,290 feet [ft]), St. Elias (18,000 ft), and Wrangell (16,390 ft). Northern boundary mountain ranges from east to west are the Chugach (13,176 ft), Talkeetna (8,800 ft), and Alaska (20,320 ft). The western boundary of the

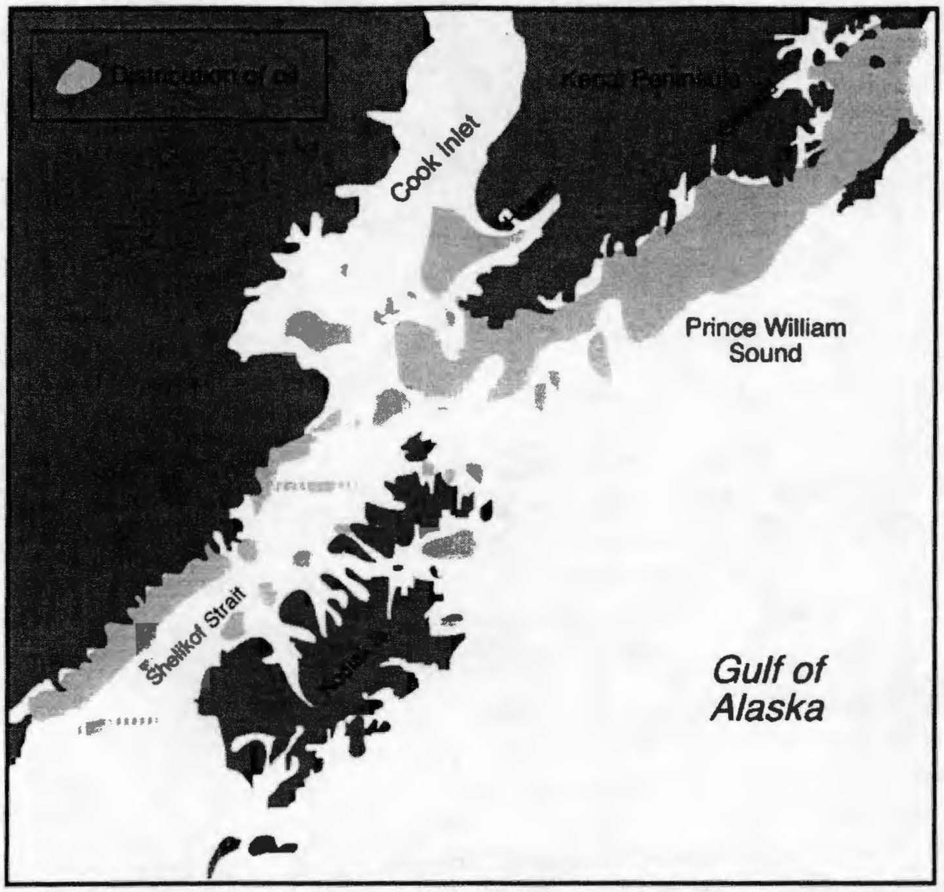


Figure 2. Distribution of oil from the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill.

GOA headwaters is formed in the north by the Alaska Range and to the south-southwest by the Aleutian Mountains (7,585 ft).

Relatively few major river systems manage to pierce the eastern boundary mountains, although thousands of small independent drainages dot the eastern coastline and islands of the Inside Passage. Major eastern rivers from the south moving north to the perimeter of PWS are the Skeena and Nass (Canada), the Stikine, Taku, Chilkat, Chilkoot, Alsek, Situk, and Copper. All major and nearly all smaller watersheds in the GOA region support anadromous fish species. For example, although PWS proper has no major river systems, it does have more than 800 independent drainages that are known to support anadromous fish species.

To the west of PWS lie the major rivers of Cook Inlet. Two major tributaries of Cook Inlet, the Kenai and the Kasilof, originate on the Kenai Peninsula. The Kenai Peninsula lies between PWS, the northern GOA and Cook Inlet. Cook Inlet's largest northern tributary, the Susitna River, has headwaters in the Alaska Range on the slopes of North America's highest peak, Mt. McKinley. Moving southwest down the Alaska Peninsula, only two major river systems are found on the western coastal boundary of the GOA, the Crescent and Chignik, although many small coastal watersheds connected to the GOA abound. Kodiak Island, off the coast of the Alaska Peninsula, has a number of relatively large river systems, including the Karluk, Red, and Frazer.

The nature of the terrestrial boundaries of the GOA is important in defining the processes that drive biological production in all environments. As described in more detail below, the ice cap and the eastern boundary mountains create substantial freshwater runoff that controls salinity in the nearshore GOA and helps drive the eastern boundary current. The eastern mountains slow the pace of and deflect weather systems that influence productivity in freshwater and marine environments.

The GOA shoreline is bordered by a continental shelf ranging to 200 meters (m) in depth (Figure 3). Extensive and spectacular shoreline has been and is being shaped by plate tectonics and massive glacial activity (Hampton et al. 1986). In the eastern GOA, the shelf is variable in width from Cape Spencer to Middleton Island. It broadens considerably in the north between Middleton Island and the Shumagin Islands and narrows again through the Aleutian Islands. The continental slope, down to 2,000 m, is very broad in the eastern GOA, but it narrows steadily southwestward of Kodiak, becoming only a narrow shoulder above the wall of the deep Aleutian Trench just west of Unimak Pass. The continental shelf is incised by extensive valleys or canyons that may be important in cross-shelf water movement (Carlson et al. 1982), and by very large areas of drowned glacial moraines and slumped sediments (Molnia 1981).

Figure 3. Satellite radar image of the northern Gulf of Alaska. Continental shelf, seamounts, and abyssal plain can be seen in relief. (Composite image from Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor [SeaWiFS], a National Aeronautics and Space Agency remote-sensing satellite.)

5.2 Climate

5.2.1 Introduction

The weather in the northern GOA, and by extension that of adjacent regions such as PWS, is dominated for much of the year by extratropical cyclones. These storms typically form well to the south and east of the region over the warm waters of the central North Pacific Ocean and propagate northwestward into the cooler waters of the GOA (Luick et al. 1987, Wilson and Overland 1986). Eventually these storms make landfall in Southcentral or South east Alaska where their further progress is impeded by the extreme terrain of the Saint Elias Mountains and other coastal ranges. In fact, weather forecasters call the coastal region between Cordova and Yakutat "Coffin Corner," in reference to the frequency of decaying extratropical storms found there.

The high probability of cyclonic disturbances in the northern GOA is significant to the local weather and climate of PWS. Associated with these storms are large offshore-directed, low-level pressure gradients (tightly packed isobars roughly parallel to the coast). Depending on other factors (such as static stability, upper-level wind profile) these gradients can produce strong gradient-balance winds parallel to the coastline or downslope (offshore-directed) wind events (Macklin et al. 1988). Further, because of the complex glacially sculptured nature of the terrain in PWS, several regions experience significant upslope winds in certain favorable storm situations. This wind configuration, in concert with steep terrain and nearly saturated, low-level air masses, produces the local extreme in precipitation responsible for tidewater glaciers of PWS.

The combination of general storminess, significant windiness (and concomitant wave generation), and orographically enhanced precipitation are essential features of the northern GOA and PWS, and have a strong impact on the variety and composition of the biota this region supports. In addition, the annual melting of seasonal snowfall accumulations, in combination with glacial ablation, is responsible for the bulk freshwater input into PWS. In this context, any changes in climate–naturally induced or anthropogenic–that substantively alter the frequency and duration of these common yet transient weather features should also affect related parts of the region ecosystem. In the following discussion, the factors responsible for climate change are identified and explained on a general level in preparation for specific relationships among climate, physical, and chemical oceanography; species; and groups of species that follow. Climate is recognized to be a major natural force influencing change in biological resources.

The GEM mission is to promote, "... greater understanding of how its productivity is influenced by natural changes and human activities" (EVOSTC 2000). Climatic forcing is an important natural agent of change in the region's populations of birds, fish, mammals, and other plant and animal species (Hare et al. 1999, Mantua et al. 1997, Anderson and Piatt 1999, Francis et al. 1998). Human actions, or anthropogenic forcing, may have profound effects on climate. There is growing evidence that human activities producing "greenhouse gases" such as carbon dioxide may contribute to global climate change by altering the global carbon cycle (Sigman and Boyle 2000, Allen et al. 2000). Understanding how natural and human forcing influences biological productivity requires knowledge of the major determinants of climate change described in this section.

Climate in the GOA results from the complex interactions of geophysical and astrophysical forces, and also in part by biogeochemical forcing. Physical processes acting on the global carbon cycle and its living component, the biological pump, drive oscillations in climate (Sigman and Boyle 2000). The most prominent geophysical feature associated with climate change in the GOA is the Aleutian Low Pressure system (Wilson and Overland 1986). The location and intensity of this system affects storm tracks, air temperatures, wind velocities, ocean currents and other key physical factors in the GOA and adjacent land areas. Sharp variations, or oscillations, in the location and intensity of the Aleutian Low are the result of physical factors operating both proximally and at great distances from the GOA (Mantua et al. 1997). Periodic changes in the location and intensity of the Aleutian Low are related to movements of adjacent continental air masses and the jet stream to oceanography and weather in the eastern tropical Pacific.

Astrophysical forces contribute to long-term trends and periodic changes in the climate of the GOA by controlling the amount of solar radiation that reaches earth, or insolation (Rutherford and D'Hondt 2000). Climate also depends on the amount of global insolation and the proportion of the insolation stored by the atmosphere, oceans, and biological systems (Sigman and Boyle 2000). Changes in climate and biological systems occur through physical forcing of controlling factors, such as solar radiation, strength of lunar mixing of water masses, and patterns of ocean circulation. Periodic variations in the earth's solar orbit, the speed of rotation and orientation of the earth, and the degree of inclination of the earth's axis in relation to the sun result in periodic changes in climate and associated biological activity.

Understanding climatic change requires sorting out the effects of physical forcing factors that operate simultaneously at different periods. Periodicities of physical forcing on factors potentially controlling climate and biological systems include are 100,000 years, 41,000 years, 23,000 years, 10,000 years, 20 years, 18.6 years, and 10 years, among many others. For example, Minobe (1999) identified periods of 50 and 20 years in an analysis of the North Pacific Index (NPI) (Figure 4 (Minobe 1999)). The NPI is a time series of geographically averaged sea-level pressures representing a univariate (depending on only one random variable) measure of location for the Aleutian Low (Trenberth and Hurrel 1994).

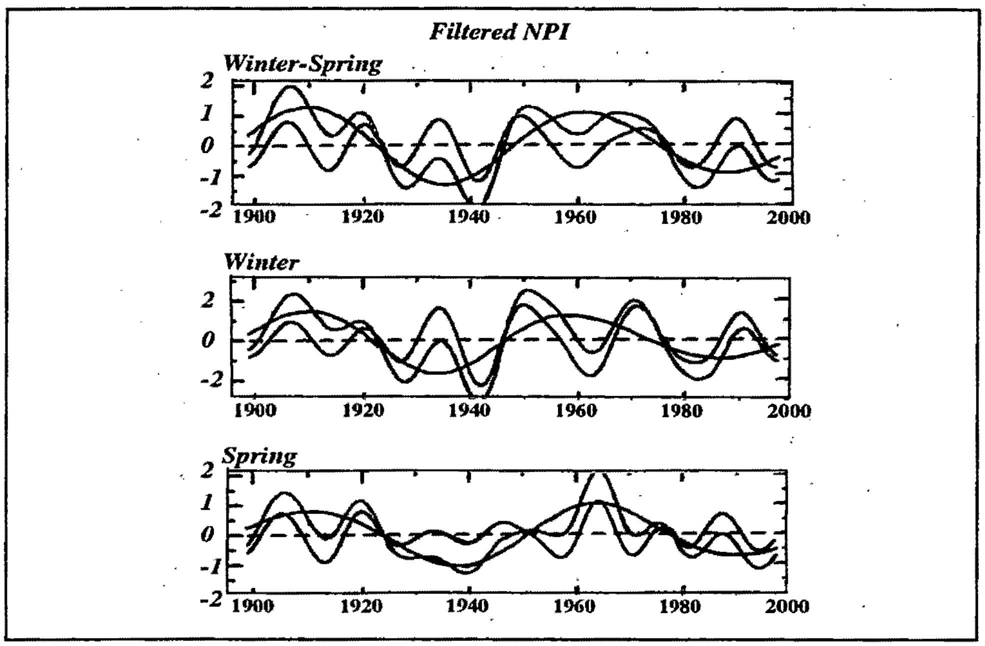


Figure 4. Filtered NPI (top) in the winter-spring, winter, and spring seasons. NPI is shown in hectoPascals, a measure of barometric pressure at sea level. The green curves indicate the 10- to 80-year, band-pass filtered NPI data; the red curves indicate the 10- to 30-year, band-pass filtered (bidecadal filtered) NPI data, and the blue curves indicate the 30- to 80-year, band-pass filtered NPI data. reference needed

Advances and retreats of icefields and glaciers mark major changes in weather and biology. Changes in the seasonal and geographic distribution of solar radiation are thought to be primarily responsible for the periodic advance and recession of glaciers during the past 2 million years (Hays et al. 1976). The amount of solar radiation reaching earth changes periodically, or oscillates, in response to variations in the path of the earth's orbit about the sun. Geographic and seasonal changes in solar radiation caused by periodic variations in the earth's orbit around and orientation toward the sun have been labelled "Milankovich cycles," which are known to have characteristic frequencies of 100,000, 41,000, and 23,000 years (Berger et al. 1984). Shifts in the periodicity of long-term weather patterns correspond to shifts from one Milankovich cycle to another. How and why shifts from one Milankovich cycle to another occur are among the most important questions in paleoeclimate research (Hays et al. 1976, Rutherford and D'Hondt 2000).

5.2.2 Long Time Scales

5.2.2.1 Orbital Eccentricity and Obliquity

Shifts in the periodicity of glaciation from 41,000 to 100,000 years between 1.5 and 0.6 million years before present (Myr bp) emphasize the importance of the atmosphere and oceans in translating the effects of physical forcing into weather cycles. Glacial cycles may have initially shifted from the 41,000-year period of the "obliquity cycle" to the 100,000-year period of the "orbital eccentricity" perhaps caused initially by changes in the heat flux, from the equator to the higher latitudes (Rutherford and D'Hondt 2000). (Obliquity is the angle between the plane of the earth's orbit and the equatorial plane.) According to the theory advanced by Rutherford and D'Hondt (2000), interactions between long-period physical forcing (Milankovich cycles) and shorter-period forcing (precession) may have been a key factor in lengthening the time period between glaciations in the transition period of 1.5 and 0.6 Myr bp. Transitions from glacial to interglacial periods may be triggered by factors such as the micronutrient iron (Martin 1990) that control the activity of the biological pump in the Southern Ocean, described below.

Theories about regulation of heat flux from the equator to northern latitudes are central to understanding climate change. For example, the heat flux that occurs when the Gulf Stream moves equatorial warmth north to surround the United Kingdom, Iceland, and Northern Europe defines comfortable human life styles in these countries. Anything that disrupts this heat flux process would drastically alter climate in Northern Europe.

5.2.2.2 Day Length

Day length is increasing by one to two seconds each 100,000 years primarily because of lunar tidal action (U.S. Naval Observatory [USNO]). Understanding the role of day length in climate variation is problematic because the rotational speed of the earth cannot be predicted exactly due to the effects of a large number of poorly understood sources of variation (USNO). Short-term effects are probably inconsequential biologically, because variations in daily rotational speed are very small, but cumulative effects could be more substantial in the long term.

5.2.2.3 Carbon Cycling and the Biological Pump

Changes in the amount of solar radiation available to drive physical and biological systems on earth are not the only causes of climate oscillations in the GOA, or elsewhere in earth. Of critical importance to life on earth, changes in insolation result in changes in the amount of a "greenhouse gas," carbon dioxide in the atmosphere resulting from changes in physical properties, such as ocean temperature, and due to biological processes collectively known as the biological pump (Chisholm 2000). The importance of the biological pump in determining levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide is thought to be substantial, since the direct physical and chemical effects of changes in insolation on the carbon cycle alone (Sigman and Boyle 2000) (Figure 2) are not sufficient to account for the magnitude of the changes in atmospheric carbon dioxide between major climate changes, such as glaciations

The Biological Pump. Photosynthesis and respiration by marine plants and animals play key roles in the global carbon cycle by "pumping" carbon dioxide from the atmosphere to the surface ocean and incorporating it into organic carbon during photosynthesis. Organic carbon not liberated as carbon dioxide during respiration is "pumped" (exported) to deep ocean water where bacteria convert it to carbon dioxide. Over a period of about 1,000 years, ocean currents return the deep water's carbon dioxide to the surface (through upwelling) where it again drives photosynthesis and ventilates to the atmosphere. The degree to which this deep-water's carbon dioxide is "pumped" back into the atmosphere or "pumped" back into deep water depends on the intensity of the photosynthetic activity, which depends on availability of the macronutrients phosphate, nitrate, and silicate, and on micronutrients such as reduced iron (Chisholm 2000).

Areas where nitrates and phosphates do not limit phytoplankton production, such as the Southern Ocean (60° S), can have very large effects on the global carbon cycle through the action of the biological pump. When stimulated by the micronutrient iron, the biological pump of the Southern Ocean becomes very strong because of the presence of ample nitrate and phosphate to fuel photosynthesis, as demonstrated by the Southern Ocean iron release experiment (SOIREE) at 61° S 140° E in February 1999 (Boyd et al. 2000). SOIREE stimulated phytoplankton production in surface waters for about two weeks fixing up to 3,000 metric ton (mt) of organic carbon. Although it has not been demonstrated that "iron fertilization" increases export of carbon to deep waters (Chisholm 2000), it clearly does enhance surface production. The Southern Ocean and much of the GOA share the quality of being "high nitrate, low chlorophyll" (HNLC) waters, so it is tempting to speculate that iron would play an important role in controlling production, if not export production, in the GOA.

FIGURE 5

THIS FIGURE IS STILL BEING DEVELOPED

The Carbon Cycle. An accounting of changes in the amount of carbon in each component of the earth's terrestrial and ocean carbon cycles (Sigmon and Boyd, Figure 2), as influenced and represented by the physical and chemical factors of ocean temperature, dissolved inorganic carbon, ocean alkalinity, and the deep reservoir of the nutrients phosphate and nitrate, has to incorporate changes in the strength of the ocean's biological pump to be complete (Sigman and Boyle 2000). The amount of atmospheric carbon dioxide decreases during glacial periods. Because physical-chemical effects do not fully account for these changes, the ruling hypothesis is that the biological pump is stronger during glaciations. But why would the biological pump be stronger during glaciations?

Two leading theories explain decreases in atmospheric carbon dioxide by means of increased activity in the ocean's biological pump during glaciations (Sigman and Boyle 2000). Both theories explain how increased export production of carbon from surface waters to long-term storage in deep ocean waters can lower atmospheric carbon dioxide during glacial periods. The Broecker theory develops mechanisms based on increasing export from low- to mid-latitude surface waters (Broecker 1982, McElroy 1983), and the second theory relies on high-latitude export production of direct relevance to the GOA. Patterns and trends in nutrient use in high-latitude oceans, such as the GOA, where nutrients usually do not limit phytoplankton production, could hold the key to understanding climate oscillations.

5.2.2.4 Ocean Circulation

Because of the heat energy stored in seawater, oceans are vast integrators of past climatic events, as well as agents and buffers of climate change. Wind, precipitation, and other features of climate shape surface ocean currents (Wilson and Overland 1986), and ocean currents in turn strongly feed back into climate. Deep ocean waters driven by thermohaline circulation in the Atlantic and southern oceans influence air temperatures over these portions of the globe by transporting and exchanging large quantities of heat energy with the atmosphere (Peixoto and Oort 1992). Patterns of thermohaline (affected by salt and temperature) ocean circulation probably change during periods of glaciation (Lynch-Stieglitz et al. 1999). The nature of changes in patterns of thermohaline circulation appear to determine the duration and intensity of climate change (Ganopolski and Rahmstorf 2001). Although the climate of the GOA is not directly affected by thermohaline circulation, climate in the GOA is influenced by thermohaline circulation through climatic linkages to other parts of the globe.

Teleconnection between North Pacific and the Tropical Pacific can periodically strongly influence levels of coastal and interior precipitation. Because changing patterns in precipitation alter the expression of the ACC (Figure 6), which is largely driven by runoff (Royer 1981a), periodically changing weather patterns such as the Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO) and the El Niño Southern Oscillation (ENSO) can profoundly alter the circulation and biology of the GOA. (See Section 5.2.2.3.)

The effects of the cool ACC and the warmer Alaska Stream moderate air temperatures. GOA ocean temperatures are important in determining climate in the fall and early winter in the northern GOA and may be influential at other times of the year. Because the cool glacially influenced waters of the ACC moderate air temperatures along the coast, the strength and stability of the ACC are important in determining climate.

5.2.3 Multi-decadal and Multi-annual Time Scales

5.2.3.1 Precession and Nutation

Short period changes in the seasonal and geographic distribution of solar radiation are also due to changes in the earth's orientation and rotational speed (day length) (Lambeck 1980). Wobbling (precession) and nodding (nutation) of the earth as it spins on its axis are primarily due to the fluid nature of the atmosphere and oceans, the gravitational attraction of sun and moon, and the irregular shape of the planet.

Small periodic variations in the length of the day occur with periods of 18.6 years, 1 year, and 60 other periodic components. The periodic components are due to both lunar and solar tidal forcing. In addition to its effect on day length, lunar tidal forcing with a period of 18.6 years has been associated with high-latitude climate forcing, periodic changes in intensity of transport of nutrients by tidal mixing, and periodic changes in fish recruitment (Royer 1993, Parker et al. 1995). Biological and physical effects of the lunar tidal cycle may extend beyond effects associated with tidal mixing. About one-third of the energy input to the sea by lunar forcing serves to mix deep-water masses with adjacent waters (Egbert and Ray 2000). Oscillations in the lunar energy input could contribute to oscillations in biological productivity through effects on the rate of transport of nutrients to surface waters. The lunar tidal cycle appears to be approximately synchronous with the PDO.

Contemporary climate in the GOA is defined by large-scale atmospheric and oceanic circulation on a global scale. Two periodic changes in ocean and atmospheric conditions are particularly useful for understanding change in the climate of the GOA, the PDO and the ENSO. Although weather patterns in the Arctic and north Atlantic are also correlated with weather in the North Pacific, these relations are far from clear. The PDO, ENSO, and other patterns of climate variability combine to give the GOA a variable and sometimes severe climate that serves as the incubator for the winter storms that sweep across the North American continent through the Aleutian storm track (Wilson and Overland 1986).

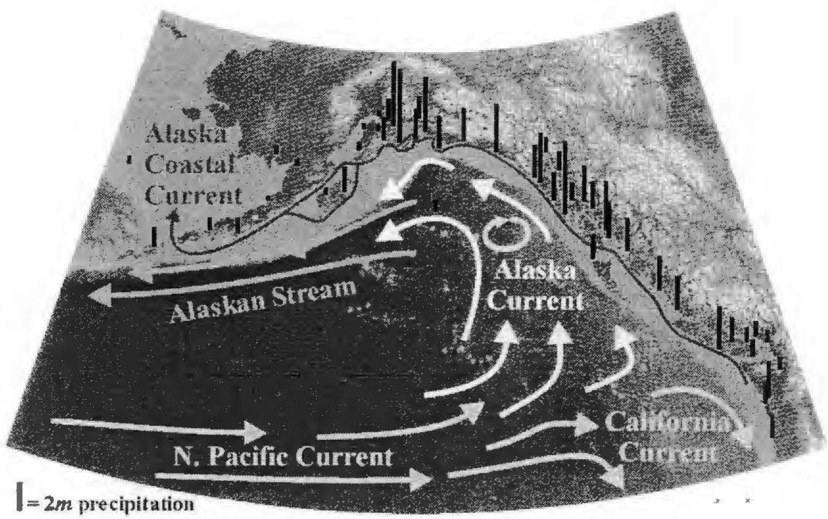


Figure 6. Schematic surface circulation fields in the GOA and mean annual precipitation totals from coastal stations (black vertical bars) and for the central GOA (Baumgartner and Reichel 1975).

Increased understanding of the PDO has been made possible by simple yet highly descriptive indices of weather, such as the NPI. These indices are discussed below. Changes in the annual values of these indices led to the realization that weather conditions in the GOA sometimes change sharply from one set of average conditions to a different set during a period of only a few years. These rapid climatic and oceanographic regime shifts are associated with similarly rapid changes in the animals and plants of the region that are of vital interest to government, industry, and the general public.

5.2.3.2 Pacific Decadal Oscillation

The PDO and associated phenomena appear to be major sources of oceanographic and biological variability (Mantua et al. 1997). Associated with the PDO are three semi-permanent atmospheric pressure regions dominating climate in the northern GOA–the Siberian and East Pacific high-pressure systems and the Aleutian Low pressure system. These regions have variable, but characteristic, seasonal locations. A prominent feature of the PDO and the climate of the GOA is the Aleutian Low, for which average geographic location changes periodically during the winter. Wintertime location of the Aleutian Low affects ocean circulation patterns and sea-level pressure patterns. It is characteristic of two climatic regimes: a southwestern locus called a negative PDO regime (i.e., 1972) and a northeastern locus called a positive PDO (1977) (Figures 7 and 8). The location of the Aleutian Low in the winter appears to be synchronized with annual abundances and strength of recruitment of some fish species (Hollowed and Wooster 1992, Francis and Hare 1994). The Aleutian Low pressure system averages about 1,002 millibars (Favorite et al. 1976), is most intense in winter, and appears to cycle in its average position and intensity with about a 20- to 25-year period (Rogers 1981, Trenberth and Hurrel 1994).

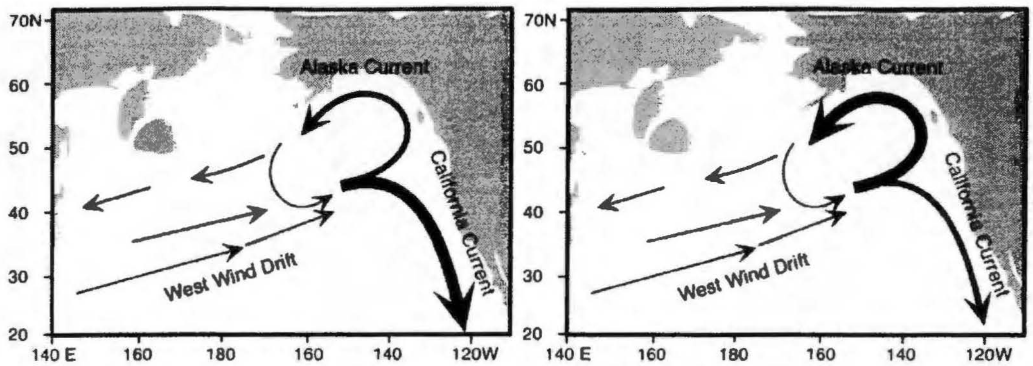


Figure 7. Oceanic circulation patterns in the far eastern Pacific Ocean proposed for negative PDO (left) and positive PDO (right). (Hollowed and Wooster 1992).

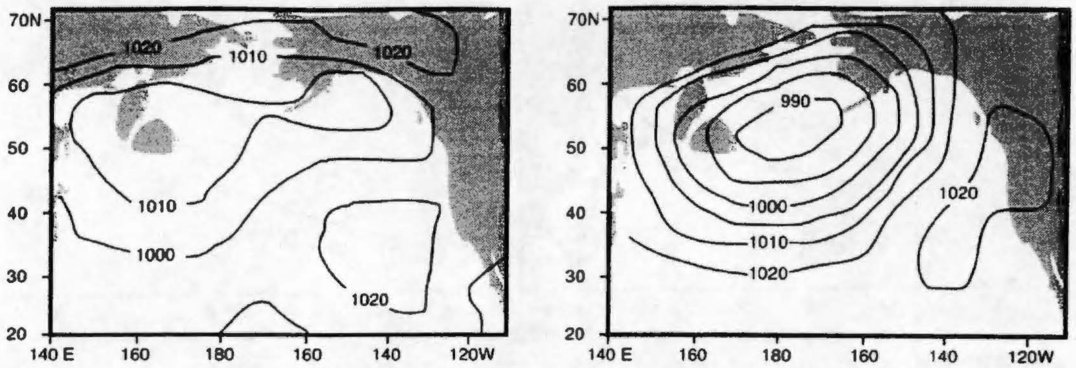


Figure 8. Mean sea-level pressure patterns from the winters of 1972 (left) and 1977 (right). (From Emery and Hamilton 1985).

The PDO is studied with multiple indices, including the anomalies of sea level pressure (as in the NPI, which is discussed below), anomalies of sea surface temperature, and wind stress (Mantua et al. 1997, Hare et al. 1999). The PDO changes, or oscillates, between positive (warm) and negative (cool) states (Figures 9 and 10). In decades of positive PDOs, below-normal sea surface temperatures occur in the central and western North Pacific and above normal temperatures occur in the GOA. An intense low pressure is centered over the Alaska Peninsula, resulting in the GOA being warm and windy with lots of precipitation. In decades of negative PDOs, the opposite sea surface temperature and pressure patterns occur.

The NPI, a univariate time series representing the strength of the Aleutian Low, shows the same twentieth-century regimes defined by the PDO. The NPI is the anomaly, or deviation from the long-term average, of geographically averaged sea-level pressure in the region from 160° E to 140° W, 30° to 65° N, for the years 1899 to 1997 (Trenberth and Hurrel 1994, Trenberth and Paolino 1980). The NPI was used to identify climatic regimes in the twentieth century, for the years 1899 to 1924, 1925 to 1947, 1948 to 1976, and 1977 to 1997, and to explore the interactions of short (20-year) and long (50-year) period effects on the timing of regime shifts (Anderson and Munson 1972). Negative (cool) PDOs occurred during 1890 to 1924 and 1947 to 1976, and positive (warm) PDOs dominated from 1925 to 1946 and from 1977 to about 1995 (Mantua et al. 1997, Minobe 1997). Minobe's analysis of the NPI identified a characteristic S-shaped waveform with a 50-year period (sinusoidal pentadecadal) (Figure 4) (Anderson and Munson 1972). His analysis pointed out that rapid transitions from one regime to another could not be fully explained by a single sinusoidal-wavelike effect. The speed with which regime shifts occurred in the twentieth century led Minobe to suggest that the pentadecadal cycle is synchronized or phase locked with another climate variation on a shorter bidecadal time scale (Anderson and Munson 1972).

In addition to periodic and seasonal changes, there is evidence that the Aleutian storm track has shifted to an overall more southerly position during the twentieth century (Richardson 1936, Klein 1957, Whittaker and Horn 1982, Wilson and Overland 1986).

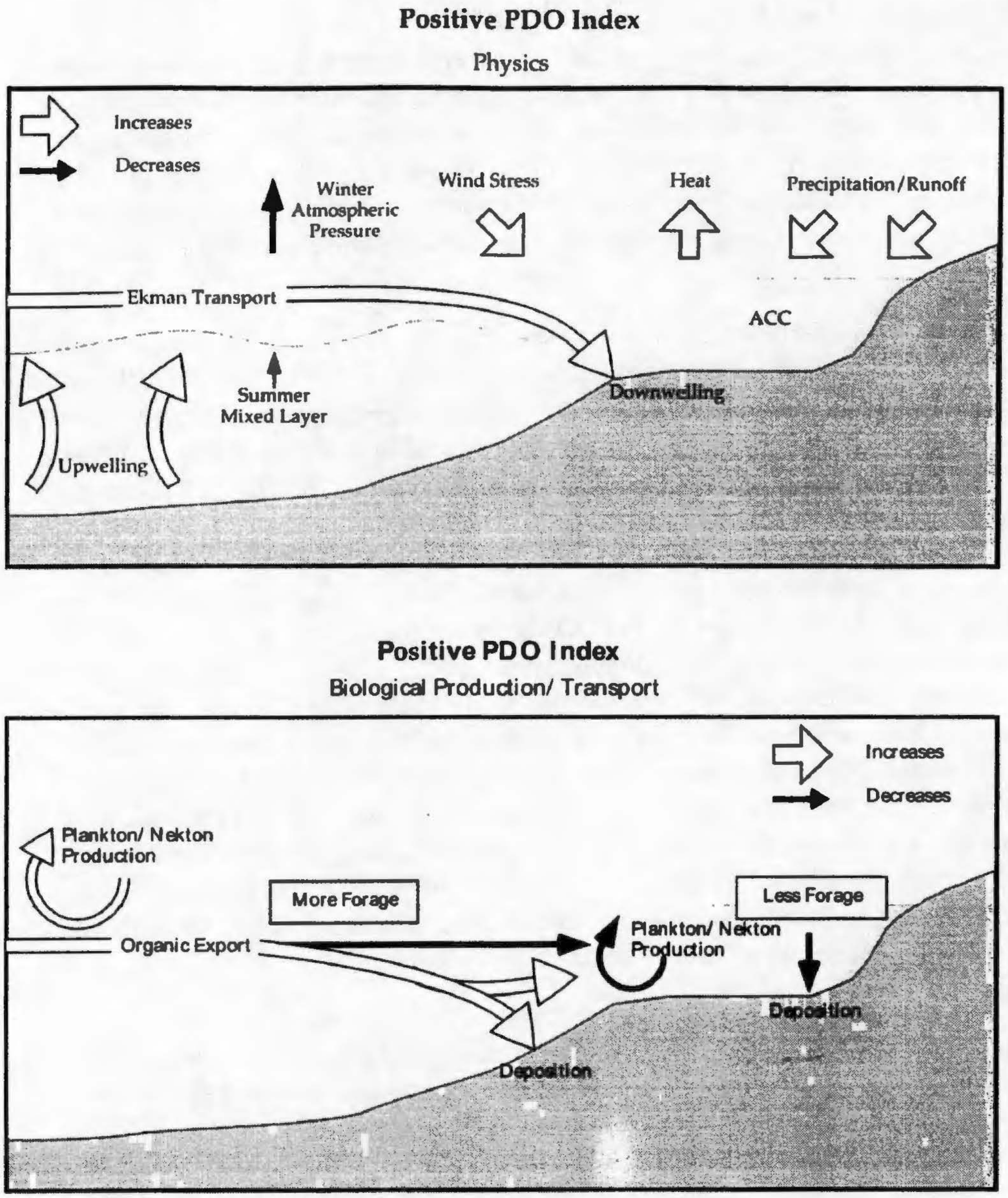
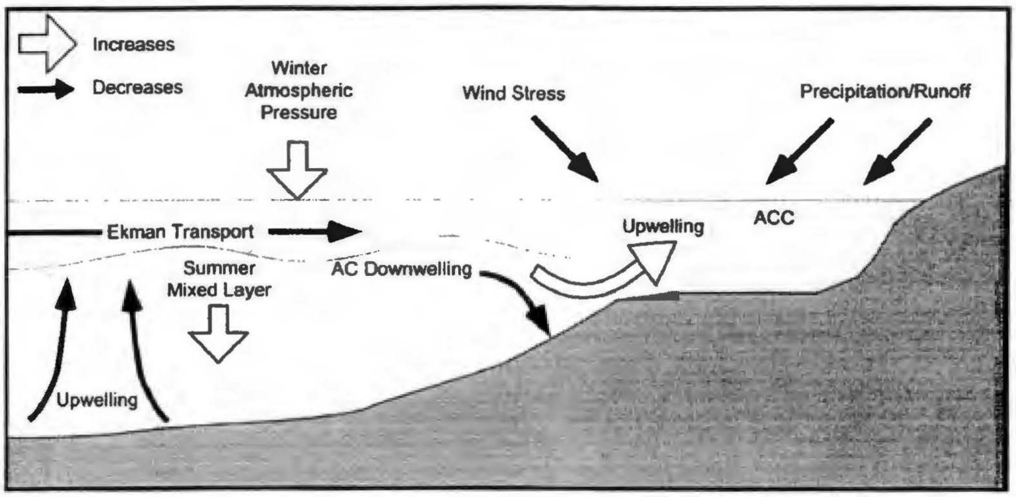


Figure 9. Schematic of physical processes during the winter in a positive PDO climatic regime in the Gulf of Alaska from offshore to nearshore areas showing the Alaska Current and the Alaska Coastal Current.

Negative PDO Index

Physics



Negative PDO Index

Biological Production/Transport

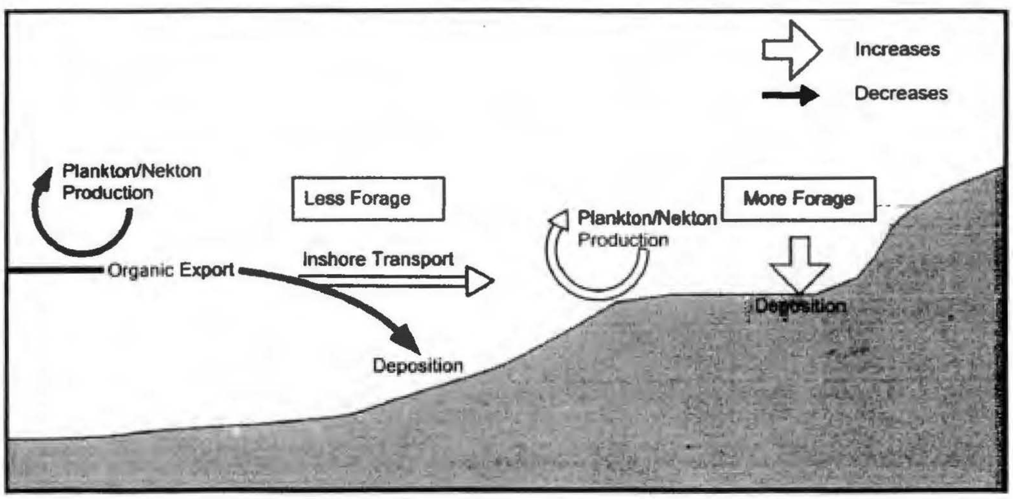


Figure 10. Schematic of physical processes during the winter in a negative PDO climatic regime in the Gulf of Alaska from offshore to nearshore areas showing the Alaska Current and the Alaska Coastal Current.

5.2.3.3 El Niño Southern Oscillation The ENSO is a weather pattern (Is ENSO really a weather pattern or an ocean/pressure pattern?) originating in the equatorial Pacific with strong influences as far north as the GOA (Emery and Hamilton 1985). ENSO is marked by three states: warm, normal, and cool (Enfield 1997). See Figure 11. Under normal conditions, the water temperatures at the continental boundary of the eastern Pacific are around 20° C, as cold bottom waters (8° C) mix with warmer surface water to form a large pool of relatively cool water of the coast of Peru. When an El Niño (warm) event starts, the pool of cool coastal water at the continental boundary becomes smaller and smaller as warm water masses (20° C to 30° C) from the west move on top of them, and the sea level starts to rise. At full El Niño, increases in the surface water temperatures of as much as 5.4° C have been observed very close to the coast of Peru. El Niño also brings a sea level rise along the Equator in the eastern Pacific Ocean of as much as 34 centimeters, as warm buoyant waters moving in from the west override cooler, denser water masses at the continental boundary. In a cool La Niña event, the sea levels are the opposite from an El Niño, and relatively cool (less than 20° C) waters extend well offshore along the equator. Note that the sea surface temperature changes associated with ENSO events extend well into the GOA (Figure 11).

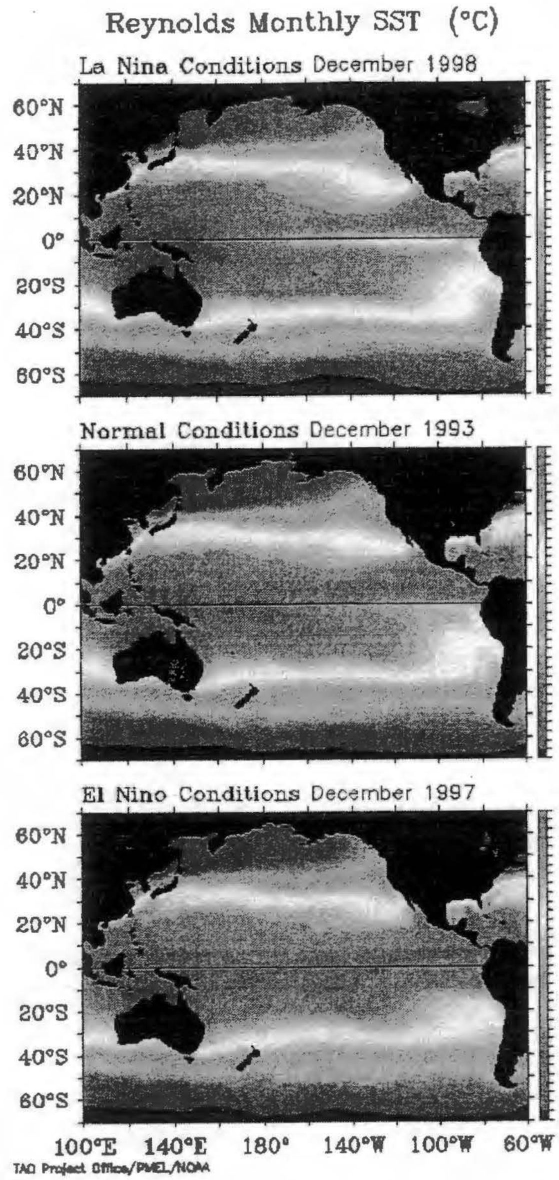


Figure 11. Pacific Ocean Reynolds monthly sea surface temperature (SST) in degrees Celsius during La Niña (top), El Niño bottom), and normal (middle) ENSO events. Source: Tropical Atmosphere Ocean Project Office, Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, available at <http://www.pmel.noaa.gov/toga-tao/el-nino/la-nina-pacific.html>. also use Martin reference? (Martin 1997) http://www.pmel.noaa.gov/toga-tao/el-nino/la-nina-pacific.html

The ENSO has effects in some of the same geographic areas as PDO, but there are two major differences between these patterns. First, an ENSO event does not last as long as a PDO event, and second an ENSO event starts, and is easiest to detect, in the eastern equatorial Pacific, whereas PDO dominates the eastern North Pacific, including the GOA. The simultaneous occurrence of two major weather patterns in one location illustrates Minobe's point that multiple forcing factors with different characteristic frequencies must be operating simultaneously to create regime shifts (Figure 4).

5.3 Marine-Terrestrial Connections

The role of marine inputs to the watershed phase of regional biogeochemical cycles has been recognized for some time (Mathisen 1972). The following species have been found to transport marine nutrients within watersheds:

- Anadromous species, such as salmon (Kline et al. 1993, Ben-David et al. 1998a);
- Marine-feeding land animals, such as river otters (Ben-David et al. 1998b) and coastal mink (Ben-David et al. 1997a); and
- Opportunistic scavengers as riverine mink (Ben-David et al. 1997a), wolf (Szepanski et al. 1999), and martens (Ben-David et al. 1997b).

In theory, any terrestrial bird or mammal species that feeds in the marine environment, such as harlequin duck or black-tailed deer, is a pathway to the watersheds for marine nutrients. Species that transport marine nutrients play important roles in supporting a wide diversity of other fauna and flora, as determined from levels of marine nitrogen in juvenile fish, invertebrates, and aquatic and riparian plants (Bilby et al. 1996, Piorkowski 1995, Ben-David et al. 1998a, 1998b). In studies of a small Alaska stream containing chinook salmon, Piorkowski (1995) supported the hypothesis that salmon carcasses can be important in structuring aquatic food webs. In particular, microbial composition and diversity determine the ability of the stream ecosystem to use nutrients from salmon carcasses, a principal source of marine nitrogen.

The role of marine nutrients in watersheds is key to understanding the relative importance of climate and human-induced changes in population levels of birds, fish, and mammals. Indeed, losses of basic habitat productivity because of low numbers of salmon entering a watershed (Kline et al. 1993, Mathisen 1972, Piorkowski 1995, Finney et al. 2000) may be confused with the effects of fisheries interceptions or marine climate trends. Comparison of anadromous fish-bearing streams to non-anadromous streams has demonstrated differences in productivities related to marine nutrient cycling. Import of marine nutrients and food energy to the lotic (flowing water) ecosystem may be retarded in systems that have been denuded of salmon for any length of time (Piorkowski 1995).

Paleoecological studies (which focus on ancient events) in watersheds bearing anadromous species can shed light on long-term trends in marine productivity. Use of marine nitrogen in sediment cores from freshwater spawning and rearing areas to reconstruct prehistoric abundance of salmon offers some insights into long-term trends in climate, and into how to separate the effects of climate from human impacts such as fishing and habitat degradation (Finney 1998).

Watershed studies linking the freshwater and marine portions of the regional ecosystem could pay important benefits to natural resource management agencies. As agencies grapple with implementation of ecosystem-based management, conservation actions are likely to focus more on ecosystem processes and less on single species (Mangel et al. 1996). In the long-term, protection of Alaska's natural resources will require extending the protection now afforded to single species, such as targeted commercially important salmon stocks, to ecosystem functions (Mangel et al. 1996). In process-oriented conservation (Mangel et al. 1996), production of ecologically central vertebrate species is combined with measures of the production of other species and measures of energy and nutrient flow among trophic levels to identify and protect ecological processes such as nutrient transport. Applications of ecological process measures in Alaska ecosystems have shown the feasibility and potential importance of such measures (Kline et al. 1990, Kline et al. 1993, Mathisen 1972, Piorkowski 1995, Ben-David et al. 1997a, 1997b, 1998a, 1998b, Szepanski et al. 1999), as have applications outside of Alaska (Bilby et al. 1996, Larkin and Slaney 1997).

As agencies grapple with implementation of ecosystem-based management, conservation actions are likely to focus more on ecosystem processes and less on single species.

5.4 Physical and Geological Oceanography: Coastal Boundaries and Coastal and Ocean Circulation

5.4.1 Physical Setting, Geology, and Geography

The GOA includes the continental shelf, slope, and abyssal plain of the northern part (north of 50° N) of the northeastern Pacific Ocean. It extends 3,600 kilometers (km) westward from 127° 30′ W near the northern end of Vancouver Island, British Columbia, to 176° W along the southern edge of the central Aleutian Islands. It includes a continental shelf area of about 3.7×10^5 km^2 (110,000 square nautical miles [Lynde 1986]). The area of the shelf amounts to about 17% of the entire Alaskan continental shelf area (2.86×10^6 km^2 total) and approximately 12.5% of the total continental shelf of the United States (McRoy and Goering 1974). This vast oceanic domain sustains a rich and diverse marine life that supports the economic and subsistence livelihood for both Alaskans and people living in Asia and North America. The GOA is also an important transportation corridor for vessels carrying cargo to and from Alaska and vessels traveling the Great Circle Route between North America and Asia.

The high-latitude location and geological history of the GOA and adjacent landmass strongly influence present-day regional meteorology, oceanography, and sedimentary environment. The northern extension of the Cascade Range, with mountains ranging in altitude from 3 to 6 km, rings the coast from British Columbia to Southcentral Alaska (Royer 1982). The Aleutian Range spans the Alaska Peninsula in the western GOA and contains peaks exceeding 1000 m in elevation. All of the mountains are young and therefore provide plentiful sources of sediment to the ocean. The region is seismically active because it lies within the converging boundaries of the Pacific and North American plates. The motions of these plates control the seismicity, tectonics, volcanism, and much of the morphology of the GOA and make this region one of the most tectonically active regions on earth (Jacob 1986). Indeed, tectonic motion continuously reshapes the seafloor through faulting, subsidence, landslides, tsunamis, and soil liquefaction. For example, as much as 15 m of uplift occurred over portions of the shelf during the Great Alaska Earthquake of 1964 (Malloy and Merrill 1972, Plafker 1972, von Huene et al. 1972). These geological processes influence ocean circulation patterns, delivery of terrestrial sediments to the ocean, and reworking of seabed sediments.

Approximately 20% of the GOA watershed is covered by glaciers today (Royer 1982) making the region the third greatest glacial field on earth (Meier 1984). The glaciers reflect both the subpolar, maritime climate and the regional distribution of mountains, or orography, of the GOA (see Section 5.3) of the GOA. The climate setting includes high rates of precipitation and cool temperatures, especially at high altitudes, that enhance the formation of the icefields and glaciers. The icefields are both a source and sink for the fresh water delivered to the ocean. In some years the glaciers gain and store the precipitation as ice and snow; in other years, the stored precipitation is released into the numerous streams and rivers draining into the GOA. Glacial scouring of the underlying bedrock provides an abundance of fine-grained sediments to the GOA shelf and basin (Hampton et al. 1986). The major inputs of glacial sediment are the Bering and Malaspina glaciers and the Alsek and Copper rivers in the northern GOA and the Knik, Matanuska, and Susitna rivers that feed Cook Inlet in the northwest GOA (Hampton et al. 1986).

The bathymetry, or bottom depth variations, of the GOA reflects the diverse and complex geomorphological processes that have worked the region during millions of years. The GOA abyssal plain gradually shoals from a 5,000-m depth in the southwestern GOA to less than 3000 m in the northeastern GOA. Maximal depths exceed 7,000 m near the central Aleutian Trench along the continental slope south of the Aleutian Islands. Numerous seamounts, remnants of subsea volcanoes associated with spreading centers in the Pacific lithospheric plate (at the earth's crust), are scattered across the central basin. Several of the seamounts or guyots (flat-topped seamounts) rise to within a few hundred meters of the sea surface and provide important mesopelagic (middle depth of the open sea) habitat for pelagic (open sea) and benthic (bottom) marine organisms.

The continental shelf varies in width from about 5 km off the Queen Charlotte Islands in the eastern GOA to about 200 km north and south of Kodiak Island. Along the Aleutian Islands, the shelf break is extremely narrow or even absent, as depths plunge rapidly north and south of the island chain. The numerous passes between these islands control the flow between the GOA and the Bering Sea, with depths (and inflow) generally increasing in the westerly direction (Favorite 1974). In the eastern Aleutians, most of the passes are shallow and narrow, the largest being Amukta Pass with a maximal depth of 430 m and an area of about 20 km^2 (Favorite 1974). Unimak Pass is the easternmost pass (of oceanographic significance) and connects the southeast Bering Sea shelf directly to the GOA shelf near the Shumagin Islands. This pass is about 75 m deep and has a cross-sectional area of about 1 km^2 (Schumacher et al. 1982).

The shelf topography in the northern GOA is enormously complex because of both tectonic and glacial processes (Figure 12). Numerous troughs and canyons, many oriented across the shelf, punctuate the sea floor. Subsea embankments and ridges abound as a result of subsidence, uplift, and glacial moraines. These geological processes have also shaped the immensely complicated coastline that includes numerous silled and unsilled fjords, embayments, capes, and island groups.

The northwestern GOA includes several prominent geological features that influence the regional oceanography. Kayak Island, which extends about 50 km across the shelf east of the mouth of the Copper River, can deflect inner shelf waters offshore. Interaction of shelf currents with this island can also spawn eddies that transport nearshore waters, which have a high suspended sediment load, onto the outer shelf (Ahlnäes et al. 1987).

PWS, which lies west of Kayak Island, is a large complex, fjord-type estuarine system with characteristics of an inland sea (Muench and Heggie 1978). The sound communicates with the GOA shelf through Hinchinbrook Entrance in the eastern sound and Montague Strait and several smaller passes in the western sound. The shelf is relatively shallow (about 125 m deep) south of Hinchinbrook Entrance and along the eastern shore of Montague Strait. Hinchinbrook Canyon, however, has depths of about 200 m and extends southward from Hinchinbrook Entrance and opens onto the continental slope. This canyon is a potentially important conduit by which slope waters can communicate directly with sound. Central PWS is about 60 km by 90 km with depths typically in excess of 200 m and a maximal depth of about 750 m in the northern sound. The entrances to PWS are guarded by the shelf, sills, or both of about 180-m depth. Numerous islands are scattered throughout the sound and bays, fjords, and numerous glaciers are interspersed along its rugged coastline.

FIGURE 12

(Figure 1, from (Hampton et al. 1986) p. 97)

Several silled fjords indent the northern GOA coast, between PWS and Cook Inlet. Inner fjord depths can exceed 250 m, which are greater than the depths over the adjacent shelf. To the west of the Kenai Peninsula is Cook Inlet, which extends about 275 km from its mouth to Anchorage at its head. The inlet is about 90 km wide at its mouth, narrows to about 20 km at the Forelands some 200 km from the mouth, and then widens to about 30 km near Anchorage. Upper Cook Inlet branches into two narrow arms (Turnagain and Knik) that extend inland another 70 km. Depths range from 100 m to 150 m at the mouth of Cook Inlet to less than 40 m in the upper end, with the upper arms being so shallow that extensive mudflats are exposed during low tides. The bottom topography throughout the inlet reflects extensive faulting and glacial erosion (Hampton et al. 1986).

At its mouth, Cook Inlet communicates with the northern shelf through Kennedy Entrance, to the east, and with Shelikof Strait, to the west. The latter is a 200-km by 50-km rectangular channel between Kodiak Island and the Alaska Peninsula with numerous fjords indenting the coast along both sides of the strait. The main channel, with depths between 150 and 300 m, veers southeastward at the lower end of Kodiak Island and intersects the continental slope west of Chirikof Island. Southwest of Shelikof Strait bottom depths shoal to 100 to 150 m, and the shelf is complicated by the passes and channels associated with the Shumagin and Semidi islands.

5.4.2 Atmospheric Forcing of GOA Waters

The climate over the GOA is largely shaped by three semi-permanent atmospheric pressure patterns: the Aleutian Low, the Siberian High, and the East Pacific High (Wilson and Overland 1986). These systems represent statistical composites of many individual pressure cells moving across the northern North Pacific. The climatological position of these pressure systems varies seasonally, as shown in Figure 13. From October through April, the cold air masses of the Siberian High deepen over northeastern Siberia, and the East Pacific High is centered off the southwest coast of California. From May through September, the Siberian High weakens and the East Pacific High migrates northward to about 40° N and attains its greatest intensity (highest pressure) in June. The seasonal changes in intensity and position of these high-pressure systems influence the strength and propagation paths of low-pressure systems (cyclones) over the North Pacific. In winter, the Siberian High forces storms into the GOA, and lows are strong; in summer, these systems are weaker and propagate along a more northerly track across the Bering Sea and into the Arctic Ocean.

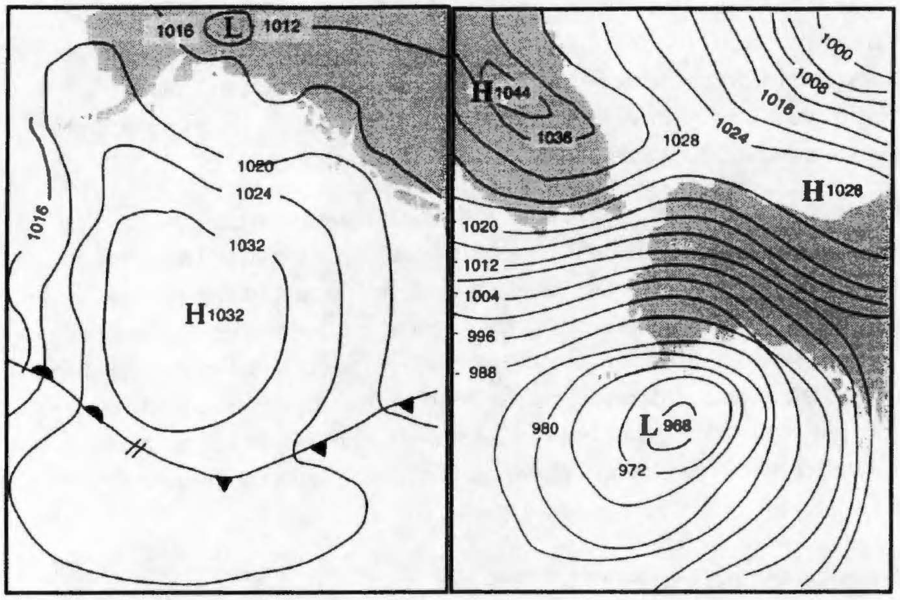


Figure 13. Typical summer (left) and winter (right) examples of the Aleutian Low and Siberian High pressure systems. Contours are sea-level pressure in millibars. (From Carter). need reference

The low-pressure storm systems that compose the Aleutian Low form in three ways. Many are generated in the western Pacific when cold, dry air flows off Asia and encounters northward-flowing, warm ocean waters along the Asian continent. Additional formation regions occur in the central Pacific along the Subarctic Front (near 35° N) where strong latitudinal gradients of ocean temperature interact with unstable, winter air masses (Roden 1970). Finally, the GOA can also be a region of active cyclogenesis (low-pressure formation), particularly in winter when frigid air spills southward over the frozen Bering Sea, the Alaska mainland, or both (Winston 1955). Such conditions can be hazardous to mariners because the accompanying high wind speeds and subfreezing air temperatures can lead to rapid vessel icing (Overland 1990).

Regardless of origin, these lows generally strengthen as they track eastward across the North Pacific. This intensification results from the flux of heat and moisture from the ocean to the atmosphere. The lows attain maximal strength (lowest pressure) in the western and central GOA. Once in the GOA, the coastal mountains inhibit inland propagation, so that the storms often stall and dissipate here. Indeed, Russian mariners refer to the northeastern GOA as the "graveyard of lows" (Plakhotnik 1964).

The mountains also force air masses upward, resulting in cooling, condensation, and enhanced precipitation. The precipitation feeds numerous mountain drainages that feed the GOA or, in winter, is stored in snowfields and glaciers where it can remain for periods ranging from months to years.

Seasonal variations in the intensity and paths of low-pressure systems influence meteorological conditions in the GOA.

Seasonal variations in the intensity and paths of these low-pressure systems markedly influence meteorological conditions in the GOA. Of particular importance to the marine ecosystem are the seasonal changes in radiation, wind velocity, precipitation, and coastal runoff.

The incoming short-wave radiation that warms the sea surface and provides the energy for marine photosynthesis is strongly affected by cloud cover. Throughout the year, cloud cover of more than 75% occurs over the northern GOA more than 60% of the time (Brower et al. 1988), and cloud cover of less than 25% occurs less than 15% of the time. Interannual variability in cloud cover, especially in summer, can affect sea-surface temperatures and possibly the mixed-layer structure (which also depends heavily on salinity distribution). The anomalously warm surface waters observed in the summer and fall of 1997 were probably due to unusually low cloud cover and mild winds (Hunt et al. 1999). The characteristic cloud cover is so heavy that it hinders the effective use of passive microwave sensors, such as Advanced Very High Resolution Radar (AVHRR) and Sea-viewing Wide Field of view Sensor (SeaWifs), in ecosystem monitoring.

The cyclonic (counterclockwise) winds associated with the low-pressure systems force an onshore surface transport (Ekman transport) over the shelf and downwelling along the coast. Figure 14 shows the mean monthly Upwelling Index on the northern GOA shelf. This index is negative (implying downwelling) in most months, indicating the prevalence of onshore Ekman transport and coastal convergence. Downwelling favorable winds are strongest from November through March, and feeble or even weakly anticyclonic (upwelling favorable) in summer when the Aleutian Low is displaced by the East Pacific High (Royer 1975, Wilson and Overland 1986). Over the central basin, these winds exert a cyclonic torque (or wind-stress curl) that forces the large-scale ocean circulation.

The high rates of precipitation are evident in long-term average measurements. Figure 6 is a composite of long-term average annual precipitation measurements from stations around the GOA. Precipitation rates of 2 to 4 meters per year ($m\text{-}yr^{-1}$) are typical throughout the region, but rates in southeast Alaska and PWS exceed 4 $m\text{-}yr^{-1}$. Except over the Alaska Peninsula in the western GOA, the coastal precipitation rates are much greater than the estimated net precipitation rate of 1 $m\text{-}yr^{-1}$ over the central basin (Baumgartner and Reichel 1975). The coastal estimates are undoubtedly biased because most of the measurements are made at sea level and therefore do not fully capture the influence of altitude on the precipitative flux.

Figure 14 also includes the mean monthly coastal discharge from Southeast and Southcentral Alaska as estimated by Royer (1982). On an annual average this freshwater influx is enormous and amounts to about 23,000 $m^3\ s^{-1}$, or about 20% greater than the mean annual Mississippi River discharge, and accounts for nearly 40% of the freshwater flux into the GOA. This runoff enters the shelf mainly through many small (and ungauged) drainage systems, rather than from a few major rivers. Consequently, the discharge can be thought of as a diffuse, coastal "line" source" around the GOA perimeter, rather than arising from a few, large "point" sources. The discharge is greatest in early fall and decreases rapidly through winter, when precipitation is stored as snow. There is a secondary runoff peak in spring and summer, because of snowmelt (Royer 1982). The phasing and magnitude of this freshwater flux is important, because salinity primarily affects water densities (and therefore ocean dynamics) in the northern GOA.

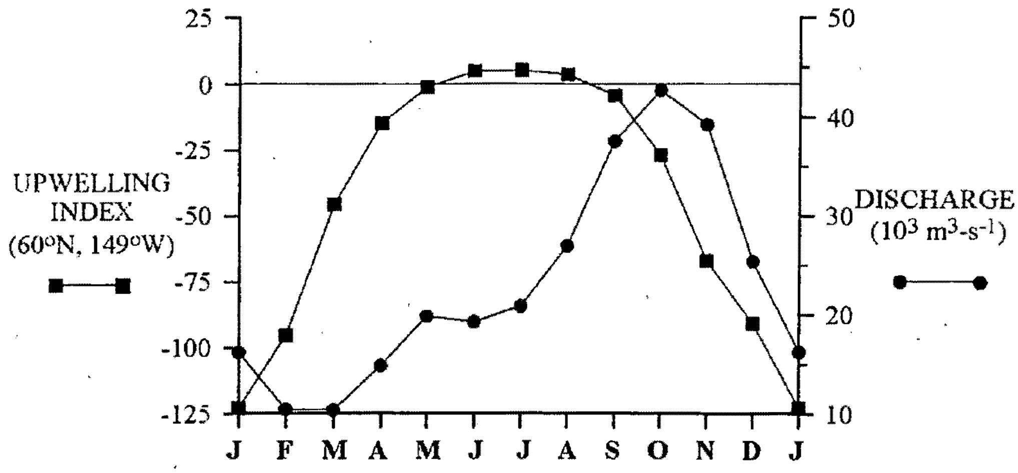


Figure 14. Mean monthly Upwelling Index, 1946 to 1999 (red); and mean monthly coastal discharge, 1930 to 1999 (blue) (Royer 1982, 2000) in the northern GOA. Negative values of the Index imply onshore Ekman transport and coastal downwelling. Discharge is shown in cubic meters per second, a measure of flow.

Figure 14 shows that the seasonal variation in wind stress and freshwater discharge is large, but also that these variables are not in-phase with one another; downwelling is maximal in winter and minimal in summer, whereas discharge is maximal in fall and minimal in late winter. Both winds and buoyant discharge affect the vertical density stratification and contribute to the formation of horizontal pressure (and density) gradients over the shelf and slope. The wind field over the shelf is spatially coherent (Livingstone and Royer 1980) because the scale of the storm systems that enter the GOA are comparable to the size of the basin. The alongshore coherence of the wind field and the distributed nature of the coastal discharge suggest that forcing by winds and buoyancy is approximately uniform along the length of the shelf. Both the winds and buoyant flux force the mean cyclonic alongshore flow over the GOA shelf and slope (Reed and Schumacher 1986, Royer 1998), as shown schematically in Figure 4. On the inner shelf, the flow consists of the ACC, and over the slope, it consists of the Alaska Current (eastern and northeastern GOA) and the Alaskan Stream (northwestern GOA). These current systems are extensive, swift, and continuous over a vast alongshore extent. Thus, the shelf and slope are strongly affected by advection (transport of momentum, energy, and dissolve and suspended materials by ocean currents), implying that climate perturbations, even those occurring far from the GEM study area, can be efficiently communicated into the northwestern GOA by the ocean circulation. The strong advection also implies that processes occurring far upstream might substantially influence biological production within the GEM area.

5.4.3 Physical Oceanography of the Gulf of Alaska Shelf and Shelf Slope

The GOA shelf can be divided on the basis of water-mass structure and circulation characteristics into three domains:

- The inner shelf (or ACC domain) consisting of the ACC;
- The outer shelf, including the shelf-break front; and
- The mid-shelf region between the inner and outer shelves.

Because the boundaries separating these regions are dynamic, their locations vary in space and time. Although dynamic connections among these domains undoubtedly exist, the nature of these links is poorly understood.

The ACC is the most prominent aspect of the shelf circulation. It is a persistent circulation feature that flows cyclonically (westward in the northern GOA) throughout the year. This current originates on the British Columbian shelf (although in some months or years, it might originate as far south as the Columbia River [Royer 1998, Thomson et al. 1989]), about 2,500 km from its entrance into the Bering Sea through Unimak Pass, in the western GOA (Schumacher et al. 1982).

The ACC is a swift (20 to 180 centimeters per second [cm s^{-1}] [0.4 to 3.6 knots]), coastally trapped flow typically found within 35 km of the shore (Royer 1981b, Johnson et al. 1988, Stabeno et al. 1995). Much or all of the ACC loops through southern PWS, entering through Hinchinbrook Entrance and exiting through Montague Strait (Niebauer et al. 1994). Therefore, the ACC potentially is important to the circulation dynamics of PWS; clearly, it is a critical advective and migratory path for material and organisms between the GOA and sound. West of PWS, the ACC branches northeast of Kodiak Island. The bulk of the current curves around the mouth of Cook Inlet and continues southward through Shelikof Strait (Muench et al. 1978); the remainder flows southward along the shelf east of Kodiak Island (Stabeno et al. 1995). Although there are no long-term (multiyear) estimates of transport in the ACC, direct measurements (Schumacher et al. 1990, Stabeno et al. 1995) along the Kenai Peninsula and upstream of Kodiak suggest an average transport of about 0.8 Sverdrup (Sv, a unit of flow equal to 1 million cubic meters per second [1 Sv equals 10^6 m^3 s^{-1}]), with a maximum in winter and a minimum in summer.

The large annual cycle in wind and freshwater discharge is reflected in the mean monthly temperatures and salinities at hydrographic station GAK 1, near Seward, on the inner shelf (Figure 15). Mean monthly sea-surface temperatures range from about 3.5° C in March to about 14° C in August. The amplitude of the annual temperature cycle, however, diminishes with depth, with the annual range being only about 1° C at depths greater than 150 m. Surface temperatures are colder than subsurface temperatures from November through May, and the water column has little thermal stratification from December through May.

Surface salinities range from a maximum of about 31 practical salinity units (psu) in late winter to a minimum of 25 psu in August. Vertical salinity (density) gradients are minimal in March and April and maximal in the summer months. Surface stratification commences in April or May (somewhat earlier in PWS), as cyclonic wind stress decreases and runoff increases, and is greatest in mid- to late summer. The inner shelf and PWS stratify first, because runoff initially is confined to nearshore regions and only gradually spreads offshore through ocean processes. Solar heating provides additional surface buoyancy by warming the upper layers uniformly across the shelf. However, the thermal stratification remains weak until late May or June. As winds intensify in fall, the stratification erodes, resulting from stronger vertical mixing and increased downwelling, which causes surface waters to sink along the coast.

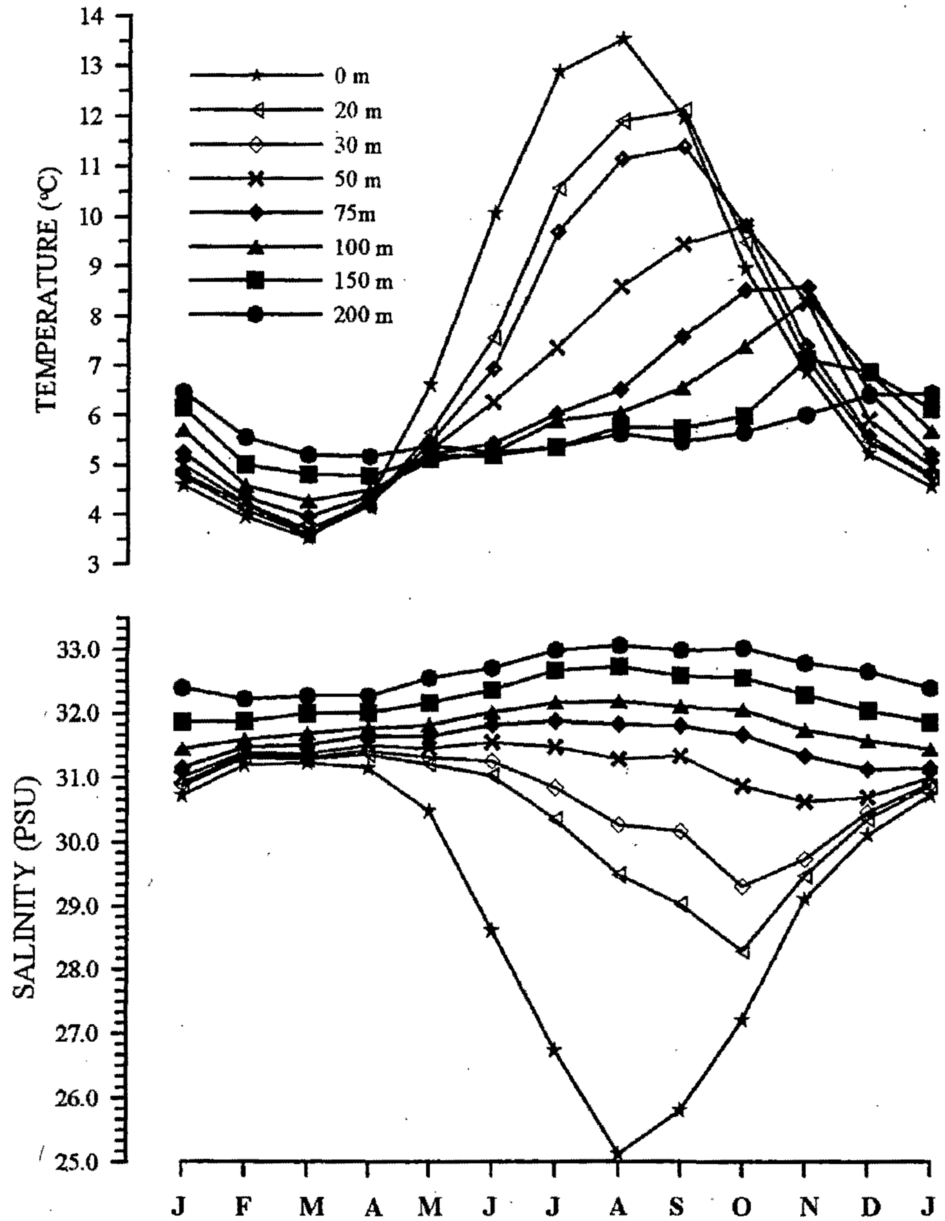


Figure 15. The mean annual cycle of temperature (upper) and salinity (lower) at various depths at station GAK 1 on the inner shelf of the northern GOA. The monthly estimates are based on data collected from 1970 through 1999. (The figure includes updated information [Xiong and Royer 1984].)

Within the ACC, the annual amplitude in salinity diminishes with depth and has a minimum of about 0.5 psu at about the 100-m depth. At greater depths, the annual amplitude increases but the annual salinity cycle is out of phase with near-surface salinity changes. For example, at and below the 1,50 m depth, the salinity is minimal in March and maximal in late summer-early fall. The phase difference between the near-surface and near-bottom layers reflects the combined influence of winds and coastal discharge. In summer, when downwelling relaxes, salty, nutrient-rich water from offshore invades the inner shelf (Royer 1975). The upper portion of the water column is freshest in summer, when the winds are weak (little mixing) and coastal discharge is increasing. Vertical mixing is strong through the winter and redistributes fresh water, salt, and possibly nutrients throughout the water column.

The effects of the seasonal cycle of wind- and buoyancy forcing are also reflected in both the hydrographic properties and the along-shore velocity structure of the shelf. The seasonal transitions in temperature and salinity properties are shown in Figure 16, which is constructed from cross-shore sections along the Seward Line in the northern GOA for April (representative of late winter), August (summer), and October (fall).

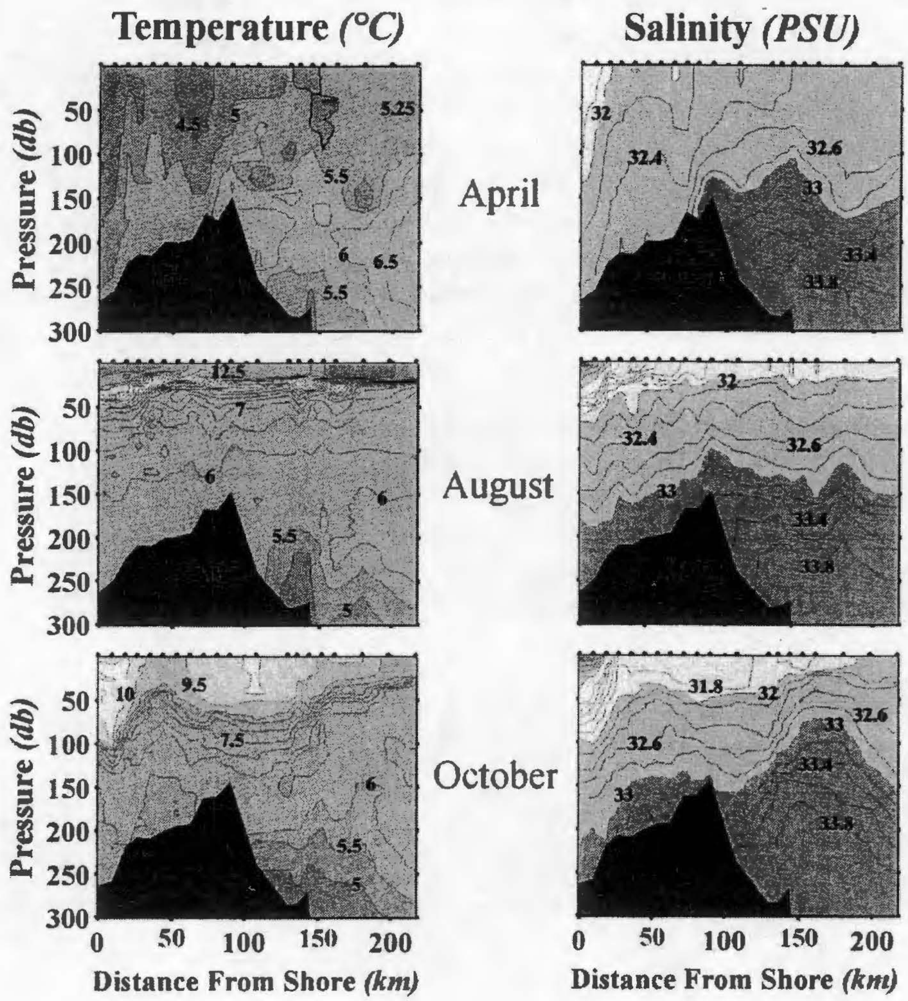


Figure 16. Seasonal cross-shore distributions of temperature (left) and salinity (right) along the Seward Line in the northern GOA. The graphs are based on data collected in 1999 as part of the GOA GLOBEC program (Weingartner 2001). The vertical axis is in pressure units (decibars [db]), with 1 db the equivalent of about 1 m.

The ACC domain, or inner shelf, is within 50 km of the coast. From February through April, the vertical and cross-shelf gradients of salinity and temperature are weak, and the ACC front lies within about 10 km of the coast and extends from the surface to the bottom. Vertical shears (gradients) of the along-shelf velocity are weak and the current dynamics are primarily wind-driven and barotropic (controlled by sea-surface slopes setup by the winds) at this time (Johnson et al. 1988, Stabeno et al. 1995). In summer (late May to early September), the vertical stratification is large, but cross-shelf salinity (and density) gradients are weak. The ACC front extends from 30 to 50 km offshore and usually no deeper than 40 m. The along-shelf flow is weak, although highly variable, in summer. Vertical stratification weakens in fall, but the cross-shelf salinity gradients and the ACC front are stronger than at other times of the year. As coastal downwelling increases, the front moves shoreward to within 30 km of the coast and steepens so that the base of the front intersects the bottom between the 50 and 100 m isobaths.

The dynamics of the ACC from summer through late fall are primarily baroclinic (controlled by cross-shore, subsurface density gradients). The ACC is often jet-like and is strongly sheared vertically in fall. The strong vertical shears in velocity could affect predator-prey interactions. Phytoplankton and many juvenile and forage fishes occur in the upper 25 m of the water column on the inner shelf in summer and fall (Boldt 2000) and (Haldorson 2001). Because the maximal sustained swimming speeds of small fish are typically less than the along-shelf current speeds, these organisms cannot swim against the current. The zooplankton (minute animal life) that feed upon the phytoplankton and on which the fish prey do migrate daily (diurnally) over the approximate 200-m depth of the inner shelf, however. Therefore, diurnally and vertically migrating zooplankton swarms are unlikely to encounter the same phytoplankton patches and fish schools during a day because of this highly sheared flow.

Theory (Garrett and Loder 1981, Yankovsky and Chapman 1997, Chapman and Lentz 1994, Chapman 2000) suggests that seasonal variations in the ACC frontal structure should strongly influence the vertical and horizontal transport and mixing of dissolved and suspended material, both across and along the inner shelf. Royer et al. (1979) showed that surface drifters released seaward of the ACC front first drifted onshore (in accordance with Ekman dynamics) and then drifted along-shore upon encountering the ACC front. Conversely, Johnson et al. (1988) showed that, inshore of the front, the surface layer spreads offshore, with this offshore flow increasing as discharge increases in fall. Taken together, these results suggest cross-frontal convergence arising from differing dynamics on either side of the ACC front. Buoyancy effects dominate at the surface inshore of the front (at least for part of the year); wind forcing dominates offshore of the front. Convergence across the front would tend to accumulate plankton along the frontal boundary, possibly attracting foraging fish, seabirds, and marine mammals (Haldorson 2001). The front might also be a region of significant vertical motions. Downwelling velocities of about 30 meters per day ($m\text{-}d^{-1}$) in the upper 30 m of the water column are possible in fall. (This estimate is based on the assumption that the cross-frontal convergence occurs over a frontal width of 15 km with an onshore Ekman flow of 3 cm-s^{-1} seaward of the front and an offshore flow of ~15 cm-s^{-1} [Johnson et al. 1988] inshore of the front.)

The mid-shelf domain covers the region between 50 and 125 km from the coast. Here cross-shelf temperature and salinity gradients are weak in all seasons. In general, the strongest horizontal density gradients occur within the bottom 50 m of the water column, probably associated with the inshore location of the shelf-break front (which does not always have a surface expression). The bottom of the shelf-break front is generally found farther inshore in summer than in fall or winter. Over the upper portion of the mid-shelf water column, the vertical stratification is largely controlled by salinity in most months, although vertical salinity gradients are weaker here in summer and fall than on the inner shelf. Consequently, in summer, thermal stratification plays an important role in stratifying the mid-shelf water column. Here, the along-shelf flow is weakly westward on average because of the feeble horizontal density gradients. Both the flow and horizontal density gradients are highly variable, however, because of energetic mesoscale (10- to 50-km) flow features. Potential sources for the mesoscale variability are as follows:

1. Separation of the ACC from capes (Ahlnäes et al. 1987);
2. Instabilities of the ACC (Mysak et al. 1981, Bograd et al. 1994);
3. Interactions of the shelf flow with topography (Lagerloef 1983); and
4. Meandering of the Alaska Current along the continental slope (Niebauer et al. 1981).

This mesoscale variability is very difficult to quantify, because it depends on spatial variations in the coastline and the bottom topography and on seasonal variations in the winds and shelf density structure. Nevertheless, these mesoscale features appear to be biologically significant. For example, Incze et al. (1989), Vastano et al. (1992), Schumacher and Kendall (1991), Schumacher et al. (1993), and Bograd et al. (1994) show the coincidence between larval pollock numbers and the presence of eddies in Shelikof Strait. Moreover, the nutritional condition of first-feeding larvae is significantly better inside than outside of eddies (Canino et al. 1991).

The inner and mid-shelf domains share two other noteworthy characteristics. First, during much of the year, the cross-shelf sea surface temperature contrasts are generally small (about 2°C). The small thermal gradients and heavy cloud cover reduce the utility of thermal infrared radiometry in assessing circulation features and frontal boundaries in the northern GOA.

Second, the bottom-water properties of the shelf change markedly throughout the year. The above figures show that the high-salinity bottom waters carried inshore are drawn from over the continental slope in summer. This inflow occurs annually and probably exerts an important dynamical influence on the shelf circulation by modifying the bottom boundary layer (Gawarkiewicz and Chapman 1992, Chapman 2000, Pickart 2000). It might also serve as an important seasonal onshore pathway for oceanic zooplankton. These animals migrate diurnally over the full depth of the water column; during the long summer day length, the zooplankton will spend more time at the bottom than at the surface. The bottom flow that transports the high-salinity water shoreward might then result in a net shoreward flux of zooplankton in summer. The summertime inflow of saline water onto the inner shelf is one means by which the slope and basin interior communicates directly with the nearshore, because (as discussed below) this water is drawn from within the permanent halocline (depth horizon over which salinity changes rapidly) of the GOA. The deep summer inflow is a potentially important conduit for nutrients from offshore to onshore. Inflow, however, is not the only means by which nutrient-rich offshore water can supply the shelf. Other mechanisms include flow-up canyons intersecting the shelf break (Klinck 1996, Allen 1996, Allen 2000, Hickey 1997), topographically-induced upwelling (Freeland and Denman 1982), and shelf-break eddies and flow meanders (Bower 1991).

The third domain, consisting of the shelf break and continental slope is influenced by the Alaska Current, which flows along the northeastern and northern GOA, and its transformation west of 150° W, into the southwestward-flowing Alaskan Stream. These currents comprise the poleward limb of the North Pacific Subarctic Gyre and provide the oceanic connection between the GOA shelf and the Pacific Ocean. The Alaska Current is a broad (300 km), sluggish (5 to 15 cm s^{-1}) flow with weak horizontal and vertical velocity shears. The Alaskan Stream is a narrow (100 km), swift (100 cm s^{-1}) flow with large velocity shear over the upper 500 m (Reed and Schumacher 1986). The stream continues westward along the southern flank of the Alaska Peninsula and Aleutian Islands and gradually weakens west of 180° W (Thomson 1972). The convergence of the Alaska Current into the Alaskan Stream probably entails concomitant changes in the velocity and thermohaline gradients along the shelf break. Insofar as these gradients influence fluxes between the shelf and slope (Gawarkiewicz 1991), the transformation of the Alaska Current into the Alaskan Stream implies that shelf-break exchange mechanisms are not uniform around the GOA. Moreover, the effects of these exchanges on the shelf will also be influenced by the shelf width, which varies from 50 km or less in the eastern and northeastern GOA to about 200 km in the northern and northwestern GOA.

The Alaskan Stream has a mean annual volume transport (flow of water) of between 15 and 20 Sv (Reed and Schumacher 1986, Musgrave et al. 1992), and although seasonal transport variations appear small, interannual transport variations may be as great as 30% (Royer 1981a). Thomson et al. (1990) found that the Alaska Current is swifter and narrower in winter than in summer. Surface salinities within the Alaska Current vary by only about 0.5 psu throughout the year, whereas the seasonal change in sea surface temperature (SST) is comparable to that of the shelf (about 10° C). Nevertheless, horizontal and vertical density gradients are controlled by the salinity distribution. Maximal stratification occurs between depths of 100 and 300 m and is associated with the permanent halocline of the GOA. Halocline salinities range between 33 and 34 psu, and temperatures are between 5° C and 6° C (Tully and Barber 1960, Dodimead et al. 1963, Reid Jr. 1965, Favorite et al. 1976, Musgrave et al. 1992). These water-mass characteristics are identical to the properties of the deep water that floods the shelf bottom each summer (Figure 16.)

Although eddy energies of the Alaskan Stream appear small (Royer 1981a, Reed and Schumacher 1986), significant alteration of the slope and shelf-break circulation is likely during occasional passage of large (200-km-diameter) eddies that populate the interior basin (Crawford et al. 1999). Musgrave et al. (1992) show considerable alteration in the structure of the shelf-break front off Kodiak Island during the passage of one such eddy. These eddies are long-lived (2 to 3 years) and energetic, having typical swirl speeds of 20 to 50 cm s^{-1} (Tabata 1982, Musgrave et al. 1992, Okkonen 1992, Crawford et al. 1999). They form in the eastern GOA, primarily in years of anomalously strong cyclonic wind forcing along the eastern boundary (Willmott and Mysak 1980, Melsom. A. et al. 1999, Meyers and Basu 1999) and then propagate westward at about 2 to 3 cm s^{-1}. Most of the eddies remain over the deep basin and far from the continental slope; however, some propagate along the slope, requiring several months to transit from Yakutat to Kodiak Island (Crawford et al. 1999, Okkonen 2001).

Eddies that impinge upon the continental slope could significantly influence the shelf circulation and exchanges between the shelf and slope of salt, heat, nutrients, and plankton. Their influence on shelf-slope exchange in the northern GOA has not been ascertained, but because they propagate slowly, are long-lived, and form episodically, they could be a source of interannual variability for this shelf. These eddies have many features in common with the Gulf Stream rings that significantly modify shelf properties along the East Coast of the United States (Houghton et al. 1986, Ramp 1986, Joyce et al. 1992, Wang 1992, Schlitz submitted). In the eastern GOA, Whitney et al. (1998) showed that these eddies cause a net offshelf nutrient flux. In the northern GOA, they might have the opposite effect, because nutrient concentrations are generally higher over the slope than on the shelf (Whitledge 2000, Childers 2000).

5.4.4 Biophysical Implications

The magnitude of the spring phytoplankton bloom depends on surface nutrient concentrations and water-column stability. The annual resupply of nutrients to the euphotic zone is not understood for the inner shelf, however. Cross-shelf, surface Ekman transport in winter cannot account for the high nutrient concentrations observed on the inner shelf in spring (Childers 2000) and (Whitledge 2000). Turbulent mixing during late fall and winter could mix the nutrient-rich deep water (brought onto the shelf in summer) up into the surface layer in time for the spring bloom. If so, vernal nutrient levels might result from a two-stage preconditioning process occurring during the several months preceding the spring bloom. The first stage occurs in summer and is related to the onshelf movement of saline, nutrient-rich, bottom water as described above. The quantity of nutrients carried onshore then depends upon the summer wind field and the properties of the slope source water that contributes to this inflow. The second step occurs in fall and winter and depends on turbulence. Current instabilities, downwelling-induced convection, and diffusion accomplish the vertical mixing. The extent of this mixing depends upon the seasonally varying stratification and the vertical and horizontal velocity structure of the ACC. Each of these mechanisms probably varies from year to year, suggesting that spring nutrient concentrations will also vary.

Another potentially important nutrient source for the inner shelf in spring is PWS. Winter mixing in the sound could bring nutrient-rich water to the surface, where it is exported to the shelf by that portion of the ACC that loops through PWS.

The timing of the spring bloom depends on development of stratification within the euphotic zone. The euphotic zone extends from the surface to a depth where sufficient light still exists to support photosynthesis. Stratification within the euphotic zone is influenced by freshwater discharge and solar heating. Preliminary GLOBEC data (Whitledge 2000) (Stockwell 2000) suggest that the spring bloom begins in protected regions of PWS in late March as day length increases and stratification builds as a result of snowmelt, rainfall, and the sheltering effect of the PWS from winds. The bloom on the shelf lags that of PWS by from 2 to 6 weeks and may not proceed simultaneously across the shelf. This delay results from the time required to stratify the shelf. Because density is strongly affected by salinity and, therefore, by the spreading of fresh water on the shelf, stratification does not evolve by vertical (one-dimensional) processes phase-locked to the annual solar cycle. Rather, stratification depends primarily on the rate at which fresh water spreads offshore, which is a consequence of three-dimensional circulation and mixing processes intimately associated with ocean dynamics.

Several implications follow from this hypothesis. First, spring bloom dynamics on the shelf are not as tightly coupled to the solar cycle as on mid-latitude shelves where temperature controls density. Second, mixed-layer development depends on processes operating spanning a range of time scales and involves a plethora of variables that affect vertical mixing and the offshore flux of fresh water from the nearshore. These variables include the fractions of winter precipitation delivered to the coast as snow and rain, the timing and rate of spring snowmelt (a function of air temperature and cloudiness), and the wind velocity. The relevant time scales range from a few days (storm events) to seasonal or longer. The long time scales follow from the fact that the shelf circulation, particularly the ACC, can advect the freshwater that contributes to stratification from very distant regions. Third, interannual variability in the onset and strength of stratification on the GOA continental shelf is probably greater than for mid-latitude shelves. This expectation follows from the fact that several potentially interacting parameters affect stratification, and each or all can vary considerably from year to year. Therefore, application of Gargett's (1997) hypothesis of the optimal stability window to the GOA shelf involves more degrees of freedom than its use on either mid-latitude shelves or the central GOA (where temperature exerts primary control on stratification in the euphotic zone).

All of these considerations suggest that stratification probably does not develop uniformly in space or time on the GOA shelf. The implications are potentially enormous with respect to feeding opportunities for zooplankton in spring. These animals must encounter abundant prey shortly after migrating to the surface from their overwintering depths. Emergence from diapause (a period of reduced metabolism and inactivity) is tightly coupled to the solar cycle, rather than the onset of stratification. Conceivably then, zooplankton recruitment success might depend on shelf physical processes occurring over a period of several months prior to the onset of the bloom. In particular, the magnitude and phasing of the spring bloom might be preconditioned by shelf processes that occurred throughout the preceding summer and winter. Perturbations in the magnitude and phasing of the spring bloom might propagate through the food chain and affect summer and fall feeding success of juvenile fishes (Denman et al. 1989).

5.4.5 Tides

The tides in the GOA are of the mixed type with the principal lunar semi-diurnal (M_2) tide being dominant and the luni-solar diurnal (K_1) tide being, in general, of secondary importance. [redacted] Tidal characteristics (amplitudes and velocities) are strongly influenced by the complex shelf and slope bathymetry and coastal geometry, however. Consequently, spatial variations in the tidal characteristics of these two species are large. For example, Anchorage has the largest tidal amplitudes in the northern GOA, with the M_2 tide being about 3.6 m and the K_1 tide being about 0.7 m. In contrast, the amplitudes of both of these constituents in Kodiak and Seward are less than half those of Anchorage. Foreman et al. (Foreman et al. 2000) found that the cross-shelf flux of tidal energy onto the northwest GOA shelf is enormous and is accompanied by high (bottom) frictional dissipation rates. Their model estimates indicate that the tidal dissipation rate in Kennedy Entrance accounts for nearly 50% of the total dissipation of the M_2 constituent in the GOA. Further, about one-third of the energy of the K_1 tide in the GOA is dissipated in Cook Inlet. Some of the energy lost from tides is available for mixing, which would reduce vertical stratification and enhance the transfer of nutrients into the euphotic zone.

The interaction of the tidal wave with varying bottom topography can also generate shelf waves at the diurnal frequency and generate residual flows. The waves are a prominent feature of the low-frequency circulation along the British

Columbian shelf (Crawford 1984, Crawford and Thomson 1984, Flather 1988, Foreman and Thomson 1997, Cummins and Oey 2000) and could affect pycnocline displacements. (The pycnocline is a vertical layer across which water density changes are large and stable.) The model of Foreman et al. (Foreman et al. 2000) predicts diurnal-period shelf waves in the northwest GOA and especially along the Kodiak shelf break. Although no observations are available to confirm the presence of such waves along the Kodiak shelf, their presence could influence biological production here as well as the dispersal of planktonic organisms. Residual flows resulting from non-linear tidal dynamics could (locally) influence the transport of suspended and dissolved materials on the shelf.

Seasonal changes in water-column stratification can also affect the vertical distribution of tidal energy over the shelf through the generation of internal (baroclinic) waves of tidal period. Such motions are likely to occur in summer and fall in the northwestern GOA where the flux of barotropic tidal energy (which is nearly uniformly distributed over the water column) across the shelf break (Foreman et al. 2000) interacts with the highly stratified water column on the shelf. The internal waves generated can have small spatial scales (10s of km) in contrast to the large scale (1,000s of km) of the generating barotropic tidal waves. Moreover, the phases and amplitudes of the baroclinic tides will vary with seasonal changes in stratification. Although no systematic investigation of internal tides on the GOA shelf has been conducted, Danielson (2000) found that the tidal velocities in the ACC near Seward in winter are about 5 cm s^{-1} and are barotropic. However, in late summer, tidal velocities in the upper 50 m are about 20 cm s^{-1} whereas below 100-m depth they are about 5 cm s^{-1}. Internal tides will also displace the pycnocline sufficiently to have biological consequences, including the pumping of nutrients into the surface layer, the dispersal of plankton and small fishes, and the formation of transitory and small-scale zones of horizontal divergence and convergence that affect feeding behaviors (Mann and Lazier 1996). Stratified tidal flows might also be significant for some silled fjords. The interaction of the tide with the sill can enhance mixing and exchange (Farmer and Smith 1980, Freeland and Farmer 1980) and can resupply the inner fjord with nutrient-rich, high-salinity water and plankton through Bernoulli suction effects (Thompson and Golding 1981, Thomson and Wolanski 1984).

5.4.6 Gulf of Alaska Basin

The circulation in the central GOA consists of the cyclonically (counterclockwise) flowing Alaska Gyre, which is part of the more extensive subarctic gyre of the North Pacific Ocean. The center of the gyre is at about 53° N, and 145° to 150° W. The gyre includes the Alaska Current and Stream and the eastward-flowing North Pacific Current along the southern boundary of the GOA. The latter is a trans-Pacific flow that originates at the confluence of the northward-flowing Kuroshio Current and the southward-flowing Oyashio Current in the western Pacific. Some water from the Alaska Stream apparently recirculates into the North Pacific Current, but the strength and location of this recirculation is poorly understood and appears to be extremely variable (Favorite et al. 1976). The North Pacific Current bifurcates off of the western coast of North America, with the northward flow feeding the Alaska Gyre and the southward branch entering the California Current. The bifurcation zone is located roughly along the zero line in the climatological mean for the wind stress curl. The gyral flow reflects the large-scale cyclonic wind-stress distribution over the GOA. Mean speeds of drifters deployed in the upper 150 m of this gyre (far from the continental slope) are 2 to 10 cm s^{-1}, but the variability is large (Thomson et al. 1990). These cyclonic winds also force a long-term average upwelling rate of about 10 to 30 m yr^{-1} in the gyre center (Xie and Hsieh 1995).

The vertical thermohaline structure of the Alaska Gyre is described by Tully and Barber (1960) and Dodimead et al. (1963) and consists of the following components:

1. A seasonally varying upper layer that extends from the surface to about the 100-m depth;
2. A halocline that extends from 100 m to about the 200-m depth over which salinity increases from 33 to 34 psu and temperatures decrease from 6 to 4° C; and
3. A deep layer, extending from the bottom of the halocline to about the 1,000-m depth, over which salinity increases more slowly to about 34.4 psu and temperatures decrease from 4° to 3° C.

Below the deep layer salinity increases more slowly to its maximal value of about 34.7 psu at the bottom.

The seasonal variations of the upper layer reflect the effects of wind-mixing and heat exchange with the atmosphere–essentially one-dimensional mixing processes. The ocean loses heat to the atmosphere from October through March and gains heat from April through September. The upper layer is isohaline and isothermal in winter down to the top of the halocline. At this time, upper-layer salinities range from 32.5 to 32.8 psu, and temperatures range from 4° to 6° C. The upper layer is fresher and colder in the northern GOA and saltier and warmer in the southern GOA. The upper layer gradually freshens and warms in spring, as wind speeds decrease and solar heating increases. A summer mixed layer forms that includes a weak secondary halocline and a strong seasonal thermocline, with both centered at about the 30-m depth. The seasonal pycnocline erodes and upper layer properties revert to winter conditions as cooling and wind-mixing increase in fall.

The halocline is a permanent feature of the Subarctic North Pacific Ocean and represents the deepest limit over which winter mixing occurs within the upper layer. The halocline results from the high (compared with other ocean basins) rates of precipitation and runoff in conjunction with large-scale, three-dimensional circulation and interior mixing processes occurring over the North Pacific (Reid Jr. 1965, Warren 1983, Van Scoy et al. 1991, Musgrave et al. 1992). The strong density gradient of the halocline effectively limits vertical exchange between saline and nutrient-rich deep water and the upper layer. The deep waters of the GOA consist of the North Pacific Intermediate Water (formed in the northwestern Pacific Ocean) and, at greater depths, contributions from the North Atlantic. Mean flows in the deep interior are feeble (1 cm s^{-1}), and the flow dynamics are governed by both the climatological wind stress distribution (Koblinsky et al. 1989) and the global thermohaline circulation (Warren and Owens 1985) modified by the bottom topography. The thermohaline circulation carries nutrient-rich waters into the North Pacific and forces a weak and deep upwelling throughout the region (Stommel and Arons 1960a, 1960b, Reid 1981).

5.4.7 General Research Questions

What physical-chemical processes control primary and secondary production, and in particular, what processes control the timing, duration, and magnitude of the spring bloom on the inner continental shelf, including the inlets, sounds, and fjords?

Does stratification of the water column in the euphotic zone of the ACC depend primarily on the rate at which fresh water spreads offshore as a consequence of three-dimensional circulation and mixing processes associated with ocean dynamics? (Section 5.4.4)

Do physical oceanographic shelf processes in the ACC in the months leading up to the spring bloom precondition the magnitude and sequence of biological events during the spring bloom? (Section 5.4.4)

Does zooplankton recruitment in the ACC depend on shelf physical processes during a "preconditioning period" leading up to the onset of the spring bloom? (Section 5.4.4)

What are the sources of the nutrients in the euphotic zone on the inner shelf in the spring? (Section 5.4.4)

How are exchanges of carbon and nutrients, detritus and plankton, at the shelf break influenced by the interactions of physical processes with the Alaska Stream and the Alaska Current with the complex bathymetry of the northern and western GOA?

What is the effect of eddy structure on nutrient flux across the continental shelf slope? (Section 5.4.4)

How and where does the interaction of the tidal wave with varying bottom topography generate residual flows that transport nutrients and carbon across water mass boundaries on the inner shelf?

Do diurnal-period shelf waves along the Kodiak shelf influence biological production and the dispersal of planktonic organisms? (Section 5.4.5)

5.5 Chemical Oceanography: Marine Nutrients and Fertility

The overall fertility of the GOA depends primarily on nutrient resupply from deep-water sources to the surface layer were plants grow. Rates of carbon fixation by phytoplankton in the euphotic zone are limited seasonally and annually by changing light levels and the kinds and supply rates of several dissolved inorganic chemical species. Three elements–nitrogen, phosphorus, and silicon–are essential to the photosynthetic process (Parsons et al. 1984). Other dissolved inorganic constituents such as iron are also believed to control rates of photosynthesis at some locations and times (Freeland et al. 1997, Martin and Gordon 1988, Pahlow and Riebsell 2000).

Organic matter synthesized by plants in the lighted surface layer is consumed there or sinks down into the deeper water column where some may eventually reach the seabed. The unconsumed portion is oxidized to inorganic dissolved forms by bacteria at all depths. In the euphotic zone, inorganic nutrients excreted by zooplankton and by micronekton and macronekton (fish), liberated by bacterial oxidation (a process referred to as remineralization), or both excreted and liberated are immediately recycled by phytoplankton. (Nekton is swimming marine life.) In contrast, living cells, organic detritus (remains of dead organisms), and fecal pellets that escape the euphotic zone by sinking are remineralized below the lighted upper layer, and the resulting inorganic forms are lost to surface plant stocks. The result of these combined processes leads to vertical distributions of dissolved inorganic nitrogen, phosphorus, and silicon in which the surface concentrations are much lower than those found deeper in the water column. Such is the case for the GOA (Reeburgh and Kipphut 1986). Geostrophic (shaped by the earth's rotation) and wind-forced upwelling and deep seasonal overturn provide local mechanisms that bring nutrient enriched deep water back into the surface layer each year (Schumacher and Royer 1993). Additionally, at depths shallower than about 100 m, tidal mixing resulting from friction across the bottom can interact with the wind-mixed surface layer to provide an intermittent avenue for surface nutrient replenishment during all seasons.

Concentrations of the dissolved inorganic forms of nitrogen (nitrate, nitrite, and ammonia), phosphorus (phosphate), and silicon (silicate) occur at some of the highest levels measured anywhere in the deep waters of the GOA (Mantyla and Reid 1983). A permanent pycnocline, resulting from the relatively low salinity of the upper 120 to 150 m, limits access to this valuable pool, however; deep winter mixing rarely reaches below about 110 m in waters over the deep ocean (Dodimead et al. 1963, Favorite et al. 1976). Although upwelling occurs in the center of the Alaska Gyre, it is believed to be only on the order of a meter (or considerably less) per day (Sugimoto 1993, Xie and Hsieh 1995), a relatively modest rate compared to some regions of high productivity like the Peru or Oregon coastal upwellings. Away from the Alaska Gyre upwelling along the northern continental margin of the GOA, the prevailing winds drive a predominately downwelling environment over the shelf for 7 to 8 months each year. Although this condition usually moderates during the summer, there is little evidence that wind-forced coastal upwelling is ever well developed. Instead, during the period of relaxed downwelling or sporadic and weak upwelling, a rebound of isopycnal (density boundaries; waters having the same densities) surfaces along the shelf edge permits the run-up of dense slope water onto and across the shelf. This subsurface water, containing elevated concentrations of dissolved nutrients, flows into the deeper coastal basins and fjords (Muench and Heggie 1978, Heggie and Burrell 1981). Presumably the timing and duration of this coastal bottom renewal is related to the nature of the Pacific High pressure dominance in the GOA each summer.

The coastal and inshore waters in the northern GOA are also influenced by runoff from a large number of streams, rivers, and glaciers in the rugged coastal margin. In these areas that are largely untouched by agriculture, this input probably contributes little to the coastal nutrient cycle, except possibly as a source for silicon and iron (Burrell 1986). Therefore, the major pool of plant nutrients for water column production in ocean, shelf, and coastal regions is derived from marine sources and resides in the deep waters below the surface production zone.

The major pool of plant nutrients for water column production in ocean, shelf, and coastal regions is in deep waters.

Because light limits carbon fixation during the winter months, there is a strong seasonal signal in nutrient concentrations of the euphotic zone in upper-layer shelf, coastal, and inside waters. During the winter, dissolved inorganic plant nutrients build their concentrations in the deepening wind-mixed layer as deeper, nutrient rich water becomes involved in the seasonal overturn at a time when uptake by phytoplankton is minimal. Under seasonal light limitation, surface nutrient concentrations probably peak in early March, just before the onset of the annual plankton production cycle. By mid- to late-May and early June, euphotic zone nutrients are drawn down dramatically to seasonal lows as the stratification that initiates the spring "bloom" of plant plankton severely restricts the vertical flux of new nutrients (Goering et al. 1973). Nitrate can become undetectable or nearly so during the summer months in many shelf and coastal areas, and ammonia (excreted by grazers) becomes important in sustaining the much-reduced primary productivity. Later in fall, with the onset of the Aleutian Low pressure system and the storms that it produces, a cooling and deepening wind-mixed layer can reinject sufficient new nutrients into a shrinking euphotic zone to initiate a fall plant bloom in some years (Eslinger et al. 2001).

The strong seasonal signal of nutrients and plant stocks evident on the continental shelf is diminished in surface waters seaward of the shelf break in the GOA. The region beyond the continental shelf break is described as "high nutrient, low chlorophyll ". It was believed historically that grazing by a collective of large calanoid copepods (species of zooplankton endemic to the subarctic Pacific) consumed enough plant biomass each year to control the overall productivity below levels needed to completely exhaust the surface nitrogen (Heinrich 1962, Parsons and Lalli 1988).

More recently, iron limitation has been posed as a mechanism controlling primary production in the GOA and in several other offshore regions of the world's oceans (Martin and Gordon 1988). Contemporary research in the GOA has revealed that control of the amount of food produced by phytoplankton through grazing of zooplankters is probably important, although the species of zooplankton involved are not the large calanoid copepods (Dagg and Walser 1987, Frost 1991, Dagg 1993). Production of phytoplankton is thought to be controlled by an assemblage of microzooplankters, microconsumers, represented by abundant ciliate protozoans and small flagellates, rather than by large calanoid copepods (Booth et al. 1993). Because the growth rates of these grazers are higher than those of the plants, it is hypothesized that these microconsumers are capable of efficiently tracking and limiting the overall oceanic productivity by eating the primary producers, the phytoplankton (Banse 1982). The control mechanism is made possible because the plant communities are dominated by very small cells, 10 micrometers or less, that can serve as food for the microconsumers.

A counter-hypothesis asserts that the small size of the plants is actually in response to low levels of iron. It is known that faced with nutrient limitation, phytoplankton communities generally shift to small-sized species whose surface-area-to-volume ratios are high. Resolution of these related ideas is sought in continuing studies of the oceanic production cycle.

Surprising recent observations demonstrate a trend in increasing temperatures in the upper layers that may be causing a shift in the seasonal nutrient balance offshore (Freeland et al. 1997, Polovina et al. 1995). For the first time, there are reports that nitrogen has been drawn down to undetectable levels along line P in the southern GOA out to a distance of 600 km from the coast (Welch 2001). Line P is a an oceanographic transect run by the Canadian government that is the oldest source of data from the southern GOA. In addition, the evidence provided by Welch indicates that the winter mixed layer is shoaling under long-term warming conditions.

An essential issue for the GEM program will be to understand how, at a variety of spatial and temporal scales, the supply rates of inorganic nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, and other essential nutrients for plant growth in the euphotic zone are mediated by climate-driven physical mechanisms in the GOA. Inorganic nutrient supplies might be influenced by climate changes in the following ways:

- Upwelling in the Alaska Gyre;
- Deep winter mixing;
- Shelf and coastal upwelling and downwelling;
- Vertical transport in frontal zones and eddies; and
- Deep and shallow cross-shelf transports.

In addition to these mechanisms, the ACC may play a role that has yet to be determined in the supply rates of dissolved inorganic nutrients to nearshore habitats (Schumacher and Royer 1993). Finally, the import of marine-derived nitrogen associated with the spawning migrations of salmon and other anadromous fishes has been described as a novel means by which the oceanic GOA enriches the terrestrial margin each year. This allochthonous input (food from an outside source) to the drainages bordering the GOA is clearly important in many freshwater nursery areas hosting the early life stages of Pacific salmon (Finney 1998) and must vary with interannual and longer-term changes in salmon abundance.

5.5.1 General Research Questions

How are the supplies of inorganic nitrogen, phosphorous, silicon, and other nutrients essential for plant growth in the euphotic zone influenced by climate-driven physical mechanisms in the GOA?

What is the role of the Pacific High pressure system in determining the timing and duration of the movement of dense slope water onto and across the shelf to renew nutrients in the coastal bottom waters? (Section 5.5)

Is freshwater runoff a source of iron and silicon that is important to marine productivity in the ACC and other marine waters? (Section 5.5)

Does iron limitation control the species and size distribution of the plankton communities in the offshore areas?

Does zooplankton, especially microzooplankton, control the amount of food produced by phytoplankton in the offshore?

5.6 Biological Oceanography: Plankton and Productivity

5.6.1 Plankton Investigations in the Gulf of Alaska

Much of what is presently understood about the plankton communities and their productivity in the GOA has arisen from several programs examining the open ocean and shelf environments. These programs have included the following:

- U.S.-Canada NORPAC surveys (LeBrasseur 1965);
- Subarctic Pacific Ecosystem Research (SUPER) project of the National Science Foundation (NSF) (Miller 1993);
- The multi-decadal plankton observations from Canadian Ocean Station P (OSP) and Line P (McAllister 1969, Fulton 1983, Frost 1983, Parsons and Lalli 1988);
- Annual summer Japanese vessel surveys by Hokkaido University (Kawamura 1988);

- The Outer Continental Shelf Energy Assessment Program (OCSEAP) by Minerals Management Service (MMS) and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) (Hood and Zimmerman 1986); and
- The Shelikof Strait Fisheries Oceanography Cooperative Investigation (FOCI) study by NOAA and NMFS (Kendall et al. 1996).

It is not understood how the quite different ecosystems of lower trophic levels in the northeastern subarctic Pacific Ocean are phased through time and interact at their boundaries over the shelf.

Additional and more recent programs include the North Pacific GLOBEC of the NSF and those supported by the EVOS Trustee Council. The above-mentioned programs and a few other studies provide a reasonably coherent first-order picture of the structure and function of lower trophic levels in the northeastern subarctic Pacific Ocean. A serious gap in the detailed understanding of relationships between the observed inshore and offshore production cycles remains, however–namely how these quite different ecosystems are phased through time and interact at their boundaries over the shelf. As a result, information is lacking about how the effects of future climate change may manifest in food webs supporting higher level consumers.

5.6.2 Seasonal and Annual Plankton Dynamics

The composition, distribution, abundance, and productivity of plant and animal plankton communities in the GOA have been reviewed by Sambrotto and Lorenzen (1986); Cooney (1986); Miller (1993); and Mackas and Frost (1993). In general, dramatic differences are observed between pelagic communities over the deep ocean, and those found in shelf, coastal, and protected inside waters (sounds, fjords, and estuaries). Specifically, the euphotic zone seaward of the shelf edge is dominated year round by very small phytoplankters–tiny diatoms, naked flagellates, and cyanobacteria (Booth 1988). Most are smaller than 10 microns in size, and their combined standing stocks (measured as chlorophyll concentration) occur at very low and seasonally stable levels. It was originally hypothesized that a small group of large oceanic copepods (*Neocalanus* spp. and *Eucalanus bungii*) limited plant numbers and open ocean production by efficiently controlling the plant stocks through grazing (Heinrich 1962). More recent evidence, however, indicates the predominant grazers on the oceanic flora are not the large calanoids (Dagg 1993), but instead abundant populations of ciliate protozoans and heterotrophic microflagellates (Miller et al. 1991a, 1991b, Frost 1993). It has been further suggested that in these high nutrient, low chlorophyll oceanic waters, very low levels of dissolved inorganic iron (coming mainly from atmospheric sources) are ultimately responsible for structuring the composition of the primary producers and consumers (Martin and Gordon 1988, Martin 1991). Close reproductive and trophic coupling between the nanophytoplankton and microconsumers appears to restrict levels of primary productivity below that needed to exhaust all of the seasonally available nitrogen each year (Banse 1982). Moreover, the excreta of the microconsumers is diffuse, with low sinking rates, and is easily oxidized by bacteria. Ammonia (derived from grazer-released urea) is a preferred plant nutrient, and the first oxidation product recycled in this way. Wheeler and Kokkinakis (1990) demonstrated that as long as ammonia is available for the plants, nitrate uptake in the euphotic zone is much reduced. Together, these findings are painting a considerably revised picture of lower trophic level relationships and nutrient balances at the base of the offshore pelagic ecosystem in the GOA.

In contrast, shelf, coastal, and inside waters host a more traditional plankton community in which large and small diatoms and dinoflagellates support a copepod-dominated grazing assemblage (Sambrotto and Lorenzen 1986, Cooney 1986). Here, the annual production cycle is characterized by well-defined spring (and sometimes fall) blooms of large diatom species (most larger than 50 microns) whose productivities are limited annually by the rapid utilization of dissolved inorganic nitrogen, phosphorus, and silicon in the euphotic zone (Eslinger et al. 2001, Ward 1997). These blooms typically begin in late March and early April in response to a seasonal stabilization of the winter-conditioned deep mixed layer. High rates of photosynthesis typically last only 4 to 6 weeks (Goering et al. 1973). Strong periods of wind, tidal mixing, or both during the bloom can prolong these events by interrupting the conditions of light and stability needed to support plant growth. When the phytoplankton bloom is prolonged in this way, its intensity is lessened, but considerably more organic matter is apparently directed into pelagic food webs, rather than sinking to feed seabed consumers (Eslinger et al. 2001). Accelerated seasonal warming and freshening of the upper layers in May and June provide increasing stratification that eventually restricts the vertical flux of new nutrients and limits summer primary productivity to very low levels. In some years, a fall bloom of diatoms occurs in September and October in response to a deepening wind-mixed layer and enhanced nutrient levels. The ecological significance of the fall portion of the pelagic production cycle remains largely undescribed.

In both the ocean and shelf domains, strong seasonal signals occur in standing stocks and estimates of daily and annual rates of production for the phytoplankton and zooplankton. Some of the earliest measurements of photosynthesis at OSP placed the annual primary production in the southern part of the Alaska Gyre at about 50 grams of carbon per square meter per year (g C m^{-2} y^{-1}) (McAllister 1969), or somewhat lower than the overall world ocean average of 70 g C m^{-2} y^{-1}. More recent studies using other techniques, however, have suggested higher annual rates, somewhere between 100 to 170 g C m^{-2} y^{-1} (Welschmeyer et al. 1993). Unlike the production cycle over the shelf, the oceanic primary productivity does not produce an identifiable spring/summer plant bloom. Instead, the oceanic phytoplankton stock remains at low levels (about 0.3 milligrams [mg] of chlorophyll a m^{-3}) year-round for reasons discussed above. In stark contrast, oceanic stocks of zooplankton (upper 150 m) do exhibit marked seasonality. Late winter values of 5 to 20 mg m^{-3} (wet weight) rise to 100 to 500 mg m^{-3} in mid-summer, when upper-layer populations of large calanoids dominate the standing stock. Assuming the zooplankton production is roughly 15% of the oceanic primary productivity (Parsons 1986), annual estimates of zooplankton carbon production estimated from primary productivity range between 8 and 26 g C m^{-2}. Given that the carbon content of an average zooplankter is approximately 45% of the dry weight, and that dry weight is about 15 % of the wet weight (Omori 1969), the carbon production can be converted to estimates of biomass. Results from this calculation suggest that between 119 and 385 g of biomass m^{-2} may be produced each year in the upper layers of the oceanic regime from sources thought to be largely zooplankton.

The shelf, coastal, and inside waters present a mosaic of many different pelagic habitats. The open shelf (depths less than 200 m) is narrow in the east between Yakutat and Kayak Island (20 to 25 km in some places), but broadens in the north and west beyond the Copper River (about 100 to 200 km). The shelf is punctuated by submarine canyons and deep straits, but also rises to extensive shallow shoals at some locations. The rugged northern coastal margin is characterized by numerous islands, coastal and protected fjords, and estuaries. Only PWS is deeper than 400 m.

Although the measurements are sparse, the open shelf and coastal areas of the northern GOA are believed to be quite productive, particularly the region between PWS and Shelikof Strait (Sambrotto and Lorenzen 1986). Coastal transport and turbulence along the Kenai Peninsula, in lower Cook Inlet, and around Kodiak and Afognak islands appears to enhance nutrient supplies during the spring and summer. Annual rates of primary production approaching 200 to 300 g C m^{-2} y^{-1} have been described. In other coastal fjords, sounds, and bays, the estimates of annual primary production range from 140 to more than 200 g C m^{-2} y^{-1} (Goering et al. 1973, Sambrotto and Lorenzen 1986). Assuming again that the annual zooplankton production is roughly 15% of the primary productivity, yearly zooplankton growth in shelf and coastal areas probably ranges between about 21 and 45 g C m^{-2} y^{-1}, or 311 to 667 g m^{-2} y^{-1} wet weight. In PWS, the wet-weight biomass of zooplankton caught in nets (net-zooplankton) in the upper 50 m varies from a low in February of about 10 mg m^{-3} to a high of more than 600 mg m^{-3} in June and July (Cooney et al. 2001a). For selected other coastal areas outside PWS, the seasonal range of zooplankton biomass includes winter lows of about 40 mg m^{-3} to spring/summer highs approaching 5,000 mg m^{-3} (in outer Kachemak Bay, for which a conversion of settled volumes may have been contaminated by large phytoplankton in the samples; see (Cooney 1986)

In addition to strong seasonality in standing stocks and rates of production, plankton communities also exhibit predictable seasonal species succession each year in the oceanic and shelf environments. Over the shelf, the large diatom-dominated spring bloom gives way to dinoflagellates and other smaller forms as nutrient supplies diminish in late May and early June. Ward (1997) described the phytoplankton species succession in PWS. She found that early season dominance in the phytoplankton bloom was shared by the large chain-forming diatoms *Skeletonema*, *Thalassiosira*, and *Chaetoceros*. Later in June , under post-bloom nutrient restriction, diatoms were dominated by smaller *Rhizosolenia* and tiny flagellates. This seasonal shift in dominance from larger to smaller plant species in response to declining nutrient concentrations and supply rates is commonly observed in other high-latitude systems and is believed to be responsible for driving the succession in the grazing community. Because of the iron limitation in the oceanic regime, the primary producer community is more stable there, with tiny diatoms, microflagellates, and cyanobacteria dominating year-round.

The zooplankton succession is somewhat more complex and involves interchanges between the ocean and shelf ecosystems. In the late winter and spring, the early copepodite stages of *Neocalanus* spp. begin arriving in the upper layers from deepwater spawning populations (Miller 1988, Miller and Nielsen 1988, Miller and Clemons 1988). This arrival occurs in some coastal areas (at depths of more than 400m) in late February and early March, but is delayed about 30 days in the open ocean. Both *Neocalanus* spp. and *Eucalanus bungii* are interzonal seasonal migrators, living a portion of their life cycle in the upper layers as developing copepodites, and later resting in diapause in the deep water preparing for reproduction at depth. While maturing in the oceanic surface water, *Neocalanus plumchrus* and *N. flemingeri* inhabit the wind-mixed layer above the seasonal thermocline (upper 25 to 30 m), while *N. cristatus* (the largest of the subarctic copepods) and *Eucalanus bungii* are found below the seasonal stratification (Mackas et al. 1993). This unusual partitioning of the surface ocean environment by these species has not yet been verified for shelf and coastal waters, although it has been suggested that the partitioning may occur in the deep-water fjords and sounds (Cooney unpublished).

Along with the early copepodites of the interzonal migrators, the late winter and spring shelf zooplankton community also hosts small numbers of *Pseudocalanus* spp., *Metridia pacifica*, *M. okhotensis*, and adult *Calanus marshallae*. Because these copepods must first feed before reproducing, their seasonal numbers and biomass are set by the timing, intensity and duration of the diatom bloom. By May and early June, the abundances of small copepods like *Pseudocalanus* and *Acartia* are increasing, but the community biomass is often dominated by relatively small numbers of very large developmental stages (C4 and C5) of *Neocalanus* (Cooney et al. 2001a). After *Neocalanus* leaves the surface waters in late May and early June for diapause deep below the surface (at locations where depths permit), *Pseudocalanus*, *Acartia*, and *Centropages* (small copepods); the pteropod *Limicina pacifica*; and larvaceans (*Okiopleura* and *Fritillaria*) occur in increasing abundance. Later, from summer to fall and extending into early winter, carnivorous jellyplankters represented by ctenophores, small hydromedusae, and chaetognaths (*Sagitta elegans*) become common. These shifting seasonal dominants are joined by several different euphausiids (*Euphausia* and *Thysanoessa*) and amphipods (*Cyphocaris* and *Parathemisto*) throughout the year. Despite the fact that the subarctic net-zooplankton community consists of a large number of different types of animal (taxa), most of the biomass and much of the abundance in the upper 100 m is accounted for by fewer than two dozen species (Cooney 1986).

5.6.3 Interannual and Decadal-Scale Variation in Plankton Stocks

Few measurements and estimates are available for year-to-year and decadal-scale variability in primary and secondary productivity in all marine environments in the northern GOA (Sambrotto and Lorenzen 1986). Fortunately, some information is available about variable levels of zooplankton stocks. Frost (1993) described interannual changes in net-zooplankton sampled from 1956 to 1980 at Canadian OSP. Year-to-year variations in stocks of about a factor of five were characteristic of that data set, and a slight positive correlation with salinity was observed. Cooney et al. (2001b) examined an 18-year time series of zooplankton settled volumes from eastern PWS collected near salmon hatcheries by the personnel of the Prince William Sound Aquaculture Corporation, Cordova. Once again, annual springtime differences of about a factor of five were apparent in that data. In addition, from 1981 to 1991, settled zooplankton volumes in PWS were also strongly and positively correlated with the strength of the Bakun upwelling index calculated for a location near Hinchinbrook Entrance. This correlation completely disappeared after 1991, however (Eslinger et al. 2001). Also of some interest, the years of highest settled volumes in eastern PWS (1985 and 1989) were only moderate years for zooplankton reported by Incze et al. (1997) for Shelikof Strait, suggesting the Kodiak shelf and PWS regions were phased differently for at least those years. Sugimoto and Tadokoro (1997) report a regime shift in the subarctic Pacific and Bering Sea in the early 1990s that generally resulted in lower zooplankton stocks in both regions. Perhaps in response to this phenomenon, springtime settled zooplankton volumes in PWS also declined by about 50% after 1991 (Cooney et al. 2001b).

Few measurements are available for variability of marine environment productivity in the northern GOA.

The most provocative picture of decadal-scale change in zooplankton abundance in the GOA is provided by Brodeur and Ware (1992). With the use of spatially distributed oceanic data sets reporting zooplankton biomass from 1956 to 1962, and again from 1980 to 1989, these authors were apparently able to capture large-scale properties of the pelagic production cycle during both positive and negative aspects of the PDO (Mantua et al. 1997). A doubling of net-zooplankton biomass was observed under conditions of increased winter winds responding to an intensified Aleutian Low pressure system (the decade of the 1980s). This sustained doubling of biomass was also reflected at higher trophic levels in the offshore food web (Brodeur and Ware 1995). It is generally believed the observed production stimulation during the decade of the 1980s was created by increased nutrient levels associated with greater upwelling in the Alaska Gyre. The observed horizontal pattern of upper layer zooplankton stocks (Figure 17) was an impressive areal expansion (positive PDO) or contraction (negative PDO). Under periods of intensified winter winds, some of the highest oceanic zooplankton concentrations were developed in a band along the shelf edge in the northern regions in the GOA. Unfortunately, data from the shelf itself during this same time period are not

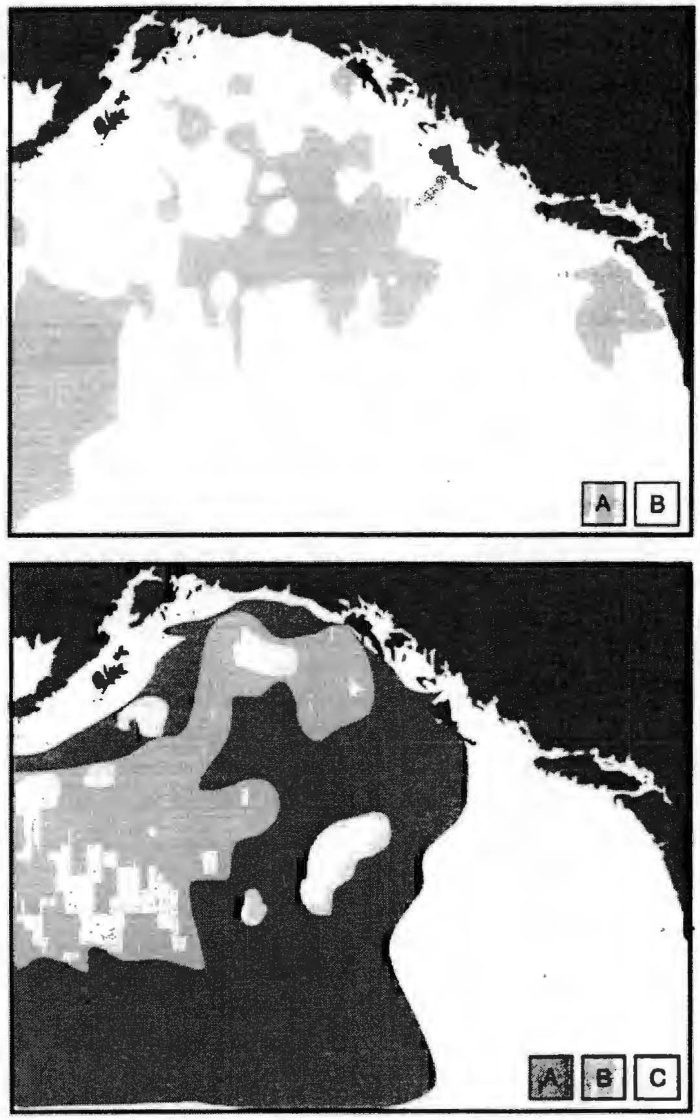


Figure 17. Biomass of plankton for the spring and summer period contrasted for a negative PDO period (top) and a positive PDO period (bottom). The shaded boxes present zooplankton biomass as follows: A represents 100 to 200 g/1,000 m^3; B represents 201 to 300 g/m^3, and C represents more than 300 g/m^3.

sufficient to ascertain how this elevated biomass may have intruded the continental margin or reached the coastal areas.

5.6.4 Factors Effecting Trophic Exchanges Between the Plankton and Larger Consumers

Most would concede that the general theory of trophodynamics articulated by Lindeman (1942) nearly 50 years ago to represent ways in which matter and energy are transferred through aquatic communities (by different levels of producers and consumers) is an overly simplistic picture of complex interactions and non-linear relationships. Useful in the lecture hall as a teaching tool, and successfully applied to certain problems where first-order estimates of production at hypothetical levels are sought based on estimates of plankton productivity, these formulations usually lack any dynamic connection with the physical environment or nutrient levels. They also generally fail to delineate seasonality or other important temporal variability. Nonetheless, because of the ease of their application and the acceptance of certain simplifying assumptions (generalized ecological transfer efficiencies and lumping taxa within trophic levels), the linear food-web or carbon budget approach continues to be used for selected purposes.

Bottom-up trophic models of food-web structure supporting the production of fishes, birds, and mammals in open ocean, slope, estuarine, and fjord environments in the GOA were formulated by Parsons (1986) in a synthesis of information compiled primarily as the result of the MMS-funded OCS studies. More recently Okey and Pauly (1998) developed a mass balance formulation with the Ecopath model of trophic mass balance for a PWS food web as the result of the EVOS Restoration Program. These models are certainly instructive at some level of generality, but their usefulness for describing specific climate-related mechanisms that might modify food-web transfers is probably limited by their detachment from the physical environment and their reliance on annually or seasonally averaged stock sizes and productivities.

Instead, it may be more instructive to examine how evolved behavioral traits and other aspects of the life histories of the dominant plankters (and other forage taxa) lend themselves to food-web transfers that could be affected by climate change. To do this, it will be important to study how the biology at lower trophic levels interacts (on a variety of time and space scales) with the physical environment to create enhanced (or diminished) trophic opportunities in the consumer matrix of different habitats and seasonal characterizations that pervade the marine ecosystem in the northern GOA. The compressed nature of the annual plankton production cycle in oceanic, shelf, and coastal waters seemingly places a premium on "timing" as a strategy to maximize the chances for successfully linking consumers to each year's burst of organic matter synthesis. Paul and Smith (1993) found that yellowfin sole replenished their seasonally depleted energy reserves each year in a short period of about 1 month following the peak in primary productivity. This rapid replenishment of energy reserves is presumably possible because of the structural properties of forage populations that occur abundantly during the short and intense production cycle. Patch-dependent feeding is a term used to describe how many consumers respond to the grainy time and space distributions of food in their feeding environments (Valiela 1995). In the case of plankters, which by definition move with the water, temporal and spatial patchiness can be created or dissipated through interactions with (1) physical processes such as vertical and horizontal transport and diffusion, and (2) biological attributes such as rapid growth and swarming or layering in association with feeding, reproductive behaviors, or both.

For example, the more than 2 month maturation process for the large oceanic copepods (*Neocalanus* spp.) growing in the near-surface of the open ocean, shelf, and some coastal environments concludes with a short period (15 to 30 days) in which the biomass peaks each year, is concentrated in the largest (C4 and C5) copepodites, and is compressed into relatively thin layers and swarms contiguous for tens, possibly hundreds of km (Mackas et al. 1993, Cooney 1989, Coyle 1997, Kirsch et al. 2000). In its most concentrated form, this seasonally ephemeral biomass is an important source of food for diving sea birds (Coyle 1997), whales, and planktivorous fishes such as adult Alaska pollock and Pacific herring (Willette et al. 1999). Acoustic observations suggest the degree of plankton swarming or layering depends, in part, on the strength of water column mixing and stability . Numerical models of the production cycle in PWS demonstrated that interannual variations in the timing of the annual peak in zooplankton probably reflects differences in the timing of the earlier phytoplankton bloom each year. Eslinger et al. (2001) reported that the spring diatom bloom varied by as much as 3 weeks from year to year in PWS, but that the annual peak in zooplankton always lagged the plants by about 25 to 30 days. Year-to-year shifts of a week or more in the peak of zooplankton biomass may profoundly influence the effectiveness of food-web transfers to fishes, birds, and other consumers with severe consequences. Pacific herring have apparently evolved a reproductive strategy to place age-0 juveniles in the water column precisely at the time of the mid-summer peak in plankton forage. Failure to successfully provision themselves by missing the most optimal summer feeding conditions may contribute to high rates of winter starvation for age-0 herring in PWS (Cooney et al. 2001b).

In another example, Cooney (1983) reported a possible interaction between the movements occurring over the life cycle of large oceanic calanoid zooplankton, ontogentic migrations and an enrichment of feeding habitats for fishes, birds, and mammals over the shelf forced by localized convergences in the late winter and spring months. As previously mentioned, *Neocalanus* spp. arrive in the surface waters of the deep ocean in March and April each year. Early copepodite stages are presumably carried across the shelf in the wind-forced Ekman flow (upper 60 to 90 m) where they eventually encounter zones of surface convergence (Cooney 1986). *Neocalanus* spp. in the shelf environment depends on the spring diatom bloom for growth and maturation. Because the developing copepodites have an affinity for the upper layers where the phytoplankton production occurs (Mackas et al. 1993), they may be able to counteract regions of downwelling and convergence by continuing to migrate upward in these zones (a few tens of m per day at most). Where they successfully detach themselves from the downwelling water, populations advected shoreward into convergences (possibly in the frontal region of the ACC) will accumulate. These zones of high copepod (and perhaps other taxa) biomass should represent regions of potentially high trophic efficiency for planktivores built and maintained for a few weeks by wind-forced horizontal and vertical transport.

In a related exercise, Cooney (1988) calculated that nearly 10 million metric tons of zooplankton could be introduced to the shelf annually over 1,000 km of coastline in the northern GOA by the wind-forced shoreward Ekman transport each year. If only a portion of this biomass is retained in shelf and coastal food webs, the "lateral input" of ocean-derived zooplankton (much of it represented by the large interzonal calanoids) may partially explain how the seasonally persistent downwelling shelf sustains the observed high annual production at higher trophic levels. Kline (1999a), in studies of carbon and nitrogen isotopes of zooplankton sampled in PWS, found that 50% or more of the diapausing *Neocalanus cristatus* overwintering in the deep water originated from populations outside PWS each year. Similar isotopic signals in herring and other coastal fishes seem to confirm a partial role for the bordering ocean in "feeding" at least some coastal habitats.

Coyle (1997) described the dynamics of *Neocalanus cristatus* in frontal areas along the northern and southern approaches to the Aleutian Islands. In regions near water column instabilities that fostered nutrient exchange for nearby stratified phytoplankton populations, these large oceanic copepods occurred along pycnoclines in subsurface swarms and layers that were in turn attractive feeding sites for diving least auklets. These trophic associations (observed acoustically) formed and dissipated in response to weather and tidal modified forcing of the waters over the shelf north and south of the Aleutian Islands.

Kirsch et al. (2000) described dense layers (10 to 20 m in vertical extent) of C4 and C5 *Neocalanus plumchrus*, *N. flemingeri*, and *Calanus marshalle* in the upper 50 m of PWS that serve as seasonally important feeding zones for adult Alaska pollock and Pacific herring. Swarming behavior in the upper layers by these copepods, responding to the distribution of their food in the euphotic zone, compresses *Neocalanus* into layers stretching for tens of km that are readily located and utilized by planktivores. Other observations at the time found the layers of copepods were absent or only weakly developed in areas with high mixing energy like outer Montague Strait.

Diel migrations of many taxa bring deep populations into the surface waters each night. The large bodied copepod *Metridia* spp. and many Pacific euphausiids (*Euphausia* and *Thysanoessa*) represent zooplankters that undergo substantial daily migrations from deep to shallow waters at night. A variety of reasons have been proposed for this behavior (Longhurst 1976). Regardless of the "why," vertically migrating populations that build local concentrations near the sea surface during darkness represent another way that behavioral traits are responsible for creating patchiness that may enhance trophic exchange. Cooney (1989) and Stockmar (1994) studied diel and spatial changes in the biomass of net-zooplankton and micronekton in the upper 10 m of the open ocean and shelf habitats in the northern GOA. They found a consistent enrichment of biomass in the surface waters at night caused by *Metridia pacifica* and several different euphausiids that often exceeded daylight levels by a factor of five or six.

Springer, et al. (1996) make a strong case for the enhancement of primary and secondary productivity along the shelf edge of the southeastern Bering Sea. Citing tidal mixing, transverse circulation, and eddies as mechanisms to increase nutrient supplies, this so-called "greenbelt" is described as 60% more productive than the outer-shelf environment and 270% more productive than the bordering deep ocean. Earlier, Cooney and Coyle (1982) documented the presence of a high-density band of upper-layer zooplankton along the shelf edge of the eastern Bering Sea. Comprised primarily of *Metridia* spp., *Neocalanus* spp., and *Eucalanus bungi*, this narrow zone of elevated biomass is apparently also a part of the greenbelt. Although these features have yet to be described for the northern GOA, the present North Pacific GLOBEC study (Weingartner 2000) is monitoring primary productivity and zooplankton stocks along cross-shelf transects that should intercept a shelf-edge greenbelt if one is present in the northern GOA.

Finally, meso and large-scale eddy formation over the shelf and slope regimes may also influence the patchiness of plankton in ways that could be susceptible to changing climate forcing. A permanent feature (eddy) in the coastal water west of Kayak Island is often visible because of entrained sediment from the Copper River. Formed by a branch of the ACC, this eddy may help concentrate plankton populations of the upper layer in ways that could later influence PWS (Reed and Schumacher 1986). Vaughan et al. (2001) and Wang (2001) describe surface eddies in the central region of PWS with implications for the transport and retention of icthyoplankton. These eddies (cyclonic and anticyclonic) are believed to form in response to seasonal changes in freshwater outflow and wind forcing. Large-scale coastal and shelf eddies apparently form near Sitka and propagate north and west around the periphery of the GOA (Musgrave et al. 1992). Similar features on the east coast of the United States have been shown to be long-lived (many months) and capable of sustaining unique biological assemblages as they move through time and space. These same characteristics are also expected for the northern GOA.

5.6.5 Climate Forcing of Plankton Production in the Gulf of Alaska

A major challenge for the GEM program will be to eventually produce a detailed understanding of lower trophic level processes that arise through biological interactions with the spatially distributed geological and physical properties of the northern GOA. This evolving understanding must take into account the flow-through nature of the northern and eastern regions–downstream from southern Southeast Alaska and Northern Canada (through the ACC) and also downstream from portions of the southern oceanic Subarctic and Transition Zone domains (through the North Pacific and Alaska currents). The "open" condition places increasing importance on understanding levels of plankton imports (from the south) and exports (to the west) in the periphery of the GOA affected by the ACC (Napp et al. 1996) and shelf-break flows (Alaska Current and Alaska Stream). It will also be necessary to understand the effects that the open ocean gyre may exert on shelf and coastal plankton stocks and their seasonal and annual production within the northern GOA. Here too the import (or export) of nutrients, organic detritus, and living plankton stocks to (or from) the shelf must be evaluated under different conditions of climate and weather.

The picture that emerges from the aggregate of previous and ongoing plankton studies portrays a large oceanic ecosystem forced strongly by physical processes that are meteorologically driven. Physical processes such as deep and shallow currents, large-scale and localized upwelling and downwelling, seasonally phased precipitation, and runoff may bring about changes in the ecosystem. The reproduction, growth and death processes of the plants and animals of the oceanic ecosystem appear to be responding primarily to marked seasonality and interannual and longer-period shifts in the intensity and location of the winter Aleutian Low pressure system. Increased upwelling in the offshore Alaska Gyre may promote higher rates of nutrient renewal in the oceanic surface waters with attendant increases in primary and secondary productivity. Elevated wind-forcing probably accelerates the transport of upper-layer oceanic zooplankton shoreward to the shelf edge and beyond. The frequency and degree to which this ocean-derived biomass "feeds" the food webs of the continental shelf and coastal areas will depend, in part, on biological interactions with a large array of physical processes and phenomena. Processes and phenomena active in regions of horizontal and vertical currents associated with oceanographic fronts, eddies, coastal jets, shelf-break flows, and turbulence are expected to have a strong influence on the movement of ocean biomass onto the shelf and coastal areas. The actual effect of such processes and phenomena on distribution of oceanic biomass also depends on responses of plankton production to changes in levels of freshwater runoff in these regions, and on the seasonal and longer cycles in temperature and salinity. Specific mechanisms by which surface zone nutrient levels are cycled and maintained in the variety of different habitats that compose the open shelf and rugged coastal margins must be understood in much greater detail to be useful to the overall GEM mission.

It seems likely that the sophisticated understanding sought by the GEM program of climate influences on the coupled nutrient and plankton production regimes that support selected consumer stocks may have to come from studies that abandon the practice of lumping taxa within broad ecologically functional units, and instead focus on "key species." Fortunately, the subarctic pelagic ecosystem (oceanic, shelf, and coastal) is dominated by a relatively small number of plankton species that serve as major conduits for matter and energy exchange to higher-level consumers each year. In the case of the zooplankton, fewer than 50 species within a handful of major taxa comprise 95% or more of the abundance and biomass throughout the year. Because of this pattern of dominance, and further because of the different life history strategies employed by these species, a more comprehensive understanding of their ecological roles is both necessary and feasible. A decision to conduct dominant species ecology must be understood at all levels of the study so that, for instance, technicians conducting future stomach analyses of fishes, birds, or mammals will report not just "large copepods and amphipods," but rather *Neocalanus cristatus* and *Parathemisto libellula*. This nuance holds particular importance for future modelers working on numerical formulations that include "plankton." Without this degree of specificity, it is unlikely that further (field and numerical) studies will forge the understanding of lower trophic level function sought by the GEM program in the northern GOA.

5.6.6 General Research Questions

What are the relationships between the inshore (watersheds, intertidal-subtidal, and ACC) and offshore production cycles; how are the inshore and offshore phased through time; and how do they interact at their boundaries over the shelf?

- How are the relationships between offshore and inshore production manifested in food webs supporting birds, fish and mammals?
- How are the effects of future climate change manifested in inshore and offshore food webs supporting birds, fish and mammals?

What are the changes in abundance of the individual species of large copepods, amphipods and euphausiids that make up the bulk of the secondary production in the inshore and offshore GOA?

(this page intentionally left blank. It resulted from splitting the Word files for chapter 5 into two portions and the need to end the first half on an even page!)

5.7 Nearshore Benthic Communities

Because the GOA covers a vast and diverse area, its benthic communities exhibit tremendous variation (Feder and Jewett 1986). As in any marine benthic system, however, the composition, functioning, and dynamics of the GOA benthic communities change predictably with certain universally important variables. The most important two environmental variables are water depth and substratum type (Rafaelli and Hawkins 1996). The following depth zones are typically distinguished:

- The intertidal zone;
- The shallow subtidal zone (bounded by depth of light penetration sufficient for photosythesis of benthic algae);
- The continental shelf (to about 200 m); and
- The continental slope (from 200 to 4,000 m).

The most fundamental substratum distinctions are hard bottom (rocks, boulders, cobbles) and soft bottom (mobile sedimentary habitats like sands and muds). Within these two types, geomorphology varies substantially, with biological implications that often induce further habitat partitioning (Page et al. 1995, Sundberg et al. 1996).

Understanding of community composition and seasonal dynamics of GOA benthos has grown dramatically over the past 30 years, with two distinct pulses of research. First, in contemplation of exploration and development of the oil and gas resources of the region, the MMS, NOAA NMFS, and Alyeska Consortium funded geographically focused benthic survey and monitoring work in the 1970s. This work provided the first windows into the quantitative benthic ecology of the region. Focus was most intense on lower Cook Inlet, the Aleutian Islands, the Alaska Peninsula, Kodiak Island, and northeast GOA, including the Valdez Arm in PWS (Rosenberg 1972, Hood and Zimmerman 1986). The second phase of growth in knowledge of the benthos of the GOA region was triggered by the EVOS in 1989. This work had broad geographic coverage of the rocky intertidal zone. The area receiving the most intense study was PWS, where the spill originated. Geographic coverage also included two other regions, the Kenai Peninsula-lower Cook Inlet and the Kodiak archipelago-Alaska Peninsula (Page et al. 1995, Gilfillan et al. 1995a, Gilfillan et al. 1996b, Highsmith et al. 1994b, Highsmith et al. 1996, Houghton et al. 1996a, Houghton et al. 1996b, Sundberg et al. 1996). Some of this benthic study following the oil spill was conducted in other habitats (soft substrata [Driskell et al. 1996]) and at other depths (shallow and deep subtidal habitats (Houghton et al. 1993, Armstrong et al. 1995, Dean et al. 1996a, Dean et al. 1996b, Dean et al. 1998, Dean et al. 2000, Feder and Blanchard 1998, Jewett et al. 1999). Herring Bay on Knight Island in PWS was a site of especially intense monitoring and experimentation on rocky intertidal communities following the oil spill (van Tamelen et al. 1997).

5.7.1 Intertidal Communities

The intertidal habitat is the portion of the shoreline in between the high and low (0.0-m datum) tide marks. This intertidal zone occupies the unique triple interface among the land, sea, and air. The land provides substrate for occupation by intertidal organisms, the seawater the vehicle to supply necessary nutrients, and the air a medium for passage of solar energy, yet a source of physical stresses (Connell 1972, Underwood and Denley 1984, Peterson 1991). Interfaces between separate systems are locations of typically high biological activity. As a triple interface, the intertidal zone is exceptionally rich and biologically productive (Ricketts and Calvin 1968, Leigh et al. 1987). Wind and tidal energy combine to subsidize the intertidal zone with planktonic foods produced in the photic (sun-lit) zone of the coastal ocean. Runoff from the adjacent land mass injects new supplies of inorganic nutrients to help fuel coastal production of benthic algae, although such runoff in Alaska is typically nutrient-poor and can be very turbid (Hood and Zimmerman 1986). The consequent abundance and diversity of life and life forms in the intertidal zone serves many important consumers, coming from land, sea, and air, and including humans. The aesthetic, economic, cultural, and recreational values of the intertidal zone and its resources augment its significance, especially in the GOA region (Peterson 2001).

The biota of intertidal habitats varies with changes in physical substrate type, wave energy regime, and atmospheric climate (Lubchenco and Gaines 1981). Substrata in the GOA intertidal zone differ as a function of size, ranging from immobile rock walls and platforms, to boulders and cobbles, to gravel, to sands, and finally to muds at the finest end of this particle-size spectrum. Rock surfaces in the intertidal zone are populated by epibiota, which are most commonly attached macro- and microalgae; sessile, or immobile, suspension-feeding invertebrates; and mobile grazing invertebrates, as well as predatory seastars and gastropods (Connell 1972, Rafaelli and Hawkins 1996). Unconsolidated (soft) substrata–the sands and muds–are occupied by large plants in low-energy environments, such as marshes, and microalgae and infaunal (buried) invertebrates in all energy regimes (Peterson 1991). Mobile scavenging and predatory invertebrates occur on both types of substratum. Intertidal communities vary with wave energy because of biomechanical constraints (especially on potentially significant predators), changing levels of food subsidy, and interdependencies between wave energy and substratum type (Leigh et al. 1987, Denny 1988). Intertidal communities tend to be most luxurious in temperate climates; ice scour and turbid fresh water limit intertidal biota at high latitudes such as those in the eastern GOA. The rocky intertidal communities of the Pacific Northwest, including the rocky shores of islands in the GOA region, are highly diverse, although less so than those in Washington. These communities are also productive, although limited by disturbance of winter storms and reduced solar insulation (Bakus 1978).

The rocky intertidal ecosystem may represent the best understood natural community of plants and animals on earth. Ecologists realized more than 40 years ago that this system was uniquely well suited to experimentation because the habitat was accessible and basically two-dimensional and the organisms were manipulable and observable. Consequently, ecological science has used sophisticated experimental manipulations to produce a detailed understanding of the complex processes involved in determining patterns of distribution and abundance of rocky intertidal organisms (Paine et al. 1996, Dayton 1971, Connell 1972, Underwood and Denley 1984). Plants and animals of temperate rocky shores exhibit strong patterns of vertical zonation in the intertidal zone. Physical stresses tend to limit the upper distributions of species populations and to be more important higher onshore; competition for space and predation tend to limit distributions lower on the shore. Surface space for attachment is potentially limiting to both plants and animals in the rocky intertidal zone. In the absence of disturbance, space becomes limiting, and competition for that limited space results in competitive exclusion of inferior competitors and monopolization of space by a competitive dominant. Physical disturbance, biological disturbance, and recruitment limitation are all processes that can serve to maintain densities below the level at which competitive exclusion occurs (Menge and Sutherland 1987). Because of the importance of such strong biological interactions in determining the community structure and dynamics in this system, changes in abundance of certain keystone species can produce intense direct and indirect effects on other species that cascade through the ecosystem (Menge et al. 1994, Wootton 1994, Menge 1995), (Paine et al. 1996).

Intertidal communities occupying unconsolidated sediments (sands and muds) are quite different from those found on rocky shores (Peterson 1991). These soft-bottom communities are composed of infaunal (buried) invertebrates, mobile microalgae, and abundant transient consumers, such as shorebirds, fishes, and crustaceans (Rafaelli and Hawkins 1996). Macroalgae are sparse, and are found attached to large shell fragments or other stable hard substrata. In very low energy environments, large plants, such as salt marsh grasses and forbs high on shore and seagrasses low on shore, occur in intertidal soft sediments (Peterson 1991). The large stretch of intertidal soft-sediment shore in between those vegetated zones has an empty appearance, which is misleading. The plants are microscopic and productive; the invertebrate animals are buried out of sight. The soft-bottom intertidal habitat represents a critically important feeding ground, especially for shorebirds, because the flat topography allows easier access than is provided by steep rocky coasts and because invertebrates without heavy protective calcium carbonate shells are common, particularly polychaetes and amphipods (Peterson 1991).

The intertidal shorelines of the GOA exhibit a wide range of habitat types. True soft-sediment shores are not common, except in Cook Inlet. Marshes, fine-grained and coarse-grained sand beaches, and exposed and sheltered tidal flats represent a small fraction of the coastline in the GOA. Sheltered and exposed rocky shores, wave-cut platforms, and beaches with varying mixtures of sand, gravel, cobble, and boulders are the dominant habitats in this region (Page et al. 1995, Sundberg et al.

1996). Abundance, biomass, productivity, and diversity of intertidal communities on the shores of the eastern GOA with nearby glaciers are depressed by proximity to sources of runoff from glacier ice melt. The islands in PWS and the Aleutian Islands, for example, have richer intertidal communities than the mainland of the northeast GOA, and the intertidal communities of Kodiak and Afognak tend to be richer than those of the Shelikof Strait mainland on the Alaska Peninsula (Bakus 1978, Highsmith et al. 1994b). Glacier ice melt depresses intertidal biotic communities by introducing turbidity and freshwater stresses.

Winter ice scour seasonally denudes epibiota along the Cook Inlet shores (Bakus 1978). Intense wave exposure can cause substratum instability on intertidal cobble and boulder shores, thereby removing intertidal epibiota directly through abrasion (Sousa 1979). Shores with well rounded cobbles and boulders have accordingly poorer intertidal biotas than those with reduced levels of physical disturbance. Bashing from logs also represents an agent of disturbance to those rocky shores exposed to intense wave action in this region (Dayton 1971). Consequently, exposed rocky coastlines may experience more seasonal fluctuations in epibiotic coverage than communities on similar substrata in protected fjords and embayments (Bakus 1978).

The rocky intertidal shores of the spill area exhibit a typical pattern of vertical zonation, although the particular species that dominate vary in importance as a function of changing habitat conditions (Highsmith et al. 1996, Houghton et al. 1996a, Houghton et al. 1996b). Vertical zonation on intertidal rocky shores is a universal feature, caused by a combination of direct and indirect effects of height-specific duration of exposure to air (Paine 1966, Connell 1972).

The uppermost intertidal zone on rocky shores of the GOA is characterized by a dark band of the alga *Verruccaria.* The rockweed (*Fucus gardneri*) dominates the upper intertidal zone, which also includes two common barnacles (*Balanus glandula* and *Chthamalus dalli*), two abundant limpets (*Tectura persona* and *Lottia pelta*), and the periwinkle (*Littorina sitkana*) (SAI 1980, Hood and Zimmerman 1986, Highsmith et al. 1994b).

The middle intertidal zone commonly has even higher cover of *Fucus,* along with beds of blue mussels (*Mytilus trossulus*), the periwinkle (*Littorina scutulata*), barnacles, and the predatory drilling snail (*Nucella lamellosa and N. lima*) (Carroll and Highsmith 1996). In the low intertidal zone, a red alga (*Rhodymenia palmata*) often is dominant, although mussel beds often occupy large areas and the grazing chitons (*Katharina tunicata, Mopalia mucosa,* and *Tonicella lineata*) and predatory seastars (*Leptasterias hexactis* and others) occur here (SAI 1980, Highsmith et al. 1994b). The blue mussel is a very significant member of this community because it is a potential competitive dominant (VanBlaricom 1987) and because its byssus and between-shell interstices provide a protected habitat for a diverse suite of smaller mobile invertebrates, including isopods, amphipods, polychaetes, gastropods, and crabs (Suchanek 1985).

Abundances of rocky intertidal plants and animals in the GOA are controlled by the same suite of factors that affect rocky shore abundances and dynamics elsewhere, especially in the Pacific Northwest. Physical factors, such as wave action from winter storms, exposure to air high on shore, ice scour, and low salinity and turbidity from glacial and land runoff, have important effects on wave-exposed areas (Dayton 1971, Dayton 1975, Bakus 1978).

Biological controls also exert significant influences. Probably the most significant of these likely controlling factors for intertidal biota are predation and recruitment limitation. Predation by seastars is an important control of invertebrate prey population abundances and, therefore, of community composition low on intertidal rocky shores (Paine 1966, Dethier and Duggins 1988). Because blue mussels are typically the preferred prey and represent the dominant competitor for potentially limited attachment space, this predation by seastars has important cascading effects of enhancing abundances of poorer competitors on the rock surfaces (Paine 1966). Predation by gastropods occasionally helps control mussel abundances (Carroll and Highsmith 1996) and barnacle populations higher on shore in the GOA (Ebert and Lees 1996). Shorebird predation, especially by black oystercatchers, is also known to limit abundances of limpets on horizontal rock surfaces of the Pacific Northwest intertidal zones, and this process can be readily disrupted by human inference with the shy shorebirds (Lindberg et al. 1998). The presence of numerous strong biotic interactions in this rocky intertidal community of the GOA led to many indirect effects of the EVOS in this system (Peterson 2001). Because of the influence of current flows and mortality factors such as predation in the water column, larval recruitment can also limit population abundances of marine invertebrates on intertidal rocky coasts (Gaines and Roughgarden 1987, Menge and Sutherland 1987). With a short warm season of high production in the GOA, the potential for such recruitment limitation seems high, but process studies to characterize and quantify this factor have not been conducted in the GOA. Changes in primary production, water temperature (and thus breeding season), and physical transport dynamics associated with regional climate shifts could reasonably be expected to regulate the intensity of recruitment limitation on some rocky shores in the GOA.

The consequences of change caused by various natural and human-driven factors on the structure and dynamics of the rocky intertidal communities are not well developed in the scientific literature. For example, human harvest by fisheries or subsistence users of important apex predators that exert top-down control on intertidal communities could cause substantial cascading effects through the system. But the seastars and gastropods that are the strong predatory interactors in this community in the GOA region are not targets for harvest. The mussels that are taken in subsistence harvest provide important ecosystem services as structural habitat for small invertebrates (Suchanek 1985), as a dominant space competitor (Paine 1966), and as a widely used prey resource (Peterson 2001), but mussels do not appear limited in abundance in the GOA region.

Oceanographic processes related to climate change, either natural or human-driven through global warming, have the potential to either enhance or reduce recruitment of component invertebrate species of the rocky intertidal communities, but studies of the connections between coastal physical dynamics and shoreline communities are in their infancy (Caley et al. 1996). Perhaps the best documented driver of change in composition and dynamics of rocky intertidal communities is the impact of oil spills. The cleanup treatments after the spill, either dispersants (Southward and Southward 1978) or pressurized washes (Mearns 1996), have far more serious impacts than the oil itself. Because of the important strong interactions among species in rocky shore communities, the multiple indirect effects of oil spills on this system take about a decade to work their way out of the system (Southward and Southward 1978, Peterson 2001). Intensive sampling and experimental work on rocky intertidal communities on sheltered shores in PWS following the EVOS make this region data-rich relative to most other Alaskan shores.

Intertidal soft sediments in the spill region of the GOA typically possess lower biomass of macroalgae and invertebrates than corresponding rocky shores at the same elevations (SAI 1980, Highsmith et al. 1994b). The taxonomic groups that dominate intertidal soft bottoms are polychaete worms, mollusks (especially bivalves), and amphipods (Driskell et al. 1996). Sandy sediments have higher representation by suspension-feeding invertebrates, whereas finer, muddy sediments are dominated by deposit-feeding species (Bakus 1978, Feder and Jewett 1986). Intertidal sandy beaches are habitat for several large suspension-feeding clams in the GOA that represent important prey resources for many valued consumers and that support commercial, recreational, and subsistence harvest (Feder and Kaiser 1980). Most important are the littleneck clam (*Protothaca staminea*), the butter clam (*Saxidomus giganteus*), the razor clam (*Siliqua patula*), the cockle (*Clinocardium nuttallii*), the pink-neck clam (*Spisula polynyma*), the gapers (*Tresus nuttallii* and *T. capax*), and others (Feder and Paul 1974). In mudflats, such as those along the shores of Cook Inlet, dense beds of a deposit-feeding clam, *Macoma balthica*, and the soft-shell clam (*Mya arenaria*) frequently occur (Feder et al. 1990). These two relatively soft-shelled clams are significant food resources for many seaducks, and the hard-shelled clams are important prey for sea otters (Kvitek and Oliver 1992, Kvitek et al. 1992), black and brown bears (Bakus 1978), and several invertebrate consumers. Intertidal soft-bottom habitats are also important feeding grounds for shorebirds and for demersal (deep-water) fishes and crustaceans (Peterson 2001). In addition to macrofaunal invertebrates, smaller meiofaunal invertebrates are abundant on intertidal sedimentary shores. Macrofauna describes animals that are retained on a 0.5-mm mesh; meiofauna refers to animals passing through a 0.5-mm mesh but retained on 0.06-mm mesh; and microfauna are animals smaller than 0.06 mm. Nematode worms and harpacticoid copepods are the most common meofaunal taxa in the GOA region (Feder and Paul 1980b). Harpacticoids serve an important role in the coastal food chain as prey for juvenile fishes, including salmonids (Sturdevant et al. 1996).

Little information exists on the dynamics of long-term change in structure and composition of intertidal communities in soft sediments anywhere. Some of the best understanding of important processes actually comes from the northern GOA region. The Alaska earthquake of 1964 had a tremendous influence on soft-sediment intertidal communities because of the geomorphological modifications of habitat (NRC 1971). Uplift of the shoreline around Cordova, for example, was great enough to elevate the sedimentary shelf habitat out of the depth range that could be occupied by many species of clams. Clam populations in Cordova, a town once called the clam capital of the world, have never recovered from the earthquake. The re-invasion of sea otters has similarly caused tremendous changes in clam populations in shallow soft-sediment communities of the northern GOA, mostly in subtidal areas, but also in intertidal sedimentary environments (Kvitek et al. 1992).

Human impacts can cause change in soft-sediment intertidal communities as well. Probably the most common means by which human activities modify soft-sediment communities in intertidal habitats is through alteration of sediments themselves. The application of pressurized wash after the EVOS, for example, eroded fine sediments from intertidal areas (Driskell et al. 1996) and may be responsible for long delay in recovery of clams and other invertebrates because of a slow return of sediments (Coats et al. 1999, Shigenaka et al. 1999). Addition of organic enrichment can stimulate growth, abundance, and production of opportunistic infaunal invertebrates such as several polychaetes and oligochaetes in intertidal sediments. Such responses were documented following the EVOS (Gilfillan et al. 1995a, Jewett et al. 1999), presumably because the oil itself represented organic enrichment that entered the food chain through enhanced bacterial production (Peterson 2001). Other types of organic enrichment, such as biochemical oxygen demand in treated wastewater from municipal treatment facilities or industrial discharges, can create these same responses. Deposits of toxic heavy metals from mining or other industrial activities and of toxic synthetic organic or natural organic contaminants, like PAHs in oil, can cause change in intertidal benthic communities by selectively removing sensitive taxa such as echinoderms and some crustaceans (Jewett et al. 1999).

The intertidal habitats of the GOA are critically important feeding grounds for marine, terrestrial, and avian consumers.

Intertidal communities are open to use by consumers from other systems. The great extent and importance of this habitat as a feeding grounds for major marine, terrestrial, and aerial predators render the intertidal system a key to integrating understanding of the function in the entire coastal ecosystem (Peterson 2001). The intertidal habitats of the GOA are critically important feeding grounds for many important consumers:

- Marine–sea otters, juvenile Dungeness and other crabs, juvenile shrimps, rockfishes, cod, cutthroat trout, and Dolly Varden char in summer, and juvenile fishes of other stocks exploited commercially, recreationally, and for subsistence, including pink and chum salmon;

- Terrestrial-brown bears, black bears, river otters, Sitka black-tailed deer, and humans; and
- Avian-black oystercatchers and other shorebirds, harlequin ducks, surf scoters, goldeneyes, and other seaducks, and bald eagles.

Intertidal gravels in anadromous streams are important spawning grounds for pink salmon, especially in PWS. Therefore, the intertidal habitat provides vital ecosystem services in the form of prey resources, spawning habitat, and nursery, as well as human services in the form of commercial, recreational, and subsistence harvest of shellfishes and aesthetic, cultural, and recreational opportunities. In short, a habitat that represents only a small fraction of the total area of the seafloor may be the most valuable for the services it provides to the coastal ecosystem and to humans.

5.7.2 Subtidal Communities

The subtidal habitat is the portion of the seafloor found at depths below the low tide (0.0 m datum) mark on shore. This habitat includes a relatively narrow band of shallow subtidal bottom at depths in the photic zone (the zone penetrated by light), where plants can live, and a large area of unlit seafloor, the deep subtidal bottom extending across the continental shelf and slope to depths of 4,000 m in the GOA (Feder and Jewett 1986). The depth to which sufficient light penetrates to support photosynthesis and the slope of the subtidal seafloor determine the width of the shallow subtidal zone. Along a tectonic coastline like the GOA, depth gradients are typically steep. In addition, injection of turbidity from glacier ice melt along the coast reduces light penetration through the seawater. These factors combine to produce a shallow subtidal zone supporting benthic plant production in the region of the spill that is very narrow. Consequently, the vast majority of the subtidal ecosystem, the deep subtidal area on the continental shelf and slope, depends on an energy subsidy in the form of inputs of organic matter from other marine and, to some small extent, even terrestrial habitats. These organic inputs include most importantly detritus from production of intertidal seaweeds and from shallow subtidal seagrasses, seaweeds, and kelps, as well as particulate inputs from phytoplankton, zooplankton, and zooplankton fecal pellets sinking down from the photic zone above to settle on the seafloor. In addition, the carcasses of large animals such as whales, other marine mammals, and fishes occasionally sink to the bottom and provide large discrete packages of detritus to fuel subsequent microbial and animal production in the deep subtidal ecosystem.

Although narrow, the shallow subtidal zone in which primary production does occur is of substantial ecological significance. Many of these vegetated habitats, especially seagrass beds, macrophyte beds, and kelps, provide the following:

1. Nursery grounds for marine animals from other habitats;

2. Unique habitat for a resident community of plant-associated animals;
3. Feeding grounds for important consumers, including marine mammals, seaducks, and many fishes and shellfishes; and
4. A source of primary production for export as detritus to the deeper unlit seafloor ecosystem (Schiel and Foster 1986, Duggins et al. 1989).

In the spill area, eelgrass (*Zostera marina)* beds are common in shallow sedimentary bottoms at the margins of protected embayments (McRoy 1970), whereas on shallow rocky subtidal habitats, the kelps *Agarum, Laminaria,* and *Nereocystis* form dense beds along a large fraction of the coast (Calvin and Ellis 1978, SAI 1980, Dean et al. 1996a). Productivity estimates in wet weight for larger kelps *Nereocystis* and *Laminaria* in the northeastern GOA range up to 37 to 72 $kg/m^2/yr$ (O'Clair and Zimmerman 1986). In this shallow subtidal zone, primary production also occurs in the form of single-celled algae. These microbial plants include both the phytoplankton in the water column and benthic microalgae on and in the sediments and rocks of the shallow seafloor. Both the planktonic and the benthic microalgae represent ecologically important food sources for herbivorous marine consumers. The typically high turnover rates and high food value of these microalgal foods in the shallow subtidal zone helps explain the high production of invertebrate and vertebrate consumers in this environment.

The sessile or slow-moving benthic invertebrates on the seafloor represent the bulk of the herbivore trophic level in the subtidal ecosystem. This benthic invertebrate fauna in the shallow subtidal zone differs markedly as a function of bottom type (Peterson 1991). Rocky bottoms are inhabited by epifaunal benthic invertebrates, such as sponges, bryozoans, barnacles, anthozoans, tunicates, and mussels. Sand and mud bottoms are occupied largely by infaunal (buried) invertebrates, such as polychaete worms, clams, nematodes, and amphipods. The feeding or trophic types of benthic invertebrates vary with environment, especially with current flow regime (Rhoads and Young 1970). Under more rapid flows, the benthos is dominated by suspension feeders, animals extracting particulate foods out of suspension in the water column. Under slower flows, deposit feeders dominate the benthos, feeding on organic materials deposited on or in the seafloor. The benthos also includes some predatory invertebrates, such as seastars (for example, leather star, *Dermasterias imbricata,* and sunflower star, *Pycnopodia helianthoides*), crabs (for example, helmet crab, *Telmessus cheiragonus*), some gastropods, and some scavenging invertebrates (Dean et al. 1996b). Benthic invertebrates of soft sediments are distinguished by size, with entirely different taxa and even phyla occurring in the separate size classes. Macrofauna include the most widely recognized groups such as polychaete worms, clams, gastropods, amphipods, holothurians, and seastars (Hatch 2001, Driskell et al. 1996). Meiofauna include most prominently in the GOA nematodes, harpacticoid copepods, and turbellarians (Feder and Paul 1980b). Finally, microfauna include most prominently foraminifera, ciliates, and other protozoans. Because the actual species composition of the benthos changes with water depth, the shallow and deep subtidal benthic faunas in the spill zone hold few species in common. Soft-sediment communities of Alaska are best described and understood in various locations within PWS, as a consequence of the intense study after the oil spill.

The shallow subtidal rocky shores that are vegetated also include suites of benthic invertebrates unique to those systems. These benthic invertebrates either directly consume the large plants, such as sea urchins, or else are associated with the plant as habitat. Those species that depend upon the plant as habitat, such as several species of amphipods, crabs and other crustaceans, gastropods, and polychaetes, often are grazers as well, taking some mixture of macrophytic and epiphytic algae in their diets. Grazing by sea urchins on kelps is sufficiently intense in the absence of predation on the urchins, especially by sea otters in the spill area, to create what are known as "urchin barrens" in which the macrophytic vegetation is virtually removed from the seafloor (Estes and Palmisano 1974, Simenstad et al. 1978). In fact, this shallow subtidal community on rocky shores of the GOA represents the best example in all of marine ecology of a system controlled by top-down predation. Sea otters control abundance of the green sea urchin, *Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis*. When released from that otter predation, sea urchin abundance increases to create fronts of urchins that overgraze and denude the kelps and other macroalgae, leaving only crustose forms behind (Simenstad et al. 1978). This loss of macroalgal habitat then reduces the algal associated invertebrate populations and the fishes that use the vegetated habitat as nursery. These reductions in turn can influence productivity and abundance of piscivorous seabirds (Estes and Palmisano 1974). Recently, reduction of traditional marine mammal prey of killer whales has induced those apex consumers to switch to eating sea otters in the Aleutians, thereby extending this trophic cascade of strong interactions to yet another level (Estes et al. 1998, Estes 1999).

Consequently, the shallow subtidal community on rocky shores of the GOA is strongly influenced by predation and provision of biogenic habitat (Estes and Duggins 1995). Human disruption of the apex predators by hunting them (as historically occurred on sea otters [Simenstad et al. 1978]) or by reducing their prey (as may conceivably be occurring in the case of the Steller sea lions and harbor seals through overfishing their own prey fishes [NRC 1996]) has great potential to create tremendous cascading effects through the shallow subtidal benthic ecosystem. Furthermore, if concentration and biomagnification of organic contaminants such as PCBs, DDT, DDE, and dioxins in the tissues of apex predators, in particular in transient killer whales (Matkin unpublished data), causes impaired reproductive success, then human industrial pollution has great potential to modify these coastal subtidal communities on rocky shores.

Predation and biogenic habitat influence the shallow subtidal community on rocky shores of the GOA.

The shallow subtidal benthic communities in soft sediments of the GOA region function somewhat differently from their counterparts on rocky substrata. These communities are important for nutrient regeneration by microbial decomposition and for production of benthic invertebrates that serve as prey for demersal shrimps, crabs, and fishes. In some protected areas within bays, however, the shallow subtidal benthos is structured by emergent plants, specifically eelgrass in the GOA. These eelgrass beds perform ecological functions similar to those of macrophyte-dominated rocky shores, namely nursery functions, phytal habitat roles, feeding grounds, and sources of primary production (Jewett et al. 1999). In the vegetated habitats of the shallow subtidal zone, the demersal fish assemblage is typically more diverse than and quite different from the demersal fishes of the deeper subtidal zone (Hood and Zimmerman 1986). In eelgrass (*Zostera*) beds as well as in the beds of small kelps and other macrophytes (*Agarum, Nereocystis* and *Laminaria*) in the GOA, juveniles of many species that live in deeper waters as adults use this environment as a nursery for their young because of high production of food materials and protection from predators afforded by the shielding vegetation (Dean et al. 2000). Furthermore, several fishes are associated with the plant habitat itself, including especially pickers that consume crustaceans and other invertebrates from plant surfaces, a niche that is unavailable in the absence of the vegetation. Both types of vegetated habitats in the shallow subtidal zone of the GOA contain larger predatory invertebrates, specifically seastars and crabs. I some cases, the same species occupy both eelgrass and kelp habitats (Dean et al. 1996b).

Microbial decomposers play an extremely significant role in both shallow and deep subtidal sedimentary habitats of the sea (Braddock et al. 1996). Fungi and especially bacteria become associated with particulate organic matter and degrade the organic compounds. This decomposition process releases the nutrients such as phosphorus and nitrogen in a form that can be reused by plants when the water mass is ultimately recycled into the photic zone. In short, benthic decomposers of the subtidal seafloor play a necessary role in the nutrient cycling upon which sustained production of the sea depends. In addition, these decomposers themselves represent the foods for many deposit-feeding invertebrates of the subtidal seafloor. Much of the detritus that reaches the seafloor is composed of relatively refractive organic compounds that are not readily assimilated in the guts of animal consumers. The growth of microbial decomposers on this detritus acts to convert these materials into more utilizable nitrogen-rich biomass, namely fungi and especially bacteria. Bacteria also scavenge dissolved organic materials and repackage them into particulate bacterial biomass, which is then available for use in consumer food chains.

In the subtidal habitats, the benthic invertebrates serve as the prey for mobile epibenthic invertebrates and for demersal fishes (Hood and Zimmerman 1986, Jewett and Feder 1982). Mobile epibenthic invertebrates are distinguished from the benthos itself by their greater mobility and their only partial association with the seafloor. The vast majority of this group is composed of crustaceans, namely crabs, shrimps, tanaids, and some larger amphipods (Armstrong et al. 1995, Orensanz et al. 1998). In the GOA, this group includes Dungeness crabs; king crabs; snow crabs; Tanner crabs; both *Crangon* and *Pandalus* shrimps, such as spot shrimp, coon-striped shrimp, pink shrimp, and gray shrimp; and other shellfish resources that had great commercial importance before the climatic phase shift of the mid 1970s (Anderson and Piatt 1999, Mueter and Norcross 1999, Mueter and Norcross 2000). Climate and physical oceanography have the potential to exert important influences on recruitment and year-class strength of subtidal fishery stocks in the GOA (Zheng and Kruse 2000b), but the mechanisms and processes are poorly understood. Demersal fishes are those fishes closely associated with the seafloor, including flounders, halibut, sole, rockfishes, Pacific Ocean perch, and gadiids like cod and walleye pollock. They feed predominantly on the epibenthic invertebrates–the shrimps, crabs, and amphipods–but in addition prey directly on some sessile benthic invertebrates as well. Juvenile flatfish feed heavily by cropping (partial predation) on exposed siphons of clams and exposed palps of polychaetes. This role of provision of benthic invertebrate prey for demersal crustaceans and fishes is an important ecosystem service of the shallow subtidal seafloor.

The shift in the late 1970s from crabs and shrimps to dominance by demersal fishes associated with the shift in climatic regime implies a strong role for environmental forcing of community composition in this shallow subtidal system, although mechanisms of change dynamics are not understood (NRC 1996). Because of the effects of trawling on biogenic habitat, such as sponges and erect bryozoans, in subtidal soft sediments and the potential for fisheries exploitation to modify abundances of both targeted stocks and species caught as by-catch (Dayton et al. 1995), fishery impacts to the soft-bottom benthic community are a possible driver of community change. Because the demersal fishes that are taken by trawl and other fisheries represent the prey of threatened and endangered marine mammals such as Steller sea lions, the possible implications of fishing impacts to this community are important (NRC 1996).

The benthic invertebrate community of shallow unvegetated subtidal sediments has served worldwide as an indicator system for the biological influence of marine pollution. The infaunal invertebrates that compose this bottom community are sessile or slow-moving. They are diverse, composed of many phyla and taxa with diverse responses to the suite of potential pollutants that deposit upon the sedimentary seafloor. Consequently, this system is an ideal choice to monitor and test effects of marine pollution (Warwick 1993). The subtidal benthic community on the sedimentary seafloor is limited by food supply. Consequently, community abundance and biomass reflect the effects of organic enrichment. This is evident from variation in biomass among subtidal benthic communities geographically within the GOA (Feder and Jewett 1986). Therefore, changes in primary productivity in the water column above, allocation of that production between zooplanktonic herbivores and benthic invertebrates, and physical transport regimes combine to cause spatially explicit modification of soft-sediment benthic communities in unvegetated subtidal sediments that can serve to monitor ecosystem status. Furthermore, the taxonomic composition of soft-sediment benthic communities responds differentially to organic loading and toxic pollution (Warwick and Clarke 1993, Peterson et al. 1996), thereby rendering this system an excellent choice for monitoring to test among alternative drivers of ecosystem change. Among common invertebrate taxa of subtidal sedimentary habitats, the echinoderms and crustaceans (especially amphipods) are highly sensitive to toxic accumulation of heavy metals, PAHs, and synthetic organic compounds. Other taxa such as polychaetes include many opportunistic species that bloom with loading with organic pollutants, thereby allowing inferences about causation of anthropogenic responses (Peterson et al. 1996). This capability of subtidal benthic communities in soft sediments may prove useful in testing among alternative explanations for ecosystem change in the GOA.

The deeper subtidal habitats on the outer continental shelf and the continental slope are not well studied in the GOA system (Bakus 1978, SAI 1980a, SAI 1980b). There has been some description of the mobile epibenthic communities and the demersal fish communities of these deeper benthic habitats (Feder and Jewett 1986).Most sampling of these deeper benthic habitats involves trawling and focuses on the stocks of crabs, shrimps, and demersal fishes that are commercially exploited (Rosenberg 1972, Bakus 1978). The continental shelf as a whole (shallow to deep) represents a key fishing grounds in the GOA and has correspondingly high value to humans. Because community structure of benthic systems can be modified dramatically by the physical damage done by trawls to biogenic habitat such as sponges and soft corals (Dayton et al. 1995), this human activity is the object of concern. The continental slope, on the other hand, does not experience great fishing pressure.

5.7.3 General Research Questions

How do the substrates, bathymetry, physical factors, biological forces such as predation and competition, and human actions act together to define community structure?

What controls the rates of recruitment of key plant and animal species to the nearshore benthic communities?

- To what degree do recruitment processes control community structure and population abundances in intertidal-subtidal benthic systems?
- How does predation limit the abundance, diversity, and size composition of benthic marine invertebrates

What is the relationship between biological production processes and physical transport phenomena in the coastal ocean and settlement patterns and intensities of various species in intertidal-subtidal benthic communities?

How do biological interactions, both direct (such as predation and interference competition), and indirect (such as trophic cascades), influence the dynamics of community change and successional recovery from disturbance in intertidal-subtidal systems?

How does intertidal and subtidal habitat change influence species of fish, seabirds, and marine mammals from this and the other systems?

- How do offshore, ACC, and watershed processes influence the abundance, production, and dynamics of inter-tidal and subtidal species such as fishes, seabirds, and marine mammals?
- How do intertidal and subtidal habitats influence the abundance, production, and dynamics of species such as fishes, seabirds, and marine mammals in the offshore, ACC and watershed habitats?
- What are the relative contributions of carbon fixed by microalgae and macroalgae in the intertidal and subtidal?

What are the approaches to measuring community structure that allow the effects of human actions to be distinguished from the effects of natural forces in the intertidal and subtidal?

To what degree do human actions, such as watershed modifications, POP releases, organic loading, and direct and indirect effects of exploitation of marine resources, have important impacts on intertidal-subtidal benthic communities on rocky shores and in sedimentary habitats?

What is the degree to which toxins ingested by benthic invertebrates are transferred up the food chain in a form that can affect reproduction, growth, or survival of vertebrate consumers of those benthic prey?

What is the functional significance of biodiversity and apparent functional redundancy of the diverse suite of component species of intertidal/subtidal communities?

5.8 Forage Species

5.8.1 Definition

Forage species include a broad suite of species that are commonly consumed by higher trophic level species (fish, seabirds, and marine mammals). Excluded from this group are benthic macroinvertebrate forage species, such as mussels, clams, crabs and urchins, that were discussed in Section 5.7. The forage species occupy a nodal position; they are the food on which many species converge, and the means through which carbon and energy are transferred among species. Management agencies consider forage species important to sustain species of interest in the GOA, because they serve as primary prey of many larger fish species, seabirds, and marine mammals. The specific membership of the forage species complex varies among authors and management agencies. The groundfish fisheries management plan of the North Pacific Fisheries Management Council (NPFMC) defines the forage species complex as a group of species that includes the following (NMFS 2001):

- Smelts (capelin, rainbow smelt, eulachon, and family Osmeridae);
- Pacific sand lance (*Ammodytes hexapterus*);
- Lantern fishes (family Myctophidae);
- Deep-sea smelts (family Bathylagidae);
- Pacific sandfish (*Trichodon trichodon*);
- Euphausiids (*Thysanopoda, Euphausia, Thysanoesssa, and Stylocheiron*);
- Gunnels (family Pholidae);
- Pricklebacks (family Stichaeidae);
- Bristlemouths, lightfishes, and anglemouths.

Springer and Speckman (1997) extend this definition to include juveniles of commercially exploited species such as Pacific herring (*Clupea pallasi*), walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*), and Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* sp.). For the purposes of this background review, the GEM program focuses on a subset of species that are commonly found in coastal or oceanic regions of the GEM study region. In the shelf environment, this subset includes euphausiids, capelin, eulachon, sand lance, juvenile pollock, juvenile herring and juvenile pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*). In the offshore environment, this subset includes common myctophids, such as small-finned lantern fishes (*Stenobrachius leucopsarus* and *Diaphus theta*), and bathylagids, such as the northern smoothtounge (*Leuroglossus schmidti*). This partitioning allows GEM to highlight several key research questions that could be the focus of future GEM programs.

A more complete description of the life history characteristics of the forage species identified by GEM can be found in the article "Pacific fishes of Canada" (Hart 1973) and the NPFMC *Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation Report for Groundfish Resources of the Gulf of Alaska* (NMFS 2001). Table 2 summarizes key features of the life history characteristics.

5.8.2 Resource Exploitation in the GEM Region

Forage species are taken as bycatch in federal and state fisheries in the GOA (NPFMC 2000, NMFS 2001). The biomass of forage species (excluding juvenile pollock, Pacific herring, and Pacific salmon) taken as bycatch in federal fisheries in the western central GOA tends to be small, representing a small fraction of the total retained catch (NPFMC 2000). In an attempt to discourage the development of target fisheries for forage species, the NPFMC restricts the catch of forage species to no more than 2% of the total landed catch of commercial fisheries in federal waters (NMFS 2001).

Pacific salmon fisheries off the coast of Alaska are managed by a complex system of treaties, regulations, and international agreements. State and federal agencies cooperate in managing salmon resources. The State of Alaska regulates commercial fisheries for salmon within state waters where the majority of the catch occurs. Federal agencies control the bycatch of juvenile salmon in groundfish fisheries through bycatch restrictions (NMFS 2001). In the GEM study region, pink salmon are primarily harvested by purse seines. Most of the pink salmon taken in PWS are of hatchery origin.

State and federal agencies also cooperate in managing Pacific herring fisheries. Most directed removals occur within state waters. These fisheries are regulated by ADF&G. Federal agencies regulate the bycatch of Pacific herring in groundfish fisheries that occur in federal waters.

Commercial removals of walleye pollock are regulated by state and federal agencies. The majority of the catch occurs in federal waters; however, small state fisheries have started in PWS. In federal waters, the catch is regulated by federal agencies based on recommended harvest regulations provided by the NPFMC. The catch of juvenile pollock is assessed within the stock assessment and fisheries evaluation reports. Juvenile pollock catch is included in considerations of annual quotas for this species. The lack of a market for juvenile pollock less than 30 centimeters (cm) in length serves as an incentive to industry to minimize the bycatch of juvenile pollock. Efforts to minimize bycatch of juvenile pollock in pollock target fisheries include the voluntary adoption of alternative mesh configurations designed to reduce the retention of small pollock (Erickson et al. 1999).

Table 2. **Summary of Key Life History Characteristics of Selected Forage Species**

Characteristics	Euphausiids: 11 species	Capelin *Mallotus villasus*	Eulachon *Thaleichthyes pacificus*	Pacific sand lance *Ammodytes hexapterus*	Walleye Pollock *Theragra chalcogramma*	Pacific herring *Clupea pallasii*	Pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*	Northern lanternfish *Stenobrachius leucopsarus*
Maximum age (years)	2	4	5	3	21	18	2	6
Maximum length (centimeters)	4	25	25	15	80	45	65	9
Prey	planktivorous	planktivorous	planktivorous	planktivorous	plankton and fish	planktivorous	plankton and fish	planktivorous
Peak spawning	spring	spring	spring	winter	winter-spring	winter-spring	summer	unknown–winter?
Spawn location	unknown	intertidal	rivers	late fall, early winter	pelagic on shelf	nearshore	rivers	unknown
Abundance trend	unknown (uncertain)	low stable (uncertain)	low stable (uncertain)	unknown	low stable	low	high stable	unknown
Foraging habitat	pelagic–mid-water over shelf	pelagic–mid-water over shelf	pelagic–mid-water over shelf	demersal–0-100 m	mesopelagic–demersal and over shelf	pelagic shelf	pelagic shelf and open ocean	mesopelagic–outer shelf and open ocean

Although the bycatch of non-commercial forage species tends to be low relative to target fisheries for commercially exploited species, the percentage of the bycatch relative to regional abundances of individual forage species is often not known because of the difficulty involved in assessing these species.

5.8.3 Assessment Methods and Challenges

A high priority should be placed on improving forage species assessment. The diversity of life history characteristics confound efforts to develop a multipurpose survey to assess forage species as a single complex. In addition, several forage species are small and pelagic making them less vulnerable to the standard trawl gear used in broad-scale surveys to assess stocks conducted by ADF&G or NMFS.

Several authors have reported on possible trends in forage species abundance in the shelf and offshore environment (Hay et al. 1997, Anderson and Piatt 1999, Blackburn and Anderson 1997, Beamish et al. 1999a). These papers rely on anecdotal information from surveys that were designed to assess the abundance of another species (such as shrimp, salmon, crab, or groundfish). Indices of abundance based on these data may be subject to error because of problems with the selectivity of the gear or the limited spatial or temporal scope of the surveys.

An assessment designed for forage species is needed to develop an accurate evaluation of the distribution and abundance of this important group of species. It is unlikely that a single survey would be adequate for all forage species; therefore, a variety of survey methods should be considered. Potential survey methods for forage species are identified in Table 3.

Table 3. Potential Surveys for Assessment of Selected Forage Species

Type	Candidate Species
Small mesh mid-water surveys	Euphausiids, capelin, eulachon, juvenile pollock (age 0 and age 1), juvenile herring, small finned lanternfishes, northern smoothtongue
High-speed near-surface trawls	Juvenile salmon
Acoustic mid-water trawl surveys	Capelin, eulachon, juvenile pollock, juvenile herring, euphausiids
Small-mesh beach seines	Sand lance
Aerial spawning surveys	Pacific herring and capelin
Light detection and ranging (LIDAR)	Useful for species within the upper 50 m
Monitoring diets of key bird predators	Juvenile pollock, capelin and sand lance

The design of such surveys requires knowledge of the spatial extent of the species and the vulnerability of forage species to the sampling method. When considering trawl surveys, analysts must consider issues such as the influence of size and trawl configuration on the vulnerability of the species to the gear. In the case of acoustic mid-water trawl surveys, research on ground truthing and target identification of acoustic data will be required (Traynor et al. 1990, McClatchie et al.

2000). In addition, research will be needed to verify the target strength to length relationship of forage species (Rose 1998, Williamson and Traynor 1984). When considering aerial surveys for capelin, scientists will need to evaluate the fidelity of this species to spawning grounds and the consistency of the timing of the spawn. When monitoring diets of key bird predators, research is needed to evaluate factors that could influence the diet composition, including prey preferences, prey switching, and the vulnerability of prey to capture (selectivity).

5.8.4 Hypotheses About Factors Influencing Food Production for Forage Fish Production

Several hypotheses (summarized below) have been advanced to explain trends in forage fish distribution and abundance. For the most part, these hypotheses are based on research in the shelf and coastal waters of the western central GOA ecosystem. Detailed process-oriented research to confirm hypotheses has only been conducted for a small number of forage species, and these studies were often conducted in a limited geographic area representing only a fraction of the range of the species.

1. Shifts in large-scale atmospheric forcing controls the structure of marine fish communities in the western central GOA ecosystem through its role in determining the timing of peak production. Species that spawn in the winter will be favored by periods of early peak production, and species that spawn in the spring and summer will be favored by periods of delayed production (Mackas et al. 1998, Anderson and Piatt 1999).

2. Ocean conditions that favor concentration of forage fish and their prey will enhance production of forage species. The FOCI program identified a potential mechanism linking increased precipitation to enhanced eddy formation and reduced larval mortality. Eddies are believed to provide a favorable environment for pollock larvae by increasing the probability of encounters between larvae and their prey (Megrey et al. 1996). Research is needed to determine whether this mechanism may be important for other forage fishes within the western and central GOA.

3. An inverse or dome-shaped relationship exists between the amount of wind mixing and forage fish production. Bailey and Macklin (1995b) compared hatch date distributions of larval pollock with daily wind mixing. This analysis showed that first-feeding larvae exhibited higher survival during periods of low wind mixing.

4. At finer spatial scales, prey resources for forage fish may be limited, leading to resource partitioning to minimize competition between forage fish species that occupy similar habitats. Willette et al. (1997) examined the diets of juvenile walleye pollock, Pacific herring, pink salmon, and chum salmon in PWS. Their study revealed that two species pairs (walleye pollock and Pacific herring, and pink and chum salmon) exhibited a high

degree of dietary overlap. This finding suggests that in PWS, competition for food resources may occur within these pairs when food abundance is limited.

5.8.4.1 Food Quality

Efforts to improve understanding of the mechanisms underlying the production of food for forage fishes would benefit from a better understanding of the composition of the principal prey species. Although detailed information exists for commercial species such as juvenile pollock, salmon, and herring (Cianelli and Brodeur 1997, Willette et al. 1997), only limited information is available to describe the prey preferences of many members of the forage fish complex. In particular, information is lacking in the case of offshore species.

5.8.5 Hypotheses About Predation on Forage Fish

By definition, forage species represent an important prey resource for many higher-trophic-level consumers (fish, seabirds, and marine mammals). Top-down predation pressure on forage fish depends on several factors, including predator abundance, the abundance of alternative prey, the density of prey, and the patchiness of prey. Changes in these factors will influence the relative importance of top trophic-level forcing on forage fish production.

Evidence suggests that in some years, fish predation may exhibit a measurable effect on forage species production in the GEM region. Anderson and Piatt (1999) noted that the shift increase in gadoid and pleuronectid fishes during the post-1977-1978, oceanic-climatic regime coincided with marked declines in capelin and shrimp populations. They proposed that this inverse relationship could be caused by increased predation mortality because of an increase in picivorous (fish-eating) species. Consistent with this hypothesis, Bailey (2000) performed a retrospective analysis of factors influencing juvenile pollock survival. He provided evidence that during the 1980s, pollock populations were largely influenced by environmental conditions, and after the mid-1980s, juvenile mortality was higher, resulting from the buildup of large fish predator populations. In PWS, Cooney (1993) speculated that pollock predation could explain some of the observed trends in juvenile salmon survival. He suggested that years of high copepod abundance were associated with high juvenile salmon survival, because pollock relied on an alternative prey resource. In the open ocean, Beamish et al. (1999a) proposed that mesopelagic fishes transfer and redistribute energy through two primary trophic pathways: (1) abundant zooplankton to *S. leucopsarsus* and then squid, and (2) *S. leucopsarsus*, *D. theta*, and *L. schmidti* to walleye pollock, salmon, dolphin, and whales. The division of energy through these pathways is thought to influence the amount of energy reaching the sea floor.

The importance of forage fish in seabird and marine mammal diets has been demonstrated by a number of authors (Hatch and Sanger 1992, Springer et al. 1996, Kuletz et al. 1997, Ostrand et al. 1998). There is little evidence that seabird predation is sufficient to regulate the production of forage fishes in the GEM region, however. Note to author: Recent anecdotal evidence published in Nature (Thomas and Thorne) circumstantially links predation by sea lions and seabirds to control of herring populations in PWS. Growth in humpback whale populations may not be inconsequential with respect to control of small herring populations. This does not change the conclusion of this paragraph, but perhaps should be mentioned. Therefore, key research elements for predation of forage species by marine mammals and seabirds should focus on the role of oceanographic features in concentrating forage species within the foraging range of seabirds and marine mammals.

Although only a few studies have examined the importance of gradients (fronts) or water mass characteristics in aggregating forage species for top predators in the GEM region, the importance of these features is well known in other regions. In the Atlantic, aggregations of capelin appear to be associated with strong thermal fronts (Marchland et al. 1999). Likewise, climate impacts on the distribution and productivity of Antarctic krill (*Euphausia seperba*) have been shown to produce important impacts on higher trophic level consumers (Reid and Croxall 2001, Loeb 1997). Ocean conditions may influence the onshore and offshore distribution of some forage species. Hay et al. (1997) found that, in warm years, eulachon were more abundant in the offshore environment, and in cool years, eulachon were more common in the nearshore environment. Consistent with the hypothesis of Hay et al., Carscadden and Nakashima (1997) noted a marked decline in offshore capelin abundance during a cool period in 1990s in the Atlantic.

5.8.6 Hypotheses Concerning Contamination

Because of the broad distribution and abundance of contaminants, there is little evidence to suggest that contaminants regulate the production of forage species in Alaska waters. If forage species exhibited strong subpopulation genetic structure, contaminants could be influential in the local mortality rate of forage fish subpopulations. The small size, short life span, and importance as a prey item for higher trophic level foragers make forage species ideal indicators of regional contaminant levels (Yeardley 2000). If forage species are to be used as a regional indicator of ecosystem conditions, research is needed to determine whether forage species bioaccumulate toxic chemicals. Studies are needed to determine whether observed accumulations of toxic chemicals are sufficient to change mortality rage of forage species. If forage species accumulate lethal levels of toxic chemicals at the regional level, genetic studies are needed to determine whether these populations represent genetically unique subpopulation segments.

5.8.7 General Research Questions

How can trends in abundance of forage species be explained?

- What is the role of large-scale atmospheric forcing in controlling the structure of marine fish communities in the western central GOA ecosystem?
- Are species that spawn in the winter favored by periods of early peak primary production, and species that spawn in the spring and summer favored by periods of delayed production?

Do ocean conditions that favor concentration of forage fish and their prey enhance production of forage species?

- Do eddies favor enhanced production and recruitment of forage species?

Is the amount of wind mixing inversely or directly (for example, Rothschild-Osborn) proportional to forage fish production?

Does interspecific competition at small spatial scales limit production of forage fish species that occupy similar habitats?

Does predation limit the abundance of forage species populations?

Does the aggregation of forage species by gradients (fronts) or water mass characteristics allow top predators to control forage species abundance in the ACC and offshore?

What is the role of food quality as shown by prey preference selection in controlling forage species abundance?

What is the role of accumulations of toxic chemicals in forage species in influencing reproduction, growth, and death of forage species?

5.9 Seabirds

5.9.1 Overview

The GOA supports huge numbers of resident seabirds: 26 species nest around the periphery of the GOA, with an estimated total on the order of 8 million birds (Table 4). Note to author: Are sea ducks not considered seabirds? Seaducks should be included somewhere, since they are important members of shallow marine communities. Most species are colonial and aggregate during summer at about 800 colonies. A variety of habitats are used for nesting, such as cliff faces, boulder and talus fields, crevices, and burrows in soft soil. Two species, Kittlitz's and marbled murrelets, are not colonial and nest in very atypical habitats. Kittlitz's murrelets nest on scree fields in high alpine regions often many kilometers from the coast, and marbled murrelets nest mainly in mature trees in old-growth conifer forests, also often distant from the coast.

Table 4. Nesting Seabirds in the Gulf of Alaska

English Name	Scientific Name	Abundance[1] (thousands)	Biomass[2] (tonnes)	Nesting Habitat[3]	Foraging Mode[4]
Northern fulmar	*Fulmarus glacialis*	440	268	Cliff	SF
Fork-tailed storm-petrel	*Oceanodroma furcata*	640	32	Burrow	SF
Leach's storm-petrel	*Oceanodroma leucorhoa*	1,067	53	Burrow	SF
Double-crested cormorant	*Phalacrocorax auritus*	3.3	6	Cliff	CD
Brandt's cormorant	*Phalacrocorax penicillatus*	0.086	0.2	Cliff	CD
Pelagic cormorant	*Phalacrocorax pelagicus*	21	40	Cliff	CD
Red-faced cormorant	*Phalacrocorax urile*	20	38	Cliff	CD
Unidentified cormorant	*Phalacrocorax* spp.	15	29	Cliff	CD
Mew gull	*Larus canus*	15	11	Ground	SF
Herring gull	*Larus argentatus*	1	1	Ground	SF, S
Glaucous-winged gull	*Larus glauscescens*	185	241	Ground	SF, S
Black-legged kittiwake	*Rissa tridactyla*	675	270	Cliff	SF
Arctic tern	*Sterna paradisaea*	8.9	1.2	Ground	SF
Aleutian tern	*Sterna aleutica*	9.4	1.2	Ground	SF
Unidentified tern	*Sterna spp.*	1.7	0.22	Ground	SF
Common murre	*Uria aalge*	589	589	Cliff	DD
Thick-billed murre	*Uria lomvia*	55	55	Cliff	DD
Unidentified murre[5]	*Uria spp.*	1,197	1,197	Cliff	DD
Pigeon guillemot	*Cepphus columba*	24	13	Crevice	CD
Marbled murrelet	*Brachyramphus marmoratus*	200	48	Tree	CD
Kittlitz's murrelet	*Brachyramphus brevirostris*	+	+	Scree	CD
Ancient murrelet	*Synthliboramphus antiquum*	164	38	Burrow	CD
Cassin's auklet	*Ptychoramphus aleuticus*	355	71	Burrow	DD
Parakeet auklet	*Cerorhinca monocerata*	58	17	Crevice	DD
Least auklet	*Aethia pusilla*	0.02	0.0018	Talus	DD
Crested auklet	*Aethia cristatella*	46	14	Talus	DD
Rhinoceros auklet	*Cyclorrhynchus psittacula*	170	90	Burrow	DD
Tufted puffin	*Lunda cirrhata*	1,093	874	Burrow	DD
Horned puffin	*Fratercula corniculata*	773	425	Crevice	DD
Total		**7,826**	**4,423**		

[1]From U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), seabird colony database: marbled murrelet in Gulf of Alaska from Piatt and Ford (1993).

[2]Based on weights of seabirds presented by DeGange and Sanger (1986).

[3]Principal type

[4]SF = surface-feeder; CD = coastal diver; DD = deep diver; S = scavenger. From DeGange and Sanger (1986).

[5]Essentially all common murres.

Predation by terrestrial mammals and rapacious birds undoubtedly is responsible for the nesting habitats and habits adopted by seabirds. Cliff-nesting species are free to nest on mainland sites, because mammals cannot reach them and they are large enough to defend themselves and their nests against most avian predators. Ground-nesting species do not have this option and must nest only on islands free from predatory mammals. Additionally, some ground-nesting species come and go to and from colonies only at night, apparently to further thwart avian predators.

Foxes, rats, voles, and ground squirrels were variously introduced to most islands in the Aleutians and GOA between the late 1700s and early 1900s and severely reduced the abundances of many species of ground-nesting seabirds, such as storm-petrels, auklets, murrelets, and puffins (Bailey and Kaiser 1993, Boersma and Groom 1993, Springer et al. 1993). Today, even though foxes no longer exist on most islands, numbers of these species of ground-nesting seabirds still likely reflect the effects of introduced mammals. Moreover, predators that occur naturally occasionally have large, local effects on nesting seabirds in the GOA (Oakley and Kuletz 1996, Seiser 2000).

The distribution and abundance of nesting seabirds in the GOA is therefore governed primarily by the availability of suitable, safe nesting habitats, as well as by the availability of prey. For example, cliff-nesting species, such as murres and kittiwakes, require cliffs facing the sea. Therefore, regardless of the biomass of potential forage species in the eastern GOA, there are no murres or kittiwakes in much of the region because of the lack of sea cliffs. Where suitable nesting habitat does exist, seabirds nearly always occupy it, and fluctuations in their productivity and abundance through time are thought to be determined for the most part by fluctuations in prey populations.

Species that nest on cliff faces, such as murres and kittiwakes, are the most well-studied because of their visibility. Completing censuses of cliff-nesting seabirds is comparatively easy, as is measuring several components of their breeding biology, including the study of recurring natural phenomena such as migration (phenology) and reproductive success. Consequently, precise estimates of abundance and productivity, and trends in these variables through time, are available for murres and kittiwakes at many colonies in the GOA. In addition to their visibility, murres and kittiwakes are extremely numerous and widely-distributed, and more is known about them than about any other species.

In contrast, seabirds that nest underground are difficult to study. A further complication is that some of these are nocturnal as well. Despite huge numbers and broad distributions of some diurnal species, such as puffins, and nocturnal species, such as storm-petrels, much less is known about population sizes and productivity or trends in these parameters through time and space. They do have scientific value, however, because other characteristics of their biology offer valuable opportunities for obtaining information on the distribution and dynamics of prey populations important to a variety of seabirds and marine mammals.

Most seabirds in the GOA are primarily piscivorous (fish eating) during the nesting season. The principal exceptions include northern fulmars, storm-petrels, and thick-billed murres, which consume large amounts of squid; auklets, which specialize on zooplankton; and gulls, terns, and guillemots, which consume considerable amounts of crustaceans in addition to fish. Many species of fishes are taken, although a comparatively small number contribute the bulk of the biomass to diets of most seabirds. Overall, the three most important species of fishes are sand lance, capelin, and pollock. At certain colonies, at certain times, in certain years, or any combination of these conditions, the myctophids, Pacific cod, saffron cod, herring, sablefish, pricklebacks, prowfish, and salmon are also important to some species (Hatch 1984, Baird and Gould 1986, DeGange and Sanger 1986, Sanger 1987, Hatch and Sanger 1992, Irons 1992, Piatt and Anderson 1996, Suryan et al. 2000, Gill and Hatch unpublished data).

Resident GOA seabirds can be divided into three groups based on their foraging behavior (Table 4). Surface-feeders, as their name implies, obtain all of their food from about the upper 1 m of the water column and often forage over broad areas. Coastal divers can generally reach bottom and typically forage in shallow water near shore. Pelagic mid-water and deep divers are capable of exploiting prey at depths of up to nearly 200 m and of foraging over large areas (Schneider and Hunt 1982, Piatt and Nettleship 1985). Most individuals of most species forage over the continental shelf during summer. This is due primarily to the location of nesting areas, which are along the mainland coast and on nearshore islands, and the distribution of forage species, which in aggregate are more diverse and abundant on the shelf than off the shelf. Exceptions to this generalization are the fulmars and storm-petrels, which have anatomical, behavioral, and physiological adaptations that allow them to forage at great distances from their nesting areas, giving them access to resources off the shelf (Boersma and Groom 1993, Hatch 1993); and species such as kittiwakes that typically feed over the shelf, but which can efficiently exploit prey off the shelf when those prey are within foraging range from their nesting locations (Hunt et al. 1981, Springer et al. 1996, Hatch unpublished data). Therefore, as a group, seabirds sample forage populations broadly in three dimensions. These characteristics, plus variations in diet between species and the sensitivity of various components of their breeding biology and population abundance to fluctuations in prey availability, make seabirds in the GOA, as elsewhere, valuable tools in the study of marine ecosystems (Cairns 1987, Aebischer et al. 1990, Furness and Nettleship 1991, Springer 1991, Hatch and Sanger 1992, Montevecchi and Myers 1996, Piatt and Anderson 1996, Springer et al. 1996).

Characteristics such as broad sampling of forage populations and sensitivity to prey availability make seabirds valuable tools in the study of marine ecosystems.

Seabird populations in the North Pacific from California to Arctic Alaska are very dynamic, waxing and waning in response to changes in prey abundance, predators, entanglement in fishing gear, and oil spills (Anderson et al. 1980, Ainley and Broekelheid 1990, Paine et al. 1990, Murphy et al. 1991, Hatch 1993, Hatch et al. 1993, Ainley et al. 1994, Byrd et al. 1998, Divoky 1998). Oil spilled from the *Exxon Valdez* killed an estimated 250,000 seabirds in the GOA, 185,000 of which were murres (Piatt and Ford 1996). Most murre mortality occurred downstream from PWS near the Barren Islands and Alaska Peninsula and had an unknown effect on the abundance of murres at regional colonies. There is evidence that the immediate mortality and lingering effects of the spill in PWS have depressed the abundance of several other species of seabirds there throughout the 1990s (Irons et al. 2000).

A strong case also has been made for a broad-scale decline in seabird abundance in the GOA during the past 2 to 3 decades beginning before the EVOS. Marine birds counted at sea in summer in PWS apparently declined by some 25% in aggregate between 1972 and the early 1990s (Kuletz et al. 1997). Many species contributed to the decline, including loons, cormorants (-95%), mergansers, Bonaparte's gulls, glaucous-winged gulls (-69%), black-legged kittiwakes (-57%), arctic terns, pigeon guillemots (-75%), marbled and Kittlitz's murrelets (-68%), parakeet auklets, tufted puffins, and horned puffins (-65%) (Klosiewski and Laing 1994). Other census data further indicated that for the marbled murrelet, at-sea winter abundance declined by more than 50% throughout the GOA during this time (Piatt and Naslund 1994). Results from studies at several murre colonies in the GOA in summer tend to support this pattern. Piatt and Anderson (1996) reviewed the abundance histories of 16 colonies and concluded that many were in decline before the EVOS. Therefore, it proved difficult to estimate the effect oil had on murre populations.

It is generally thought that alterations in forage fish abundance and community structure brought on by environmental change not associated with the oil spill, such as climate change, have been primarily responsible for falling seabird populations (Oakley and Kuletz 1996, Piatt and Anderson 1996, Hayes and Kuletz 1997, Kuletz et al. 1997, Anderson and Piatt 1999). For example, pigeon guillemot numbers in PWS in 1978 to 1980 averaged about 40% higher than in the early 1990s, and they declined further through 1996 (Oakley and Kuletz 1996). The decline in abundance was accompanied by a decline in the occurrence of sand lance in their diets, and it has been suggested that cause and effect relate the two. Because sand lance has a much higher fat content than the forage species guillemots switched to, such as pollock and blennies, it is nutritionally superior (Anthony and Roby 1997, Van Pelt et al. 1997). In Kachemak Bay, sand lance was particularly abundant in diets of guillemots nesting in high-density colonies in the late-1990s, and chicks fed predominantly sand lance grew faster than chicks fed lower-quality prey (Prichard 1997). Likewise, reductions in energy-dense capelin in the GOA and in diets of several species of seabird in the 1980s compared to the 1970s also have been linked to population declines (Piatt and Anderson 1996, Anderson and Piatt 1999).

Additional evidence of possible climate-mediated population decline is the frequency and magnitude of large seabird die-offs in the past 2 decades. Some of these involved huge numbers of surface-feeding species in summer, particularly kittiwakes and shearwaters in the GOA and especially the Bering Sea, during years of strong El Niño events, notably 1983 and 1997 (Nysewander and Trapp 1984, Mendenhall 1997). Others involved principally murres in the GOA in winter. In 1993, on the order of 100,000 common murres starved to death, and in 1997, at least tens of thousands suffered a similar fate (Piatt and van Pelt 1993, Piatt unpublished data). Such acute mortality, when added to the normal, or perhaps elevated, attrition suffered by juvenile birds in recent years, could have significant repercussions on population size. As Piatt and Anderson (Piatt and Anderson 1996) note, there was only 1 reported die-off of seabirds in the general region before 1983, and that was in the Bering Sea in 1970 (Bailey and Davenport 1972).

There is no evidence that seabirds in the GOA have been directly affected by commercial fisheries. Most of the prey of seabirds are not targeted; for example, sand lance and capelin. Adults of some prey species are fished, such as pollock, Pacific cod, and herring, but most seabirds can feed only on the small age-0 and age-1 fish of these large types and therefore do not compete with commercial fisheries for biomass. Indirect effects of commercial fishing are possible if stock sizes are affected by fishing and if stock size influences the abundance of young age classes of those species or the abundance of other forage species.

5.9.2 Case Studies

A lot of information has been collected on seabirds in the GOA in the past 3 decades, although much of the data obtained in the last 10 years has not yet been published or even presented. Therefore, the integration of all results into a composite picture of seabird ecology is not currently possible. Nevertheless, good information is available for some aspects of the biology of certain species at certain sites, and these examples can be used to give a general idea of the status of seabirds and their sensitivity to change in the environment. Prominent species are the black-legged kittiwake and common murre. They are among the most abundant and widely distributed seabirds, nesting at hundreds of colonies from Southeastern Alaska to Unimak Pass. These attributes and their ease of study have made them the best known of all species in the GOA. Information on trends in abundance, productivity, and diets of kittiwakes and murres at several locations spans periods of 1 to more than 4 decades. Information on other species, notably fulmars and puffins, at some colonies provides additional context.

The black-legged kittiwake and common murre are the most abundant, most widely distributed, and best known bird species in the GOA.

5.9.2.1 *Middleton Island*

The longest time series of reliable abundance estimates for seabirds in the GOA comes from Middleton Island, where the first count was made in 1956 (Rausch 1958). Between 1956 and 1974, the number of kittiwakes increased by an order of magnitude, from about 14,000 to 144,000 birds (Baird and Gould 1986). That increase is thought to have been made possible by the 1964 earthquake, which uplifted large sections of Middleton Island and created extensive new nesting habitat. Numbers of kittiwakes remained high there throughout the 1970s, but began to decline steadily in the early 1980s from a peak of about 166,000 birds to about 16,000 today (Hatch et al. 1993, Hatch unpublished data).

The decline in abundance has been accompanied by generally low productivity since the early 1980s, averaging just 0.06 chicks per pair between 1983 and 1999 (Table 5). Supplemental feeding of kittiwakes in recent years altered a variety of adult breeding parameters sensitive to food supply and increased survival of chicks, strongly supporting the notion that food limitation has been the cause of poor productivity and population decline (Gill 1999, Gill and Hatch unpublished data).

Table 5. Trends in Kittiwake Abundance and Productivity at Colonies in the Gulf of Alaska

Colony(s)	Population Trajectory	Average Production, 1983-2000	Number of Colonies	Colony years
Gull Island[1]	Up	0.39	1	15
Prince William Sound[2]	Up	0.30	4	67
Barren Island[3]	Level	0.40	1	7
Prince William Sound–Overall[2]	Level	0.13	22	372
Prince William Sound[2]	Up-Down	0.14	5	94
Prince William Sound[2]	Level	0.15	2	34
Chiniak Bay[2]	Level	0.19	1	16
Semidi Islands[3, 4]	Down	0.05	1	11
Chisik Island[1]	Down	0.06	1	9
Prince William Sound[2]	Down	0.04	11	177
Middleton Island[4]	Down	0.06	1	?

[1]From J. Piatt (unpublished data)

[2]From D. Irons (unpublished data)

[3]From USFWS (unpublished data)

[4]From S. Hatch (unpublished data)

Table 5 needs to be explained fully by the author the first time it is cited in Section 5.9.2.1. also the Table needs to label the three groups using the blank lines above each group, and a distinction needs to be drawn among the four different PWS colonies and this distinction needs to be explained in Section 5.9.2.1 the first time the Table is cited. Alternatively, the table and its contents could be fully explained in the caption and footnotes.

The longest time series of abundance data for murres also comes from Middleton Island. As with kittiwakes, the murre population increased by about an order of magnitude following the 1964 earthquake, numbering 6,000 to 7,000 individuals by the mid-1970s. Also like kittiwakes, murre abundance at Middleton Island was in decline by the end of the decade, falling to about 4,000 individuals by 1985. The population abruptly increased the following year to nearly 8,000 birds, where it remained through 1988, rapidly declined again to about 2000 by 1992, and has been more or less stable since (Hatch unpublished data). The cause of the decline is thought to have been driven in part by the growth of vegetation that hampers access of chicks to the sea once they leave the nest (Hatch unpublished data), but the sharp increases and decreases during the course of the overall decline argues for other controlling factors.

Glaucous-winged gulls also probably nested in comparatively small numbers on Middleton Island before 1964, although no counts were made in the early years. By 1973 there were fewer than 1,000 individuals and fewer than 2,000 a decade later. However, in contrast to findings for murres and kittiwakes, the population ballooned to more than 12,000 birds between 1984 and 1993, and now totals about 11,000 (Hatch unpublished data). Predation by gulls on kittiwake and murre eggs and chicks may have contributed to the declines of those species (2001).

The abundance of rhinoceros auklets on Middleton Island more than doubled from about 1,800 to 4,100 burrows between 1978 and 1998 (Hatch unpublished data). Although there are no hard data, it seems likely that few or no rhinoceros auklets nested there before the earthquake because of a lack of habitat (Hatch unpublished data). Therefore, the increase in rhinoceros auklet abundance might be just the result of an increase in the extent of nesting habitat as vegetation covered uplifted soils. At St. Lazaria Island in Southeast Alaska, however, rhinoceros auklet numbers nearly doubled during the 1990s (Byrd et al. 1999), indicating that other factors are possibly involved.

A lack of adequate data precludes firm conclusions about trends in abundance of tufted puffins, but it is thought that they are increasing in abundance on Middleton Island as well (Hatch unpublished data).

Pelagic cormorants are known to move between nesting areas within colonies between years; therefore, census data are not necessarily as accurate for them as for other cliff-nesting species of seabirds. The data show that numbers of nesting pairs were comparatively stable at about 2,000 to 2,800 between the mid-1970s and mid-1980s. The number of pairs was extremely volatile from 1985 to 1993, however, rising and falling by as much as 700% between consecutive years. In 1993, pelagic cormorants numbered about 800 pairs, and have increased steadily since then to about 1,600 pairs (Hatch unpublished data).

Seabirds at Middleton Island feed on a variety of forage species common throughout the GOA (Hatch 1984, Hatch and Gill unpublished data). Early in the nesting season kittiwakes typically prey on extremely energy-dense myctophids, which are generally restricted in their distribution to deep-water regions off continental shelves (Willis et al. 1988, Sobolevsky et al. 1996). Later they switch to other, likely more accessible, prey and feed chicks primarily on sand lance, although capelin and sablefish are also important in some years (Hatch and Gill unpublished data).

Rhinoceros auklets feed on numerous species of fishes, but seem to be sand lance specialists (Hatch 1984, Vermeer and Westrheim 1984, Vermeer et al. 1987). At Middleton Island, sand lance contributed on average 62% of the biomass fed to chicks in 11 years between 1978 and 2000 (Hatch unpublished data). In years of apparent low abundance during the first half of the 1990s, pink salmon, capelin, greenlings, and sablefish replaced sand lance.

Tufted puffins at Middleton Island feed their chicks predominantly sand lance in years when sand lance are most abundant: sand lance make up as much as 90% of biomass in peak years. Tufted puffins apparently switch to other prey sooner than rhinoceros auklets when sand lance is scarce. Alternative prey of tufted puffins consists mainly of pollock and prowfish, with somewhat lesser amounts of sablefish (Hatch unpublished data).

5.9.2.2 Prince William Sound

Twenty-three kittiwake colonies in PWS were first counted in 1972, but were not counted again until 1984. These and an additional six colonies have been visited nearly each year since (Irons 1996, Irons unpublished data). During this time, long-term increases and decreases have been noted at various colonies, but no obvious geographic pattern to the changes was found. Instead, four colonies have grown to large size, and numerous smaller colonies have declined, with some disappearing completely. Note to author: Are any of these colonies represented by the four colonies in Table 5? Several other colonies first increased, then decreased, and two have not changed appreciably. At least some of these changes likely resulted from movements of adults between sites (Irons unpublished data). For example, as the Icy Bay colony declined from about 2,400 birds in 1972 to fewer than 100 by 2000, the nearby North Icy Bay colony grew from about 500 birds in 1972 to about 2,000 by the late 1990s. Overall, the total abundance of kittiwakes in PWS has remained stable, or perhaps increased slightly, despite substantial interannual variability; for example, decreasing by 45% between 1991 and 1993 and increasing by 35% between 1999 and 2000.

Overall productivity likewise has been highly variable between years, but generally has been much greater than at Middleton Island, averaging 0.13 chicks per pair since 1984 (Table 5). Note to author: There are four values in Table 5 and they do not average 0.13. Average productivity differed considerably between colonies with different population trajectories, however (Table 5). The average productivity of four colonies with increasing populations was twice that of two stable colonies and five colonies that experienced matching increases and decreases, while productivity at those was nearly four times as great as that at 11 declining colonies.

5.9.2.3 Lower Cook Inlet

Kittiwakes at Chisik Island in Lower Cook Inlet were first counted in 1971 (Snarski 1971), and the population appears to have fallen steadily since then. By 1978, the number of birds was down by about 40% and today it is just 25% of the 1971 total (Piatt unpublished data). The trend in murre abundance at Chisik Island has paralleled that of kittiwakes, but the decline has been even steeper. The population fell by more than half between 1971 and 1978, and today stands at just about 10% of its former abundance. Kittiwake productivity has been poor in most years, averaging just 0.06 chicks per pair (Table 5). Less is known about productivity of murres, which has been estimated only since 1996. In that time, it has been variable and averaged 0.56 chicks per pair (Table 6).

Table 6. Trends in Murre Abundance and Productivity at Colonies in the Gulf of Alaska

Colony	Population Trajectory	Average Production, 1989-2000	Range	Colony years
Gull Island[1]	Up	0.52	0.28-0.65	4
Chisik Island[1]	Down	0.56	0.18-0.74	4
Barren Island[2]	Up	0.73	0.58-0.75	5
Semidi Islands[2, 3]	Up	0.48	0.21-0.58	6

[1]From J. Piatt (unpublished data)

[2]From USFWS (unpublished data)

[3]From S. Hatch (unpublished data)

In contrast, just across Cook Inlet at Gull Island in lower Kachemak Bay, numbers of kittiwakes and murres have increased substantially since counts were first made in 1976. The abundance of kittiwakes more than doubled between the mid-1970s and mid-1980s, peaked in 1988, and has averaged about 10% to 15% lower through the 1990s (Piatt unpublished data). The growth in numbers of murres was somewhat less abrupt, but more enduring, with steady, exponential growth of about 300% through 1999. Productivity of kittiwakes at Gull Island has been much higher than at Chisik Island, and has been among the highest anywhere in the GOA with comparable data (Table 5). Productivity of murres at Gull Island has been less variable than at Chisik Island, but has averaged essentially the same, 0.52 chick per adult (Table 6).

Kittiwakes were first counted on the Barren Islands, at the mouth of Cook Inlet, in 1977. The next counts in 1989 to 1991 were apparently comparable. Systematic counts began in 1993 and have continued since. It is not known if the earlier (1977 to 1991) and later (1993 to 1999) groups are comparable. Within-group data indicate that there was no apparent change in kittiwake abundance during either time period. Likewise, there are two groups of counts for murres—7 counts between 1975 and 1991 and 10 systematic counts between 1991 and 1999. Counts in the early part of the first interval are not comparable to later counts in that interval; therefore, it is not known whether murre numbers changed from the 1970s to the late 1980s. Since 1989, however, the population has steadily grown by about 40% (Roseneau unpublished data). Kittiwake productivity at the Barren Islands in the 1990s was as high as at Gull Island (Table 5). Murre productivity since 1995 has averaged 0.73 chick per pair, which is higher than at either of the other colonies in Lower Cook Inlet.

Kittiwakes and murres at all three locations prey on a similar suite of forage fishes, but the proportion of each species in diets varies depending on their relative abundance. Sand lance, capelin, and cods are the three most important taxa of prey (Piatt unpublished data, Roseneau unpublished data). Among the cods, the proportions of pollock, Pacific cod, and saffron cod vary by location. A variety of evidence from the Lower Cook Inlet region indicates that population trends of kittiwakes and murres at the three colonies are directly related to the abundance of prey available to the birds (Kitaysky et al. 1999, Robards et al. 1999, Piatt unpublished data, Roseneau unpublished data).

5.9.2.4 Kodiak Island

Of numerous seabird colonies on Kodiak Island, only the one at Chiniak Bay has received much attention. Kittiwakes were first counted there in 1975 to 1977 and numbers were stable. They were next counted in 1984, by which time the population had more than doubled. Numbers have since been variable, but showed no significant changes until 1999, when they were about twice as great as in 1997 to 1998. Kittiwake productivity at Chiniak Bay was very high for at least 2 years in the mid-1970s (about 1 chick per nest), but was poor in the 1980s, averaging just 0.11 chick per nest between 1983 and 1989. Productivity improved in the 1990s, averaging 0.24 chick per nest, and has averaged 0.19 chick per nest overall since 1983 (Table 5). This pattern of productivity contrasts with patterns seen in PWS and at Gull Island. Note to the author: There are four different PWS colonies in Table 5.

Kittiwakes at Chiniak Bay preyed primarily on sand lance and capelin in the 1970s. Variations in diet between years were correlated with variations in productivity (Baird 1990).

5.9.2.5 Semidi Islands

Approximately 2,500,000 seabirds, or about a third of all the seabirds nesting in the GOA, are found on the Semidi Islands, including about 10% of the kittiwakes, half of the murres and horned puffins, and nearly all of the northern fulmars (Hatch and Hatch 1983). Seabird studies on the Semidi Islands began in 1976 and have continued in most years since. Most work has occurred at Chowiet Island, which hosts on the order of 400,000 birds of at least 15 species, with the cliff-nesting species–kittiwakes, murres, and fulmars–receiving the greatest attention.

The number of kittiwakes at Chowiet Island varied little through 1981, although the number of nests grew by 60%. No counts were made in 1982 to 1988. Kittiwake abundance in 1989 and 1990 had not changed, but it declined abruptly in 1991, and has averaged about 30% lower since. The number of kittiwake nests in 1989 had fallen back to the late 1970s level, where it has tended to remain (USFWS unpublished data). Productivity of kittiwakes at Chowiet Island was generally high between 1976 and 1981, averaging 0.43 chick per nest, with the highest level (about 1 chick per nest) in 1981. Kittiwakes began failing to produce chicks at least by 1983 (no data were obtained in 1982), however, and in 11 years between then and 1998, the average productivity has been just 0.05 chick per nest (Table 5). Accompanying the decline in abundance and collapse of productivity was a delay of 9 days in the mean laying date in the 1990s compared to the 1970s and early 1980s. Poor productivity and delayed laying are both symptomatic of food stress.

Murre abundance on Chowiet Island was stable between 1977 and 1981. Abundance was the same in 1989 when counts were next made, but in contrast to findings for kittiwakes, the population has grown steadily since, standing 30% higher by 1998. As for kittiwakes, the mean laying date of murres was about 10 days later in the 1990s than in the 1970s. Productivity has not varied appreciably between years, except in 1998 when it was very low. The average productivity since 1989 was 0.48 chick per pair, or about the same as at Chisik and Gull islands (Table 6).

Trends in fulmar abundance, productivity, and phenology through time exhibited patterns similar to those of kittiwakes and murres. As with murres, abundance has increased: numbers of fulmars grew steadily between 1976 and 1981, and generally continued that trajectory at least through the mid-1990s. An exceptionally low number recorded in 1998, the last year they were counted and the only year since 1995, may be an artifact and not representative of the long-term trend, or it may represent a real decline. As with kittiwakes, productivity of fulmars was lower in the 1980s and 1990s, averaging just 0.24 chick per nest from 1983 through 1998, compared to an average of 0.52 chick per nest from 1976 through 1981. In addition, as found for both kittiwakes and murres, the nesting phenology of fulmars was conspicuously later in the 1990s than in the 1970s.

Little is directly known about diets of kittiwakes and murres at the Semidi Islands, but based on diets of rhinoceros auklets and tufted and horned puffins there (Hatch 1984, Hatch and Sanger 1992), it can be assumed that the usual food sources–sand lance, capelin, and pollock–are most important. These prey also are significant for fulmars. In general, the diets of fulmars overlap extensively with those of kittiwakes and murres, although overall fulmar diets are much more varied (Sanger 1987, Hatch 1993). For example, fulmars are noted for eating large amounts of jellyfish and offal and for feeding jellyfish to chicks.

5.9.3 Conclusions

Seabird populations at colonies in the GOA are very dynamic, with numerous examples of growth and decline during the past 3 decades.

In spite of considerable uncertainty about the magnitude, a widespread decline in the abundance of murres in the GOA may have occurred since the 1970s. Numbers are clearly down in such diverse habitats as Middleton Island, which lies near the edge of the continental shelf and is the most oceanic of all colonies in the GOA; at Chisik Island, which is arguably the most neritic (nearshore) colony; and apparently at several colonies along the south side of the Alaska Peninsula. Murre numbers are not uniformly down, however; they have increased dramatically at Gull Island during the past 15 years and at the Barren Islands and the Semidi Islands during the past 10 years. Although comparatively little is known about murre productivity, it has been essentially the same in recent years at the declining colony on Chisik Island as at the growing colonies on Gull Island and the Semidi Islands. At Chisik Island, the rate of decline of the population equals the estimated adult mortality–productivity seems to be sufficient to maintain numbers if those birds were recruiting to the population. Therefore, recruitment appears to have been lacking, which could be explained by poor survival of birds raised there or by emigration to other colonies (Piatt personal communication). At Gull Island, productivity and recruitment can account for only about half the rate of population growth, with immigration required to explain the other half.

In most cases, local trends in the abundance of murres and kittiwakes, likely reflect mesoscale or regional processes affecting prey availability. For example, differences in population trends of both species at Chisik Island and Gull Island, and differences in productivity of kittiwakes between the islands, are related to regional variations in the abundance of forage fishes (Piatt unpublished data). The similarity in murre productivity between colonies is likely explained by flexible time budgets, which buffers them against fluctuations in prey (Burger and Piatt 1990, Zador and Piatt 1999).

There is not enough information to determine whether total kittiwake abundance in the GOA has changed one way or another. Many examples of growth, decline, and stasis in individual colonies are available, but there is no apparent broad geographic pattern to the trends. At the few colonies where both kittiwakes and murres have been monitored, abundances of the two species tend to track each other through time. Kittiwakes, along with murres, have declined at Middleton Island and Chisik Island, and apparently increased, with murres, at Gull Island. The one exception is at Chowiet Island in the Semidi Islands, where kittiwakes decreased and murres increased. Elsewhere, kittiwakes have increased at Chiniak Bay on Kodiak Island and remained stable overall in PWS.

There is a strong correlation between population trajectory and long-term average productivity of kittiwakes at many colonies. Those colonies that are increasing in size have the highest productivity; those that are declining have the lowest. Colonies that show no change have intermediate levels. There are various interpretations of such a relationship. One is that productivity and subsequent recruitment of young determines abundance. Another is that kittiwake abundance and productivity simply track changes in prey; that is, in years of high prey abundance, more adults attend colonies and produce greater numbers of chicks than in years of low prey abundance. There would not necessarily have to be any other relationship between the two.

There are conspicuous temporal patterns of kittiwake productivity at many colonies during the past 17 years. Productivity at colonies in PWS and at Gull Island has varied in tandem, with peaks and valleys at about 5-year intervals: high productivity in the mid- to late 1980s, low in the early 1990s, and higher again after 1995. For most of the record, from the early 1980s through the mid-1990s, this pattern was opposite that at Chiniak Bay on Kodiak Island, where productivity peaked in the early 1990s while it bottomed-out in PWS and at Gull Island. Productivity at the three locations tended to track together during the latter half of the 1990s.

Kittiwake productivity and population trends in PWS are well-correlated before 1991 and since 1991, but the sign (positive or negative) of the relationship differs. Before 1991, high productivity was associated with low numbers of birds at the colonies, but since 1991, the relationship has been opposite. A similar switch occurred at about the same time in the relationship between kittiwake productivity in PWS and the abundance of age-1 herring. Such differences in sign and behavior of relationships before and after the 1989-to-1990 regime shift have been pointed out for kittiwakes in the Bering Sea and for various other ecosystem components of the North Pacific. It has been suggested that the differences reflect fundamental changes in ecosystem processes (Springer 1998, Welch et al. 1998, Hare and Mantua 2000).

The peaks and valleys in kittiwake productivity in PWS have punctuated a general declining trend during the longer term. If productivity depends more on prey abundance than on predation, then it seems as though prey have tended to decline throughout PWS in the past 17 years, notwithstanding apparent oscillations.

5.9.4 Future Directions

Seabirds in the GOA are sensitive indicators of variability in the abundance of forage fishes through time and space. How well information from particular species at particular colonies reflects broad patterns of ecosystem behavior in the GOA remains to be seen. The problem is that nearly all of the colonies are situated in habitats with distinct mesoscale or regional properties. PWS is a prime example, where colonies are located at the heads of fjords with and without glaciers, in bays and on islands around the perimeter of the main body of the sound, and on islands in the center of the sound. The Barren Islands and Gull Island are strongly influenced by intense upwelling in Kennedy Entrance that greatly modifies local physical conditions and production processes: waters in the relatively small region are cold, nutrient-rich, and productive. Chisik Island lies in the path of the outflow of warm, nutrient-poor water from Cook Inlet. The Semidi Islands lie at the downstream end of Shelikof Strait and the center of distribution of spawning pollock in the GOA.

Thus, there are various trends in abundance of kittiwakes at the numerous colonies in PWS. Trends in abundance of kittiwakes and murres at the Barren Islands and Gull Island are opposite those at neighboring Chisik Island; and patterns of kittiwake productivity at Gull Island and Chiniak Bay are opposite of each other. Only Middleton Island, which sits isolated near the edge of the continental shelf and the Alaska Stream, and sites on or near the coast of the Alaska Peninsula west of Kodiak Island, which lie in the flow of the Alaska Coastal Current, seem to have the potential to represent gulf-wide variability unencumbered by possibly confusing smaller-scale features.

On the other hand, there is reason for optimism that broad-scale variability is indeed expressed in seabird biology. In spite of a wide variety of local habitat characteristics and population trends of kittiwakes at the many colonies in PWS, and large differences in average long-term productivity among colonies with differing abundance trends, a common temporal pattern of productivity has been shared by almost all colonies. Concordant, clearly defined peaks and valleys have been observed at about 5-year intervals. A sound-wide environmental signal has propagated through the kittiwakes regardless of their location or status.

Moreover, the signal captured by kittiwakes in PWS and expressed in patterns of productivity was also captured by kittiwakes at Gull Island, implying that they may not be as ecologically separated as one might assume considering their geographic distance and characteristics of their environments. And further expanding the spatial dimension, the temporal pattern of sand lance abundance in the vicinity of Middleton Island during the past 15 years, as revealed by its occurrence in diets of rhinoceros auklets and tufted puffins there, matches closely the patterns of kittiwake productivity in PWS and at Gull Island. Although a long geographical stretch, it might not be such a long ecological stretch when viewed broadly, at the GOA scale, rather than in a regional geographic and ecological context. And finally, the kittiwakes at Chiniak Bay also seemed to be attuned to this same signal, notwithstanding the fact that it apparently led to opposite behavior in the local system for some of the time. One thing that is fairly certain of is that the temporal and spatial patterns in various components of seabird biology exhibited in the GOA do reflect underlying patterns in food-web production and ecosystem processes. Because of the range of oceanographic situations surrounding the various colonies, detailed information from them should prove valuable in building a composite view of ecosystem behavior in the GOA.

A variety of approaches to developing a long-term monitoring program in the GOA might work, but the framework that has evolved over the past 3 decades already has proved useful. In-depth work is occurring or has occurred in many years since the 1970s at well-placed locations throughout the GOA. These locations include St. Lazaria Island and Forrester Island in Southeast Alaska; Middleton Island; many colonies in PWS; Chisik Island, Gull Island, and the Barren Islands in Lower Cook Inlet; Kodiak Island; the Semidi Islands; and Aiktak Island on the south side of Unimak Pass. Colonies at these locations share several well-known, tractable species that provide complementary views of the ecosystem, particularly if they are systematically exploited for their contributions. Just as information from each of these colonies will help build a composite broad view of the GOA, information from several species of seabirds at each colony will help build a composite regional view of ecosystem behavior.

Therefore, the most popular species should continue to be the main focus. These are kittiwakes and murres, the species in the GOA with the highest combined score of abundance, distribution, and ease of study. Elements of their biology are sensitive to variability in prey, as seen in the GOA and numerous places elsewhere in the North Pacific and North Atlantic.

Kittiwakes and murres do not do some things as well as second-tier species, namely the puffins. Comparatively little is known about population trends of puffins, despite the fact that they are among the most abundant and widespread of the seabirds in the GOA. This lack of knowledge results because they nest underground. However, puffins have been used to monitor trends in forage fish abundance at numerous colonies throughout the GOA, Aleutian Islands, and British Columbia (Hatch 1984, Vermeer and Westrheim 1984, Hatch and Sanger 1992, Hatch unpublished data, Piatt unpublished data). Diets of the three species of puffins overlap extensively, but each samples the environment somewhat differently: variability in diets among the puffins, locations, and time reveals geographic patterns of forage fish community structure and fluctuations in the abundances of individual species. Puffins return whole, fresh prey to their chicks, a behavior that provides an economical, efficient means of measuring various attributes of forage fish populations, such as individual growth rates within and between years and relative year-class strength.

Third-tier species, the cormorants, guillemots, and storm-petrels, also have attributes that can provide additional useful information. Cormorant and guillemot diets overlap extensively with those of kittiwakes, murres, and puffins, but the cormorants and guillemots sample prey much nearer to colonies and sample additional species not used by the others. Storm-petrels, in contrast, range widely and sample oceanic prey not commonly consumed by any other species. In combination, the diets, abundance, and productivity of the various species of seabirds provide information on prey at multiple spatial scales around colonies. In situations when this information can be easily obtained, it should not be overlooked.

A successful strategy for seabird monitoring will balance breadth (geographic and ecological) with intensity (how much is done at each site). On the one hand, it is important to select a sufficient number of sites to adequately represent a range of environmental conditions in mesoscale and macroscale dimensions. On the other hand, studies must be thorough at each colony. Simply comparing population trends of one or two species may give uncertain, possibly misleading information on underlying conditions of the environment. Without additional information on such things as survival, emigration, recruitment, diet, and physiological condition of the birds, conclusions about causes of population change, or about what population change is saying about the environment versus what productivity is saying, are elusive.

Another need for a long-term monitoring plan is knowledge about when reliable time series begin. For example, several estimates of murre abundance at colonies in the GOA from the 1970s are likely not comparable to more recent systematic counts (Erikson 1995, Roseneau unpublished data). Inappropriate comparisons could result in erroneous conclusions about population changes that might further lead to unsupported speculation concerning broader trends in ecosystem change. This (this what? please clarify)is nicely illustrated by census data from the western Alaska Peninsula. If taken at face value, the information indicates that declines in the abundance of murres have been particularly severe at colonies from the Shumagin Islands westward to Unimak Pass. However, the trend data for two of the colonies, Bird Island and Unga Island, consist of single counts made in each of 2 years at both colonies. The first counts in 1973 were made in mid-June, which is early in the nesting season when murre numbers are unstable at colonies and often much higher than later during the census period (Hatch and Hatch 1989). At another of the colonies, Aiktak Island, the evidence of decline is based on a single count of nearly 13,000 birds in 1980, the first year a census of the colony was performed (Byrd et al. 1999). Single counts in 1982, 1989, and 1990 ranged between 175 and about 8,000 birds. And, the lower boundary of the 90% confidence interval about the mean of multiple counts in 1998 was less than zero, and the upper boundary was nearly as great as the first count in 1980. One must therefore ask if the murre population has indeed changed at all over the long term at Aiktak Island, or at the other colonies in the region where similar uncertainty exists, and if so how much.

In spite of such caveats, information gained from seabirds in the past 3 decades reveals a great deal about the nature of variability in the GOA. We can be certain that the perpetuation and refinement of seabird studies will continue to provide insights and hypotheses useful to the broader goal of understanding the GOA ecosystem.

Crititcal Information Needs

- Continuing information on productivity, population trends, and diets of seabirds in the GOA;
- Information on the annual survival of seabirds at nesting colonies;
- Information on rates of immigration and emigration between colonies;
- Information on functional relationships between seabird abundance, behavior, and productivity and prey availability; and
- Information on functional relationships between elements of food web production at all trophic levels and environmental variability.

5.9.5 General Research Questions

What is the relation between abundance of seabird populations and the availability of forage species, including fish?

- Are alterations in forage fish abundance and community structure brought on by environmental change capable of controlling seabird populations?
- Do local trends in the abundance of murres and kittiwakes reflect mesoscale or regional climatic and oceanographic processes affecting prey availability?

- How can influences of prey availability on seabird abundance be separated from the influences of mesoscale or regional properties unique to the location of the colony, such the presence of glaciers?

What is the relation between commercial fishing and the abundance of seabird populations?

5.10 Fish and Shellfish

5.10.1 Introduction

The GOA is well known for its fish and shellfish because of its long-standing and highly valuable commercial and recreational fisheries (Table 1). Less well known are the non-commercial fish and invertebrate species that compose the bulk of the animal biomass in the GOA. As a rule, the economically important species are fairly well known from trawl, trap, and hook catches made by research and commercial vessels (Cooney 1986, Martin 1997a, Witherell 1999a, Kruse et al. 2000a). By the same rule, the majority of fish and shellfish species are less well known, having been sampled during research investigations of limited duration (Feder and Jewett 1986, Rogers et al. 1986, Highsmith et al. 1994a, Purcell et al. 2000, Rooper and Haldorson). Species not commercially harvested are less well studied than commercially harvested species, such as Tanner crab. For example, because no commercial fisheries are allowed for such forage fishes as eulachon, sand lance, capelin, and lantern fish, the fluctuations of their populations are not well documented. More detailed consideration of some of the less economically important, but more ecologically prominent forage species is found in Section 5.8 Forage Species, and some of the less common shellfish species are considered in Section 5.7 Nearshore Benthic Communities.

The marine fish and shellfish of the GOA fall into two major groups (Feder and Jewett 1986, Rogers et al. 1986, Cooney 1986, Cooney 1986, Martin 1997b):

1. Fish–bony fish, sharks, skates, and rays;
2. Shellfish–the mollusks (bivalves including scallops, squid and octopus); and Crustaceans–crabs and shrimp.

Note that three other ecologically important groups, the pelagic jellyfish (Cnidaria), the bottom dwelling starfish and urchins (Echinodermata), and the segmented worms (Annelida) are not included in the category of the fish and shellfish. A list of all the scientific names and many common names of the species accessible to trawl gear on the continental shelf and shelf break of the GOA is found in Appendix A.

As would be expected with high marine productivity, the fish and shellfish fisheries of the GOA have been among the world's richest in the second half of the 20th century. Major fisheries include, or have included, halibut, groundfish (Pacific cod, pollock, sablefish, Pacific ocean perch and other rockfish, flatfish such as soles and flounders), Pacific herring, multiple species of Pandalid shrimp and red king crab, five species of Pacific salmon, scallops, and other invertebrates (Kruse et al. 2000a, Witherell and Kimball 2000, Cooney 1986). The status of major fisheries and stocks of interest are addressed in the subsections below.

5.10.2 Overview of Fish

Most of the approximately 287 known GOA fish species are bony fish, and the largest number of species is in the sculpin family (Cottidae), followed in order of number of species by the snailfish family (Cyclopteridae), the rockfish family (Scorpaenidae) and the flatfish family (Pleuronectidae) (Tables 7 and 8) (Cooney 1986). The bony fish dominate the number of species in the GOA, with less than 10% of species being cartilaginous fishes (Petromyzontidae to Acipenseridae, Table 7). Species diversity in the fish depends on the type of gear used to sample (Table 7). It is important to keep in mid that trawl gear surveys are not designed or intended to estimate species diversity. A comparison of the known fish species composition (Table 7, left two columns) to the species composition in the predominant types of trawl gear surveys (Table 7, right two columns) shows that trawl gear samples underestimate the fish species diversity of the GOA (Cooney 1986). The longest standing trawl gear surveys for the GOA are limited to the continental shelf and the shelf break (to 500 m prior to 1999 and to 1,000 m thereafter). The NMFS has measured relative abundance and distribution of the principal groundfish and commercially important invertebrate species (Martin 1997b), and before 1980, the International Pacific Halibut Commission (IPHC) collected information on the abundance, distribution and age structure of halibut (Figure 18). Hook and line surveys for Pacific halibut, sablefish, rockfish, and Pacific cod on the continental shelf in the GOA have been conducted by the IPHC since 1962 (Clark et al.).

FIGURE 18

FIGURE NOT YET PREPARED (after Martin D.H. Pages 4 and 5)

Table 7. Fish Families and the Approximate Number of Genera and Species Reported from the Gulf of Alaska

	Quast and Hall[1]		Miscellaneous Surveys[2]	
Family	Number of Genera	Number of Species	Number of Genera	Number of Species
Petromyzontidae	2	3	-	-
Hexanchidae	1	1	-	-
Lamnidae	2	2	1	1
Carcharhinidae	1	1	-	-
Squalidae	2	2	1	1
Rajidae	1	7	1	4
Acipenseridae	1	2	-	-
Clupeidae	2	2	1	1
Salmonidae	6	12	1	3
Osmeridae	5	6	5	6
Bathylagidae	1	4	-	-
Opisthoproctidae	1	1	-	-
Gonostomatidae	2	4	-	-
Melanostomiidae	1	1	-	-
Chauliodontidae	1	1	1	1
Alepocephalidae	1	1	-	-
Anotopteridae	1	1	-	-
Scopelarchidae	1	1	-	-
Myctophidae	7	10	1	1
Oneirodidae	1	3	-	-
Moridae	1	1	-	-
Gadidae	5	5	5	5
Ophidiidae	2	2	-	-
Zoarcidae	6	11	4	7
Macrouridae	1	3	1	1
Scomberesocidae	1	1	1	1
Melamphaidae	3	3	-	-
Zeidae	1	1	-	-
Lampridae	1	1	-	-
Trachipteridae	1	1	-	-
Gasterosteidae	2	2	-	-
Scorpaenidae	2	22	2	30
Hexagrammidae	3	6	3	5
Anoplopomatidae	2	2	1	1
Cottidae	30	54	15	24
Psychrolutidae	1	1	-	-

Table 7. Fish Families and the Approximate Number of Genera and Species Reported from the Gulf of Alaska

	Quast and Hall[1]		Miscellaneous Surveys[2]	
Family	**Number of Genera**	**Number of Species**	**Number of Genera**	**Number of Species**
Agonidae	8	12	8	9
Cyclopteridae	12	38	5	7
Bramidae	1	1	-	-
Pentacerotidae	1	1	-	-
Sphyracnidae	1	1	-	-
Trichodontidae	2	2	1	1
Bathymasteridae	2	4	2	2
Anarhichadidae	1	1	1	1
Stichaeidae	10	15	4	6
Ptilichthyidae	1	1	-	-
Pholididae	2	4	-	-
Scytalinidae	1	1	-	-
Zaproridae	1	1	1	1
Ammodytidae	1	1	1	1
Scombridae	2	2	-	-
Centrolophidae	1	1	-	-
Bothidae	1	1	-	-
Pleuronectidae	15	17	15	16
Cryptacanthodidae[3]	2	2	2	2
Totals	**167**	287	84	138

Sources: Hood and Zimmerman 1986 (after Ronholt, Shippen, and Brown 1978).

[1]After Quast and Hall (1972).

[2]Gulf of Alaska exploratory, BCF, IPHC, and NNIFS trawl survey data.

[3]Quast and Hall (1972) include these genera and species in the family Stichaeidae while Hart (1973) recognizes a separate family.

Table 8. Proportion of the Total Species Composition of Gulf of Alaska Fish Fauna Contributed by the 10 Dominant Fish Families in Two Different Surveys

Family[1]	Percentage of Total Fish Species	Family[2]	Percentage of Total Fish Species
Cottidae	19	Scorpaenidae	10
Cyclopteridae	13	Cottidae	8
Scorpaenidae	8	Pleuronectidae	6
Pleuronectidae	6	Agonidae	3
Stichaeidae	5	Zoarcidae	2
Salmonidae	4	Cyclopteridae	2
Agonidae	4	Stichaeidae	2
Zoaricidae	4	Osmeridae	2
Myctophidae	3	Gadidae	2
Rajidae	2	Hexagrammidae	2
Total	**68**		**39**

Source: Hood and Zimmerman 1986

[1]From Quast and Hall (1972).

[2]From GOA exploratory cruises and resource assessment surveys.

On the basis of the biomass available to trawl gear on the continental shelf and shelf break, flatfish and rockfish dominate the fish fauna in most areas of the GOA. As of 1996, a flatfish species, arrowtooth flounder, dominated the overall trawl survey of the fish biomass in the GOA, followed by Pacific ocean perch (rockfish), walleye pollock (gadid), Pacific halibut (flatfish), and Pacific cod (gadid) (Martin 1997a). Biomass of the arrowtooth flounder is approaching 2 million mt, and its biomass has been steadily increasing since 1977 (Witherell 1999a). Of the next 15 largest biomasses of species in the 1996 NMFS survey, 6 were flatfish and 5 were rockfish.

Table 9. Comparison of the Number of Fish Families and Species Found at less than 100 m in Different Regions of the GOA

Location	Number of Families	Number of Species
Kodiak	22	101
Lower Cook Inlet	25	105
Prince William Sound	18	72
Southeast Alaska	Na	51

Information summarized from Rogers et al. (1986).

Na- not available

Geographic distributions of GOA fish biomass in the NMFS trawl surveys are different from the overall total. In the western GOA, Atka mackeral (Hexagrammid) had the highest biomass in the Shumagin Islands, but this species was not among the 20 largest biomasses of species in the four other INPFC areas of the GOA. Arrowtooth flounder dominate the trawl survey biomass throughout the GOA. They are the most or second most abundant in all five areas. Flatfish and especially soles comprise a large number of high-biomass species in the western and northwestern GOA (Shumagin Islands, Chirikof, and Kodiak), and rockfish have a large number of high-biomass species in the northeastern and eastern GOA (Yakutat and Southeast). Pollock and cod are a dominant part of the biomass in the western GOA, but less so in the east. Pacific sleeper sharks are among the 20 largest biomasses of species in the north (Chirikof, Kodiak, and Yakutat), but not in the south (Shumagin Islands and Southeast). The only anadromous species, the eulachon, occurs among the 20 largest biomasses in the north, but not in the south.

With the use of a variety of gear types, including trawl net, try net, trammel net, beach seine, and tow net in waters less than 100 m, Rogers et al. (1986) provided a detailed image of the distribution of fish species and biomass with depth and by region. As was the case for the 1996 NMFS trawl surveys, species composition and relative biomass of fish species in multi-gear surveys change substantially in moving from the nearshore toward offshore areas in the GOA, as well as from one region to the next. The findings of the multiple gear surveys were consistent with the trawl survey observations in that shallow (smaller than 100 m) fish assemblages were more diverse in the north and west of the GOA than in the northeast and east (Table 9 in comparison to Table 7).

Other trends in distribution correspond to reproduction and seasonal changes in shallow waters in some species of nearshore fishes. Estuarine bays in the Kodiak archipelago are nursery areas, with larvae and juveniles being found in nearshore and pelagic habitats within bays (Rogers et al. 1986). Blackburn (1979 in [Rogers et al. 1986]) found a trend of larger fish with increasing depth in studies of Ugak Bay and Alitak Bay on Kodiak Island. Most species of nearshore fish apparently move to deeper water in the winter. In Lower Cook Inlet and Southeast Alaska, juveniles and other smaller size classes of the species of local fish assemblages are found close to shore, water temperatures permitting, and larger size classes are found farther offshore at depths greater than 30 m at all times of the year.

Nearshore areas of the GOA provide rearing environments for the juveniles of many fish species. Important nursery grounds for juvenile flatfishes, such as soles and Pacific halibut, are found in waters of Kachemak Bay and other waters of Lower Cook Inlet, as well as in Chiniak Bay on Kodiak Island (Norcross 1998). In Kachemak Bay, summer habitats of some juvenile flatfishes are shallower than winter habitats. Juvenile flatfish distributions in coastal waters are defined by substrate type, typically mud and mud-sand, and by depth, typically 10 to 80 m, and in the case of Chiniak Bay, by temperature. Deep-water and shallow-water assemblages were identified for the groundfish communities in both Kachemak and Chiniak bays; however, the limiting depths were different for the se two localities (Norcross 1998, Mueter and Norcross 1999).

Both salmon and groundfish populations in the northeastern Pacific appear to vary annually in concert with features of climate, but the responses appear to be different (Francis et al. 1998). Annual groundfish recruitments follow a cycle with a roughly 10-year period that may be related to the ENSO (Hollowed and Wooster 1992), whereas salmon abundance changes sharply at intervals of 20 to 25 years in concert with the PDO (Brodeur et al. 1996). The ENSO and the PDO were shown to be independent of one another (Mantua et al. 1997). The opposite responses of groundfish and salmon (positive) and crab (negative) recruitment to intensified Aleutian lows may be because different species-specific mechanisms are invoked by the same weather pattern. Because the groundfish species described by Hollowed and Wooster (1992, 1995) were mostly winter spawners, Zheng and Kruse (2000b) hypothesize that strengthened Aleutian lows increase advection of eggs and larvae of groundfish toward onshore nursery areas, improving survival. Salmon, on the other hand, benefit from increased production of prey items under intense lows. The possible links between Aleutian lows, PDOs, and ENSO and populations of fish and other animals are discussed further below and in a recent review paper (Francis et al. 1998).

5.10.1.1 Salmon

The GOA is the crossroads of the world for Pacific salmon. Salmon from Japan, Russia, all of Alaska, British Columbia, and the Pacific Northwest spend part of each life cycle in the GOA (Myers et al. 2000). Five species of salmon–pink, chum, sockeye, coho and Chinook–are very common in the GOA. These species appear in the GOA as early as the first year of life (all pink, chum, and ocean type chinook and some sockeye); however, others may appear during the second (all coho and stream-type Chinook and most sockeye) and rarely during the third or later years (some sockeye) (see (Groot and Margolis 1991). Ecologically, the salmon species may be divided into two broad groups, marine planktivores (pink, chum, and sockeye) and marine piscivores (coho and chinook). Further ecological differentiation is apparent within planktivores. For example, the size groups of plankton consumed by chum and sockeye are inferred to be quite different, because chum use short stubby gill rakers to separate food from water, and sockeye have long feathery gill rakers as filters.

Distribution within the GOA changes with time after marine entry (Nagasawa 2000), as salmon disperse among coastal feeding grounds according to species and stock, age, size, feeding behavior, food preferences, and other factors (Myers et al. 2000). During the first year of marine life, salmon are located in estuaries, bays, and coastal areas within the ACC and continental shelf (Myers et al. 2000). With time and growth, first-year salmon move farther away from their river of origin and father offshore. First-year salmon move out of the ACC into colder waters in fall and winter of their first year at sea.

Salmon of all ages are thought to exhibit seasonal migrations in spring and fall between onshore and offshore marine areas. In the fall, salmon of all ages move offshore to spend the winter in waters between 4° C and 8° C that are relatively poor in food, perhaps as an energy conservation strategy for surviving the winter (Nagasawa 2000). In the spring, salmon move onshore into waters that may reach 15° C where food sources are relatively abundant.

Salmon populations overall are at very high levels in Alaska, with the notable exceptions of western Alaska chum and chinook populations originating in drainages between Norton Sound in the north and the Kuskokwim River, west of Bristol Bay (ADF&G 1998). On Norton Sound, the chum salmon populations of the Penny and Cripple rivers have exhibited very low to zero spawning stocks in the past 5 years. Another notable exception to the record high levels of Alaska salmon production are the Kvichak River sockeye populations of Bristol Bay, which have faltered. Some "off-peak cycle" brood years have recently failed to produce as expected (Kruse et al. 2000b).

The situation in Western Alaska notwithstanding, the 1999 commercial harvest of 404,000 mt of salmon in Alaska was the second largest in recorded history behind 1995 (451,000 mt) (Kruse et al. 2000b). A large portion of the record harvests in 1999 was pink salmon from areas adjacent to the GOA, PWS, and Southeast Alaska. The status of salmon populations and fisheries in the following areas were recently evaluated in terms of levels of harvest and spawning escapements: areas coincident with habitats in the north central GOA of the Stellar sea lion, which is listed as an endangered species under the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA); Kodiak; the Alaska Peninsula; and Bristol Bay All major commercial salmon stocks were judged to be healthy, with the exception of the Kvichak River off-cycle brood years (Kruse et al. 2000b).

Given that marine migration patterns of each stock are thought to be characteristic and somewhat unique (Myers et al. 2000), the contrast in the status of salmon stocks between Western and Southcentral and Southeast Alaska offers some intriguing research questions about the role of marine processes in salmon production (Cooney 1984). Understanding the processes that connect salmon production to climate, marine food production, and fishing requires understanding of the marine pathways of the salmon through time (Beamish et al. 1999b). Therefore, research approaches to understanding changes in salmon abundance on annual and decadal scales need to encompass localities that are representative of the full life cycle of the salmon and, in particular, in estuarine and marine environments. Scientific information on freshwater localities is far more common than that available for estuarine and marine areas. Given the current state of information on both hatchery and wild salmon, it is highly desirable to focus current and future efforts on estuaries and marine areas for understanding migratory pathways and other habitats, physiological indicators of individual health, trophic dynamics, and the forcing effects of weather and oceanographic processes (Brodeur et al. 2000).

5.10.1.2 Pacific Herring

Pacific herring (herring) populations (Funk 2000) occur in the northeast GOA, with commercial concentrations in Southeast Alaska (Sitka), PWS, western Lower Cook Inlet, and occasionally around Kodiak. Most of the historical information on herring in the GOA comes from coastal marine fisheries that started in Alaska in 1878 (Kruse et al. 2000b); however, intensive ecological investigations at the end of the 20th century have added information on early life history (Norcross et al. 1999). Herring deposit eggs onto vegetation in the intertidal and near subtidal waters in late spring, undergo a period of larval drift, and spend the first summer and winter nearshore in sheltered embayments. Transport of larvae by currents in relation to sites that are suitable summer feeding and overwintering grounds is likely an important factor affecting survival in the first year of life in PWS (Norcross et al. 1999), as is the nutritional status of these age-0 herring in the fall of the year (Foy and Paul 1999). Some portion of the mature herring must migrate annually between onshore spawning grounds and offshore feeding grounds; however, the geography of the life cycle between spawning and maturation is less certain.

Although the geographic scope of the herring life cycle in the Bering Sea is fairly well understood, inferences from the Bering Sea to the GOA are not direct because of apparent differences in life history strategies between the herring of the two regions (Funk 2000). Adult herring in the GOA are smaller and have shorter life spans than those in the Bering Sea. Perhaps GOA herring migrate shorter distances to food sources that are not as rich as those available to Bering Sea herring, which migrate long distances from spawning to feed among the rich food sources of the continental shelf break (Funk 2000). Genetic analyses indicate that Bering Sea and GOA herring populations are reproductively isolated (Funk 2000).

Another ecologically significant characteristic of Pacific herring is the temporal change in size at age over time (Brown 2000). Annual deviations from long-term (1927 to 1998) mean length at age for Sitka Sound herring indicate a decadal-scale oscillation between positive and negative deviations. This finding is consistent with the reported coincidence of size-at-age data for Pacific herring with the PDO (Ware 1991). Herring may be affected by ENSO events. Decreased catches, recruitments, and weight-at-age of herring are at times associated with ENSO events. Seabirds in the GOA that depend on herring and other pelagic forage species showed widespread mortalities and breeding failures during the ENSO events of 1983 and 1993 (Bailey et al. 1995b). The similarities between the annual patterns of abundance and the location of weather systems (annual geographically averaged sea-level atmospheric pressure) are not as clear with herring as for other fish species, such as salmon. The difference may result because herring populations tend to be dominated by the occasional strong year class and show considerable variability in landings through the years.

The current status of herring populations may be closely related to historical fishing patterns. Long-term changes associated with commercial fishing have occurred in the apparent geographic distribution and abundance of GOA herring. Herring-reduction fisheries (oil and meal) from 1878 to 1967 reached a peak harvest of 142,000 mt in 1934. That exploitation rates were high may be inferred from the fact that some locations of major herring-reduction fisheries, such as Seldovia Bay (Kenai Peninsula and Lower Cook Inlet) are now devoid of herring. It is speculated that reduction fisheries at geographic bottlenecks between herring spawning and feeding grounds, such as the entrance to Seldovia Bay and the passes of southwestern PWS, were able to apply very high exploitation rates to the adult population. Harvest management applied by the State of Alaska relies on biomass estimates, and harvests are held to a small fraction of the estimated biomass. Harvest is not allowed until the population estimate rises above a minimum or "threshold" biomass level.

Recent statewide herring harvests have averaged less than a third of the 1934 peak. Direct comparison of past and present catch statistics is problematic, however, because current rates of harvest are thought to be substantially below those applied in 1934 (Kruse et al. 2000b). Also note that recent statewide figures for herring harvests include substantial harvests from outside the GOA, and herring-reduction fisheries were located in the GOA. Populations of herring were targeted for sac roe starting in the 1970s and for sac roe and roe on kelp in the 1980s. Regional herring population status is variable. Population levels of herring in PWS remained at low levels in 2000, and commercial harvests were not allowed in 1994, 1995, and 1996, nor since 1998. In 1999, fishing operations were halted because of low biomass and poor recruitment. Disease is strongly suspected as a factor in keeping the population levels low. The herring fishery of Lower Cook

Inlet in Kamishak Bay closed in 1999 after a very small catch in 1998 and remains closed because of low biomass levels. Catches in the Kodiak fishery for herring sac roe are declining. The bait fishery in Shelikof Strait was closed in 1999 because of its possible relation to depressed Kamishak Bay herring populations.

Significant questions remain about the geographic extent of the stocks to which the biomass estimates and fishing exploitation rates may apply in PWS (Norcross et al. 1999). The geomorphology of PWS in relation to currents plays an important role in determining the retention of larvae in nearshore areas conducive to growth and survival. The degree to which spawning aggregations of herring may represent individual stocks is a significant question, because the actual exploitation rate of herring in PWS depends on how many stocks are defined. Although it is not clear how many stocks of herring occupy PWS, conditions appear to favor more than one spawning stock (Norcross et al. 1999).

Water temperatures appear to play important roles in growth and survival of age-0 herring. Warm summer water temperatures may be conducive to growth and survival; however, the opposite appears to be true of warm water temperatures in spring and winter. Increased metabolic demands imposed by warm water on yolk-sac larvae and overwintering age-0 herring could decrease survival (Norcross et al. 1999). Availability of food before winter, and perhaps during winter may be key to survival of age-0 herring. Input of food from the GOA may be an important key to survival for age-0 herring at some localities. Differential survival among nursery areas because of interannual variation in climate and accessibility of GOA food sources could be a key determinant of year-class strength in PWS. The sources of variability mean that geographic locality is no guarantee of any particular level of survival from year to year. Sampling whole body energy content of age-0 herring at the end of the first winter among bays could provide an indicator of year class strength (Norcross et al. 1999).

Questions relating to the ability of disease outbreaks to control herring populations have recently been explored. Work has identified the diseases, Viral Hemorrhagic Septicemia and a fungus as factors potentially limiting the abundance of herring in PWS (Hostettler et al. 2000, Crane and Galasso 1999).

5.10.1.3 Pollock

Pollock are an ecologically dominant and economically important cod-like fish in the GOA. They appear to spawn at the same locations within the same marine areas each year, with location of spawning and migrations of adults linked to patterns of larval drift and locations of feeding grounds (Bailey et al. 1999). Spawning occurs at depths of 100 to 400 m, and as a result, the distributions of eggs and larvae in some areas may have been well below the depths of historical ichthyoplankton surveys. Pollock larvae feed on early developmental stages of copepods and, as juveniles, move on to feed on larger zooplankton such as euphausiids and small fishes, including pollock. Although cannibalism is regarded as significant in the Bering Sea, it is not thought to be a significant factor in the

GOA. Pollock eggs and larvae are important sources of food for other zooplankters, and year class strength in pollock is thought to be related abundances of marine mammals and seabirds, at least in the Bering Sea.

Pollock mature at about age 4 and may live as long as 20 years (Bailey et al. 1999). Adult walleye pollock are distributed throughout the GOA at depths above 500 m. A substantial portion (45%) of the total pollock biomass as well as the highest catches per unit effort (CPUEs) of the 1996 NMFS survey were found at less than 200 m in the area between Kodiak and Chirikof islands (Martin 1997a). In the western GOA, the highest pollock catches and CPUEs of the 1996 NMFS trawl survey were found at less than 200 m, whereas in Yakutat and Southeast Alaska the substantial availability of pollock to trawl gear persists above 300 m. Pollock larger than 30 cm were rarely found above 200 m in the eastern GOA in 1996 (Yakutat and Southeast), although pollock of all sizes (about 10 to 70 cm) were found at all depths down to 500 m in the western GOA (Martin 1997a). Although pollock are commonly found in the outer continental shelf and slope, they may also be found in nearshore areas where they may be important predators and prey; for example, in PWS (Willette et al. in press).

Populations of pollock in the GOA are considered to be separate from those in the Bering Sea (Bailey et al. 1999). Among the most commercially important of the GOA groundfish species, exploitable biomasses of pollock populations in 1999 were estimated at 738,000 mt, down from a peak of about 3 million mt in 1982 (Witherell 1999b). Annual numbers of 2-year-old pollock entering the fishable population (recruitment) from 198 to 1987 were erratic and usually lower than recruitments estimated in 1977 to 1980.

Following the climatic regime shift in 1978, pollock and other cod-like fish have dramatically increased, replacing shrimp in nearshore waters as the dominant group of organisms caught in mid-water trawls on the shelf (Piatt and Anderson 1996). Recruitment in pollock is heavily influenced by oceanographic conditions experienced by the eggs and larvae. Good conditions for juveniles of the 1976 and 1978 year class contributed to the 1982 peak in pollock biomass in the GOA (Bailey et al. 1999). Populations have gradually declined since then (Witherell 1999b). Increasing mortality schedules in 1986 to 1991 may indicate increasing predation and deteriorating physical conditions for both juveniles and adults in the GOA (Bailey et al. 1999). The larger-than-average year class for GOA Pollock in 1988 may be related to high rates of juvenile growth coincident with warm water temperatures, lack of winds, low predator abundance, and low larval mortality rates (Bailey et al. 1996). As has been shown to be the case with other groundfish species, GOA pollock recruitments are positively correlated with ENSO events (Bailey et al. 1995b).

Issues in the management of pollock that currently remain unresolved include the geographic boundaries of stocks, their extent of migration, the effects of fishing in one geographic locale on the populations of pollock and predators in other geographic locales, and what controls the annual recruitment of young pollock to the fishable populations (Bailey et al. 1999). In relation to stock structure, spawning aggregations in PWS, the Shumagin Islands (southwest Kodiak), and Shelikof Strait (separating Kodiak from the Alaska Peninsula) may represent separate stocks. Conditions of weather and changing ocean currents and eddies in the Shelikof Strait have the capacity to alter survival of pollock larvae from year to year (Bailey et al. 1995a). In particular, the effects of shifts in the strength of the ACC on larval transport pose important questions for how year class strength is determined. In 1996, anomalous relaxation of winds resulted in a dramatic increase in larval retention in the Shelikof basin. Increased larval retention may be favorable to survival of pollock larvae in this area, with some exceptions (Bailey et al. 1999).

5.10.1.4 Pacific Cod

Pacific cod is a groundfish with demersal eggs and larvae found throughout the GOA on the continental shelf and shelf break. Pacific cod of the GOA are also an economically and ecologically important species. Pacific cod had an estimated fishable population of 648,000 mt in 1999, which is on the low end of the range of 600,000 to 950,000 mt estimated for 1978 to 1999. Annual recruitments of GOA Pacific cod have been relatively stable since 1978, with exceptionally large numbers of 3-year-old recruits appearing in 1980 and 1998. Biomass of the dominant flatfish in the GOA, the arrowtooth flounder, is approaching 2 million mt. Arrowtooth flounder is not heavily harvested, and their biomass has been steadily increasing since 1977.

Pacific cod are found throughout the GOA at depths less than 500 m. They are most abundant in the western GOA (Kodiak, Chirikof and Shumagin Islands) where Pacific cod larger than 30 cm are found at all depths above 300 m, but smaller individuals are rarely found at depths less than 100 m (Martin 1997a).

5.10.1.5 Halibut

Pacific halibut are common throughout the GOA at depths less than 400 m, and halibut are available to trawl gear at depths of 500 m (Martin 1997a). In the 1996 NMFS trawl survey, the largest catches and the highest CPUE were found at depths of less than 100 m east southeast of Kodiak on the Albatross Banks (Figure 18). In most areas of the GOA, the average weight and length of halibut caught in trawl gear increases with depth, even though the CPUE declines with depth, particularly in the western GOA (Shumagin Islands, Chirikof, and Kodiak) (Martin 1997a).

The exploitable biomass of another flatfish, the highly prized Pacific halibut, in 1999 was estimated at 258,000 mt, which is above average for 1974 to 1999 (Witherell 1999b). Exploitable biomass of Pacific halibut was also increasing from 1974 to 1988, after which it declined slightly.

Pacific halibut appear to undergo decadal-scale changes in recruitment, which have been correlated with both the 18.6-year cycle for lunar nodal tide (Parker et al. 1995) and the PDO.

5.10.2 Overview of Shellfish and Benthic Invertebrates

Shellfish are commonly found on or near the surface of the sea floor; they are epibenthic, as adults, and in the water column, pelagic, for varying lengths of time as pre-adults. Exceptions to this rule abound, particularly among mollusks such as squid, which live free of the bottom as adults. Beyond the nearshore environment (at depths greater than 25 m), the shellfish and other invertebrates dominate the number of species and the biomass of the bottom, just as other assemblages of invertebrates dominate the nearshore (see Section 5.7). Among the shellfish, the arthropods and mollusks often have the largest number of species. For example, of 287 species of bottom fauna identified in waters deeper than 25 m in Lower Cook Inlet, more than 67% were arthropods and mollusks (Feder and Jewett 1986). Many of the commercially important species of the GOA are dependent for food to a greater or lesser extent on benthic invertebrates discussed here. (Commercially important crabs and shrimp are discussed below.) Commercial crabs and shrimps, and scallops, join the fish species of Pacific cod, walleye pollock, halibut, and Pacific Ocean perch as members of the subtidal benthic food web for part of each life cycle. Detritus, bacteria, and microalgae form the base for the benthic invertebrates of the GOA continental shelf, which are predominantly filter feeders (60%), and detritus eaters (33%) (Semenov 1965 in [Feder and Jewett 1986]). Small mollusks, small crustaceans, polychaete annelids, and other worm-like invertebrates make up the filter-feeding and detrivore component of this food web.

Regional differences are pronounced in the benthic food webs of the GOA. The eastern GOA has few filter feeders and lower average biomass relative to the northern and western GOA, in large part because of the nature of substrates and currents. In particular the benthic species composition and productivity in the GOA is determined in part by the ACC, particularly in the embayments and fjords (Feder and Jewett 1986). The ACC brings freshwater to the environments containing the pelagic shellfish larvae and heavy sediment loads that define the bottom habitats of the later stages of the life cycle. Biomass of filter feeders on the continental shelf in the western Gulf (138 grams per square meter [g/m^2]) is far higher than that found in the northeastern or eastern GOA combined (33.2 g/m^2). Biomasses of detritus feeders in the western (31 g/m^2) and eastern (12 g/m^2) GOA are lower than those found in the northeastern GOA (43 g/m^2). Biomasses of all trophic groups on the shelf break are lower than those of the adjacent shelf. The distribution of benthic invertebrates in the GOA attests to the validity of the hypothesis that the type of bottom sediment, as influenced by proximity to alluvial inputs and currents, determines the species composition, production, and productivities of benthic communities (Semenov 1965 in (Feder and Jewett 1986). Sediment size is dominant among the factors controlling the distribution of benthic species (Feder and Jewett 1986).

5.10.2.1 Crab

The principal commercial crab species in the GOA are the king crabs (*Paralithodes* spp.), the tanner crab (*Chionoecetes bairdi*), and the Dungeness crab

(*Cancer magister*). All species have benthic adults and pelagic larvae, although the life history strategies vary substantially within and among species. For example, the pelagic stages of the red king crab are herbivorous; those of the tanner crab are carnivorous; and those of the golden king crab do not feed until they metamorphose into the benthic stages. The benthic stages of all crab species feed to a large extent on the less well known invertebrates of the benthic environments (Feder and Paul 1980a, Jewett and Feder 1983, Feder and Jewett 1986) discussed briefly above under the shellfish overview .

The status of crab populations is relatively poor in comparison to the groundfish populations (Kruse et al. 2000a). Crab catches in the GOA have shown sharp changes with time, perhaps indicative of sensitivity to climatic forcing in some species, to fishing, or a to combination of factors (Zheng and Kruse 2000b). The red king crab stock of the GOA collapsed in the early 1980s and currently shows no signs of recovery. The tanner crab populations in PWS, Cook Inlet, Kodiak, and the Alaska Peninsula have declined to low levels in the early 1990s, and harvest levels have been sharply reduced (Kruse et al. 2000b)

In a study of time-series data on recruitment for 15 crab stocks in the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands, and GOA, time trends in 7 of 15 crab stocks are significantly correlated with time series of the strength of Aleutian Low climate regimes (Zheng and Kruse 2000a). Time trends in recruitments among some king crab stocks were correlated over broad geographic regions, suggesting a significant role of environmental forcing in regulation of population numbers for these species. The increased ocean productivity associated with the intense Aleutian Low and warmer temperatures was inversely related to recruitment for 7 of the 15 crab stocks. The seven significantly negative correlations between ocean productivity and crab recruitment were from Bristol Bay, Cook Inlet ,and the GOA. Crab stocks declined as the Aleutian Low intensified. A significant inverse relation between the brood strength of red king crab and Aleutian Low intensity was reported earlier for one of the stocks in this study, red king crab from Bristol Bay (Tyler and Kruse 1996).

Tyler and Kruse (1996, 1997) and (Zheng and Kruse 2000a) have articulated an explicit series of hypotheses linking features of physical and geological oceanography to the reproductive and developmental biology of red king and tanner crab. The hypotheses explain observed relations between climate and recruitment. Tanner and red king crab in the Bering Sea are thought to respond differently to the physical factors associated with the Aleutian Low because of the distribution of the different types of sea bottom required by the post-planktonic stage of each species. Suitable bottom habitat for red king crabs in the Bering Sea is more generally nearshore, whereas suitable bottom habitat for tanner crab is offshore. Intense Aleutian Low conditions favor surface currents that carry or hold planktonic crab larvae onshore, whereas weak Aleutian Low conditions favor surface currents that move larvae offshore. The process may not be species specific, but stock specific, depending on the location of suitable settling habitat in relation to the prevailing currents. In the case of red king crab, Zheng and Kruse (2000b) explain the apparent paradox of lowered recruitment for red king crab during periods of increased primary productivity. Red king crab eat diatoms, but show a preference for diatoms similar to *Thalassiosira* spp., which dominate in years of weak lows and stable water columns. Strong lows contribute to well-mixed water columns and a diverse assemblage of primary producers, which may be unfavorable for red king crab larvae, but favorable for tanner crab larvae. Tanner crab larvae eat copepods, which are favored by the higher temperatures associated with intense lows.

Recently completed modeling studies (Rosenkrantz 1999) support climatic variables as determinants of recruitment success in tanner crab. Predominant wind direction and temperature of bottom water were strongly related to strength of tanner crab year classes in the Bering Sea. Northeast winds are thought to set up ocean transport processes that promote year-class strength by carrying the larvae toward suitable habitat. Elevated bottom-water temperatures were expected to augment the effect of northeast wind by increasing survival of newly hatched larvae (Rosenkrantz 1999).

5.10.2.2 Shrimp

The shrimp were once among the dominant benthic epifauna in Lower Cook Inlet and Kodiak and along the Alaska Peninsula (Anderson and Piatt 1999, Feder and Jewett 1986) and of substantial commercial importance in the GOA. Five species of Pandalid shrimp dominated the commercial catches, which occurred west of 144° W longitude in PWS, Cook Inlet, Kodiak and along the Alaska Peninsula (Kruse et al. 2000b). Shrimp fisheries in the GOA peaked at 67,000 mt in 1973, reached 59,000 mt in 1977, and declined thereafter to the point where shrimp fishing is virtually nonexistent in the GOA today.

Regional fisheries follow the pattern seen for the GOA as a whole. The trawl fishery for northern shrimp (*Pandalus borealis*) in Lower Cook Inlet peaked at 2,800 mt in 1980 to 1981 and was closed in 1987 to 1988. The fishery for northern and sidestriped shrimp (*P. dispar*) along the outer Kenai Peninsula peaked at 888 mt in 1984 to 1985 and closed in 1997 to 1998. The pot fishery for spot (*P. platyceros*) and coonstriped shrimp (*P. hypsinotus*) in PWS increased rapidly after 1978 to its peak harvest of 132 mt in 1986. This pot fishery then declined to its low of 8 mt in 1991 and has been closed since 1992. The trawl shrimp fishery for northern shrimp in PWS peaked at 586 mt in 1984 and switched to sidestriped shrimp in 1987. The PWS trawl fishery for sidestriped shrimp peaked at 89 mt in 1992, and the northern shrimp catch was virtually zero at this time. The PWS catch of sidestriped shrimp in 1999 was 29 mt and falling. The Kodiak trawl fishery for northern shrimp peaked at 37,265 mt in 1971, and catch thereafter declined to 3 mt in 1997 to 1998. In the Aleutian Islands, shrimp catches after the 1978 season declined precipitously, and the fishery has not rebounded since.

5.10.3 General Research Questions

The following general research questions summarize the scientific questions posed or suggested by Section 5.10:

How can trends in abundance of fish and shellfish species be explained?

- What is the role of large-scale atmospheric forcing in controlling the structure and abundance of marine fish and shellfish communities in the western central GOA ecosystem?
  - Does large-scale atmospheric forcing control the quality of food available to larval fish and shellfish through its influence on the species composition and size distribution of primary producers?
  - How do the rates of recruitment of benthic animals with planktonic larvae respond to mechanisms of transport that may control the distribution of larvae relative to suitable bottom habitat?
  - How do the rates of recruitment of fish species with planktonic larvae respond to mechanisms of transport that may control the distribution of larvae relative to suitable juvenile rearing habitat?
- Are fish species that spawn in the winter favored by periods of early peak production, and species that spawn in the spring and summer favored by periods of delayed production?
- What life history strategies permit the arrowtooth flounder to be so widespread and abundant?

How well are the species composition, relative abundances and trophic structure of fish and shellfish communities understood, based on current sampling methods?

What are the underlying mechanisms whereby climate induces changes in productivity, and whereby fishing induces variations in the ocean production of salmon?

- How can salmon stocks be identified?
- What are the ecological processes in the ocean that control productivity of salmon?
- What are the interannual variations in ocean growth, distribution, and migratory timing of salmon stocks?
- What are the annual levels of ocean production of salmon in the North Pacific and by region of origin?

5.11 Marine Mammals

5.11.1 General Characteristics of the GOA Marine Mammal Fauna

The GOA has a mostly temperate marine mammal fauna. Calkins (1986) provided the only previously published review of GOA marine mammals, and listed 26 species as occurring in the region. Five of those (pilot whale, Risso's dolphin, right whale dolphin, white sided dolphin, and California sea lion) are primarily southern species that occur occasionally in Southeast Alaska but rarely, if at all, in the EVOS region. He also listed the Pacific walrus, which is a subarctic species that occurs in the GOA only as occasional wanderers.

Table 10 provides a summary of the general characteristics of 20 marine mammal species that occur regularly in the GEM region, including 7 baleen whales, 8 toothed whales and porpoises, 4 pinnipeds, and the sea otter. Useful reviews of information on these species can be found in Lentfer (1988), Calkins (1986), Perry et al. (1999), Forney et al. (2000), and Ferrero et al. (2000). Various aspects of marine mammal biology are described in detail in Reynolds and Rommel (1999).

Table 10. Summary of Characteristics of Marine Mammal Species That Occur Regularly in the GOA EVOS Area

Species shown in bold are those that have been selected as focal species for GEM.

	Use of Gulf of Alaska by Species			Population Status		Management Classification		
Species	**Residence**	**Habitats[1]**	**Activities[2]**	**Abundance[3]**	**Trend**	**EVOS**	**MMPA**	**ESA**
Mysticetes								
Blue whale	seasonal	S, D	F	small?	unknown		depleted	endangered
Fin whale	seasonal	S, D	F	medium?	unknown		depleted	endangered
Sei whale	seasonal	S, D	F	medium?	unknown		depleted	endangered
Humpback whale	seasonal	C, S, D	F	medium	increasing		depleted	endangered
Gray whale	seasonal	C, S	M, F?	large	increasing			
Right whale	seasonal	S	F	small	unknown		depleted	endangered
Minke whale	resident?	C, S	F, C, B?	medium?	unknown			
Odontocetes								
Sperm whale	seasonal?	S, O	F	large?	unknown		depleted	endangered
Killer whale	**resident**	**C, S, D**	**F, C, B**	**small**	**unknown**	**damaged**		
Beluga whale	**resident**	**C, S**	**F, C, B**	**small**	**declining?**		**depleted**	
Beaked whale[4]	resident?	S, D	F, C, B	unknown	unknown			
Dall's porpoise	resident	S, D	F, C, B	large	unknown			
Harbor porpoise	resident	C, S	F, C, B	large	unknown			
Pinnipeds								
Steller sea lion	**resident**	**T, C, S, D**	**F, C, B**	**large**	**declining**		**depleted**	**endangered**
Northern fur seal	seasonal	S, D	M, F	large	stable		depleted	
Harbor seal	**resident**	**T, C, S**	**F, C, B**	**large**	**declining**	**damaged**		
Elephant seal	seasonal	S, D	F	large	increasing			
Mustelids								
Sea otter	**resident**	**T, C, S**	**F, C, B**	**large**	**unknown**	**damaged**		

[1] T = terrestrial; C = coastal; S = continental shelf; D = deep water
[2] F = feeding; M = migrating; C = calving/pupping; B = breeding
[3] small = <1,000; medium = 1,000-10,000; large = >10,000
[4] Probably includes at least 3 species: Baird's beaked whale, Cuvier's beaked whale, and Bering Sea beaked whale

Most of the marine mammal species shown in Table 10 are widely distributed in the North Pacific Ocean, and the animals that inhabit the GEM region represent only part of the total population. Application of modern molecular genetics techniques, however, has provided much new information on population structures (Dizon et al. 1997). Researchers have found that for species such as killer whales (Hoelzel et al. 1998), beluga whales (O'Corry-Crowe and Lowry 1997), (Bickham et al. 1996), harbor seals (Westlake and O'Corry-Crowe 1997), and sea otters (Scribner et al. 1997), genetic exchange among adjacent and sometimes overlapping groups of animals is so low that they need to be managed as separate stocks.

Taxonomically the GOA marine mammal fauna can be broken down into four major groups:

- Mysticete cetaceans–baleen whales;
- Odontocete cetaceans–toothed whales;
- Pinnipeds–seals, sea lions, and fur seals; and
- Mustelids-sea otters.

The baleen whales are primarily summer seasonal visitors to the GOA that come to the continental shelf and offshore waters to feed on zooplankton and small schooling fishes (Calkins 1986, Perry et al. 1999). Breeding and calving occur in more southerly, warmer, regions. The GOA is primarily a migration route for the gray whale, which breeds and calves in Baja California, Mexico, and has its primary feeding grounds in the northern Bering and Chukchi seas Jones et al. 1984.

The large species of baleen whales were all greatly reduced by commercial over-exploitation (Perry et al. 1999). Historical information on stock structure and abundance is very limited, and, partly because of their broad distributions, accurately assessing current abundance and population trend is generally difficult (Ferrero et al. 2000). Humpback whales and gray whales are exceptions to that generalization. For humpbacks, estimates of population size based on individual identifications from fluke photos (Calambokidis et al. 1997) suggest that the central North Pacific stock is increasing (Ferrero et al. 2000). For many years, systematic counts have been made of gray whales migrating along the California coast, and results indicate that since the 1960s the population has been increasing by 2.5% per year (Breiwick 1999).

The situation with sperm whales is much like that of the large baleen whales. Many features of their basic biology, such as stock structure, distribution, migratory patterns, and feeding ecology, are poorly known. They occur throughout the North Pacific, mostly in deep water south of 50° N latitude, but some are seen in the northern GOA at least in summer (Calkins 1986, Perry et al. 1999). From what is known of their diet, sperm whales eat mostly deep-water fishes and squids. North Pacific sperm whales were intensely harvested, with more than 250,000 killed during 1947 to 1987 (Perry et al. 1999). Current abundance and population trend are complete unknowns.

In contrast to the baleen whales and sperm whale, the smaller toothed whales are primarily resident in the GOA. Very little is known about the biology of beaked whales, but the other species have been relatively well studied. Two species, killer whales and beluga whales, have been selected as focal species for GEM and are discussed in detail in later sections. Harbor porpoises and Dall's porpoises both have relatively large populations, and with the exception of incidental take in commercial fisheries, they are unlikely to have been significantly impacted by human activities (Ferrero et al. 2000). Both species feed on small fishes and squids, with Dall's porpoises using mostly continental shelf and slope areas and harbor porpoises most common in coastal and continental shelf waters (Calkins 1986).

The two resident pinniped species, Steller sea lions and harbor seals, are both focal species for GEM and will be discussed later in this section. Northern fur seals pup and breed on islands in the Bering Sea (Pribilof Islands and Bogoslof Island). A portion of the population migrates through the GEM region on its way to and from their rookeries. Adult fur seals may feed in the GOA during migration and winter months, and non-breeding animals may feed in the area year-round. Small fishes and squids are the primary foods of fur seals (Calkins 1986). Historically, northern fur seals were depleted by commercial harvests, but the population is now large, numbering about 1 million animals, and currently stable (Ferrero et al. 2000). Northern elephant seals pup and breed at rookeries in California and Mexico. After breeding, adult males go to the GOA to feed on deep-water fishes and cephalopods (Stewart 1997). The northern elephant seal population was greatly depleted by harvesting, but it is currently large and growing (Forney et al. 2000).

The sea otter is a focal species for GEM and is discussed later in this section.

As a group marine mammals are managed and protected by domestic legislation and international treaties that generally do not apply to other marine species (Baur et al. 1999) (see Table 10). Early protective efforts were in response to the need to limit commercial harvests and to reduce their impacts on declining and depleted populations. The North Pacific Fur Seal Convention, agreed to in 1911, provided protection to both fur seals and sea otters. In 1946, the International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling began to manage harvests of large whales, and it provided progressive protection to stocks as they became over-exploited. The ESA provides protection to marine mammals (and other species) that may be in danger of extinction because of human activities. The SEA also allows protection of "critical habitat" needed by those species. All species of marine mammals are covered by the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA), which became federal law in 1972. Primary objectives of the MMPA are to "maintain the health and stability of the marine ecosystem," and for each marine mammal species to "obtain an optimum sustainable population keeping in mind the carrying capacity of the habitat." Provisions of the MMPA put a moratorium on all "taking" of marine mammals, with exceptions allowed for subsistence hunting by Alaska Natives, scientific research, public display, commercial fishing, and certain other human activities, subject to restrictions and permitting. Species determined to be below their "optimum sustainable population" level, and those listed as threatened or endangered under provisions of the ESA, are listed as depleted under the MMPA and may be given additional protection. Certain species of marine mammals were determined to have been damaged by the EVOS, and therefore have been subjects of EVOS restoration activities.

Another unique aspect of marine mammal management is the strong involvement of Alaska Natives in the process. Alaska Natives have formed a number of groups that represent their interests in research, management, conservation, and traditional subsistence uses of marine mammals. Groups especially relevant to the EVOS GOA region include the Alaska Native Harbor Seal Commission (ANHSC), the Alaska Sea Otter and Steller Sea Lion Commission, and the Cook Inlet Marine Mammal Council. The ANHSC has been particularly active in the EVOS region, and has received funds from the Trustee Council to conduct a biosampling program in PWS and the GOA, and to contribute information about the distribution, abundance, and health of seals. Congress has recognized the benefits of involving Alaska Natives in marine mammal management, and has included provisions for co-management programs (Alaska Native organizations working as partners with federal management agencies) in the 1994 amendments to the MMPA.

As will be discussed in detail in the following sections, some marine mammal populations have declined in the GOA (and elsewhere in Alaska) in recent years. In general, the causes of those declines are unclear, but there has been speculation that they may be in some way related to the climactic regime shift that occurred in the region. The evidence supporting such a connection is the temporal coincidence of the shift to a warmer regime, which happened in the mid-1970s, and the decline of harbor seals and Steller sea lions that has occurred in the 1970s through the 1990s.

The National Research Council (NRC) reviewed evidence for a linkage between climate and marine mammal declines as part of their effort to explain changes that have occurred in recent years in the Bering Sea (NRC 1996). They found data that showed some likely negative effects of cold weather on northern fur seal pups (Trites 1990) and a strong influence of warm El Niño conditions on California sea lions (Trillmich and Ono 1991). Because most GOA marine mammals have broad ranges that include waters much warmer than the GOA, it is unlikely that a warmer regime has had any direct negative effect on their reproduction or survival. The warmer conditions, however, have resulted in changes in fish and invertebrate populations (Anderson et al. 1997) that may in turn have affected the nutrition of harbor seals and Steller sea lions (Alaska Sea Grant College Program 1993). The NRC concluded that food limitation was likely a factor in Bering Sea pinniped population declines, but that this was due to a complex suite of biological and physical interactions and not simply the regime shift (NRC 1996).

5.11.2 Focal marine mammal species for the GEM program

5.11.2.1 Killer Whale

Killer whales are medium- sized, toothed whales. They are a cosmopolitan species generally found throughout the world's oceans, but most common in colder nearshore waters (Heyning and Dahlheim 1988). Sightings in Alaska show a wide distribution, mostly on the continental shelf, but also offshore (Braham and Dahlheim 1982). Because there has been no real effort to track individual killer whales, the understanding of movements is based primarily on sightings of animals that can be identified by marks and pigmentation patterns (Bigg et al. 1987). The general pattern seems to be that some killer whales may stay in areas for several months while feeding on seasonally abundant prey, but long-distance movements are not uncommon (Ferrero et al. 2000).

In the GOA, killer whales are seen frequently in Southeast Alaska and the area between PWS and Kodiak (Matkin and Saulitis 1994). Within the EVOS GOA region, whales are seen most commonly in southwestern PWS, Kenai Fiords, and southern Resurrection Bay (Matkin et al. 2000). Whales move back and forth between these areas as well as to and from Southeast Alaska (Matkin et al. 1997). Sightings from the area around Kodiak suggest that killer whales are common, but there has been little study effort devoted to that region (Matkin and Saulitis 1994).

Killer whales have been studied in detail in easily accessible areas such as Washington state, British Columbia, Southeast Alaska, and PWS. Researchers have found that killer whales have a very complex social system and population structure. Studies of association patterns (Matkin et al. 1998), vocalizations (Ford 1991, Saulitis 1993), feeding behavior (Ford et al. 1998), and molecular genetics (Hoelzel et al. 1998, Barrett-Lennard et al. in press) have shown that there are two primary types of killer whales. The types are termed "transient" and "resident." A primary ecological difference between the two types is that residents eat fish, while transients mostly prey on other marine mammals (Ford et al. 1998). Within each of these general types, killer whales are divided into pods that may be composed of one or more matrilineal groups. In resident whales, the pods are very stable through time, with virtually no permanent exchange of individuals between pods, but new pods may be formed by splitting off of a maternal group. A third killer whale type called "offshore" has been encountered, but little is known about them (Ford et al. 1994).

What is known of the life history and biology of killer whales in Alaska was compiled in Matkin and Saulitis (1994). Both females and males are thought to become sexually mature at about 15 years of age. Females may produce calves until they are about 40, at intervals of 2 to 12 years. Mating occurs mostly during May through October, and most births happen between fall and spring. Maximum longevity has been estimated to be 80 to 90 years for females and 50 to 60 years for males. Killer whales have no natural enemies, but in some areas, local abundance and pod structure have been affected by human activities, including live captures for public display, interactions with commercial fisheries, and the EVOS (Olesiuk et al. 1990, Dahlheim and Matkin 1994, Matkin et al. 1994, Ferrero et al. 2000, Forney et al. 2000). Normal birth and death rates for resident killer whales are about 2% per year (Olesiuk et al. 1990).

Surface observations and examination of stomach contents from stranded animals have shown that as a group killer whales can and do eat a wide array of prey, including fishes, birds, and mammals (Matkin and Saulitis 1994). More detailed studies have documented considerable prey specialization in certain pods and individuals. Resident killer whales in the PWS feed mostly on coho salmon during the summer (Matkin et al. 1997) and on chinook salmon in winter and spring (Matkin 2000). Transient whales in the same area eat mostly harbor seals, Dall's porpoise, and harbor porpoise (Saulitis 1993, Matkin and Saulitis 1994). Some GOA transient killer whales occasionally eat Steller sea lions (Barrett-Lennard et al. 1995).

It is difficult to come up with meaningful population estimates for killer whales, partly because they may move over great distances and partly because some groups (such as the offshore type) and areas (such as the GOA west of Resurrection Bay) have been poorly studied. Ferrero et al. (2000) gave a minimum estimate of 717 whales in the northern resident stock of the eastern North Pacific, and Forney et al. (2000) gave a minimum number of 376 for the transient stock of the eastern North Pacific. Reliable data on trend in abundance are not available for either stock. The most recent census (1999) indicates that there are 135 killer whales in the eight pods that regularly use the Kenai Fiords-PWS region (Matkin 2000).

Studies of killer whales in the PWS area began in the late 1970s (von Ziegesar et al. 1986, Leatherwood et al. 1990). Because killer whales were determined to have been damaged by the EVOS, killer whale studies were intensified during 1989 to 2000 (Matkin et al. 1994, 2000). Those long-term studies allow accurate determination of numbers, because all individuals in each pod are photoidentified nearly every year. Births and deaths of individual animals are monitored, which allows the calculation of reproductive and survival rates for each pod (Matkin and Saulitis 1994, Matkin et al. 2000).

Matkin et al. (1999) used association and genealogical data to organize the resident killer whales in the EVOS GOA area into nine pods. Data on the number of whales in each of those pods for the period from 1984 to 2000 are shown in Table 11. All resident pods with the exception of AB pod have either increased or stayed the same since 1984. The number of whales in AB pod decreased by 36% from 1988 to 1990 and has stayed about the same since. Since 1990, the recruitment rate for AB pod has been similar to other resident pods, but the mortality rate has been more than twice as high (Matkin et al. 2000).

Table 11. Number of w\hales Photographically Identified in Killer Whale Pods in the GOA EVOS Area, 1984 to 2000

Pod Identifier	1984	1988	1990	2000
Resident Pods				
AB	35	36	23	25
AD05	13	11	12	13
AD16	6	5	5	6
AE	13	12	13	18
AI	6	6	6	6
AJ	25	26	28	36
AK	7	8	9	11
AN10	12	13	13	20
AN20	23	26	29	[1]
Transient Groups				
AT1	22	22	13	10

Source: Matkin et al. 2000 and (Matkin personal communication)

[1] The entire AN20 pod has not been photographed since 1991.

Less is known about transient killer whales, and their stock structure within the eastern North Pacific is less clear. Stock assessment reports have dealt with all transient whales that occur from Alaska to California as a single stock (Forney et al. 2000). Studies have shown, however, that two groups of whales that occur in the EVOS GOA region, called AT1 transients and GOA transients, are genetically and acoustically distinct from one another and from other west coast transients (Saulitis 1993, Barrett-Lennard et al. in press). GOA transients range widely, but are seen only occasionally in the PWS-Kenai Fiords area. The AT1 pod occurs in the PWS-Kenai Fiords area year-round (Saulitis 1993, Matkin et al. 2000). The number of whales in the AT1 pod has declined by more than 50% since 1988, with only 10 individuals remaining in 2000 (Table 11).

The declines in the AB and AT1 killer whale pods are issues of major conservation concern. Thirteen whales, mostly juveniles and adult females, disappeared from AB pod from March 1989 to June 1990, the highest mortality rate ever seen in a resident killer whale pod. Although 12 calves have been born in AB pod since then, there is no clear trend toward recovery because an additional 10 animals have died. For the AT1 transients, 12 whales have died since 1988 and no calves have been recruited to the group since 1984 (Matkin 2000).

The causes of the declines in these two killer whale pods are not entirely clear. Killer whales are only rarely caught incidental to commercial fishing operations (Ferrero et al. 2000). In the mid-1980s, however, the AB pod was involved in a different type of interaction with the longline fisheries for sablefish and halibut (Matkin and Saulitis 1994). Whales removed hooked fish from the lines, and fishermen attempted to deter them by shooting at them and detonating explosives. A number of whales were seen with gunshot wounds, and some of those later disappeared. In spite of eight mortalities during the previous 4 years, the pod numbered 36 animals in 1988, one more than in 1984 (Matkin et al. 1994). In March to September 1989, members of the AB pod were several times seen swimming in oil from the EVOS. Although a direct cause-effect relationship cannot be shown, there is reason to believe that the population decline is in some way due to the spill (Dahlheim and Matkin 1994, Matkin et al. 1994). Members of the AT1 transient group were also seen in oil in summer 1989, and many members of the group were missing the following year and have not been seen since (Matkin et al. 1994, 2000). An additional concern related to the potential effects of contact with oil is the consumption of harbor seals, which AT1 transients feed on to a large extent (Saulitis 1993). Because many harbor seals were coated with oil by the spill (Lowry et al. 1994), the whales may have ingested contaminated prey. In addition, the harbor seal population has decreased. Harbor seal numbers were declining in parts of PWS before 1989; an estimated 300 seals were killed by the spill; and the seal population has continued to decline at least through 1997 (Frost et al. 1994, Frost et al. 1999). Therefore, the lack of recruitment into the AT1 pod may be at least partly caused by the severe reduction of harbor seal numbers in the EVOS GOA region (Matkin et al. 2000).

Other than their general status under the MMPA, Alaskan killer whales have not been afforded any special legal protection. Although the AB pod is part of a larger resident population, the AT1 group is a distinct population that is demographically and genetically isolated from other killer whales. For that reason, protective listing under the ESA may be warranted for the AT1 group.

5.11.2.2 Beluga Whale

Belugas, also called white whales or belukhas, are medium-sized, toothed whales. They have a disjunct circumpolar distribution and occur principally in arctic and subarctic waters (O'Corry-Crowe and Lowry 1997). Recent studies have shown that belugas are separated into a number of discrete genetic groups (stocks), that generally correspond to groups of animals that summer in different regions (O'Corry-Crowe et al. 1997, Brown Gladden et al. 1999). There are four relatively large stocks that range throughout western and northern Alaska and a small stock that occurs in Cook Inlet and the GOA (O'Corry-Crowe and Lowry 1997).

In the GOA, belugas are seen most commonly in Cook Inlet, but sightings have been made near Kodiak Island, in PWS, and in Yakutat Bay (Laidre et al. in press). The fact that there have been several reports of belugas in Yakutat Bay during 1976 to 1998 suggests the possibility of a small resident group there. The other sightings have most likely been of animals from the main Cook Inlet concentration.

Because summer surveys of belugas in Cook Inlet have been conducted at irregular intervals since the 1960s and annually since 1993, beluga distribution in that region is fairly well known (Klinkhart 1966, Calkins 1984, Rugh et al. in press). Belugas may be found throughout Cook Inlet, and in mid-summer they are always most common near the mouths of large rivers in Upper Cook Inlet, especially the Beluga River, the Susitna River, and Chickaloon Bay. Other areas where they have been commonly seen include Turnagain Arm, Knik Arm, Kachemak Bay, Redoubt Bay, and Trading Bay. Rugh et al. (in press) compared the distribution of June and July sightings made in the 1990s with earlier years. They found that the proportion of sightings in Upper Cook Inlet has increased greatly in the last decade, and they conclude that the number of sightings in Lower Cook Inlet and in offshore waters has declined during the years.

In February-March 1997, aerial surveys were conducted with the specific goal of gathering information on winter distribution of the Cook Inlet beluga stock (Hansen and Hubbard 1999). The area surveyed included Cook Inlet and parts of the GOA between Kodiak Island and Yakutat Bay. Almost all beluga sightings (150 out of 160) were in the middle part of Cook Inlet, and the remaining sightings were in Yakutat Bay.

Since 1999, the NMFS National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) has gathered data on Cook Inlet beluga distribution and movements through use of satellite-linked tags. In 1999, one whale that was tagged and tracked for 110 days (from May 31 to September 17) stayed in Upper Cook Inlet (Ferrero et al. in press). To try to obtain information on winter distribution, two tags were attached to whales on September 13, 2000. The whales were tracked until mid-January. During that time, they moved around quite a bit in Upper Cook Inlet, but did not go south of Kalgin Island (NMML unpublished data available at http://nmml.afsc.noaa.gov/CetaceanAssessment/Folder/2000_beluga_whale_tagging.htm).

In many parts of Alaska, including Cook Inlet, belugas are most common in nearshore waters during the summer (Calkins 1986, Frost and Lowry 1990). Proposed reasons for the use of nearshore habitats include the possible advantage of warm protected waters for newborn calves (Sergeant and Brodie 1969), facilitation of the epidermal molt by fresh water and rubbing on gravel (St. Aubin et al. 1990, Smith et al. 1992), and feeding on seasonally abundant coastal and anadromous fishes (Seaman et al. 1985, Frost and Lowry 1990). Although there have been no direct studies of the diet of Cook Inlet beluga whales, at least part of the reason for their congregating nearshore and near river mouths must be to feed on abundant fishes such as salmon and eulachon (Calkins 1984, Moore et al. in press).

There has been no life history information collected from Cook Inlet belugas. Biological characteristics of belugas in other areas were reported by Hazard (1988). Females become sexually mature at 4 to 7 years of age and males at 7 to 9 years. Mature females give birth to calves every 2 to 3 years, mostly in late spring or summer. The maximum life span has not been well defined, but is likely to be about 40 years. In the southern part of their range, belugas are preyed upon by killer whales, and in more northern areas by polar bears.

Beluga whales are difficult to enumerate for a number of reasons. Principal problems are that whales are easy to miss in muddy water or when whitecaps are present, and in all conditions some fraction of the population will be underwater where they cannot be seen. Early survey efforts largely ignored these problems and just reported the number of animals counted, which during the 1960s to 1980s was usually a few hundred. In 1994 the NMFS NMML began to produce annual estimates of population size with standardized aerial surveys of the entire Cook Inlet and a sophisticated set of methods to correct for whales that were missed by observers (Hobbs et al. in press, Rugh et al. in press, Hobbs 2000). For each survey, they reported the number of whales counted and an estimate of the total population size (Table 12). Unfortunately because of problems inherent in counting whales from the air, the annual estimates are imprecise and have a relatively large coefficient of variation. Nonetheless, regression analysis shows a statistically significant population decline during the 7- year period: The 2000 population is most likely at least one-third smaller than it was in 1994. The 95% confidence limits for the 2000 survey were 279 to 679 whales, meaning it is very likely that the true current population size is somewhere in that range.

Table 12. Counts and Population Estimates for Cook Inlet Beluga Whales, 1993 to 2000

Year	Whale Count	Abundance Estimate	Coefficient of Variation
1994	281	653	0.43
1995	324	491	0.44
1996	307	594	0.28
1997	264	440	0.14
1998	193	347	0.29
1999	217	357	0.20
2000	184	435	0.23

Source: (Hobbs, Rugh, and DeMaster in press)and (Hobbs personal communication). ref.

Available data suggest that beluga whales in Cook Inlet rarely become entangled in fishing gear (Ferrero et al. 2000). The largest source of mortality in recent years has been hunting by Alaska Natives. Although harvest data are imprecise, estimates of the annual number of whales killed during 1993 to 1998 ranged from 21 to 123 animals (Ferrero et al. 2000, Mahoney and Shelden in press). This compares to a likely sustainable harvest of about 20 whales from a population of 500.

Because of the population decline and the potential for continued overharvest, several environmental groups and one individual submitted a petition to NMFS in March 1999 requesting that the Cook Inlet beluga whale be listed as an endangered species under the ESA. Responding to the same problems, Senator Ted Stevens inserted language into federal legislation passed in May 1999 that prohibited any hunting of beluga whales by Alaska Natives, unless they had entered into a co-management agreement with NMFS to regulate the hunt. In May 2000, NMFS finalized a designation of depletion under provisions of the MMPA for the Cook Inlet beluga population, and in June 2000, the agency determined that a listing under the ESA was not warranted. There was no legal harvest of Cook Inlet belugas in either 1999 or 2000. NMFS is currently working through provisions of the MMPA to allow a small, regulated take of Cook Inlet belugas to satisfy the cultural needs of Alaska Natives.

Although overharvest by Alaska Natives in the 1990s appears to be sufficient to explain the population decline, concerns that this small isolated population may be vulnerable to other threats remain. Areas of concern that have been identified include commercial fishing, oil and gas development, municipal discharges, noise from aircraft and ships, shipping traffic, and tourism (Moore et al. in press).

5.11.2.3 Steller Sea Lion

Steller sea lions are the largest species of otariid (eared seal). They are distributed around the North Pacific rim from northern Japan, the Kuril Islands and Okhotsk Sea, through the Aleutian Islands and Bering Sea, along the southern coast of Alaska, and south to California (Kenyon and Rice 1961, Loughlin et al. 1984, Loughlin et al. 1992). Most large rookeries are in the GOA and Aleutian Islands. The northernmost rookery, Seal Rocks, is in the EVOS region at the entrance to PWS. Currently the largest rookery is on Lowrie Island, in the Forrester Island complex in southern Southeast Alaska.

Steller sea lions are listed as two distinct population segments under the ESA: an eastern population that includes all animals east of Cape Suckling, Alaska, and a western population that includes all animals at and west of Cape Suckling. This distinction is based mostly on results from mitochondrial DNA genetic studies that found a distinct break in the distribution of haplotypes between locations sampled in the western part of the range and eastern locations, indicating restricted gene flow between two populations (Bickham et al. 1996, Bickham et al. 1998a). Information on distribution, population response, and phenotypic characteristics, also support the concept of two Steller sea lion stocks (Loughlin 1997).

Most adult Steller sea lions occupy rookeries during the pupping and breeding season, which extends from late May to early July (Pitcher and Calkins 1981, Gisiner 1985). Some juveniles and non-breeding adults may summer at or near the rookeries, but most use other locations as haul-outs. During fall and winter, sea lions may be at rookery and haul-out sites that are used during the summer, and they are also seen at other locations. They do not make regular migrations, but do move considerable distances. When they reach adulthood, females generally return to the rookeries of their birth to pup and breed (Kenyon and Rice 1961, Calkins and Pitcher 1982, Loughlin et al. 1984).

Steller sea lions use a number of marine and terrestrial habitats. Adults congregate for pupping and breeding on rookeries that are usually on sand, gravel, cobble, boulder, or bedrock beaches of relatively remote islands. Haul-outs are sites used by adult sea lions during times other than the breeding season, and by non-breeding adults and subadults throughout the year. Haul-outs may be at sites also used as rookeries, or on other rocks, reefs, beaches, jetties, breakwaters, navigational aids, floating docks, and sea ice. With the exception of sea ice, sites used for rookeries and haul-outs are traditional and the specific locations used vary little from year to year. Factors that influence the suitability of a particular area are poorly understood (Gentry 1970, Sandegren 1970, Calkins and Pitcher 1982).

When not on land, Steller sea lions are seen near shore and out to the edge of the continental shelf; in the GOA, they commonly occur near the 200-m depth contour (Kajimura and Loughlin 1988). Studies with using satellite-linked telemetry have provided detailed information on at-sea movements (Merrick and Loughlin 1997). Adult females tagged at rookeries in the central GOA and Aleutian Islands in summer made short trips to sea and generally stayed on the continental shelf. In winter, adult females ranged more widely with some moving to seamounts far offshore. Pups tracked during the winter made relatively short trips to sea, but one moved 320 km from the eastern Aleutians to the Pribilof Islands.

Female Steller sea lions reach sexual maturity at 3 to 6 years of age and most breed annually during June and July (Pitcher and Calkins 1981). Males reach sexual maturity at 3 to 7 years of age and physical maturity by age 10; they establish territories on rookeries during the breeding season, and one male may breed with several females (Thorsteinson and Lensink 1962, Gentry 1970, Sandegren 1970, Gisiner 1985). Territorial males fast for long periods during the pupping and breeding season. Pups are born on land, normally in late May to June, and they stay on land for about 2 weeks, then spend an increasing amount of time in intertidal areas and swimming near shore. After giving birth, sea lion mothers attend pups constantly for about 10 days, then alternate trips to sea for feeding with returns to the rookery to suckle their pup. Unlike most pinnipeds, for which weaning is predictable and abrupt, Steller sea lions may continue to nurse until they are at least three years old (Gentry 1970, Sandegren 1970, Calkins and Pitcher 1982).

Steller sea lions die from a number of causes, including disease, predation, shooting by humans, and entanglement in fishing nets or debris (Merrick et al. 1987). In addition, pups may die from drowning, starvation caused by separation from the mother, crushing by larger animals, and biting by females other than the mother (Orr and Poulter 1967, Edie 1977).

Steller sea lions are generalist predators that mostly eat a variety of fishes and invertebrates (Pitcher 1981, NMFS 2000). Seals, sea otters, and birds are also occasionally eaten (Gentry and Johnson 1981, Pitcher and Fay 1982, Daniel and Schneeweis 1992). Much effort has been devoted to describing the diet of sea lions in the GOA. In the mid 1970s and mid 1980s, the primary food found in sea lion stomachs was walleye pollock. Octopus, squid, herring, Pacific cod, flatfishes, capelin, and sand lance also were consumed frequently (Pitcher 1981, Calkins and Goodwin 1988). In the 1970s, walleye pollock was the most important prey in all seasons, except summer, when small forage fishes (capelin, herring, and sand lance) were eaten more frequently (Merrick and Calkins 1996). Results from examination of scats collected on rookeries and haul-outs in the GOA in the 1990s confirmed that pollock has been overall the dominant prey, with Pacific cod and salmon also important in some months (Merrick et al. 1997, NMFS 2000). The diet of juvenile Steller sea lions has not been studied in detail, but it is known that they eat somewhat smaller pollock than do adults (Frost and Lowry 1986, Calkins 1998). Available data suggest that the average daily food requirement for sea lions is on the order of 5% to 8% of their body weight per day (Kastelein et al. 1990, Rosen and Trites 2000).

Satellite-linked tags attached to sea lions have provided information on the amount of time spent diving and diving depths (Merrick and Loughlin 1997). Adult females in winter spent the most time feeding and dove the deepest, and young of the year spent relatively little time diving to shallow depths. As young of the year matured, foraging effort increased from November to May.

The abundance of Steller sea lions in the western population has decreased greatly since the 1960s, to the extent that the species has been listed as endangered under the ESA. From the mid-late 1970s through 2000, index counts of adults and juveniles for the western population as a whole declined by 83% from 109,880 to 18,193 (NMFS 2000). Declines in the eastern GOA (Seal Rocks to Outer Island) and central GOA (Sugarloaf Island to Chowiet Island) have been of a generally similar magnitude (73% and 87%), but it appears that the decline in the eastern GOA began later than in the western GOA and other regions (Table 13). Counts of pups on rookeries have shown similar declines. Modeling and tagging studies have suggested that the proximate cause of the population decline is probably a reduction in survival of juvenile animals (York 1994, Chumbley et al. 1997). Birth rates are also comparatively low (Calkins and Goodwin 1988), which could be a contributing factor. Population viability analysis suggests that if the decline continues at its current rate some rookeries will go extinct in the next 40 to 50 years, and the entire western population could be extinct within 100 to 120 years (York et al. 1996).

Table 13. Index Counts of Steller Sea Lions in the Eastern Gulf of Alaska (Seal Rocks to Outer Island) and Western Gulf of Alaska (Sugarloaf Island to Chowiet Island)

Survey year	Eastern GOA	Central GOA	Western Stock Total
1976	7,053	24,678	109,880[a]
1985	--	19,002	--
1989	7,241	8,552	--
1990	5,444	7,050	30,525
1991	4,596	6,273	29,418
1992	3,738	5,721	27,286
1994	3,369	4,520	24,119
1996	2,133	3,915	22,223
1997	--	3,352	--
1998	--	3,346	20,201
1999	1,952	--	--
2000	1,894	3,177	18,193

Source: author? (1999)and (NMFS 2000).

Dashes indicate no count in that year.

[1] Uses counts in the Aleutian Islands made in 1977 and 1979

A number of factors have been suggested that may have affected the western Steller sea lion population in the past 3 to 4 decades (Merrick et al. 1987, NMFS 1992, NMFS 2000). There is no evidence that patterns of predation, disease, or environmental contaminants have changed sufficiently to have caused such a major decrease in abundance (Loughlin 1998). In the past, many sea lions were killed in commercial harvests, by incidental entanglement in nets, and by shooting to reduce damage to fishing gear and fish depredation (Alverson 1992). That mortality may have played some part in the early stages of the decline, but such killing has been eliminated or greatly reduced and cannot explain the widespread, continuing decline. Subsistence hunting by Alaska Natives occurs at low levels and is not judged to be an important factor overall (Ferrero et al. 2000). Currently the most likely explanation is that sea lions, especially juveniles, are experiencing higher than normal mortality because they are nutritionally limited (Loughlin 1998, NMFS 2000). The nutritional limitation could be caused by environmental changes that have affected sea lion prey species, competition for prey with commercial fisheries, or some combination of the two.

The decline of the western population of Steller sea lions, and the need to recover the population and protect critical habitat as required by the ESA, have been a major conservation issue in recent years (Lowry et al. 1989, Fritz et al. 1995). Actions proposed to facilitate recovery may have substantial effects on commercial fisheries and coastal communities in the GOA and elsewhere (NMFS 2000).

5.11.2.4 Pacific Harbor Seal

Harbor seals are medium-sized, "earless" seals that are widespread in temperate waters of both the North Atlantic and the North Pacific. In the North Pacific, their distribution is nearly continuous from Baja California, Mexico, to the GOA and Bering Sea, through the Aleutian Islands, and to eastern Russia and northern Japan (Shaughnessy and Fay 1977, Hoover-Miller 1994).

Harbor seals are found primarily in the coastal zone where they feed and haul out to rest, give birth, care for their young, and molt. Haul-out sites include intertidal reefs, rocky shores, mud and sand bars, gravel and sand beaches, and floating glacial ice (Hoover-Miller 1994). From the results of satellite tagging studies in PWS, most adult harbor seals are known to use the same few haul-outs for most of the year (Frost et al. 1996, Frost et al. 1997).

Although it is relatively easy to study harbor seals while they are on haul-outs, their distribution and movements at sea are not as well understood. During 1992 to 1997, as part of EVOS restoration studies, satellite-linked depth recorders (SDRs) were attached to seals in PWS to study their at-sea behavior. Analysis of the tracking data from 49 subadult and adult harbor seals indicated that most tagged seals stayed in or near PWS, but some subadults moved 300 to 500 km east and west in the GOA (Frost et al. 2001, Lowry et al. 2001). Virtually all relocations were on the continental shelf in water less than 200 m deep. Most feeding trips for adults went 10 km or less from haul-outs, and juveniles fed mostly within 25 km. Patterns of diving (effort and depth) varied geographically and seasonally. During

1997 to 1999, SDRs were attached to 27 recently weaned harbor seal pups in PWS. Preliminary analysis of those data (Frost et al. 1998, Lowry and Frost unpublished) did not show any extraordinary movement patterns.

SDRs have also been attached to harbor seals in Southeast Alaska and the Kodiak region. Preliminary results from those tagging efforts have been reported in Small et al. (1997, 1998). The data are currently being analyzed and prepared for publication (Small. R. 2001).

Overall, harbor seals are relatively sedentary and they show considerable fidelity to haul-out sites (Pitcher and McAllister 1981, Frost et al. 1996, Frost et al. 1997). For management purposes, NMFS has delineated three harbor seal stocks in Alaska:

1. The southeast Alaska stock, including animals east and south of Cape Suckling;
2. The GOA stock, including animals from Cape Suckling to Unimak Pass and westward through the Aleutian Islands; and
3. The Bering Sea stock including animals in Bristol Bay and the Pribilof Islands (Ferrero et al. 2000).

During the past several years, an in-depth study of Alaska harbor seal genetics has been conducted by the NMFS Southwest Fisheries Science Center. Preliminary analysis of those data indicate a number of relatively small population units with very limited dispersal among them (O'Corry-Crowe et al. in press), in (Small et al. 1999). Results suggest that within the EVOS area, there are multiple harbor seal stocks that may require individual management attention. NMFS scientists are currently analyzing the molecular genetics data and preparing it for publication. NMFS managers are evaluating those results with the intention of refining stock boundaries for Alaska harbor seals.

Hoover-Miller (Hoover-Miller 1994) summarized available information on Alaska harbor seal biology and life history. Both male and female harbor seals reach sexual maturity at 3 to 7 years old. Adult females give birth to single pups once a year, on land or on glacial ice. In PWS and the GOA, most pupping occurs from mid-May through June. Newborn harbor seals pups are born with their eyes open, with an adult-like coat, and are immediately able to swim. Pups are weaned when they are 3 to 6 weeks old. Once each year in July to September, harbor seals shed their old hair and grow a new coat. During this time, the seals spend more time hauled out than they do at other times. For that reason, the molt period is a good time to count seals to estimate population sizes and trends.

Most information about the diet of harbor seals in PWS and the GOA was collected in the mid-1970s by examination of stomach contents (Pitcher 1980). The major prey overall in both PWS and adjacent parts of the GOA was pollock. Octopus, capelin, Pacific cod, and herring also are eaten frequently. Stomachs of young seals contained mostly pollock, capelin, eulachon, and herring. As part of EVOS restoration studies, blubber samples from PWS harbor seals have been analyzed for their fatty acid composition to examine their recent diets (Iverson et al. 1997), and (Lowry and Frost unpublished). Initial results showed that herring, pollock, other fishes, and cephalopods (a class of squid and octopi) had been eaten. Seals sampled at the same haul-out had similar fatty acid compositions, suggesting that they had fed locally on similar prey. In contrast, seals sampled from areas as little as 80 km apart had different fatty acid compositions, indicating substantially different diets. Small et al. (1999) have examined scats from harbor seals collected near Kodiak and found mostly remains of sculpins, greenling, sand lance, and pollock.

Known predators of harbor seals include killer whales, Steller sea lions, and sharks. The impact of these predators on harbor seal populations is unknown, but may be significant. In PWS alone, killer whales may eat as many as 400 harbor seals per year (Matkin 2000). The incidence of sharks caught on halibut longlines in the GOA has increased greatly in the last decade (Lowry and Frost unpublished data). The degree to which these sharks prey on harbor seals is unknown, but seal remains have been observed in their stomachs (Matkin 2000).

Before the MMPA, harbor seals were hunted commercially in Alaska, and they were also killed to reduce their predation on commercially important fishes (Hoover-Miller 1994). Such kills, which exceeded 10,000 animals in many years, were largely stopped in 1972. The MMPA allowed fishermen to shoot seals if they were damaging their gear or catch and could not be deterred by other means. A few hundred animals probably were killed annually for that reason during 1973 to 1993. In 1994, the MMPA was amended to require that fishermen use only non-lethal means to keep marine mammals away from their gear.

Harbor seals have been and continue to be an important food and handicraft resource for Alaska Native subsistence hunters in PWS and the GOA. The ADF&G Division of Subsistence estimated the size of the harbor seal harvest annually during 1992 to 1998. The average annual kill during that period was approximately 380 seals in PWS and 360 for Kodiak, Cook Inlet-Kenai, and the south Alaska Peninsula combined (Wolfe and Hutchinson-Scarbrough 1999). About 88% of the seals shot were retrieved, and 12% were struck and lost. Although harvests at individual villages have varied from year to year, regional harvest levels have shown no clear trend.

Harbor seals are sometimes entangled and killed in the gear set by several commercial fisheries that operate in the EVOS GOA region. Ferrero et al. (2000) estimated an average minimum annual mortality of 36 animals for the GOA stock. This figure was an underestimate, because there have not been observer programs for several of the fisheries that are likely to interact with harbor seals.

Some harbor seals were killed by the EVOS, at least in PWS (Frost et al. 1994). In August and September 1989, ADF&G flew aerial surveys of harbor seals in oiled and unoiled areas of central and eastern PWS. Results of those surveys were compared to earlier surveys of the same haul-outs conducted in 1983, 1984, and 1988. Before the EVOS, counts in oiled and unoiled areas of PWS were declining at a similar rate, about 12% per year. From 1988 to 1989, however, there was a 43% decline in counts of seals at oiled sites compared to 11% at unoiled sites. Other studies conducted as part of the EVOS damage assessment program showed that seals in oiled areas became coated with oil (Lowry et al. 1994). Many oiled seals acted sick and lethargic for the first few months after the spill. Tests of bile and tissues showed that oiled seals were metabolizing petroleum compounds (Frost et al. 1994). Microscopic examination indicated that some oiled seals had brain damage that would likely have interfered with important functions such as breathing, swimming, diving, and feeding (Spraker et al. 1994). It was estimated that approximately 300 seals died because of the EVOS (Frost et al. 1994). Hoover-Miller et al. (2000) disputed the mortality estimate of Frost et al. (1994), but they admit that the spill had effects on harbor seals and do not provide an alternative estimate of mortality.

Harbor seals are one of the most common marine mammals in the EVOS GOA region. In 1973, ADF&G estimated there were about 125,000 in this region based on harvest data, observed densities of seals, and the amount of available habitat (Pitcher 1984). The most recent population estimate for the GOA harbor seal stock, derived from intensive aerial surveys conducted by NMFS, is 29,175 (Ferrero et al. 2000). Although the methods used to derive the two estimates were very different and they are not directly comparable, the difference does suggest that a large decline in harbor seal numbers has occurred in the GOA.

Counts at individual haul-outs and along surveys routes established to monitor trends confirm the decline and provide some information on the temporal pattern of changes (Table 14). At Tugidak Island (south of Kodiak Island), average molt period counts declined by 85% from 1976 to 1988 (Pitcher 1990), followed by a period of stabilization before a population increase of about 5% per year during 1994 to 1999 (Small et al. 1999). In eastern and central PWS, the number of seals at 25 trend index sites declined by 42% between 1984 and 1988 (Pitcher 1989). Trend counts at index sites have shown that the decline in that part of PWS continued at least through 1997, by which time there were 63% fewer seals than there were in 1984 (Frost et al. 1999). Counts on the PWS trend route were fairly similar in 1994 to 1998 (Table 14), suggesting that the decline in that area may have stopped. In the Kodiak trend area, harbor seal counts increased by 5.6% per year during 1993 to 1999 (Small et al. 1999).

Table 14. Counts of Harbor Seals at Index Sites in the EVOS GOA Region

Year	Tugidak Island	PWS	Kodiak
1976	5,708	--	--
1977	4,618	--	--
1978	3,781	--	--
1979	3,133	--	--
1982	1,918	--	--
1984	1,469	2,488	--
1986	1,181	--	--
1988	966	1,875	--
1989	--	1,423	--
1990	882	1,282	--
1991	--	1,200	--
1992	820	1,133	--
1993	805	1,126	3,129
1994	800	981	3,478
1995	804	1,126	3,855
1996	819	962	3,322
1997	844	929	3,674
1998	880	1,053	4,247
1999	929		4,876

Source: (Pitcher 1990), (Frost, Lowry, Sinclair, ver Hoef, and McAllister 1994), (Frost et al. unpublished), (Small. R. personal communication). FIX

Counts have been adjusted to account for important covariates (see (Frost, Lowry, and ver Hoef 1999), Small et al. in prep.

Mortality of harbor seals caused by people because of fishery interactions, the EVOS, and hunting has been fairly well documented. Each of these causes may be a contributing factor, but it seems unlikely that they could have caused such a widespread and major population decline. Other factors that could be involved in the decline include disease, food limitation, predation, contaminants, and changes in habitat availability. No strong scientific evidence has been produced, however, to suggest that any of these factors has been a primary cause (Sease 1992, Hoover-Miller 1994). A Leslie matrix model for population projection showed that large changes in vital parameters (reproduction and survival) must have occurred to cause the declines in abundance seen in PWS during 1984 to 1989, and that changes in juvenile survival are likely to have the greatest effect on population growth (Frost et al. 1996).

The large decrease in harbor seal abundance in the GOA has been a major concern among scientists, resource managers, Alaska Natives, and the public. After completion of damage assessment, the Trustee Council funded restoration studies to learn about the biology and ecology of harbor seals in the spill area, and to investigate possible causes for the decline (Frost and Lowry 1994, Frost et al. 1995, Frost et al. 1996, Frost et al. 1997, Frost et al. 1998, Frost et al. 1999). At about the same time, Congress began providing funds to ADF&G to be used to investigate causes of the Alaskan harbor seal decline. Those funds were used to initiate harbor seal research programs in Southeast Alaska and the Kodiak area, and to resume long-term studies on Tugidak Island (Lewis 1996, Small et al. 1997, Small 1998, Small et al. 1999, Small and Pendleton 2001). A major part of all those studies has been live-capturing seals and attaching SDRs to them to learn about their movements, foraging patterns, and behavior on land and at sea. As part of the field studies, researchers have weighed and measured each seal, and have taken samples for studies of blood chemistry, disease, genetics, and diet. Some parts of those studies have been completed and published; some are in the analysis and reporting stage; and others are ongoing. As discussed above, the results have added greatly to the understanding of harbor seals in this area and will continue to do so as more of the work is completed.

Any time a wildlife population declines, it is a cause for concern. For harbor seals in PWS and the GOA, however, the concern is magnified because the causes for the decline are unknown and because these seals are an important food and cultural resource of Alaska Natives. In addition, the results of genetics studies are showing very limited dispersal between seals in adjacent areas, suggesting that harbor seals should be managed as a number of relatively small units. So far GOA harbor seals have not been listed as depleted under the MMPA or as threatened or endangered under the ESA. The listing status could change if recovery doesn't happen in some genetically discrete population units.

Harbor seals may have great value as an indicator species of environmental conditions in the GEM region. They are important in the food web, both as upper level predators on commercially exploited fishes and other fishes and invertebrates, and also as a food resource for killer whales and Alaska Native hunters. Because they are non-migratory and have low dispersal rates, changes in their abundance and behavior should be reflective of changes in local environmental conditions in the areas they inhabit. Further, they are relatively easy to study, and during the past 30 years a considerable amount of baseline data has been collected on their abundance, distribution, and other aspects of their biology and ecology.

5.11.2.5 Sea Otter

Sea otters are the only completely marine species of the aquatic lutrinae, or otter subfamily of the family Mustelidae. They occur only in coastal waters around the North Pacific rim, from central Baja California, Mexico, to the northern Islands of Japan. The northern distribution of sea otters is limited by the southern extent of winter sea ice that limits access to foraging habitat (Kenyon 1969, Riedman and Estes 1990). Southern range limits are less well understood, but are likely related to reduced productivity at lower latitudes, increasing water temperatures, and thermoregulatory constraints imposed by the sea otter's dense fur.

Three subspecies of sea otters are recognized: *Enhydra lutris lutris* from Asia to the Commander Islands of Russia, *E. l. kenyoni* from the western Aleutians to northern California, and *E .l. nereis*, south of the Oregon (Wilson et al. 1991). The subspecific taxonomy suggested by morphological analyses is largely supported by subsequent molecular genetic data (Cronin et al. 1996, Scribner et al. 1997). The distribution of mitochondrial DNA haplotypes suggests little or no recent female-mediated gene flow among populations. Populations separated by large geographic distances, however, share some haplotypes (for example, in the Kuril and Kodiak islands), suggestive of common ancestry and some level of historical gene flow. The differences in genetic markers among contemporary sea otter populations likely reflect the following:

- Periods of habitat fragmentation and consolidation during Pleistocene glacial advance and retreat;
- Some effect of reproductive isolation over large spatial scale; and
- The recent history of harvest-related reductions and subsequent recolonization (Cronin et al. 1996, Scribner et al. 1997).

Sea otters occupy and use only coastal marine habitats. The seaward limit of their feeding habitat, which is about the 100-m depth contour, is defined by their ability to dive to the sea floor. Although sea otters may be found at the surface in deeper water, either resting or swimming, they must maintain relatively frequent access to shallower depths where they can feed. In PWS, 98% of the sea otters are found in water with depths less than 200 m and sea otter abundance is inversely correlated with water depth, with about 80% of the animals observed in water less than 40 m deep (Bodkin and Udevitz 1999). Sea otters forage in diverse bottom types, from fine mud and sand to rocky reefs. Although they may haul out on intertidal or supratidal shores, no aspect of their life history requires leaving the ocean. Where present, surface-canopy-forming kelps provide preferred resting habitat. In areas lacking kelp canopies, sea otters rest in groups or alone in open water, but may select areas protected from large waves where available. Sea otters generally feed alone and often rest in groups of 10 or fewer, but also occur in groups numbering in the hundreds (Riedman and Estes 1990).

Relatively few data are available to describe relations between sea otter densities and habitat characteristics. Maximum sea otter densities of about 12 per square kilometer (km^2) have been reported from the Aleutian and Commander islands (Kenyon 1969, Bodkin et al. 2000) where habitats are largely rocky. Maximum densities in Orca Inlet of PWS, a shallow soft-sediment habitat, are about 16 per km^2. Equilibrium, or sustainable densities ,likely vary among habitats, with reported values of about 5 to 8 per km^2. In PWS, sea otter densities vary among areas, averaging about 1.5 per km^2 and ranging from fewer than 1 to about 6 per km^2 (Bodkin and Udevitz 1999, USGS unpublished data).

The sea otter is the largest mustelid, with males considerably larger than females. Adult males attain weights of 45 kg and total lengths of 148 cm. Adult females attain weights of 36 kg and total lengths of 140 cm. At birth, pups weigh about 1.7 to 2.3 kg and are about 60 cm in total length.

Adult male sea otters gain access to estrous females by establishing and maintaining territories from which other males are excluded (Kenyon 1969, Garshelis et al. 1984, Jameson 1989). Male territories vary in size from about 20 to 80 hectares. Territories may be located in or adjacent to female resting or feeding areas or along travel corridors between those areas, and are occupied continuously or intermittently through time (Loughlin 1981, Garshelis et al. 1984, Jameson 1989). Female sea otters attain sexual maturity as early as age 2, and by age 3 most females are sexually mature. Where food resources may be limiting population growth, sexual maturation may be delayed to 4 to 5 years of age.

Adult female reproductive rates range from 0.80 to 0.94 (Siniff and Ralls 1991, Bodkin et al. 1993, Jameson and Johnson 1993, Riedman et al. 1994, Monson and DeGange 1995, Monson et al. 2000b). Among areas where sea otter reproduction has been studied, reproductive rates appear to be similar despite differences in resource availability. Although copulation and subsequent pupping can take place at any time of year, there appears to be a positive relation between increasing latitude and reproductive synchrony (occurring simultaneously). In California, pupping is weakly synchronous to nearly uniform across months; in PWS, a distinct peak in pupping occurs in late spring.

Reproductive output remains relatively constant across a broad range of ecological conditions, and pup survival appears to be influenced by resource availability, primarily food. At Amchitka Island, a population at or near equilibrium density, dependent pup survival ranged from 22% to 40%, compared to nearly 85% at Kodiak Island, where food was not limiting and the population was increasing (Monson et al. 2000b). Post-weaning annual survival is variable among populations and years, ranging from 18% to nearly 60% (Monson et al. 2000b). Factors affecting survival of young sea otters, rather than reproductive rates, may be important in ultimately regulating sea otter population size. Survival of sea otters more than 2 years of age is generally high, approaching 90%, but gradually declines through time (Bodkin and Jameson 1991, Monson et al. 2000b). Most mortality, other than human related, occurs during late winter and spring (Kenyon 1969, Bodkin and Jameson 1991, Bodkin et al. 2000). Maximum ages, based on tooth annuli, are about 22 years for females and 15 years for males.

Although the sex ratio before birth (fetal sex ratio) is one to one (Kenyon 1982, Bodkin et al. 1993), sea otter populations generally consist of more females than males. Age-specific survival of sea otters is generally lower among males (Kenyon 1969, Kenyon 1982, Siniff and Ralls 1991, Monson and DeGange 1995, Bodkin et al. 2000), resulting in a female-biased adult population

The sea otter relies on air trapped in the fur for insulation and an elevated metabolic rate to generate internal body heat. To maintain the elevated metabolic rate, energy intake must be high, requiring consumption of prey equal to about 20% to 33 % of their body weight per day (Kenyon 1969, Costa 1982).

The sea otter is a generalist predator, known to consume more than 150 different prey species (Kenyon 1969, Riedman and Estes 1990, Estes and Bodkin in press). With few exceptions, their prey generally consist of sessile or slow moving benthic invertebrates such as mollusks, crustaceans, and echinoderms. Preferred foraging habitat is generally in depths less than 40 m (Riedman and Estes 1990), although studies in southeast Alaska have found that some animals forage mostly at depths from 40 to 80 m. A sea otter may forage several times daily, with feeding bouts averaging about 3 hours, separated by periods of rest that also average about 3 hours. Generally, the amount of time a sea otter allocates toward foraging is positively related to sea otter density and inversely related to prey availability. Time spent foraging may be a meaningful measure of sea otter population status (Estes et al. 1982, Garshelis et al. 1986).

NOTE TO PHIL from Lloyd: Latin names of prey weren't given in the other sections – take them out of here?? This is an editorial decision that impacts all sections, so it can wait. An author may choose to put Latin binomials in the text, or put them in Appendix as additions to Appendix A.

Although the sea otter is known to prey on a large number of species, only a few tend to predominate in the diet, depending on location, habitat type, season, and length of occupation. The predominately soft-sediment habitats of Southeast Alaska, PWS, and Kodiak Island support populations of clams that are the primary prey of sea otters. Throughout most of Southeast Alaska, burrowing bivalve clams (species of *Saxidomus, Protothaca, Macoma, and Mya*) predominate in the sea otter's diet (Kvitek et al. 1993). They account for more than 50% of the identified prey, although urchins (*S. droebachiensis*) and mussels (*Modiolis modiolis, Musculus* spp.) can also be important. In PWS and at Kodiak Island, clams account for 34% to 100% of the otter's prey (Calkins 1978, Doroff and Bodkin 1994, Doroff and DeGange 1994). Mussels (*Mytilus trossulus*) apparently become more important as the length of occupation by sea otters increases, ranging from 0% at newly occupied sites at Kodiak to 22% in long-occupied areas (Doroff and DeGange 1994). Crabs (*C. magister*) were once important sea otter prey in eastern PWS, but apparently have been depleted by otter foraging and are no longer eaten in large numbers (Garshelis et al. 1986). Sea urchins are minor components of the sea otter diet in PWS and the Kodiak archipelago. In contrast, the sea otter diet in the Aleutian, Commander, and Kuril islands is dominated by sea urchins and a variety of fin fish (including hexagrammids, gadids, cottids, perciformes, cyclopterids, and scorpaenids) (Kenyon 1969, Estes et al. 1982). Sea urchins tend to dominate the diet of low-density sea otter populations, whereas fishes are consumed in populations near equilibrium density (Estes et al. 1982). For unknown reasons, sea otters in regions east of the Aleutian Islands rarely consume fish.

Sea otters also exploit episodically abundant prey such as squid (*Loligo* spp.) and pelagic red crabs (*Pleuroncodes planipes*) in California and smooth lumpsuckers (*Aptocyclus ventricosus*) in the Aleutian Islands. On occasion, sea otters attack and consume sea birds, including teal (*Anas crecca*), scoters (*Melanita perspicillata*), loons (*Gavia immer*), gulls (*Larus* spp.), grebes (*Aechmophoru soccidentalis*), and cormorants (*Phalacrocorax* spp.) (Kenyon 1969, Riedman and Estes 1990).

Sea otters are known for the effects their foraging has on the structure and function of nearshore marine communities. They provide an important example of the ecological "keystone species" concept (Power et al. 1996). In the absence of sea otter foraging during the 20th century, populations of several species of urchins (*Strongylocentrotus* spp.) became extremely abundant. Grazing activities of urchins effectively limited kelp populations, resulting in deforested areas known as "urchin barrens" (Lawrence 1975; Estes and Harrold 1988). Because sea urchins are a preferred prey item, as otters recovered, they dramatically reduced the sizes and densities of urchins, as well as other prey such as mussels, *Mytilus* spp. Released from the effects of urchin-related herbivory, populations of macroalgae responded, resulting in diverse and abundant populations of under-story and canopy-forming kelp forests. Although other factors, both non-living (abiotic) and living (biotic), can also limit sea urchin populations (Foster and Schiel 1988, Foster 1990), the generality of the sea otter effect in reducing urchins and increasing kelp forests is widely recognized (reviewed in Estes and Duggins 1995). Further cascading effects of sea otters in coastal rocky subtidal communities may stem from the proliferation of kelp forests. Following sea otter recovery, kelp forests provide food and habitat for other species, including fin fish (Simenstad et al. 1978, Ebeling and Laur 1998), which provide forage for other fishes, birds, and mammals. Furthermore, where present, kelps provide the primary source of organic carbon to the nearshore marine community (Duggins et al. 1989).

Effects of sea otter foraging are also documented in rocky intertidal and soft-sediment marine communities. The size-class distribution of mussels was strongly skewed toward animals with shell lengths smaller than 40 mm where otters were present; however, mussels with shell lengths larger than 40 mm comprised a large component of the population where sea otters were absent (VanBlaricom. 1988). In soft-sediment coastal communities, sea otters forage on epifauna (crustaceans, echinoderms, and mollusks) and infauna (primarily clams). They generally select the largest individuals. These foraging characteristics cause declines in prey abundance and reductions in size-class distributions, although the deepest burrowing clams (such as, *Tresus nuttallii* and *Panopea generosa*) may attain refuge from some sea otter predation (Kvitek and Oliver 1988, Kvitek et al. 1992). Community level responses to reoccupation by sea otters are much less well studied in soft-sediment habitats that dominate much of the North Pacific, and additional research is needed in this area.

A century ago, sea otters were nearly extinct, having been reduced from several hundred thousand individuals, by a multi-national commercial fur harvest. They persisted largely because they became so rare that, despite exhaustive efforts, they were only seldom found (Lensink 1962). Probably less than a few dozen individuals remained in each of 13 remote populations scattered between California and Russia (Kenyon 1969, Bodkin and Udevitz 1999). By about 1950, it was clear that several of those isolated populations were recovering. Today, more than 100,000 sea otters occur throughout much of their historic range (Table 15), although suitable unoccupied habitat remains in Asia and North America (Bodkin and Kenyon in press).

Trends in sea otter populations today vary widely from rapidly increasing in Canada, Washington, and Southeast Alaska, to stable or changing slightly in PWS, the Commander Islands and California, to declining rapidly throughout the entire Aleutian archipelago (Estes et al. 1998, Estes and Bodkin in press). Rapidly increasing populations sizes are easily explained by abundant food and space resources, and increases are anticipated until those resources become limiting. Relatively stable populations can be generally characterized by food limitation and birth rates that approximate death rates. The recent large-scale declines in the Aleutian archipelago are unprecedented in recent times and demonstrate complex relations between coastal and oceanic marine ecosystems (Estes et al. 1998). The magnitude and geographic extent of the Aleutian decline into the GOA are unknown, but the PWS population appears relatively stable. The view of sea otter populations has been largely influenced by events in the past century when food and space where generally unlimited. As food and space become limiting, however, it is likely that other mechanisms, such as predation, contamination, human take, or disease will play increasingly important roles in structuring sea otter populations.

Table 15. Recent Counts or Estimates of Sea Otter (*Enhydra lutris*) Abundance in the North Pacific

Subspecies	Area	Year	Number	Status
E.l. lutris	Russia	1995-97	21,500	Stable in Kurils and Commander islands, increasing in Kamchatka
E.l. kenyoni	Alaska, USA	1994-99	100,000	Declining in Aleutians, uncertain in GOA and increasing in Southeast
	British Columbia, Canada	1997	1,500	Increasing
	Washington, USA	1997	500	Increasing
E.l. nereis	California, USA	1997	2,200	Uncertain
Total			125,700	

Source: (Bodkin and Kenyon in press). ref?

A number of predators include sea otters in their diet, most notably the white shark (*Carcharadon charcharias*) and the killer whale (*Orca orcinus*). Bald eagles (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*) may be a significant source of very young pup mortality. Terrestrial predators, including wolves (*Canis lupus*), bears (*Ursus arctos*), and wolverine (*Gulo gulo*) may kill sea otters when they come ashore, although such instances are likely rare. Before the work of Estes et al. (1998) predation was thought to play a minor role in regulating sea otters (Kenyon 1969).

Pathological disorders related to enteritis and pneumonia are common among beach-cast carcasses and may be related to inadequate food resources, although such mortalities generally coincide with late winter periods of inclement weather (Kenyon 1969, Bodkin and Jameson 1991, Bodkin et al. 2000). Non-lethal gastrointestinal parasites are common, and lethal infestations are occasionally observed. Among older animals, tooth wear can lead to abscesses and systemic infection, eventually contributing to death.

Contaminants are of increasing concern in the conservation and management of sea otter populations throughout the North Pacific. Concentrations of organochlorines, similar to levels causing reproductive failure in captive mink (*Mustela vison*), occurred in the Aleutian Islands and California, whereas otters from Southeast Alaska were relatively uncontaminated (Estes et al. 1997, Bacon et al. 1998). Elevated levels of butyltin residues and organochlorine compounds have been associated with sea otter mortality caused by infectious disease in California (Kannan et al. 1998, Nakata et al. 1998). Changes in stable lead isotope compositions from pre-industrial and modern sea otters in the Aleutians reflect changes in the sources of lead in coastal marine food webs. In pre-industrial samples, lead was from natural deposits; in contemporary sea otters, lead is primarily from Asian and North American industrial sources (Smith et al. 1990).

Susceptibility of sea otters to oil spills, largely because of the reliance on their fur for thermoregulation, has long been recognized (Kenyon 1969, Siniff et al. 1982) and this was confirmed by the EVOS. Accurate estimates of acute mortality resulting from the EVOS are not available, but nearly 1,000 sea otter carcasses were recovered in the months following the spill (Ballachey et al. 1994). Estimates of carcass recovery rates ranged from 20% to 59% (DeGange et al. 1994, Garshelis 1997), indicating mortality of up to several thousand animals (Ballachey et al. 1994). Sea otter mortality in areas where oil deposition was heaviest and persistent was nearly complete, and through at least 1997, sea otter numbers had not completely recovered in those heavily oiled areas (Bodkin and Udevitz 1994, Dean et al. 2000). Long-term effects include reduced sea otter survival for at least a decade following the spill (Monson et al. 2000a), likely a result of sublethal oiling in 1989, chronic exposure to residual oil in the years following the spill, and spill-related effects on invertebrate prey populations (Ballachey et al. 1994, Fukuyama et al. 2000, Peterson 2000). As human populations increase, exposure to acute and chronic environmental contaminants will likely increase. Improved understanding of the effects of contaminants on keystone species, such as sea otters, may be valuable in understanding how and why ecosystems change.

Human activities contribute to sea otter mortality throughout the Pacific Rim. Incidental mortality occurs in the course of several commercial fisheries. In California, an estimated annual take of 80 sea otters in gill and trammel nets, out of a population numbering about 2,000, likely contributed to a lack of population growth during the 1980s (Wendell et al. 1986). Developing fisheries and changing fishing techniques continue to present potential problems to recovering sea otter populations. In Alaska, sea otters are taken incidentally in gillnet, seine, and crab trap fisheries throughout the state, but total mortality has not been estimated (Rotterman and Simon-Jackson 1988). Alaska Natives are permitted to harvest sea otters for subsistence and handicraft purposes. The harvest is largely unregulated and exceeded 1,200 in 1993, with most of that from a few, relatively small areas. In addition, an illegal harvest of unknown magnitude continues throughout much of the geographic range of sea otters.

Sea otters occupy an important, and well documented, position as an upper-level predator in nearshore communities of the North Pacific. In contrast to most marine mammals that are part of a plankton and fish trophic web, sea otters rely almost exclusively on benthic invertebrates. Because both sea otters and their prey are resources.

Relatively little work has been conducted in investigating relations between those physical and biological attributes that contribute to variation in productivity of nearshore marine invertebrates, such as the clams, mussels, and crabs that sea otters consume, and how that variability in productivity translates into variation in annual sea otter survival. Given the observed variation in sea otter survival, and the recognized role of food in regulating sea otter populations, understanding these relations would provide some empirical measure of the relative contributions of "top-down" (predation) versus "bottom-up" (primary production) factors in structuring nearshore marine communities.relatively sedentary, please correct preceding text they integrate physical and biological attributes of the ecosystem over small spatial scales. Further, both sea otters and their prey occur nearshore, allowing accurate and efficient monitoring of sea otters, their prey, and physical and biological ecosystem attributes. This suite of factors offers a strong foundation for understanding mechanisms, and interactions among factors that regulate long-lived mammalian populations. Given that many populations of large carnivorous mammals are severely depleted worldwide, such an understanding would likely be broadly applicable to conservation and management of natural

5.11.3 General Research Questions

What are the factors responsible for the decline of marine mammal populations?

- What is the role of marine mammal predation (consumption) in structuring their prey populations (plankton, fish, and mammals)?

- What is the relation between abundance of marine mammal populations to the availability and quality of prey species?
- What is the relation between abundance of marine mammal populations and the removals of prey species by fishing?
- What is the relation between reproduction and abundance of marine mammal populations and contaminant burdens?
- How does variation in the amount of food produced affect the geographic distributions, fecundities and survivals of marine mammal populations?

What are the factors responsible for regulation of population size in sea otters?

- Can availability of food become limiting?

Can predation, contamination, human take, or disease play important roles in structuring sea otter populations?

5.12 General Research Questions

5.12.1 Introduction

Organizing the research questions posed by the individual disciplines represented in this chapter is the first step in building the interdisciplinary team approach that GEM hopes to foster in its "core committee" process. (See Chapter 11, Program Management). The hub of scientific activities during implementation will be an interdisciplinary group of senior scientists, a core committee, each of whom will be chosen to represent a different discipline in a multidisciplinary forum. While disciplinary specialties will be more fully represented in subcommittees and work groups that support the core committee, one of the roles of the core committee is to foster multidisciplinary thinking.

Accordingly, the general research questions have been organized to emphasize the need for scientists from different disciplines to work together to understand how the GOA works. As explained more fully in the conceptual foundation discussion (Chapter 6), the GEM program is to be built around the questions of how interannual and longer-period trends in the production and distribution of valued marine resources in the northern GOA reflect cycles in the meteorology, the underlying oceanography of the region, and the influences of man on the dynamics and structure of the ecosystem.

5.12.2 General Research Questions

The following general research questions are organized under three major lessons from the scientific background. Aspects important to detecting and understanding changes in all plant and animal species are covered here, although not all species are mentioned by name.

5.12.2.1 The Importance of Weather

Patterns in current structure, upwellings and convergences, temperature, salinity, and density in the waters of the northern GOA are established in response to strong external meteorological conditions affecting the subarctic region of the North Pacific Ocean and through interactions with the coastal topography and the bathymetry of the shelf and coastal regions.

a. How variable–seasonally and annually–are the cross-shelf and along-shore flows over the shelf and inner coastal regions?

b. Under what oceanographic conditions are shelf eddies formed, what are their sizes and how long do they persist?

c. How are seasonal and interannual cycles in upper-layer stability influenced by the conditions of strong or weak Aleutian Low pressure systems?

d. How frequently are deep bottom waters in coastal fjords renewed, and how is this process related to climate forcing on seasonal, annual and longer time scales?

e. Under what conditions, where, and during which seasons are oceanographic frontal regions formed in the northern GOA? How are these regions affected by swings in the strength of the Aleutian Low Pressure system?

5.12.2.2 The Importance of Nutrient Transport

Primary productivity in the euphotic zone is controlled by amounts and supply rates of inorganic nutrients. The deep waters of the GOA contain some of the highest nutrient concentrations found anywhere. However, the seasonally permanent pycnocline between 110 and 150 m generally restricts deep mixing and access to this valuable pool.

a. How do shelf and coastal eddies, frontal regions and areas of upwelling and convergences affect the supply of inorganic nutrients to the upper layers under different conditions of ocean climate in the GOA?

b. What are the processes by which deep and shallow coastal waters become enriched with nutrients each year? How are nutrient renewal processes influenced by the broader climate-forced oceanography of the GOA?

c. What role does the input of fresh water along the northern coastline play in supplying nutrients and influencing recycling from deeper waters? How is this role affected by varying ocean climate on seasonal, annual, and longer time scales?

d. How important and under what oceanographic and meteorological conditions are marine-derived nutrients brought into coastal watersheds and incorporated in the coastal ecology?

e. What are the conditions that provide sufficient nutrient resupply to the surface waters in the fall to promote a fall plankton bloom?

f. How does winter/early spring physical "preconditioning" of the upper layers promote or constrain plankton production through control of nutrient supply rates and photosynthesis in oceanic, shelf, and coastal waters?

g. How is the energy of the diurnal tides used to promote nutrient resupply in the surface waters at selected locations in the northern GOA?

5.12.2.3 The Importance of Plankton Dynamics

In the northern GOA, open ocean and shelf/coastal plankton communities differ in their species composition and annual production. By definition, deep and shallow currents distribute the plankton, and standing stocks occurring at specific times and places are the result of local productivity and the addition or dilution of stocks by advection.

a. Under what physical conditions and to what extent does the oceanic plankton community invade the shelf environment, including the coastal and inside waters? What role does the intruding plankton play in the ecology of the coastal waters?

b. What is the biological nature of the boundary between the oceanic and shelf pelagic ecosystems, and how is the primary and secondary productivity in these regions phased through time and influenced by the state of the Aleutian Low?

c. How is the efficiency of food-web transfer from plankton to fishes, birds, and mammals influenced by varying levels of the dominant macrozooplankton, including large calanoids, euphausiids, and amphipods?

d. How is the time-varying spatial distribution of the dominant zooplankton reflected in seasonal, annual, and longer-period patterns in eddy formation, frontal regions, convergences/divergences, and cross-shelf and along-shore flows?

e. What are the interacting physical and biological processes that establish levels of recruitment in plankton and nearshore benthic communities? How do these processes vary under different conditions of the Aleutian Low pressure system?

f. How can the effects of human influences on the near-shore benthos be distinguished from natural perturbations?

5.12.2.4 The Importance of Trophic Dynamics

The transfer of energy in food webs (trophic dynamics) supporting fishes, birds, and mammals is influenced by the composition of the forage and its quality and availability. The behaviors of forage species that result in seasonal swarming/schooling or layering provide enhanced opportunities for food web transfers. External factors like fishing, hunting, and contaminant levels may significantly affect population structure and size, thereby altering food webs.

a. How does the species composition and quantity of small schooling fishes in shelf and coastal habitats reflect the state of the cycling ocean climate in the northern GOA?

b. In what way do the conditions that favor the concentration of forage species also favor their levels of productivity?

c. How do fluctuations in abundance and species composition of forage stocks and higher level consumers reflect their unique life history strategies under different conditions of ocean climate–winter, spring, andsummer spawners?

d. How does interspecific competition for food resources among forage fishes affect their distributions and rates of production?

e. How does the distribution and abundance of forage species reflect losses to predators?

f. How do climate-forced shifts in the species composition and abundance of forage species control seabird populations?

g. How can the influences of prey availability on seabird abundance be separated from the effects of regional scale properties unique to colony locations, like glaciers?

h. What is the relationship between commercial fishing and the abundance of seabird populations?

i. Do local trends in the abundance of murres and kittiwakes reflect mesoscale or regional scale climate and oceanographic processes affecting prey availability?

j. To what extent are fish, seabird, and mammal stocks affected by top down influences, including fishing and other harvest practices?

k. How is the recruitment to fish and shellfish stocks with pelagic eggs and larvae influenced by variable transport processes connecting with nursery areas?

l. How do climate-influenced transport mechanisms influence the distributions of the drifting larvae of benthic populations relative to suitable settlement substrates?

m. What life history strategies or other population characteristics of arrowtooth flounder cause this species to be so abundant and widespread?

n. How well are the species composition, relative abundance. and trophic structure of fish and shellfish communities understood based on current sampling and analysis procedures?

o. How can long-term trends in salmon production be explained by climate-induced changes in ocean productivity and variations in fishing?

p. How is salmon production controlled by ecological processes in the ocean? How can individual stocks be identified?

q. How variable is the ocean growth, migratory timing and distribution of salmon, and how is this related to aspects of ocean climate?

r. What are the annual levels of ocean production of salmon by region of origin?

s. How is the abundance and distribution of marine mammals related to the availability of forage stocks?

t. How is he abundance of marine mammal populations related to the removals of prey by fishing?

u. How is the abundance of marine mammal populations related to the body burden of marine contaminants?

v. Which life history stages of fishes, seabirds and marine mammals are most at risk to climate change and which to human influences?

5.13 References

ADF&G. 1998. Report on the failure of western Alaska salmon runs and the link to ocean and climate changes. Juneau, Alaska, Alaska Department of Fish and Game.

Aebischer, N. J., Coulson, J. C., and Colebrook, J. M. 1990. Parallel long-term trends across four marine trophic levels and weather. Nature 347: 753-755.

Ahlnäes, K., Royer, T. C., and George, T. H. 1987. Multipole dipole eddies in the Alaska coastal current detected with Landsat thematic mapper data. Journal of Geophysical Research 92: 13041-13047.

Ainley, D. G. and Broekelheid, R. J. E. 1990. Seabirds of the Farallon Islands. Stanford University Press. Stanford.

Ainley, D. G., Sydeman, W. J., Hatch, S. A., and Wilson, U. W. 1994. Seabird population trends along the west coast of North America: causes and extent of regional concordance. Studies Avian Biology 15: 119-133.

Alaska Sea Grant College Program. 1993. Is it food? University of Alaska.

Allen, M. R., Stott, P. A., Mitchell, J. F. B., Schnur, R., and Delworth, T. L. 2000. Quantifying the uncertainty in forecasts of anthropogenic climate change. Nature 407: 617-620.

Allen, S. E. 1996. Topographically generated, subinertial flows within a finite length canyon. Journal of Physical Oceanography 26: 1608-1632.

Allen, S. E. 2000. On subinertial flow in submarine canyons: effects of geometry. Journal of Geophysical Research 105: 1285-1298.

Alverson, D. L. 1992. A review of commercial fisheries and the Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus*): the conflict arena. Reviews in Aquatic Sciences 6: 203-256.

Anderson, D. W., Gress, F., Mais, K. F., and Kelly, P. R. 1980. Brown pelicans as anchovy stock indicators and their relationships to commercial fishing. CalCOFI .

Anderson, G. C. and Munson, R. E. 1972. Primary productivity studies using merchant vessels in the North Pacific Ocean. Pages 245-251 *in* A. Y. Takenoti, editor. Biological oceanography of the northern North Pacific Ocean. Idemitsu Shoten, Tokyo.

Anderson, P. J. and Piatt, J. F. 1999. Community reorganization in the Gulf of Alaska following ocean climate regime shift. Marine Ecology Progress Series 189: 117-123.

Anderson, P. J. and Piatt, J. F. 1999. Community reorganization in the Gulf of Alaska following ocean climate regime shift. Marine Ecology Progress Series 189: 117-123.

Anderson, P. J., Blackburn, J. E., and Johnson, B. A. 1997. Declines of forage species in the Gulf of Alaska, 1972-1995, as an indicator of regime shift. Pages 531-543 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska.

Anthony, J. A. and Roby, D. D. 1997. Variation in lipic content of forage fishes and its effect on energy provisioning rates to seabird nestlings. Pages 725-729 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Armstrong, D. A., Dinnel, P. A., Orensanz, J. M., Armstrong, J. L., McDonald, T. L., Cusimano, R. F., Nemeth, R. S., Landolt, M. L., Skalski, M. L., Lee, R. F., and Huggett, R. J. 1995. Status of selected bottom fish and crustacean species in Prince William Sound following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Pages 485-547 *in* P. G. Wells, J. N. Butler, and J. S. Hughes, editors. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: fate and effects in Alaskan waters. American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.

Bacon, C. E., Jarman, W. M., Estes, J. A., Simon, M., and Norstrom, R. J. 1998. Comparison of organochlorine contaminants among sea otter (*Enhydra lutris*) populations in California and Alaska. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 18: 452-458.

Bailey, E. P. and Davenport, G. H. 1972. Die-off of common murres on the Alaska Peninsula and Unimak Island. Condor 74: 215-219.

Bailey, E. P. and Kaiser, G. W. 1993. Impacts of introduced predators on nesting seabirds in the northeast Pacific. Pages 218-226 in K. Vermeer, K. T. Briggs, K. H. Morgan, and D. Siegel-Causey, editors. The status, ecology, and conservation of marine birds of the North Pacific. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Bailey, K. M. 2000. Shifting control of recruitment of walleye pollock *Theragra chalcogramma* after a major climatic and ecosystem change. Marine Ecology Progress Series 198: 215-224.

Bailey, K. M., Bond, N. A., and Stabeno, P. J. 1999. Anomalous transport of walleye pollock larvae linked to ocean and atmospheric patterns in May 1996. Fisheries Oceanography 8: 264-273.

Bailey, K. M., Brown, A. L., Yoklavich, M. M., and Mier, K. L. 1996. Interannual variability in growth of larval and juvenile walleye pollock *Theragra chalcogramma* in the western Gulf of Alaska, 1983-91. Fisheries Oceanography 6: 137-147.

Bailey, K. M., Canino, M. F., Napp, J. M., Spring, S. M., and Brown, A. L. 1995a. Contrasting years of prey levels, feeding conditions and mortality of larval walleye pollock *Theragra chalcogramma* in the western Gulf of Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 119: 11-23.

Bailey, K. M., Macklin, S. A., Reed, R. K., Brodeur, R. D., Ingraham, W. J., Piatt, J. F., Shima, M., Francis, R. C., Anderson, P. J., Royer, T. C., Hollowed, A. B., Somerton, D. A., and Wooster, W. S. 1995b. ENSO events in the northern Gulf of Alaska, and effects on selected marine fisheries. California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations Reports (CalCOFI) 36: 78-96.

Bailey, K. M., Quinn, I. T. J., Bentzen, P., and Grant, W. S. 1999. Population structure and dynamics of Walleye Pollock, *Theragra chalcogramma*. Advances in Marine Biology 37: 179-255.

Baird, P. A. and Gould, P. J. 1986. The breeding biology and feeding ecology of marine birds in the Gulf of Alaska. Pages 121-503 MMS/NOAA OCSEAP Final Report 45.

Baird, P. H. 1990. Influence of abiotic factors and prey distribution on diet and reproductive success of three seabird species in Alaska. Ornis Scandinavica 21: 224-235.

Bakus, G. J. 1978. Benthic ecology in the Gulf of Alaska. Energy/Environment '78. Society of Petroleum Industry Biologists, Los Angeles, California 169-192.

Ballachey, B. E., Bodkin, J. L., and DeGange, A. R. 1994. An overview of sea otter studies. Pages 47-59 *in* T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Banse, K. 1982. Cell volumes, maximal growth rates of unicellular algae and ciliates, and the role of ciliates in the marine pelagial. Limnology and Oceanography 27: 1059-1071.

Barrett-Lennard, L. G., Ellis, G. M., Matkin, C. O., and Ford, J. K. B. in press. A propensity for isolationism: genetic analysis of social segregation within and between sympatric killer whale ecotypes.

Barrett-Lennard, L. G., Heise, K., Saulitis, E., Ellis, G., and Matkin, C. 1995. The impact of killer whale predation on Steller sea lion populations in British Columbia and Alaska. Unpublished Report. North Pacific Universities Marine Mammal Research Consortium.

Baumgartner, A. and Reichel, E. 1975. The world water balance. Elsevier. New York.

Baur, D. C., Bean, M. J., and Gosliner, M. L. 1999. The laws governing marine mammal conservation in the United States. Pages 48-86 *in* Jr. J. R. Twiss and R. R. Reeves, editors. Conservation and management of marine mammals. Smithsonian University Press, Washington, D.C.

Beamish, R. J., Leask, K. D., Ianov, O. A., Balanov, A. A., Orlov, A. M., and Sinclair, B. 1999a. The ecology, distribution, and abundance of mid-water fishes of the Subarctic Pacific gyres. Progress in Oceanography 43: 399-442.

Beamish, R. J., Noakes, D. J., McFarlane, G. A., Klyashtorin, L., Ivanov, V. V., and Kurashov, V. 1999b. The regime concept and natural trends in the production of Pacific salmon. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56: 516-526.

Ben-David, M., Bowyer, R. T., Duffy, L. K., Roby, D. D., and Schell, D. M. 1998b. Social behavior and ecosystem processes: river otter latrines and nutrient dynamics of terrestrial vegetation. Ecology 79: 2567-2571.

Ben-David, M., Flynn, R. W., and Schell, D. M. 1997b. Annual and seasonal changes in diets of martens: evidence from stable isotope analysis. Oecologia 280-291.

Ben-David, M., Hanley, T. A., and Schell, D. M. 1998a. Fertilization of terrestrial vegetation by spawning Pacific salmon: the role of flooding and predator activity. Oikos 47-55.

Ben-David, M., Hanley, T. A., Klein, D. R., and Schell, D. M. 1997a. Seasonal changes in diets of coastal and riverine mink: the role of spawning Pacific salmon. Canadian Journal of Zoology 803-811.

Berger, A., Imbrie, J., Hays, J., Kukla, G., and Saltzman, B. 1984. Milankovitch and climate. Reidel. Boston.

Bickham, J. W., Loughlin, T. R., Wickliffe, J. K., and Burkanov, V. N. 1998a. Genetic variation in the mitochondrial DNA of Steller sea lions: haplotype diversity and endemism in the Kuril Islands. Biosphere Conservation 1: 107-117.

Bickham, J. W., Patton, J. C., and Loughlin, T. R. 1996. High variability for control-region sequences in a marine mammal; implications for conservation and biogeography of Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*). Journal of Mammalogy 77: 95-108.

Bigg, M. A., Ellis, G. E., Ford, J. K. B., and Balcomb, K. C. 1987. Killer whales: a study of their identification, genealogy, and natural history in British Columbia and Washington State. Phantom Press. Nanaimo.

Bilby, R. E., Fransen, B. R., and Bisson, P. A. 1996. Incorporation of nitrogen and carbon from spawning coho salmon into the trophic system of small streams: evidence from stable isotopes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 164-173.

Blackburn, J. E. and Anderson, P. J. 1997. Pacific sand lance growth, seasonal availability, movements, catch variability, and food in the Kodiak - Cook inlet area of Alaska. Pages 409-426 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Bodkin, J. L. and Jameson, R. 1991. Patterns of seabird and marine mammal carcass deposition along the central California coast, 1980-1986. Canadian Journal of Zoology 69: 1149-1155.

Bodkin, J. L. and Kenyon, K. W. in press. Sea otters. *in* Feldham. G.A. and B. Thompson, editors. Wild mammals of North America. Johns Hopkins University Press.

Bodkin, J. L. and Udevitz, M. S. 1994. An intersection model for estimating sea otter mortality along the Kenai Peninsula. Pages 81-95 *in* T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Bodkin, J. L. and Udevitz, M. S. 1999. An aerial survey method to estimate sea otter abundance. Pages 13-29 *in* G. W. Garner, S. C. Amstrup, J. L. Laake, B. F. J. Manly, L. L. McDonald, and D. G. Robertson, editors. Marine mammal survey and assessment methods. Balkema Press, Netherlands.

Bodkin, J. L., Burdin, A. M., and Ryzanov, D. A. 2000. Age and sex specific mortality and population structure in sea otters. Marine Mammal Science 16: 201-219.

Bodkin, J. L., Mulcahy, D., and Lensink, C. J. 1993. Age specific reproduction in the sea otter (Enhydra lutris); an analysis of reproductive tracts. Canadian Journal of Zoology 71: 1811-1815.

Boersma, P. D. and Groom, M. J. 1993. Conservation of storm petrels in the North Pacific. Pages 112-121 in K. Vermeer, K. T. Briggs, and D. Siegel-Causey, editors. Status and ecology of temperate North Pacific seabirds. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Bograd, S. J., Stabeno, P. J., and Schumacher, J. D. 1994. A census of mesoscale eddies in Shelikof Strait, Alaska during 1989. Journal of Geophysical Research 99: 18243-18254.

Boldt, J. 2000. personal communication. Fisheries Division, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Juneau, Alaska.

Booth, B. C. 1988. Size classes and major taxonomic groups of phytoplankton at two locations in the Subarctic Pacific Ocean in May and August, 1984. Marine Biology 97: 275-286.

Booth, B. C., Lewin, J., and Postel, J. R. 1993. Temporal variation in the structure of autotrophic and heterotrophic communities in the subarctic Pacific. Progress in Oceanography 32: 57-99.

Bower, A. 1991. A simple kinematic mechanism for mixing fluid parcels across a meandering jet. Journal of Physical Oceanography 21: 173-180.

Boyd, P. W., Watson, A. J., Law, C. S., Abraham, E. R., Trull, T., Murdoch, R., Bakker, D. C. E., Bowie, A. R., Buesseler, K. O., Chang, H., Charette, M., Croot, P., Downing, K., Frew, R., Gall, M., Hadfield, M., Hall, J., Harvey, M., Jameson, G., LaRoche, J., Liddicoat, M., Ling, R., Maldonado, M. T., McKay, R. M., Nodder, S., Pickmere, S., Pridmore, R., Rintoul, S., Safi, K., Sutton, P., Strzepek, R., Tanneberger, K., Turner, S., Waite, A., and Zeldis, J. 2000. A mesoscale phytoplankton bloom in the polar Southern Ocean stimulated by iron fertilization. Nature 407: 695-702.

Braddock, J. F., Lindstrom, J. E., Yeager, T. R., Rasley, B. T., and Brown, E. J. 1996. Patterns of microbial activity in oiled and unoiled sediments in Prince William Sound. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 94-108.

Braham, H. W. and Dahlheim, M. E. 1982. Killer whales in Alaska documented in the Platforms of Opportunity Program. Report to the International Whale Commission 32: 643-646.

Breiwick, J. W. 1999. Gray whale abundance estimates, 1967/68-1997/98: *ROI, RY, and K.* Page 62 in D. J. Rugh, M. M. Muto, S. E. Moore, and D. P. DeMaster, editors. Status review of the Eastern North Pacific stock of gray whales. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Brodeur, R. D. and Ware, D. M. 1992. Long-term variability in zooplankton biomass in the subarctic Pacific Ocean. Fisheries Oceanography 1: 32-38.

Brodeur, R. D. and Ware, D. M. 1995. Interdecadal variability in distribution and catch rates of epipelagic nekton in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Pages 329-356 in R. J. Beamish, editor. Climate change and northern fish populations. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences.

Brodeur, R. D., Boehlert, G. W., Casillas, E., Eldridge, M. B., Helle, J. H., Peterson, W. T., Heard, W. R., Lindley, S. T., and Schiewe, M. H. 2000. A coordinated research plan for estuarine and ocean research on Pacific salmon. Fisheries 25: 7-16.

Brodeur, R. D., Frost, B. W., Hare, S. R., Francis, R. C., and Ingraham Jr., W. J. 1996. Interannual variations in zooplankton biomass in the Gulf of Alaska and covariation with California current zooplankton biomass. California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations Reports (CalCOFI) 80-100.

Broecker, W. S. 1982. Glacial to interglacial changes in ocean chemistry. Progress in Oceanography 11: 151-197.

Brower, Jr. W. A., Baldwin, R. G., Williams, Jr. C. N., Wise, J. L., and Leslie, L. D. 1988. Climate atlas of the outer continental shelf waters and coastal regions of Alaska. Volume I, Gulf of Alaska. Asheville, NC, National Climatic Data Center.

Brown Gladden, J. G., Ferguson, M. M., Freisen, M. K., and Clayton, J. W. 1999. Population structure of North American beluga whales (*Delphinapterus leucas*) based on nuclear DNA microsatellite variation and contrasted with the population structure revealed by mitochondrial DNA variation. Molecular Ecology 8: 347-363.

Brown, E. 2000. personal communication. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Burger, A. E. and Piatt, J. F. 1990. Flexible time budgets in breeding common murres: buffers against variable prey abundance. Studies Avian Biology 14: 71-83.

Burrell, D. C. 1986. Interaction between silled fjords and coastal regions. Pages 187-220 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Byrd, G. V., Dragoo, D. E., and Irons, D. B. 1998. Breeding status and population trends of seabirds in Alaska in 1997. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Homer.

Byrd, G. V., Dragoo, D. E., and Irons, D. B. 1999. Breeding status and population trends of seabirds in Alaska in 1998. Homer, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Cairns, D. K. 1987. Seabirds as indicators of marine food supplies. Biological Oceanography 5: 261-271.

Calambokidis, J., Steiger, G. H., Straley, J. M., Quinn, T., Herman, L. M., Cerchio, S., Salden, R., Yamaguchi, M., Sato, F., Urban, J. R., Jacobson, J., Von Zeigesar, O., Balcomb, K. C., Gabriele, C. M., Dahlheim, M. E., Higashi, N., Uchida, S., Ford, J. K. B., Miyamura, Y., Ladrón de Guevara, P., Mizroch, S. A., Schlender, L., and Rasmussen, K. 1997. Abundance and population structure of humpback whales in the North Pacific basin. Southwest Fisheries Science Center. LaJolla.

Caley, K. J., Carr, M. H., Hixon, M. A., Hughes, T. P., Jones, J. P., and Menge, B. A. 1996. Recruitment and the local dynamics of open marine populations. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 27: 477-500.

Calkins, D. 1986. Marine mammals. Pages 527-558 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Calkins, D. G. 1978. Feeding behavior and major prey species of the sea otter, Enhydra lutris, in Montague Strait, Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fishery Bulletin 76: 125-131.

Calkins, D. G. 1984. Susitna hydroelectric project phase II annual report: big game studies. Vol. IX, belukha whale. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Anchorage.

Calkins, D. G. 1986. Sea lion investigations in southern Alaska. Page 23 Final report to the National Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska region. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Anchorage.

Calkins, D. G. 1998. Prey of Steller sea lions in the Bering Sea. Biosphere Conservation 1: 33-44.

Calkins, D. G. and Goodwin, E. 1988. Investigation of the declining sea lion population in the Gulf of Alaska. Unpublished Report. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Anchorage.

Calkins, D. G. and Pitcher, K. W. 1982. Population assessment, ecology and trophic relationships of Steller sea lions in the Gulf of Alaska. Pages 447-546 in Environmental assessment of the Alaskan continental shelf. U.S. Department of Commerce and U.S. Department of the Interior.

Calvin, N. I. and Ellis, R. J. 1978. Quantitative and qualitative observations on Laminaria digitata and other subtidal kelps of southern Kodiak Island, Alaska. Marine Biology 47: 331-336.

Canino, M. F., Bailey, K. M., and Incze, L. S. 1991. Temporal and geographic differences in feeding and nutritional condition of walleye pollock larvae *Theragra chalcogramma* in Shelikof Strait, Gulf of Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 79: 27-35.

Carlson, P. R., Burns, T. R., Molnia, B. F., and Schwab, W. C. 1982. Submarine valleys in the northeast Gulf of Alaska: characteristics and probable origin. Marine Geology 47: 217-242.

Carroll, M. L. and Highsmith, R. C. 1996. Role of catastrophic disturbance in mediating Nucella-Mytilus interactions in the Alaskan rocky intertidal. Marine Ecology Progress Series 138: 125-133.

Carscadden, J. and Nakashima, B. S. 1997. Abundance and changes in distribution, biology and behavior of capelin in response to cooler waters of the 1990s. Pages 457-468 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Chapman, D. C. 2000. A numerical study of the adjustment of a narrow stratified current over a sloping bottom. Journal of Physical Oceanography 30: 2927-2940.

Chapman, D. C. and Lentz, S. J. 1994. Trapping of a coastal density front by the bottom boundary layer. Journal of Physical Oceanography 24: 1464-1479.

Childers, A. 2000. personal communication. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Chisholm, S. W. 2000. Stirring times in the Southern Ocean. Nature 407: 685-687.

Chumbley, K., Sease, J., Strick, M., and Towell, R. 1997. Field studies of Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) at Marmot Island, Alaska 1979 through 1994.

Cianelli, L. and Brodeur, R. 1997. Bioenergetics estimation of juvenile pollock food consumption in the Gulf of Alaska. Pages 71-76 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Clark, W. G., Hare, S. R., Parma, A. M., Sullivan, J., and Trumble, R. J. Decadal changes in growth and recruitment of Pacific halibut (Hippoglossus stenolepis). draft.

Coats, D. A., Imamura, E., Fukuyama, A. K., Skalski, J. R., Kimura, S., and Steinbeck, J. 1999. Monitoring of biological recovery of Prince William

Sound intertidal sites impacted by the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: 1997 biological monitoring survey. Seattle, NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS OR&R I. NOAA Hazardous Materials Response Division, Seattle, WA.

Connell, J. H. 1972. Community interactions on marine rocky intertidal shores. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 3: 169-192.

Cooney, R. T. 1983. Some thoughts on the Alaska Coastal Current as a feeding habitat for juvenile salmon. Pages 256-268 in W. G. Pearcy, editor. The influence of ocean conditions on the production of salmonids in the North Pacific. Sea Grant College Program, Oregon State University.

Cooney, R. T. 1984. Some thoughts on the Alaska coastal current as a feeding habitat for juvenile salmon. Pages 256-258 *in* W. C. Pearcy, editor. The influence of ocean conditions on the production of salmonids in the North Pacific. Sea Grant Program, Oregon State University, Corvallis.

Cooney, R. T. 1986. The seasonal occurrence of *Neocalanus cristatus, Neocalanus plumchrus,* and *Eucalanus bungii* over the shelf of the northern Gulf of Alaska. Continental Shelf Research 5: 541-553.

Cooney, R. T. 1986. The seasonal occurrence of *Neocalanus cristatus, Neocalanus plumchrus,* and *Eucalanus bungii* over the shelf of the northern Gulf of Alaska. Continental Shelf Research 5: 541-553.

Cooney, R. T. 1988. Distribution and ecology of zooplankton in the Gulf of Alaska. Bulletin of the Ocean Research Institute of Tokyo 26: 27-41.

Cooney, R. T. 1989. Acoustic evidence for the vertical partitioning of biomass in the epipelagic zone of the Gulf of Alaska. Deep-Sea Research 36: 1177-1189.

Cooney, R. T. 1993. A theoretical evaluation of the carrying capacity of Prince William Sound, Alaska, for juvenile Pacific salmon. Fisheries Research 18: 77-87.

Cooney, R. T. and Coyle, K. O. 1982. Trophic implications of cross-shelf copepod distributions in the southeastern Bering Sea. Marine Biology 70: 187-196.

Cooney, R. T. unpublished. Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Cooney, R. T., Allen, J. R., Bishop, M. A., Eslinger, D. L., Kline, T., Norcross, B. L., McRoy, C. P., Milton, J., Olsen, J., Patrick, E. V., Paul, A. J., Salmon, D., Scheel, D., Thomas, G. L., Vaughan, S. L., and Willette, T. M. 2001b. Ecosystem controls of juvenile pink salmon (Onchorhynchus gorbuscha) and Pacific herring (Clupea pallasi) populations in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography

Cooney, R., Coyle, K., Stockmar, E., and Stark, C. 2001a. Seasonality in surface-layer net zooplankton communities in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries

Oceanography

Costa, D. P. 1982. Energy, nitrogen and electrolyte flux and sea-water drinking in the sea otter, Enhydra lutris. Physiological Zoology 55: 34-44.

Coyle, K. O. 1997. Distribution of large calanoid copepods in relation to physical oceanographic conditions and foraging auklets in the western Aleutian islands. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Crane, K. and Galasso, J. L. 1999. Arctic environmental atlas. U.S. Naval Research Laboratory, Office of Naval Research. Washington, D.C.

Crawford, W. R. 1984. Energy flux and generation of diurnal shelf waves along Vancouver Island. Journal of Physical Oceanography 14: 1600-1607.

Crawford, W. R. and Thomson, R. E. 1984. Diurnal period shelf waves along Vancouver Island: a comparison of observations with theoretical models. Journal of Physical Oceanography 14: 1629-1646.

Crawford, W. R., Cherniawsky, J. Y., Whitney, F. A., and Foreman, M. G. G. 1999. Eddies in the Gulf of Alaska and Alaska Stream. EOS, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union 80.

Cronin, M. A., Bodkin, J., Ballachey, B., Estes, J., and Patton, J. C. 1996. Mitochondrial-DNA variation among subspecies and populations of sea otters (Enhydra lutris). Journal of Mammalogy 72: 546-557.

Cummins, P. F. and Oey, L.-Y. 2000. Simulation of barotropic and baroclinic tides off northern British Columbia. Journal of Physical Oceanography 27: 762-781.

Dagg, M. 1993. Grazing by the copepod community does not control phytoplankton production in the open subarctic Pacific Ocean. Progress in Oceanography 32: 163-184.

Dagg, M. J. and Walser, Jr. E. W. 1987. Ingestion, gut passage, and egestion by the copepod Neocalanus plumchrus in the laboratory and in the Subarctic Pacific Ocean. Limnology and Oceanography 32: 178-188.

Dahlheim, M. E. and Matkin, C. O. 1994. Assessment of injuries to Prince William Sound killer whales. Pages 163-171 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Daniel, D. O. and Schneeweis, J. C. 1992. Steller sea lion, *Eumetopias jubatus*, predation on glaucous-winged gulls, Larus glaucescens. Canadian Field-Naturalist 106:268.

Danielson, S. 2000. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Dayton, P. K. 1971. Competition, disturbance, and community organization: the provision and subsequent utilization of space in a rocky intertidal community. Ecological Monographs 41: 351-389.

Dayton, P. K. 1975. Experimental studies of algal canopy interactions in a sea-otter dominated kelp community at Amchitka Island, Alaska. Fisheries Bulletin U.S. 73: 230-237.

Dayton, P. K., Thrush, S. F., Agardy, M. T., and Hoffman, R. J. 1995. Environmental effects of marine fishing. Aquatic Conservation of Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems 5: 205-232.

Dean, T. A., Bodkin, J. L., Jewett, S. C., Monson, D. H., and Jung, D. 2000. Changes in sea urchins and kelp following a reduction in sea otter density as a result of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Marine Ecology Progress Series 199: 281-291.

Dean, T. A., Jewett, S. C., Laur, D. R., and Smith, R. O. 1996b. Injury to epibenthic invertebrates resulting from the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 424-439.

Dean, T. A., Stekoll, M. S., and Smith, R. O. 1996a. Kelps and oil: the effects of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill on subtidal algae. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 412-423.

Dean, T. A., Stekoll, M. S., Jewett, S. C., Smith, R. O., and Hose, J. E. 1998. Eelgrass (Zostera marina L.) in Prince William Sound, Alaska: effects of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Marine Pollution Bulletin 36: 201-210.

DeGange, A. R. and Sanger, G. A. 1986. Marine birds. Pages 479-526 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

DeGange, A. R., Doroff, A. M., and Monson, D. H. 1994. Experimental recovery of sea otter carcasses at Kodiak Island, Alaska, following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Marine Mammal Science 10: 492-496.

Denman, K. L., Freeland, H. J., and Mackas, D. L. 1989. Comparison of time scales for biomass transfer up the marine food web and coastal transport processes. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 108: 255-264.

Denny, M. W. 1988. Biology and mechanics of the wave-swept environment. Princeton University Press. Princeton.

Dethier, M. N. and Duggins, D. O. 1988. Variations in strong interactions in the intertidal zone along a geographic gradient: a Washington-Alaska comparison. Marine Ecology Progress Series 50: 97-105.

Divoky, G. J. 1998. Factors affecting the growth of a black guillemot colony in northern Alaska. University of Alaska. Fairbanks.

Dizon, A. E., Chivers, S. J., and Perrin, W. F. 1997. Molecular genetics of marine mammals. The Society for Marine Mammalogy Spec. Publ. No. 3: 388.

Dodimead, A. J., Favorite, F., and Hirano, T. 1963. Salmon of the North Pacific Ocean. Part II. Review of oceanography of the subarctic Pacific region. International North Pacific Fisheries Commission Bulletin 13: 1-195.

Doroff, A. M. and Bodkin, J. L. 1994. Sea otter foraging behavior and hydrocarbon levels in prey. Pages 193-208 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Doroff, A. M. and DeGange, A. R. 1994. Sea otter, Enhydra lutris, prey composition and foraging success in the northern Kodiak Archipelago. Fishery Bulletin 92: 704-710.

Driskell, W. B., Fukuyma, A. K., Houghton, J. P., Lees, D. C., Mearns, A. J., and Shigenaka, G. 1996. Recovery of Prince William Sound intertidal infauna from *Exxon Valdez* oiling and shoreline treatments, 1989 through 1992. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 362-378.

Duggins, D. O., Simenstad, C. A., and Estes, J. A. 1989. Magnification of secondary production by kelp detritus in coastal marine ecosystems. Science 245: 170-173.

Ebeling, A. W. and Laur, D. R. 1998. Fish populations in kelp forests without sea otters: effects of severe storm damage and destructive sea urchin grazing. Pages 169-191 *in* G. R. VanBlaricom and J. A. Estes, editors. The community ecology of sea otters. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Ebert, T. A. and Lees, D. C. 1996. Growth and loss of tagged individuals of the predatory snail Nucella lamellosa in areas within the influence of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill in Prince William Sound. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 349-361.

Edie, A. G. 1977. Distribution and movements of Steller sea lion cows (*Eumetopias jubata*) on a pupping colony. University of British Columbia,Vancouver.

Egbert, G. D. and Ray, R. D. 2000. Significant dissipation of tidal energy in the deep ocean inferred from satellite alimeter data. Nature 405: 775-778.

Emery, W. J. and Hamilton, K. 1985. Atmospheric forcing of interannual variability in the northeast Pacific Ocean: connections with El Niño. Journal of Geophysical Research 90: 857-868.

Enfield, D. 1997. Multi-scale climate variabillity: besides ENSO, what else?, in a colloquim on El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO): atmospheric, oceanic, societal, environmental and policy perspectives. July 20-August 1, 1997, Boulder, Colorado.

Erickson, D., Pikitich, E., Suuronen, P., Lehtonen, E., Bublitz, C., Klinkert, C., and Mitchell, C. 1999. Selectivity and mortality of walleye pollock escaping from the codend and intermediate (extension) selection of a pelagic trawl. Final Report. Anchorage.

Erikson, D. E. 1995. Surveys of murre colony attendacne in the northern Gulf of Alaska following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Pages 780-819 in P. G. Wells, J. N. Butler, and J. S. Hughes, editors. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: fate and effects in Alaskan waters. American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.

Eslinger, D., Cooney, R. T., McRoy, C. P., Ward, A., Kline, T., Simpson, E. P., Wang, J., and Allen, J. R. 2001. Plankton dynamics: observed and modeled responses to physical factors in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography in press

Estes, J. A. 1999. Response to Garshelis and Johnson. Science 283: 175.

Estes, J. A. and Bodkin, J. L. in press. Marine otters. *in* W. F. Perrin, B. Wursig, H. G. M. Thewissen, and C. R. Crumly, editors. Encyclopedia of marine mammals. Academic Press.

Estes, J. A. and Duggins, D. O. 1995. Sea otters and kelp forests in Alaska: generality and variation in a community ecological paradigm. Ecological Monographs 65: 75-100.

Estes, J. A. and Harrold, C. 1988. Sea otters, sea urchins, and kelp beds: some questions of scale. Pages 116-142 *in* G. R. VanBlaricom and J. A. Estes, editors. The community ecology of sea otters. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Estes, J. A. and Palmisano, J. F. 1974. Sea otters: their role in structuring nearshore communities. Science 185: 1058-1060.

Estes, J. A., Bacon, C. E., Jarman, W. M., Norstrom, R. J., Anthony, R. G., and Miles, A. K. 1997. Organochlorines in sea otters and bald eagles from the Aleutian Archipelago. Marine Pollution Bulletin 34: 486-490.

Estes, J. A., Jameson, R. J., and Rhode, E. B. 1982. Activity and prey selection in the sea otter: influence of population status on community structure. American Naturalist 120: 242-258.

Estes, J. A., Tinker, M. T., Williams, T. M., and Doak, D. F. 1998. Killer whale predation on sea otters linking oceanic and nearshore ecosystems. Science 282: 473-476.

EVOSTC. 2000. Gulf Ecosystem Monitoring (GEM) Program National Research Council review draft. Anchorage, Alaska, *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill Trustee Council.

Farmer, D. M. and Smith, J. D. 1980. Generation of lee waves over the sill in Knight Inlet, in fjord oceanography. Pages 259-270 *in* H. J. Freelan, D. M. Farmer, and C. D. Levings, editors. NATO conference on fjord oceanography, Victoria, B.C., 1979. Plenum Press, New York.

Favorite, F. 1974. Flow into the Bering Sea through Aleutian Island passes. Pages 3-38 *in* D. W. Hood and E. J. Kelley, editors. Oceanography of the Bering Sea with emphasis on renewable resources: proceeding of an international symposium. Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Favorite, F., Dodimead, A. J., and Nasu, K. 1976. Oceanography of the subarctic Pacific region, 1960-71. International North Pacific Fisheries Commission Bulletin No. 33, 1-187.

Feder, H. M. and Blanchard, A. 1998. The deep benthos of Prince William Sound, Alaska, 16 months after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Marine Pollution Bulletin 36: 118-130.

Feder, H. M. and Jewett, S. C. 1986. The subtidal benthos. Pages 347-398 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Feder, H. M. and Kaiser, G. E. 1980. Intertidal biology. *in* J. M. Colonell, editor. Port Valdez, Alaska: environmental studies 1976-1979. Institute of Marine Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Feder, H. M. and Paul, A. J. 1974. Age, growth and size-weight relationships of the soft-shell clam, *Mya arenaria*, in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Pages 45-52 Proceedings national shellfisheries association. University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Feder, H. M. and Paul, A. J. 1980a. Food of the king crab, *paralithodes camtschatica* and the dungeness crab, *cancer magister* in Cook Inlet, Alaska. Pages 240-246 Proceedings of the national shellfisheries association. University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Feder, H. M. and Paul, A. J. 1980b. Seasonal trends in meiofaunal abundance on two beaches in Port Valdez, Alaska. Syesis 13: 27-36.

Feder, H. M., Naidu, A. S., and Paul, A. J. 1990. Trace-element and biotic changes following a simulated oil-spill on a mudflat in Port Valdez, Alaska. Marine Pollution Bulletin 21: 131-137.

Ferrero, R. C., DeMaster, D. P., Hill, P. S., Muto, M., and Lopez, A. L. 2000. Alaska marine mammal stock assessments, 2000. U.S. Department of Commerce. Seattle.

Ferrero, R. C., Moore, S. E., and Hobbs, R. C. in press. Development of beluga, Delphinapterus leucas, capture and satellite tagging protocol in Cook Inlet, Alaska. Marine Fisheries Review, Special Issue.

Finney, B. P. 1998. Long-term variability of Alaska sockeye salmon abundance determined by analysis of sediment cores. North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission Bulletin 388-395.

Finney, B. P., Gregory-Eaves, I., Sweetman, J., Douglas, M. S. V., and Smol, J. P. 2000. Impacts of climatic change and fishing on Pacific salmon abundance over the past 300 years. Science 290: 795-799.

Flather, R. A. 1988. A numerical investigation of tides and diurnal-period continental shelf waves along Vancouver Island. Journal of Physical Oceanography 18: 115-139.

Ford, J. K. B. 1991. Vocal traditions among resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in coastal waters of British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Zoology 69: 1454-1483.

Ford, J. K. B., Ellis, G. M., Barrett-Lennard, L. G., Morton, A. B., and Balcomb III, K. C. 1998. Dietary specialization in two sympatric populations of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in coastal British Columbia and adjacent waters. Canadian Journal of Zoology 76: 1456-1471.

Ford, J. K. B., Ellis, G., and Balcomb, K. C. 1994. Killer whales: the natural history and genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington state. University of British Columbia Press and University of Washington Press. Vancouver and Seattle.

Foreman, M. G. G. and Thomson, R. E. 1997. Three-dimensional model simulations of tides and buoyancy currents along the west coast of Vancouver Island. Journal of Physical Oceanography 27: 1300-1325.

Foreman, M. G. G., Crawford, W. R., Cherniawsky, J. Y., Henry, R. F., and Tarbotton, M. R. 2000. A high-resolution assimilating tidal model for the northeast Pacific Ocean. Journal of Geophysical Research 105: 28629-28651.

Forney, K. A., Barlow, J., Muto, M. M., Lowry, M., Baker, J., Cameron, G., Mobley, J., Stinchcomb, C., and Caretta, J. V. 2000. U. S. Pacific marine mammal stock assessments: 2000. U. S. Department of Commerce.

Foster, M. S. 1990. Organization of macroalgal assemblages in the Northeast Pacific: the assumption of homogeneity and the illusion of generality. Hydrobiologia 192: 21-33.

Foster, M. S. and Schiel, D. R. 1988. Kelp communities and sea otters: keystone species or just another brick in the wall. Pages 92-108 *in* G. R. VanBlaricom and J. A. Estes, editors. The community ecology of sea otters. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Foy, R. J. and Paul, A. J. 1999. Winter feeding and changes in somatic energy content for age 0 Pacific herring in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 128: 1193-1200.

Francis, R. C. and Hare, S. R. 1994. Decadal-scale regime shifts in the large marine ecosystems of the northeast Pacific: a case for historical science. Fisheries Oceanography 1-12.

Francis, R. C., Hare, S. R., Hollowed, A. B., and Wooster, W. S. 1998. Effects of interdecadal climate variability on the oceanic ecosystems of the northeast Pacific. Fisheries Oceanography 7: 1-21.

Francis, R. C., Hare, S. R., Hollowed, A. B., and Wooster, W. S. 1998. Effects of interdecadal climate variability on the oceanic ecosystems of the northeast Pacific. Fisheries Oceanography 7: 1-21.

Freeland, H. J. and Denman, K. L. 1982. A topographically controlled upwelling center off southern Vancouver Island. Journal of Marine Research 40: 1069-1093.

Freeland, H. J. and Farmer, D. M. 1980. Circulation and energetics of a deep, strongly stratified inlet. Canadian Journal of Aquatic Science 37: 1398-1410.

Freeland, H. J., Denman, K. L., Wong, C. S., Whitney, F., and Jacques, R. 1997. Evidence of change in the winter mixed layer in the northeast Pacific Ocean. Deep-Sea Research 44: 2117-2129.

Fritz, L. W., Ferrero, R. C., and Berg, R. J. 1995. The threatened status of Steller sea lions, Eumetopias jubatus, under the Endangered Species Act: effects on Alaska groundfish fisheries management. Marine Fisheries Review 57: 14-27.

Frost, B. W. 1983. Interannual variation of zooplankton standing stock in the open Gulf of Alaska. Pages 146-157 in W. S. Wooster, editor. From year to year: interannual variability of the environment and fisheries of the Gulf of Alaska and eastern Bering Sea. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington, Seattle.

Frost, B. W. 1991. The role of grazing in nutrient rich areas of the open sea. Limnology and Oceanography 36: 1616-1630.

Frost, B. W. 1993. A modeling study of processes regulating plankton standing stock and production in the open Subarctic Pacific Ocean. Progress in Oceanography 32: 17-56.

Frost, K. F. and Lowry, L. F. 1994. Habitat use, behavior, and monitoring of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 93046). Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Wildlife Conservation Division. Fairbanks.

Frost, K. J. and Lowry, L. F. 1986. Sizes of walleye pollock, Theragra chalcogramma, consumed by marine mammmals in the Bering Sea. Fishery Bulletin 84: 192-197.

Frost, K. J. and Lowry, L. F. 1990. Distribution, abundance, and movements of beluga whales, *Delphinapterus leucas*, in coastal waters of western Alaska. Advances in research on the beluga whale, *Delphinapterus leucas*. Pages 39-57 in T. G. Smith, D. J. St. Aubin, and J. R. Geraci, editors. Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., and Ver Hoef, J. 1995. Habitat use, behavior, and monitoring of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 94064 and 94320F). Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Wildlife Conservation Division. Anchorage.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., and Ver Hoef, J. M. 1998. Monitoring, habitat use and trophic interactions of harbor seals in Prince William Sound. *Exxon Valdez* Oil Spill Restoration Office. Anchorage.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., and ver Hoef, J. M. 1999. Monitoring the trend of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska, after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Marine Mammal Science 15: 494-506.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., Sinclair, E. H., ver Hoef, J., and McAllister, D. C. 1994. Impacts on distribution, abundance, and productivity of harbor seals. Pages 97-118 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., Small, J., and Iverson, S. J. 1996. Monitoring, habitat use, and trophic interactions of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 95064). Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Wildlife Conservation. Fairbanks.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., Ver Hoef, J. M., and Iverson, S. J. 1997. Monitoring, habitat use, and trophic interactions of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 96064). Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Wildlife Conservation. Fairbanks.

Frost, K. J., Lowry, L. F., Ver Hoef, J. M., Iverson, S. J., and Gotthardt, T. 1998. Monitoring, habitat use, and trophic interactions of harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 97064). Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Wildlife Conservation. Fairbanks.

Frost, K. J., Manen, C. A., and Wade, T. L. 1994. Petroleum hydrocarbons in tissues of harbor seals from Prince William Sound and the Gulf of Alaska. Pages 331-358 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Frost, K. J., Simpkins, M. A., and Lowry, L. F. 2001. Diving behavior of non-pup harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 17

Fukuyama, A. K., Shigenaka, G., and Hoff, R. Z. 2000. Effects of residual Exxon Valdez oil on intertidal Protothaca staminea: mortality, growth, and bioaccumulation of hydrocarbons in transplanted clams. Marine Pollution Bulletin 40: 1042-1050.

Fulton, J. D. 1983. Seasonal and annual variations of net zooplankton at Ocean Station "P", 1956-1980. Canadian Data Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 374: 65.

Funk, F. 2000. Abundance, biology, and historical trends of Pacific herring, *Clupea pallasi*, in Alaskan waters. REX workshop: trends in herring populations and trophodynamics. IX, PICES.

Furness, R. W. and Nettleship, D. N. C. 1991. Seabirds as monitors of changing marine environments. Proceedings of the International Ornithological Congress 20: 2237-2280.

Gaines, S. D. and Roughgarden, J. 1987. Fish and offshore kelp forests affect recruitment to intertidal barnacle populations. Science 235: 479-481.

Ganopolski, A. and Rahmstorf, S. 2001. Rapid changes of glacial climate simulated in a coupled climate model. Nature 409: 153-158.

Gargett, A. 1997. Optimal stability window: A mechanism underlying decadal fluctuations in north Pacific salmon stocks. Fisheries Oceanography 109-117.

Garrett, C. J. R. and Loder, J. W. 1981. Dynamical aspects of shallow sea fronts. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London A302: 563-581.

Garshelis, D. L. 1997. Sea otter mortality estimated from carcasses collected after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Conservation Biology 11: 905-916.

Garshelis, D. L., Garshelis, J. A., and Kimker, A. T. 1986. Sea otter time budgets and prey relationships in Alaska. Journal of Wildlife Management 50: 637-647.

Garshelis, D. L., Johnson, A. M., and Garshelis, J. A. 1984. Social organization of sea otters in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Canadian Journal of Zoology 62: 2648-2658.

Gawarkiewicz, G. 1991. Linear stability models of shelfbreak fronts. Journal of Physical Oceanography 21: 471-488.

Gawarkiewicz, G. and Chapman, D. C. 1992. The role of stratification in the formation and maintenance of shelf-break fronts. Journal of Physical Oceanography 22: 753-772.

Gentry, R. L. 1970. Social behavior of the Steller sea lion. University of California,Santa Cruz.

Gentry, R. L. and Johnson, J. H. 1981. Predation by sea lions on northern fur seal neonates. 45: 423-430.

Gilfillan, E. S., Page, D. S., Harner, E. J., and Boehm, P. D. 1995a. Shoreline ecology program for Prince William Sound, Alaska, following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: part 3 - biology. Pages 398-443 *in* P. G. Wells and J.N. Butler & J.S. Hughes, editors. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: fate and effects in Alaskan waters. American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.

Gilfillan, E. S., Suchanek, T. H., Boehm, P. D., Harner, E. J., Page, D. S., and Sloan, N. A. 1996b. Shoreline impacts in the Gulf of Alaska region following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Pages 444-487 *in* P. G. Wells, J. N. Butler, and J. S. Hughes, editors. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: fate and effects in Alaskan waters. American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.

Gill, V. A. 1999. Breeding performance of black-legged kittiwakes (*Rissa tridactyla*) in relation to food availability: a controlled feeding experiment. Anchorage, University of Alaska.

Gill, V. and Hatch, S. unpublished data. U.S. Geological Survey, Anchorage, Alaska.

Gisiner, R. C. 1985. Male territorial and reproductive behavior in the Steller sea lion, *Eumetopias jubatus*. University of California,Santa Cruz.

Goering, J. J., Shiels, W. E., and Patton, C. J. 1973. Primary production. Pages 253-279 in D. W. Hood, W. E. Shiels, and E. J. Kelley, editors. Evironmental studies of Port Valdez. Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Groot, C. and Margolis, L. 1991. Pacific salmon life histories. University of British Columbia Press. Vancouver.

Haldorson, L. 2001. Fisheries Division, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Juneau, Alaska.

Hampton, M. A., Carlson, P. R., and Lee, H. J. 1986. Geomorphology, sediment and sedimentary processes. Pages 93-143 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Hansen, D. J. and Hubbard, J. D. 1999. Distribution of Cook Inlet beluga whales (*Delphinapterus leucas*) in winter. U.S.Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service. Anchorage.

Hare, S. R. and Mantua, N. J. 2000. Empirical evidence for North Pacific regime shifts in 1977 and 1989. Progress in Oceanography 47: 103-146.

Hare, S. R., Mantua, N. J., and Francis, R. C. 1999. Inverse production regimes: Alaska and west coast Pacific salmon. Fisheries 24: 6-14.

Hart, J. L. 1973. Pacific fishes of Canada. Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 180: 740.

Hatch, S. 2001. U.S. Geological Survery, Anchorage, Alaska.

Hatch, S. A. 1984. Nestling diet and feeding rates of rhinoceros auklets in Alaska. Pages 106-115 in D. N. Nettleship, G. A. Sanger, and P. F. Springer, editors. Marine birds: their feeding ecology and commercial fisheries relationships. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Hatch, S. A. 1993. Ecology and population status of northern fulmars (*Fulmarus glacialis*) of the North Pacific. Pages 82-92 in K. Vermeer, K. T. Briggs, K. H. Morgan, and D. Siegel-Causey, editors. Status, ecology, and conservation of marine birds of the North Pacific. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Hatch, S. A. and Hatch, M. A. 1983. Populations and habitat use of marine birds in the Semidi Islands. Murrelet 64: 39-46.

Hatch, S. A. and Hatch, M. A. 1989. Attendance patterns of murres at breeding sites: implications for monitoring. Journal of Wildlife Management 53: 483-493.

Hatch, S. A. and Sanger, G. A. 1992. Puffins as samplers of juvenile pollock and other forage fish in the Gulf of Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 80: 1-14.

Hatch, S. A., Byrd, G. V., Irons, D. B., and Hunt, G. L. 1993. Status and ecology of kittiwakes (*Rissa tridactyla* and *R. brevirostris*) in the North Pacific. Pages 140-153 *in* K. Vermeer, K. T. Briggs, K. H. Morgan, and D. Siegel-Causey, editors. The status, ecology and conservation of marine birds of the North Pacific. Canadian Wildlife Service, Special Publication, Ottawa.

Hatch, S. and Gill, V. unpublished data. U.S. Geological Survey, Anchorage, Alaska.

Hatch, S. unpublished data. U.S. Geological Survery, Anchorage, Alaska.

Hay, D. E., Boutillier, J., Joyce, M., and Langford, G. 1997. The eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) as an indicator species in the North Pacific. Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Fairbanks, Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska.

Hayes, D. L. and Kuletz, K. J. 1997. Decline of pigeon guillemot populations in Prince William Sound, Alaska, and apparent changes in distribution and abundance of their prey. Pages 699-702 Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, Fairbanks.

Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J., and Skackleton, N. J. 1976. Variations in the Earth's orbit: pacemaker of the ice ages. Science 194: 1121-1132.

Hazard, K. 1988. Beluga whale, *Delphinapterus leucas*. Pages 195-235 in J. W. Lentfer, editor. Selected marine mammals of Alaska. Species accounts with research and management recommendations. U.S. Marine Mammal Commission, Washington, D.C.

Heggie, D. T. and Burrell, D. C. 1981. Deepwater renewals and oxygen consumption in an Alaskan fjord. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 83-99.

Heinrich, A. K. 1962. The life history of plankton animals and seasonal cycles of plankton communities in the oceans. Journal du Conseil Conseil International pour l'Exploration de la Mer 27: 15-24.

Heyning, J. E. and Dahlheim, M. E. 1988. *Orcinus orca*. Mammalian Species 304: 1-9.

Hickey, B. M. 1997. The response of a steep-sided narrow canyon to strong wind forcing. Journal of Physical Oceanography 27: 697-726.

Highsmith, R. C., Rucker, T. L., Stekoll, M. S., Saupe, S. M., Lindeberg, M. R., Jenne, R. N., and Erickson, W. P. 1996. Impact of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill on intertidal biota. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 212-237.

Highsmith, R. C., Stekoll, M. S., Barber, W. E., Deysher, L., McDonald, L., Strickland, D., and Erickson, W. P. 1994a. Comprehensive assessment of coastal habitat, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill state/federal natural resource damage assessment final report (Coastal Habitat Study Number 1A). Fairbanks, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska. Coastal Habitat Study Number 1A.

Highsmith, R. C., Stekoll, M. S., Barber, W. E., Deysher, L., McDonald, L., Strickland, D., and Erickson, W. P. 1994b. Comprehensive assessment of coastal habitat, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill state/federal natural resource damage assessment final report (Coastal Habitat Study Number 1A). Fairbanks, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska. Coastal Habitat Study Number 1A.

Hobbs, R. 2000. National Marine Fisheries Service, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Seattle, Washington.

Hobbs, R. C., Rugh, D. J., and DeMaster, D. P. in press. Abundance of beluga whales in Cook Inlet, Alaska, 1994-1998. Marine Fisheries Review.

Hoelzel, A. R., Dahlheim, M. E., and Stern, S. J. 1998. Low genetic variation among killer whales (Orcinus orca) in the Eastern Northern Pacific, and genetic differentiation between foraging specialists. Journal of Heredity 89.

Hollowed, A. B. and Wooster, W. S. 1992. Variability of winter ocean conditions and strong year classes of northeast Pacific groundfish. Pages 433-444 ICES marine science symposium.

Hollowed, A. B. and Wooster, W. S. 1992. Variability of winter ocean conditions and strong year classes of northeast Pacific groundfish. Pages 433-444 ICES marine science symposium.

Hollowed, A. B. and Wooster, W. S. 1995. Decadal-scale variations in the eastern subarctic Pacific II. Response of northeast Pacific fish stocks. Pages 373-385 *in* R. J. Beamish, editor. Climate change and northern fish populations.

Hood, D. W. and Zimmerman, S. T. 1986. The Gulf of Alaska, physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce. Washington, D.C.

Hood, D. W. and Zimmerman, S. T. 1986. The Gulf of Alaska, physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce. Washington, D.C.

Hoover-Miller, A. A. 1994. Harbor seal (Phoca vitulina) biology and management in Alaska. Washington, D.C.

Hoover-Miller, A., Parker, K. R., and Burns, J. J. 2000. A reassessment of the impact of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill on harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*) in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 17: 111-135.

Hostettler, F. D., Rosenbauer, R. J., and Kvenholden, K. A. 2000. Reply: response to comment by Bence et al. Organic Geochemistry 31: 939-943.

Houghton, J. P., Fukuyama, A. K., Lees, D. C., Teas, III H., Cumberland, H. L., Harper, P. M., Ebert, T. A., and Driskell, W. B. 1993. Evaluation of the 1991 condition of Prince William Sound shorelines following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill and subsequent shoreline treatment: Volume II, 1991 biological monitoring survey. Seattle, NOAA, Hazardous Materials Response and Assessment Division. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS ORCA 67.

Houghton, J. P., Lees, D. C., Driskell, W. B., and Lindstrom, S. C. 1996a. Evaluation of the condition of Prince William Sound shorelines following the Exxon Valdez oil spill and subsequent shoreline treatment: Volume I, 1994 biological monitoring survey. Seattle, NOAA, Hazardous Materials Response and Assessment Division. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS ORCA 91.

Houghton, J. P., Lees, D. C., Driskell, W. B., Lindstrom, S. C., and Mearns, A. J. 1996b. Recovery of Prince William Sound epibiota from Exxon Valdez oiling and shoreline treatments, 1989 through 1992. American Fisheries

Society Symposium 18: 379-411.

Houghton, R. W., Olson, and Celone. 1986. Observation of an anticyclonic eddy near the continental shelf break south of New England. Journal of Physical Oceanography 16: 60-71.

Hunt, Jr. G. L., Baduini, C. L., Brodeur, R. D., Coyle, K. O., Kachel, N. B., Napp, J. M., Salo, S. A., Schumacher, J. D., Stabeno, P. J., Stockwell, D. A., Whitledge, T., and Zeeman, S. 1999. The Bering Sea in 1998: a second consecutive year of weather forced anomalies. EOS, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union 89: 561-566.

Hunt, Jr. G. L., Burgesson, B., and Sanger, G. A. 1981. Feeding ecology of seabirds of the eastern Bering Sea. Pages 629-648 in D. W. Hood and J. A. Calder, editors. The eastern Bering Sea shelf: oceanography and resources. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Juneau.

Incze, L. S., Kendall, A. W., Schumacher, Jr. J. D., and Reed, R. K. 1989. Interactions of a mesoscale patch of larval fish (*Theragra chalcogramma*) with the Alaska Coastal Current. Continental Shelf Research 9: 269-284.

Incze, L. S., Siefert, D. W., and Napp, J. M. 1997. Mesozooplankton of Shelikof Strait, Alaska: abundance and community composition. Continental Shelf Research 17: 287-305.

Irons, D. B. 1992. Aspects of foraging behavior and reproductive biology of the black-legged kittiwake. University of California,Irvine.

Irons, D. B. 1996. Size and productivity of black-legged kittiwake colonies in Prince William Sound before and after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Pages 738-747 *in* S. D. Rice, R. B. Spies, D. A. Wolf, and B. A. Wright, editors. Proceedings of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill symposium.

Irons, D. B., Kendall, S. J., Erickson, W. P., McDonald, L. L., and Lance, B. K. 2000. Nine years of *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: effects on marine birds in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Anchorage, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Irons, D. unpublished data. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Anchorage, Alaska.

Iverson, S. J., Frost, K. J., and Lowry, L. F. 1997. Fatty acids signatures reveal fine scale structure of foraging distribution of harbor seals and their prey in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 151: 255-271.

Jacob, K. H. 1986. Seismicity, tectonics, and geohazards of the Gulf of Alaska regions. Pages 145-186 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Jameson, R. J. 1989. Movements, home ranges, and territories of male sea otters off central California. Marine Mammal Science 5: 159-172.

Jameson, R. J. and Johnson, A. M. 1993. Reproductive characteristics of female sea otters. Marine Mammal Science 9: 156-167.

Jewett, S. C. and Feder, H. M. 1982. Food and feeding habits of the king crab *Paralithodes camtschatica* near Kodiak Island, Alaska. Marine Biology 66: 243-250.

Jewett, S. C. and Feder, H. M. 1983. Food of the tanner crab Chionoecetes bairdi near Kodiak Island, Alaska. Journal of Crustacean Biology 3: 196-207.

Jewett, S. C., Dean, T. A., Smith, R. O., and Blanchard, A. 1999. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: impacts and recovery in the soft-bottom benthic community in and adjacent to eelgrass beds. Marine Ecology Progress Series 185: 59-83.

Johnson, W. R., Royer, T. C., and Luick, J. L. 1988. On the seasonal variability of the Alaska Coastal Current. Journal of Geophysical Research 12423-12437.

Joyce, T., Bishop, and Brown. 1992. Observations of offshore shelf water transport induced by a warm core ring. Deep-Sea Research 39: 97-113.

Kajimura, H. and Loughlin, T. R. 1988. Marine mammals in the oceanic food web of the eastern subarctic Pacific. Bulletin of the Ocean Research Institute of Tokyo 26: 187-223.

Kannan, K., Guruge, K. S., Thomas, N. J., Tanabe, S., and Giesy, J. P. 1998. Butyltin residues in southern sea otters (Enhydra lutris nereis) found dead along California coastal waters. Environmental Science and Technology 32: 1169-1175.

Kastelein, R. A., Vaughan, N., and Wiepkema, P. R. 1990. The food consumption of Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*). Aquatic Mammals 15: 137-144.

Kawamura, A. 1988. Characteristics of the zooplankton biomass distribution in the standard Norpac net catches in the North Pacific region. Bulletin of Plankton Society of Japan 35: 175-177.

Kendall, A. W., Perry, R. I., and Kim, S. 1996. Fisheries oceanography of walleye pollock in Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography 5: 203.

Kenyon, K. W. 1969. The sea otter in the eastern Pacific Ocean. North American Fauna 68: 352.

Kenyon, K. W. 1982. Sea otter, Enhydra lutris. Pages 704-410 *in* J. A. Chapman and G. A. Feldhamer, editors. Wild mammals of North America. The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore.

Kenyon, K. W. and Rice, D. W. 1961. Abundance and distribution of the Steller sea lion. Journal of Mammalogy 42: 223-234.

Kirsch, J., Thomas, G. L., and Cooney, R. T. 2000. Acoustic estimates of zooplankton distributions in Prince William Sound, spring, 1996. Fisheries Research 47: 245-260.

Kitaysky, A. S., Wingfield, J. C., and Piatt, J. F. 1999. Dynamics of food availability, body condition and physiological stress response in breeding kittiwakes. Functional Ecology 13: 577-584.

Klein, W. H. 1957. Principal tracks and mean frequencies of cyclones and anti-cyclones in the northern hemisphere. Washington, D.C., U.S. Weather Bureau, U.S. Government Printing Office. Research Paper Number 40.

Klinck, J. M. 1996. Circulation near submarine canyons: a modeling study. Journal of Geophysical Research 101: 1211-1223.

Kline, Jr. T. C. 1999a. Temporal and spatial variability of $^{13}C/^{12}C$ and $^{15}N/^{14}N$ in pelagic biota of Prince William Sound, Alaska. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56 (Suppl. 1): 94-117.

Kline, T. C., Goering, J. J., Mathisen, O. A., Poe, P. H., and Parker, P. L. 1990. Recycling of elements transported upstream by runs of Pacific salmon: I. □^{15}N and □^{13}C evidence in Sashin Creek, Southeastern, Alaska. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47: 136-144.

Kline, T. C., Goering, J. J., Mathisen, O. A., Poe, P. H., Parker, P. L., and Scalan, R. S. 1993. Recycling of elements transported upstream by runs of Pacific salmon: II. □^{15}N and □^{13}C evidence in the Kvichak River watershed, Bristol Bay, Southwestern, Alaska. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50: 2350-2365.

Klinkhart, E. G. 1966. The beluga whale in Alaska. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Federal Aid in Wildlife Restoration Project Report Volume VII.

Klosiewski, S. P. and Laing, K. K. 1994. Marine bird populations of Prince William Sound, Alaska, before and after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Anchorage, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Koblinsky, C. J., Niiler, P. P., and Schmitz, Jr. W. J. 1989. Observations of wind-forced deep ocean currents in the North Pacific. Journal of Geophysical Research 94: 10773-10790.

Kruse, G. H., Funk, F. C., Geiger, H. J., Mabry, K. R., Savikko, H. M., and Siddeek, S. M. 2000a. Overview of state-managed marine fisheries in the Central and Western Gulf of Alaska, Aleutian Islands, and Southeastern Bering Sea, with reference to Steller Sea Lions. Juneau, Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Regional Information Report 5J00-10.

Kruse, G. H., Funk, F. C., Geiger, H. J., Mabry, K. R., Savikko, H. M., and Siddeek, S. M. 2000b. Overview of state-managed marine fisheries in the Central and Western Gulf of Alaska, Aleutian Islands, and Southeastern Bering Sea, with reference to Steller Sea Lions. Juneau, Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Regional Information Report 5J00-10.

Kuletz, K. J., Irons, D. B., Agler, B. A., and Piatt, J. F. 1997. Long-term changes in diets of populations of piscivorus birds and mammals in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Fairbanks, Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska Fairbanks.

Kvitek, R. G. and Oliver, J. S. 1988. Sea otter foraging habits and effects on prey populations and communities in soft-bottom environments. Pages 22-47 in G. R. VanBlaricom and J. A. Estes, editors. The community ecology of sea otters. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Kvitek, R. G. and Oliver, J. S. 1992. Influence of sea otters on soft-bottom prey communities in Southeast Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series 82: 103-113.

Kvitek, R. G., Bowlby, C. E., and Staedler, M. 1993. Diet and foraging behavior of sea otters in southeast Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 9: 168-181.

Kvitek, R. G., Oliver, J. S., DeGange, A. R., and Anderson, B. S. 1992. Changes in Alaskan soft-bottom prey communities along a gradient in sea otter predation. Ecology 73: 413-428.

Lagerloef, G. 1983. Topographically controlled flow around a deep trough transecting the shelf off Kodiak Island, Alaska. Journal of Physical Oceanography 13: 139-146.

Laidre, K., Shelden, K. E. W., Mahoney, B. A., and Rugh, D. J. in press. Distribution of beluga whales and survey effort in the Gulf of Alaska. Marine Fisheries Review.

Lambeck, K. 1980. The Earth's variable rotation: geophysical causes and consequences. Cambridge University Press. London.

Larkin, G. A. and Slaney, P. A. 1997. Implications of trends in marine-derived nutrient influx to south coastal British Columbia salmonid production. Fisheries 16-24.

Lawrence, J. M. 1975. On the relationship between marine plants and sea urchins. Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review 13: 213-286.

Leatherwood, S., Matkin, C. O., Hall, J. D., and Ellis, G. M. 1990. Killer whales, *Ornicus orca*, photo-identified in Prince William Sound, Alaska 1976-1987. Canadian Field-Naturalist 104: 32-371.

LeBrasseur, R. J. 1965. Biomass atlas of net-zooplankton in the Northeastern Pacific Ocean, 1956-1964. Manuscript Report Series (Oceanography and

Limnological) .

Leigh, Jr. E. G., Paine, R. T., Quinn, J. F., and Suchanek, T. H. 1987. Wave energy and intertidal productivity. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA 84: 1314-1318.

Lensink, C. J. 1962. The history and status of sea otters in Alaska. Purdue University,Indiana.

Lentfer, J. 1988. Selected marine mammals of Alaska. Washington, D.C.

Lewis, J. P. 1996. Harbor seal investigations in Alaska. Juneau, National Marine Fisheries Service. Annual Report Award Number NA57FX0367.

Lindberg, D. R., Estes, J. A., and Warheit, K. I. 1998. Human influences on trophic cascades along rocky shores. Ecological Applications 8: 880-890.

Lindeman, R. L. 1942. The trophodynamic aspect of ecology. Ecology 23: 399-418.

Livingstone, D. and Royer, T. C. 1980. Observed surface winds at Middleton Island, Gulf of Alaska and their influence on ocean circulation. Journal of Physical Oceanography 10: 753-764.

Loeb, V. et. al. 1997. Effects of sea-ice extent and krill or salp dominance on the Antarctic food web. Nature 387: 897-900.

Longhurst, A. L. 1976. Vertical migration. Pages 116-137 in D. H. Cushing and J. J. Walsh, editors. The ecology of the seas. W. B. Sanders Co., Philadelphia.

Loughlin, T. R. 1981. Home range and territoriality of sea otters near Monterey, California. Journal of Wildlife Management 44: 576-582.

Loughlin, T. R. 1997. Using the phylogeographic method to identify Steller sea lion stocks. Pages 159-171 *in* A. E. Dizon, S. J. Chivers, and W. F. Perrin, editors. Molecular genetics of marine mammals. Society for Marine Mammalogy Special Publication 3.

Loughlin, T. R. 1998. The Steller sea lion: a declining species. Biosphere Conservation 1: 91-98.

Loughlin, T. R., Perlov, A. S., and Vladimirov, V. A. 1992. Range-wide survey and estimation of total number of Steller sea lions in 1989. Marine Mammal Science 8: 220-239.

Loughlin, T. R., Rugh, D. J., and Fiscus, C. H. 1984. Northern sea lion distribution and abundance: 1956-80. Journal of Wildlife Management 48: 729-740.

Lowry, L. and Frost, K. unpublished data. Alaska Department of Fish and Game and University of Alaska School of Fisheries and Ocean Science, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Lowry, L. and Frost, K. unpublished. Alaska Department of Fish and Game and

University of Alaska School of Fisheries and Ocean Science, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Lowry, L. F. and Frost, K. J. unpublished. Alaska beluga whale committee surveys of beluga whales in Bristol Bay, Alaska, 1993-1994. Paper SC/51/SM__ presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, May, 1999.

Lowry, L. F., Frost, K. J., Davis, R., Suydam, R. S., and DeMaster, D. P. 1994. Movements and behavior of satellite-tagged spotted seals (Phoca largha) in the Bering and Chukchi Seas. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Lowry, L. F., Frost, K. J., Ver Hoef, J. M., and DeLong, R. A. 2001. Movements of satellite-tagged non-pup harbor seals in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 17

Lowry, L. L., Frost, K. J., and Loughlin, T. R. 1989. Importance of walleye pollock in the diets of marine mammals in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea, and implications for fishery management. Pages 701-726 in Proceedings of the international symposium on the biology and management of walleye pollock, November 14-16, 1988 Anchorage, Alaska. University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Lubchenco, J. and Gaines, S. D. 1981. A unified approach to marine plant-herbivore interactions. I. Populations and communities. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 12: 405-437.

Luick, J. L., Royer, T. C., and Johnson , W. P. 1987. Coastal atmospheric forcing in the northern Gulf of Alaska. Journal of Geophysical Research 92: 3841-3848.

Lynch-Stieglitz, J., Curry, W. B., and Slowey, N. 1999. Weaker gulf stream in the Florida Straits during the last glacial maximum. Nature 402: 644-648.

Lynde, M. V. 1986. The historical annotated landing (HAL) database: documentation of annual harvest of groundfish from the northeast Pacific and eastern Bering Sea from 1956-1980.

Mackas, D. L. and Frost, B. W. 1993. Distributions and seasonal/interannual variations in the phytoplankton and zooplankton biomass. PICES Scientific Report 1: 51-56.

Mackas, D. L., Goldblatt, R., and Lewis, A. G. 1998. Interdecadal variation in developmental timing of Neocalanus plumchrus populations at Ocean Station P in the subarctic North Pacific. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1878-1893.

Mackas, D. L., Sefton, H., Miller, C. B., and Raich, A. 1993. Vertical habitat partitioning by large calanoid copepods in the oceanic subarctic Pacific during spring. Progress in Oceanography 32: 259-294.

Macklin, S. A., Lackmann, G. M., and Gray, J. 1988. Offshore directed winds in the vicinity of Prince William Sound, Alaska. Monthly Weather Review 116: 1289-1301.

Mahoney, B. A. and Shelden, K. E. W. in press. The native subsistence harvest of beluga whales, Delphinapterus leucas, in Cook Inlet, Alaska. Marine Fisheries Review, Special Issue.

Malloy, R. J. and Merrill, G. F. 1972. Vertical crustal movement on the sea floor. The great Alaska earthquake of 1964, vol. 6: oceanography and coastal engineering. Washington, D.C., National Research Council, National Academy of Sciences.

Mangel, J., Talbot, L. M., Meffe, G. K., Agardy, M. T., Alverson, D. L., Barlow, J., Botkin, D. B., Budowski, G., Clark, T., Cooke, J., Crozier, R. H., Dayton, P. K., Elder, D. L., Fowler, C. W., Funtwicz, S., Giske, J., Hofman, R. J., Holt, S. J., Kellert, S. R., Kimbal, L. A., Ludwig, D., Magnusson, K., Malayang, C. I., Mann, C., Norse, E. A., Nothridge, S. P., Perrin, W. F., Perrings, C., Peterman, R., Rabb, G. B., Regier, H. A., Reynolds, J. E., Sherman, K., Sissenwine, M. P., Smith, T. D., Starfield, A., Taylor, R. J., Tillman, M. F., Toft, C., Twiss, J., John, R., Wilen, J., and Young, T. P. 1996. Principles for the conservation of wild living resources. Ecological Applications 6: 338-362.

Mann, K. H. and Lazier, J. R. N. 1996. Dynamics of marine ecosystems, biological-physical interactions in the oceans, 2nd ed. Blackwell Science, Inc. Cambridge.

Mantua, N. J., Hare, S. R., Zhang, Y., Wallace, J. M., and Francis, R. C. 1997. A Pacific interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society 78: 1069-1079.

Mantua, N. J., Hare, S. R., Zhang, Y., Wallace, J. M., and Francis, R. C. 1997. A Pacific interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society 78: 1069-1079.

Mantyla and Reid. 1983. Abyssal characteristics of the world ocean waters. Deep-Sea Research 30: 805-833.

Marchland, C., Simrad, Y., and Gratton, Y. 1999. Concentration of capelin (Mallotus villosus) in tidal upwelling fronts at the head of the Laurentian Channel in the St. Lawrence estuary. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56: 1832-1848.

Martin, J. H. 1990. Glacial-interglacial CO_2 change: the iron hypothesis. Paleoceanography 5: 1-13.

Martin, J. H. 1991. Iron, Leibig's law, and the greenhouse. Oceanography 4: 52-55.

Martin, J. H. and Gordon, R. M. 1988. Northeast Pacific iron distributions in relation to primary productivity. Deep-Sea Research 35: 177-196.

Martin, M. H. 1997a. Data report: 1996 Gulf of Alaska bottom trawl survey. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Martin, M. H. 1997b. Data report: 1996 Gulf of Alaska bottom trawl survey. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Mathisen, O. A. 1972. Biogenic enrichment of sockeye salmon lakes and stock productivity. Verhandlungen der Internationalen Vereinigung für Theoretische and Angewandte Limnologie 18: 1089-1095.

Matkin, C. 2000. personal communication. North Gulf Oceanic Society, Homer, Alaska National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Juneau, Alaska.

Matkin, C. O. and Saulitis, E. L. 1994. Killer whale (Orcinus orca) biology and management in Alaska.

Matkin, C. O. unpublished data. North Gulf Oceanic Society, Homer, Alaska.

Matkin, C. O., Ellis, G. M., Dahlheim, M. E., and Zeh, J. 1994. Status of killer whales in Prince William Sound, 1985-1992. Pages 141-162 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Matkin, C. O., Ellis, G., Barrett-Lennard, L., Jurk, H., and Saulitis, E. 2000. Photographic and acousic monitoring of killer whales in Prince William Sound and Kenai Fjords, Alaska. Homer, North Gulf Oceanic Society. Restoration Project Annual Report 99012.

Matkin, C. O., Ellis, G., Barrett-Lennard, L., Jurk, H., Sheel, D., and Saulitis, E. 1999. Comprehensive killer whale investigation restoration project 98012 annual report . North Gulf Oceanic Society. Homer.

Matkin, C. O., Matkin, D. R., Ellis, G. M., Saulitis, E., and McSweeney, D. 1997. Movements of resident killer whales in southeastern Alaska and Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 13: 469-475.

Matkin, C. O., Scheel, D., Ellis, G., Barrett-Lennard, L., Jurk, H., and Saulitis, E. 1998. Comprehensive killer whale investigation, *Exxon Valdez* oil spill restoration project annual report (Restoration Project 97012). North Gulf Oceanic Society. Homer.

McAllister, C. D. 1969. Aspects of estimating zooplankton production from phytoplankton production. Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada 26: 199-220.

McClatchie, S., Thorne, R. E., Grimes, P., and Hanchet, S. 2000. Ground truth and target identification for fisheries acoustics. Fisheries Research 47: 173-191.

McElroy, M. P. 1983. Marine biological controls on atmospheric CO_2 and climate. Nature 302: 328-329.

McRoy, C. P. 1970. Standing stocks and other features of eelgrass (Zostera marina) populations on the coast of Alaska. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 27: 1811-1821.

McRoy, C. P. and Goering, J. J. 1974. Coastal ecosystems of Alaska. Pages 124-145 *in* H. T. Odum, B. J. Copeland, and E. H. McMahan, editors. Coastal ecological systems of the United States, vol. 3. The Conservation Foundation, Washington, D.C.

Mearns, A. J. 1996. *Exxon Valdez* shoreline treatment and operations: implications for response, assessment, monitoring, and research. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 309-328.

Megrey, B. A., Hollowed, A. B., Hare, S. R., Macklin, S. A., and Stabeno, P. J. 1996. Contributions of FOCI research to forecasts of year-class strength of walleye pollock in Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography 5(Suppl. 1): 1989-203.

Meier, M. F. 1984. Contribution of small glaciers in global sea level. Science 226: 1481-1421.

Melsom. A., Meyers, S. D., Hurlburt, H. E., Metzger, E. J., and O'Brien, J. J. 1999. El Niño induced eddies in the Gulf of Alaska, Earth interact.

Mendenhall, V. M. 1997. Preliminary report on the 1997 Alaska seabird die-off. Anchorage, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Menge, B. A. 1995. Indirect effects in marine rocky intertidal interaction webs: patterns and importance. Ecological Monographs 65: 21-74.

Menge, B. A. and Sutherland, E. D. 1987. Community regulation: variation in disturbance, competition, and predation in relation to gradients of environmental stress and recruitment. American Naturalist 130: 730-757.

Menge, B. A., Berlow, E. L., Blanchette, C. A., Navarette, S. A., and Yamada, S. B. 1994. The keystone species concept: variation in interaction strength in a rocky intertidal habitat. Ecological Monographs 249: 249-287.

Merrick, R. L. and Calkins, D. G. 1996. Pages 153-166 Importance of juvenile walleye pollock, *Theragra chalcogramma,* in the diet of Gulf of Alaska Steller sea lions, *Eumetopias jubatus.*

Merrick, R. L. and Loughlin, T. R. 1997. Foraging behavior of adult female and young-of-the-year Steller sea lions in Alaskan waters. Canadian Journal of Zoology 75: 776-786.

Merrick, R. L., Chumbley, M. K., and Byrd, G. V. 1997. Diet diversity of Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) and their population decline in Alaska: a potential relationship. Canadian Journal of Zoology 54: 1342-1348.

Merrick, R. L., Loughlin, T. R., and Calkins, D. G. 1987. Decline in abundance of the northern sea lion, Eumetopias jubatus, in Alaska, 1956-86. Fisheries Bulletin U.S. 85: 351-365.

Meyers, S. D. and Basu, S. 1999. Eddies in the eastern Gulf of Alaska from TOPEX/POSEIDON altimetry. Journal of Geophysical Research 104: 13333-13343.

Miller, C. B. 1988. *Neocalanus flemingeri*, a new species of Calanidae (Copepoda:Calanoida) from the Subarctic Pacific Ocean, with a comparative redescription of *Neocalanus plumchrus* (Marukawa) 1921. Progress in Oceanography 20: 223-274.

Miller, C. B. 1993. Pelagic production processes in the subarctic Pacific. Progress in Oceanography 32: 1-15.

Miller, C. B. and Clemons, M. J. 1988. Revised life history analysis of the large grazing copepods in the Subarctic Pacific Ocean. Progress in Oceanography 20: 293-313.

Miller, C. B. and Nielsen, R. D. 1988. Development and growth of large calanid copepods in the Subarctic Pacific, May 1984. Progress in Oceanography 20: 275-292.

Miller, C. B., Frost, B. W., Booth, B., Wheeler, P. A., Landry, M. R., and Welschmeyer, N. 1991a. Ecological processes in the Subarctic Pacific: iron limitation cannot be the whole story. Oceanography 4: 71-78.

Miller, C. B., Frost, B. W., Wheeler, P. A., Landry, M. R., Welschmeyer, N., and Powell, T. M. 1991b. Ecological dynamics in the subarctic Pacific, possibly iron limited system. Limnology and Oceanography 36: 1600-1615.

Minobe, S. 1997. A 50-70 year climatic oscillation over the North Pacific and North America. Geophysical Research Letters 24: 683-686.

Minobe, S. 1999. Resonance in bidecadal and pentadecadal climate oscillations over the North Pacific: role in climatic regime shifts. Geophysical Research Letters 26: 855-858.

Molnia, B. F. 1981. Distribution of continental shelf surface sedimentary units between Yakutat and Cross Sound, northeastern Gulf of Alaska . Journal of the Alaska Geological Society 1: 60-65.

Monson, D. H. and DeGange, A. R. 1995. Reproduction, preweaning survival, and survival of adult sea otters at Kodiak Island, Alaska. Canadian Journal of Zoology 73: 1161-1169.

Monson, D. H., Doak, D. F., Ballachey, B. E., Johnson, A. M., and Bodkin, J. L. 2000a. Long-term impacts of the Exxon Valdez oil spill on sea otters, assessed through age-dependent mortality patterns. Pages 6562-6567 Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences.

Monson, D. H., Estes, J. A., Bodkin, J. L., and Siniff, D. B. 2000b. Life history plasticity and population regulation in sea otters. Oikos 90: 457-468.

Montevecchi, W. A. and Myers, R. A. 1996. Dietary changes of seabirds indicate shifts in pelagic food webs. Sarsia 80: 313-322.

Moore, S. E., Shelden, K. E. W., Litzky, L. K., Mahone, B. A., and Rugh, D. J. in press. Beluga, Delphinapterus leucas, habitat associations in Cook Inlet, Alaska. Marine Fisheries Review, Special Issue.

Muench, R. D. and Heggie, D. T. 1978. Deep water exchange in Alaskan subarctic fjords. Pages 239-267 *in* B. Kjerfve, editor. Estuarine transport processes. B. Baruch Institute for Marine Biology and Coastal Research, University of South Carolina Press, Columbia.

Muench, R. D., Mofjeld, H. O., and Charnell, R. L. 1978. Oceanographic conditions in lower Cook Inlet: spring and summer 1973. Journal of Geophysical Research 83: 5090-5098.

Mueter, F. J. and Norcross, B. L. 1999. Linking community structure of small demersal fishes around Kodiak Island, Alaska, to environmental variables. Marine Ecology Progress Series 190: 37-51.

Mueter, F. J. and Norcross, B. L. 2000. Species composition and abundance of juvenile groundfish around Steller Sea Lion *Eumetopias jubantus* rookeries in the Gulf of Alaska. Alaska Fishery Research Bulletin. Alaska, State of Alaska, Department of Fish and Game.

Murphy, E. C., Springer, A. M., Roseneau, D. G., and Cooper, B. A. 1991. High annual variability in reproductive success of kittiwakes (*Rissa tridactyla*) at a colony in western Alaska. Journal of Animal Ecology 60: 515-534.

Musgrave, D., Weingartner, T., and Royer, T. C. 1992. Circulation and hydrography in the northwestern Gulf of Alaska. Deep-Sea Research 39: 1499-1519.

Myers, K. W., Walker, R. V., Carlson, H. R., and Helle, J. H. 2000. Synthesis and review of U.S. research on the physical and biological factors affecting ocean production of salmon. Pages 1-9 in J. H. Helle, Y. Ishida, D. Noakes, and V. Radchenko, editors. Recent changes in ocean production of Pacific salmon. North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission Bulletin , Vancouver.

Mysak, L., Muench, R. D., and Schumacher, J. D. 1981. Baroclinic instability in a downstream varying channel: Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Journal of Physical Oceanography 11: 950-969.

Nagasawa, K. 2000. Winter zooplankton biomass in the Subarctic North Pacific, with a discussion on the overwintering survival strategy of Pacific Salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.). Pages 21-32 in J. H. Helle, Y. Ishido, D. Noakes, and V. Radchenko, editors. Recent changes in ocean production of Pacific salmon. North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission Bulletin , Vancouver.

Nakata, H., Kannan, K., Jing, L., Thomas, N. J., Tanabe, S., and Giesey, J. P. 1998. Accumulation pattern of organochlorine pesticides and polychlorinated biphenyls in southern sea otters (*Enhydra lutris nereis*) found stranded along coastal California, USA. Environmental Pollution 103: 45-53.

Napp, J. M., Incze, L. S., Ortner, P. B., Siefert, D. L., and Britt, L. 1996. The plankton on Shelikof Strait, Alaska: standing stock, production, mecoscale variability and their relevance to larval fish survival. Fisheries Oceanography 5: 19-35.

Niebauer, H. J., Roberts, J., and Royer, T. C. 1981. Shelf break circulation in the northern Gulf of Alaska. Journal of Geophysical Research 86: 13041-13047.

Niebauer, H. J., Royer, T. C., and Weingartner, T. J. 1994. Circulation of Prince William Sound, Alaska. Journal of Geophysical Research 99: 14113-14126.

NMFS . 2001. Alaska groundfish fisheries draft programmatic supplemental environmental impact statement. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Alaska Region.

NMFS. 1992. Final recovery plan for Steller sea lions Eumetopias jubatus. Silver Spring, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources.

NMFS. 2000. Endangered Species Act--Section 7 consultation, biological opinion and incidental take statement. Silver Spring, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources.

NMML. unpublished data.

Norcross, B. L. 1998. Volume I, Final Report. Defining habitats for juvenile groundfishes in southcentral Alaska with emphasis on flatfishes. Fairbanks, University of Alaska, Coastal Marine Institute.

Norcross, B. L., Brown, E. D., Foy, R. J., Frandsen, M., Gay, S. M., Jin, M., Kirsch, J., Kline, T. C., Mason, D. M., Mooers, C. N. K., Patrick, E. V., Paul, A. J., Stokesbury, K. D. E., Thorton, S. J., Vaughan, S. L., and Wang, J. 1999. Life history and ecology of juvenile Pacific herring in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography

NPFMC. 2000. Stock assessment and fishery evaluation report for groundfish resources of the Gulf of Alaska. Anchorage, Alaska, North Pacific Fisheries Management Council.

NRC. 1971. The great Alaska earthquake of 1964. National Academy Press.

Washington, D.C.

NRC. 1996. The Bering Sea ecosystem. National Academy Press. Washington, D.C.

Nysewander, D. R. and Trapp, J. L. 1984. Widespread mortality of adult seabirds in Alaska, August September 1983. Anchorage, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Oakley, K. L. and Kuletz, K. J. 1996. Population, reproduction, and foraging of pigeon guillemots at Naked Island, Alaska, before and after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Pages 759-769 American Fisheries Society Symposium.

O'Clair, C. and Zimmerman, S. T. 1986. Biogeography and ecology of the intertidal and shallow subtidal communities. Pages 305-346 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

O'Corry-Crowe, G. M. and Lowry, L. F. 1997. Genetic ecology and management concerns for the beluga whale (*Delphinapterus leucas*). Pages 249-274 in A. E. Dizon, S. J. Chivers, and W. F. Perrin, editors. Molecular genetics of marine mammals.

O'Corry-Crowe, G. M., Dizon, A. E., Suydam, R. S., and Lowry, L. F. in press. Molecular genetic studies of population structure and movement patterns in a migratory species: the beluga whale (*Delphinapterus leucas*) in the western Nearctic. in C. J. Pfeiffer, editor. Molecular and cell biology of marine mammals. Krieger, Florida.

O'Corry-Crowe, G. M., Suydam, R. S., Rosenberg, A., Frost, K. J., and Dizon, A. E. 1997. Phlylogeography, population structure and dispersal patterns of the beluga whale *Delphinus leucas* in the western Nearctic revealed by mitochondrial DNA. Molecular Ecology 6: 955-970.

Okey, T. A. and Pauly, D. 1998. Trophic mass balance model of Alaska's Prince William Sound ecosystem, for the post-spill period 1994-1996. The Fisheries Centre, University of British Columbia. Vancouver.

Okkonen, S. 2001. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Okkonen, S. R. 1992. The shedding of an anticyclonic eddy from the Alaskan Steam as observed by the GEOSAT altimeter. Geophysical Research Letters 19: 2397-2400.

Olesiuk, P. F., Bigg, M. A., Ellis, G. M., Crockford, S. J., and Wigen, R. J. 1990. An assessment of the feeding habits of harbour seals (*Phoca vitulina*) in the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia, based on scat analysis. Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 1730.

Omori, M. 1969. Weight and chemical composition of some important oceanic zooplankton in the North Pacific Ocean. Marine Biology 3: 4-10.

Orensanz, J. M. L., Armstrong, J., Armstrong, D., and Hilborn, R. 1998. Crustacean resources are vulnerable to serial depletion - the mutifaceted decline of crab and shrimp fisheries in the Greater Gulf of Alaska. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 8: 117-176.

Orr, R. T. and Poulter, T. C. 1967. Some observations on reproduction, growth, and social behavior in the Steller sea lion. Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences 35: 193-226.

Ostrand, W. D., Coyle, K. O., Drew, G. S., Maniscalco, J. M., and Irons, D. B. 1998. Selection of forage-fish schools by murrelets and tufted puffins in Prince William Sound, Alaska. The Condor 100: 286-297.

Overland, J. E. 1990. Prediction of vessel icing at near-freezing sea surface temperatures. Weather and Forecasting 5: 62-77.

Page, D. S., Gilfillan, E. S., Boehm, P. D., and Horner, E. J. 1995. Shoreline ecology program for Prince William Sound, Alaska, following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: Part 1 - study design and methods . Pages 263-295 *in* P. G. Wells, J. N. Butler, and J. S. Hughes, editors. *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: fate and effects in Alaskan waters. American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia.

Pahlow, M. and Riebsell, U. 2000. Temporal trends in deep ocean Redfield ratios. Science 287: 831-833.

Paine, R. T. 1966. Food web complexity and species diversity. American Naturalist 100: 65-75.

Paine, R. T., Ruesink, J. L., Sun, A., Soulanillem, E. L., Wonham, M. J., Harley, C. D. G., Brumbaugh, D. R., and Secord, D. L. 1996. Trouble on oiled waters: lessons from the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 27: 197-235.

Paine, R. T., Wootton, J. T., and Boersma, P. D. 1990. Direct and indirect effects of Peregrine Falcon predation on seabird abundance. Auk 107: 1-9.

Parker, K. S., Royer, T. C., and Deriso, R. B. 1995. High-latitude climate forcing and tidal mixing by the 18.6-year lunar nodal cycle and low-frequency recruitment trends in Pacific halibut (Hippoglosus stenolepis), in climate change and northern fish populations . Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 121: 447-458.

Parker, K. S., Royer, T. C., and Deriso, R. B. 1995. High-latitude climate forcing and tidal mixing by the 18.6-year lunar nodal cycle and low-frequency recruitment trends in Pacific halibut (Hippoglosus stenolepis), in climate change and northern fish populations . Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 121: 447-458.

Parsons, T. R. 1986. Ecological relations. Pages 561-570 in D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Parsons, T. R. and Lalli, C. M. 1988. Comparative oceanic ecology of the plankton communities of the Subarctic Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review 26: 317-359.

Parsons, T. R., Takahashi, M., and Hargrave, B. 1984. Biological oceanographic processes, 3rd ed. Pergamon Press. New York.

Paul, A. J. and Smith, R. 1993. Seasonal changes in somatic energy content of yellowfin sole *Pleuronectes asper* Pallas 1814. Journal of Fish Biology 43: 131-138.

Peixoto, J. P. and Oort, A. H. 1992. Physics of climate. American Institute of Physics. New York.

Perry, S. L., DeMaster, D. P., and Silber, G. K. 1999. The great whales: history and status of six species listed as endangered under the U.S. Endangered Species Act of 1973. Marine Fisheries Review 61: 1-74.

Peterson, C. H. 1991. Intertidal zonation of marine invertebrates in sand and mud. American Scientist 79: 236-249.

Peterson, C. H. 2000. The web of ecosystem interconnections to shoreline habitats as revealed by the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill perturbation: a synthesis of acute direct vs indirect and chronic effects. Advances in Marine Biology

Peterson, C. H. 2001. The *Exxon Valdez* oil spill in Alaska: acute, indirect and chronic effects on the ecosystem. Advances in Marine Biology 39: 1-103.

Peterson, C. H., Kennicutt, I. M. C., Green, R. H., Montagna, P., Harper, Jr. D. E., Powell, E. N., and Rosigno, P. F. 1996. Ecological consequences of environmental perturbations associated with offshore hydrocarbon production: a perspective on long-term exposures in the Gulf of Mexico. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 53: 2637-2654.

Piatt, J. F. and Anderson, P. 1996. Response of common murres to the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill and long-term changes in the Gulf of Alaska marine ecosystem. Pages 720-737 *in* S. D. Rice, R. B. Spies, D. A. Wolf, and B. A. Wright, editors. Proceedings of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill symposium. Bethesda.

Piatt, J. F. and Ford, R. G. 1993. Distribution and abundance of marbled murrelets in Alaska. Condor 95: 662-669.

Piatt, J. F. and Ford, R. G. 1996. How many birds were killed by the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill? Pages 712-719 in S. D. Rice, R. B. Spies, D. A. Wolfe, and B. A. Wright, editors. Proceedings of the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill symposium. Bethesda.

Piatt, J. F. and Naslund, N. L. 1994. Abundance, distribution and population status of marbled murrelets in Alaska. in C. J. Ralph, Jr. G. L. Hunt, J. F. Piatt, and M. Raphael, editors. Conservation assessment for the marbled murrelet.

Piatt, J. F. and Nettleship, D. N. 1985. Diving depths of four alcids. Auk 102: 293-297.

Piatt, J. F. and van Pelt, T. I. 1993. A wreck of common murres (*Uria aalge*) in the northern Gulf of Alaska during February and March of 1993. Anchorage, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Piatt, J. F. unpublished data. U.S. Geological Survey, Anchorage, Alaska.

Piatt, J. personal communication.

Pickart, R. S. 2000. Bottom boundary layer structure and detachment in the shelfbreak jet of the Middle Atlantic Bight. Journal of Physical Oceanography 30: 2668-2686.

Piorkowski, R. J. 1995. Ecological effects of spawning salmon on several southcentral Alaskan streams. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Pitcher, K. W. 1980. Food of the harbor seal, *Phoca vitulina richardsi*, in the Gulf of Alaska. Fishery Bulletin 78: 544-549.

Pitcher, K. W. 1981. Prey of the Steller sea lion, Eumetopias jubatus, in the Gulf of Alaska. Fisheries Bulletin U.S. 79: 467-472.

Pitcher, K. W. 1984. The harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi*). Pages 65-70 in J. J. Burns, K. J. Frost, and L. F. Lowry, editors. Marine mammals species accounts. Alaska Department of Fish and Game.

Pitcher, K. W. 1989. Harbor seal trend count surveys in southern Alaska, 1988. U.S. Marine Mammal Commission. Washington, D.C.

Pitcher, K. W. 1990. Major decline in the number of harbor seals, Phoca vitulina richardsi, on Tugidak Island, Gulf of Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 121-134.

Pitcher, K. W. and Calkins, D. G. 1981. Reproductive biology of Steller sea lions in the Gulf of Alaska. Journal of Mammalogy 62: 599-605.

Pitcher, K. W. and Fay, F. H. 1982. Feeding by Steller sea lions on harbor seals. Murrelet 63: 70-71.

Pitcher, K. W. and McAllister, D. C. 1981. Movements and haul out behavior of radio-tagged harbor seals, *Phoca vitulina*. Canadian Field-Naturalist 95: 292-297.

Plafker, G. 1972. Tectonics. Pages 47-122 *in* The great Alaska earthquake of 1964, vol. 6: oceanography and coastal engineering. National Research Council, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Plakhotnik, A. F. 1964. Hydrological description of the Gulf of Alaska. Page 289 *in* P. A. Moiseev, editor. Soviet fisheries investigations in the Northeast Pacific, part II.

Polovina, J. J., Mitchum, G. T., and Evans, G. T. 1995. Decadal and basin-scale variation in mixed layer depth and impact on biological production in the Central and North Pacific, 1960-88. Deep Sea Research 42: 1701-1716.

Power, M. E., Tilman, D., Estes, J. A., Menge, B. A., Bond, W. J., Mills, L. S., Daily, G., Castilla, J. C., Lubchenco, J., and Paine, R. T. 1996. Challenges in the quest for keystones. Bioscience 46: 609-620.

Prichard, A. K. 1997. Evaluation of pigeon guillemots as bioindicators of nearshore ecosystem health. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Purcell, J. E., Brown, E. D., Stokesbury, K. D. E., Haldorson, L. J., and Shirley, T. C. 2000. Aggregations of the jellyfish *Aurelia labiata*: abundance, distribution, association with age-0 walleye pollock, and behaviors promoting aggregation in Prince William Sound, Alaska, USA. Marine Ecology Progress Series 195: 145-158.

Rafaelli, D. and Hawkins, S. 1996. Intertidal ecology. Chapman and Hall. London.

Ramp. 1986. The interaction of warm core rings with the shelf water and the shelf/slope front south of New England. University of Rhode Island.

Rausch, R. 1958. The occurrence and distribution of birds on Middleton Island, Alaska. Condor 60: 227-242.

Reeburgh, W. S. and Kipphut, G. W. 1986. Chemical distributions and signals in the Gulf of Alaska, its coastal margins and estuaries. Pages 77-91 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Reed, R. K. and Schumacher, J. D. 1986. Physical oceanography. Pages 57-75 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Reid Jr., J. L. 1965. Intermediate waters of the Pacific Ocean. The Johns Hopkins Oceanographic Studies.

Reid, J. L. 1981. On the mid-depth circulation of the world ocean. Pages 70-111 *in* B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch, editors. Evolution of physical oceanography scientific surveys in honor of Henry Stommel. MIT press, Cambridge.

Reynolds, Jr. J. E. and Rommel, S. A. 1999. Biology of marine mammals. Smithsonian University Press. Washington, D.C.

Rhoads, D. C. and Young, D. K. 1970. The influence of deposit-feeding organisms on sediment stability and community trophic structure. Journal of Marine Research 28: 150-178.

Richardson, R. W. 1936. Winter air-mass convergence over the North Pacific. Monthly Weather Review 64: 199-203.

Ricketts, E. F. and Calvin, J. 1968. Between pacific tides, 4th ed. Stanford University Press. Stanford.

Riedman, M. L. and Estes, J. A. 1990. The sea otter (Enhydra lutris): behavior, ecology and natural history. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

Riedman, M. L., Estes, J. A., Staedler, M. M., Giles, A. A., and Carlson, D. R. 1994. Breeding patterns and reproductive success of California sea otters. Journal of Wildlife Management 58: 391-399.

Robards, M., Piatt, J. F., Kettle, A., and Abookire, A. 1999. Temporal and geographic variation in fish populations in nearshore and shelf areas of lower Cook Inlet. Fishery Bulletin.

Roden, G. 1970. Aspects of the mid-Pacific transition zone. Journal of Geophysical Research 75: 1097-1109.

Rogers, D. E., Rogers, B. J., and Rosenthal, R. J. 1986. The nearshore fishes. Pages 399-415 in D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Rogers, J. C. 1981. The North Pacific oscillation. Journal of Climatology 1: 39-57.

Rooper, C. N. and Haldorson, L. J. Consumption of Pacific herring (Clupea pallasi) eggs by greenling (Hexagrammidae) in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Bulletin 98: 655-659.

Rose, G. A. 1998. Acoustic target strength of capelin in Newfoundland waters. ICES Journal of Marine Science 55: 918-923.

Rosen, D. A. S. and Trites, A. W. 2000. Pollock and the decline of Steller sea lions: testing the junk-food hypothesis. Canadian Journal of Zoology 78: 1243-1250.

Rosenberg, D. H. 1972. A review of the oceanography and renewable resources of the Northern Gulf of Alaska. Sea Grant Report 73-3. Fairbanks, Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska. IMS Report R72-23.

Roseneau, D. G. unpublished data. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Homer, Alaska.

Rosenkrantz, G. 1999. Statistical modeling of tanner crab recruitment. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Rotterman, L. M. and Simon-Jackson, T. 1988. Sea otter. Pages 237-275 *in* J. W. Lentfer, editor. Selected marine mammals of Alaska. U.S. Marine Mammal Commission, Washington, D.C.

Royer, T. C. 1975. Seasonal variations of waters in the northern Gulf of Alaska. Deep-Sea Research 22: 403-416.

Royer, T. C. 1981a. Baroclinic transport in the Gulf of Alaska. Part I. Seasonal variations of the Alaska current. Journal of Marine Research 39: 239-250.

Royer, T. C. 1981b. Baroclinic transport in the Gulf of Alaska. Part II. A freshwater-driven coastal current. Journal of Marine Research 39: 251-266.

Royer, T. C. 1982. Coastal freshwater discharge in the northeast Pacific. Journal of Geophysical Research 87: 2017-2021.

Royer, T. C. 1993. High-latitude oceanic variability associated with the 18.6 year nodal tide. Journal of Geophysical Research 98: 4639-4644.

Royer, T. C. 1998. Coastal processes in the northern North Pacific. Pages 395-414 *in* A. R. Robinson and K. H. Brink, editors. The sea. John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Royer, T. 2000. Personal communication. Center for Coastal Phyiscal Oceanography, Old Dominion University, Norfolk, Virginia.

Royer, T. C., Hansen, D. V., and Pashinski, D. J. 1979. Coastal flow in the northern Gulf of Alaska as observed by dynamic topography and satellite-tracked drogued drift buoys. Journal of Physical Oceanography 9: 785-801.

Rugh, D. J., Shelden, K. E. W., and Mahoney, B. A. in press: Distribution of beluga whales in Cook Inlet, Alaska, during June and July, 1993-1998. Marine Fisheries Review.

Rutherford, S. and D'Hondt, S. 2000. Early onset and tropical forcing of 100,000-year Pleistocene glacial cycles. Nature 408: 72-75.

SAI. 1980. Environmental assessment of the Alaskan Continental Shelf: Northeast Gulf of Alaska interim synthesis report. Boulder, Science Applications, Inc.

SAI. 1980a. Environmental assessment of the Alaskan Continental Shelf. Kodiak interim synthesis report - 1980. Boulder, Science Applications, Inc.

SAI. 1980b. Environmental sssessment of the Alaskan Continental Shelf. Northeast Gulf of Alaska interim synthesis report. Boulder, Science Applications, Inc.

Sambrotto, R. N. and Lorenzen, C. J. 1986. Phytoplankton and primary production.

Pages 249-282 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Sandegren, F. E. 1970. Breeding and maternal behavior of the Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubata*) in Alaska. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Sanger, G. A. 1987. Trophic levels and trophic relationships of seabirds in the Gulf of Alaska. Pages 229-257 *in* Croxall. J.P., editor. Seabirds feeding ecology and role in marine ecosystems.

Saulitis, E. L. 1993. The vocalizations and behavior of the "AT"-group of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in Prince William Sound, Alaska. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Schiel, D. R. and Foster, M. S. 1986. The structure of subtidal algal stands in temperate waters. Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review 24: 265-307.

Schlitz, R. submitted. The interaction of shelf water with warm core rings. Journal of Geophysical Research

Schneider, D. and Hunt, Jr. G. L. 1982. A comparison of seabird diets and foraging distribution around the Pribilof Islands, Alaska. Nettleship, D. N., Sanger, G. A., and Springer, P. F. Marine birds: their feeding ecology and commercial fisheries relationships. Canadian Wildlife Service. Special publication.

Schumacher, J. D. and Kendall, Jr. A. W. 1991. Some interactions between young walleye pollock and their environment in the western Gulf of Alaska. La Jolla, California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations.

Schumacher, J. D. and Royer, T. 1993. Review of the physics of the subarctic gyre. PICES Scientific Report No. 1:37-40.

Schumacher, J. D., Pearson, C. A., and Reed, R. K. 1982. An exchange of water between the Gulf of Alaska and the Bering Sea through Unimak Pass. Journal of Geophysical Research 87: 5785-5795.

Schumacher, J. D., Stabeno, P. J., and Bogard, S. J. 1993. Characteristics of an eddy over the continental shelf: Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Journal of Geophysical Research 98: 8395-8404.

Schumacher, J. D., Stabeno, P. J., and Roach, A. T. 1990. Volume transport in the Alaska Coastal Current. Continental Shelf Research 9: 1071-1083.

Scribner, K. T., Bodkin, J., Ballachey, B., Fain, S. R., Cronin, M. A., and Sanchez, M. 1997. Population genetic studies of the sea otter (Enhydra lutris): a review and interpretation of available data. Pages 197-208 *in* A. E. Dizon, S. J.

Chivers, and W. F. Perrin, editors. Molecular genetics of marine mammals. Society for Marine Mammalogy, Lawrence.

Seaman, G. A., Frost, K. J., and Lowry, L. F. 1985. Investigations of belukha whales in coastal waters of western and northern Alaska. Part I. distribution, abundance and movements. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Sease, J. L. 1992. Status review, harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*) in Alaska. National Marine Fisheries Service .

Seiser, P. E. 2000. Mechanism of impact and potential recovery of pigeon guillemots (*Cepphus columba*) after the Exxon Valdez oil spill. Fairbanks, University of Alaska.

Sergeant, D. E. and Brodie, P. F. 1969. Body size in white whales, *Delphinapterus leucas*. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 26: 2561-2580.

Shaughnessy, P. D. and Fay, F. H. 1977. A review of the taxonomy and nomenclature of North Pacific harbour seals. Journal of Zoology (London) 182: 385-419.

Shigenaka, G., Coates, D. A., Fukuyama, A. K., and Roberts, P. D. 1999. Effects and trends in littleneck clams (*Protothaca staminea*) impacted by the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. Proceedings of the 1999 international oil spill conference, Seattle. American Petroleum Institute, Washington, D.C.

Sigman, D. M. and Boyle, E. A. 2000. Glacial/interglacial variations in atmospheric carbon dioxide. Nature 407: 859-869.

Simenstad, C. A., Estes, J. A., and Kenyon, K. W. 1978. Aleuts, sea otters, and alternate stable state communities. 200: 403-411.

Siniff, D. B. and Ralls, K. 1991. Reproduction, survival and tag loss in California sea otters. Marine Mammal Science 7: 7:211-229.

Siniff, D. B., Williams, T. D., Johnson, A. M., and Garshelis, D. L. 1982. Experiments on the response of sea otters, Enhydra lutris, to oil. Biological Conservation 23: 261-272.

Small, R. J. 1998. Harbor seal investigations in Alaska. Juneau, Alaska, National Marine Fisheries Service. Annual Report Award Number NA57FX0367.

Small, R. J. and Pendleton, G. W. 2001. Harbor seal population trends in the Ketchikan, Sitka, and Kodiak areas of Alaska, 1983-1999. Marine Mammal Science

Small, R. J., Hastings, K., and Jemison, L. A. 1999. Harbor seal investigations in Alaska. Juneau, Alaska, National Marine Fisheries Service. Annual Report Award Number NA87FX0300.

Small, R. J., Pendleton, G. W., and Wynne, K. M. 1997. Harbor seal population trends in the Ketchikan, Sitka, and Kodiak Island areas of Alaska. Pages 7-32 in Annual report: harbor seal investigations in Alaska. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Anchorage.

Small. R. 2001. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, Alaska.

Smith, D. R., Niemeyer, S., Estes, J. A., and Flegal, A. R. 1990. Stable lead isotopes evidence of anthropogenic contamination in Alaskan sea otters. Environmental Science and Technology 24: 1517-1521.

Smith, T. G., St. Aubin, D. J., and Hammill, M. O. 1992. Rubbing behaviour of belugas, *Delphinapterus leucas*, in a high arctic estuary. Canadian Journal of Zoology 70: 2405-2409.

Snarski, D. 1971. Kittiwake ecology, Tuxedni National Wildlife Refuge. Alaska Cooperative Wildlife Research Unit, quarterly report. Fairbanks, University of Alaska.

Sobolevsky, Y. I., Sokolovshaya, T. G., Balanov, A. A., and Senchenko, I. A. 1996. Distribution and trophic relationships of abundant mesopelagic fishes of the Bering Sea. Pages 159-167 in O. A. Mathisen and K. O. Coyle, editors. Ecology of the Bering Sea: a review of Russian literature. Alaska Sea Grant College Program , Fairbanks.

Sousa, W. P. 1979. Experimental investigations of disturbance and ecological succession in a rocky intertidal community. Ecological Monographs 49: 227-254.

Southward, A. J. and Southward, E. C. 1978. Recolonization of rocky shores in Cornwall after the use of toxic dispersants to clean up the Torrey Canyon spill. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 35: 682-706.

Spraker, T. R., Lowry, L. F., and Frost, K. J. 1994. Gross necropsy and histopathological lesions found in harbor seals. Pages 281-312 in T. R. Loughlin, editor. Marine mammals and the *Exxon Valdez*. Academic Press, Inc., San Diego.

Springer, A. M. 1991. Seabird relationships to food webs and the environment: examples from the North Pacific Ocean. Pages 39-48 in W. A. Montevecchi and A. J. Gaston, editors. Studies of high-latitude seabirds. 1. Behavioral, energetic, and oceanographic aspects of seabird feeding ecology. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Springer, A. M. 1998. Is it all climate change? Why marine bird and mammal populations fluctuate in the North Pacific? Pages 109-119 in G. Holloway, P. Muller, and D. Henderson, editors. Biotic impacts of extratropical climate variability in the Pacific: proceedings'Aha Huliko'a Hawaiian winter workshop. University of Hawaii, Hawaii.

Springer, A. M. and Speckman, S. G. 1997. A forage fish is what? Summary of the symposium. Pages 773-805 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems:.proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Springer, A. M., Kondratyev, A. Y., Ogi, H., Shibaev, Y. V., and Van Vliet, G. B. 1993. Status, ecology, and conservation of *Synthliboramphus* murrelets and auklets. Pages 187-201 in K. Vermeer, K. T. Briggs, K. H. Morgan, and D. Siegel-Causey, editors. The status, ecology, and conservation of marine birds of the North Pacific. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Springer, A. M., McRoy, C. P., and Flint, M. V. 1996. The Bering Sea Green Belt: shelf edge processes and ecosystem production. Fisheries Oceanography 5: 205-223.

Springer, A. M., Piatt, J. F., and Van Vliet, G. 1996. Sea birds as proxies of marine habitats and food webs in the western Aleutian arc. Fisheries Oceanography 5: 45-55.

St. Aubin, D. J., Smith, T. G., and Geraci, J. R. 1990. Seasonal epidermal molt in beluga whales, *Delphinapterus leucas*. Canadian Journal of Zoology 68: 359-367.

Stabeno, P. J., Reed, R. K., and Schumacher, J. D. 1995. The Alaska coastal current: continuity of transport and forcing. Journal of Geophysical Research 100: 2477-2485.

Stewart, B. S. 1997. Ontogeny of differential migration and sexual segregation in northern elephant seals. Journal of Mammalogy 78: 1101-1116.

Stockmar, E. J. 1994. Diel and seasonal variability of macrozooplankton and micronekton in the near-surface of the Gulf of Alaska. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Stockwell, D. 2000. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Stommel, H. and Arons, A. B. 1960a. On the abyssal circulation of the world ocean - I. Stationary planetary flow patterns on a sphere. Deep-Sea Research 6: 140-154.

Stommel, H. and Arons, A. B. 1960b. On the abyssal circulation of the world ocean - II. An idealized model of the circulation pattern and amplitude in oceanic basins. Deep-Sea Research 6: 217-233.

Sturdevant, M. V., Wertheimer, A. C., and Lum, J. L. 1996. Diets of juvenile pink and chum salmon in oiled and non-oiled nearshore habitats in Prince William Sound, 1989 and 1990. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 578-592.

Suchanek, T. H. 1985. Mussels and their role in structuring rocky shore communities. Pages 70-89 *in* P. G. Moore and R. Seed, editors. Ecology of rocky coasts: Chapter VI. Hodder and Stoughton Educational Press, Kent.

Sugimoto, T. 1993. Subarctic gyre: gross structure and decadal scale variations in basin scale climate and oceanic conditions. PICES Scientific Report No. 1:35-37.

Sugimoto, T. and Tadokoro, K. 1997. Interannual-interdecadal variations in zooplankton biomass, chlorophyll concentration, and physical environment of the subarctic Pacific and Bering Sea. Fisheries Oceanography 6: 74-92.

Sundberg, K., Deysher, L., and McDonald, L. 1996. Intertidal and supratidal site selection using a geographical information system. American Fisheries Society Symposium 18: 167-176.

Suryan, R. M., Irons, D. B., and Benson, J. 2000. Prey switching and variable foraging strategies of black-legged kittiwake and the effect on reproductive success. Condor 102: 374-384.

Szepanski, M. M., Ben-David, M., and Van Ballenberghe, V. 1999. Assessment of anadromous salmon resources in the diet of the Alexander Archipelago wolf using stable isotope analysis. Oecologia 120: 327-335.

Tabata, S. 1982. The anticyclonic, baroclinic eddy of Sitka, Alaska, in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Journal of Physical Oceanography 12: 1260-1282.

Thompson, R. O. R. Y. and Golding, T. J. 1981. Tidally induced upwelling by the Great Barrier Reef. Journal of Geophysical Research 86: 6517-6521.

Thomson, R. E. 1972. On the Alaskan Stream. Journal of Physical Oceanography 2: 363-371.

Thomson, R. E. and Wolanski, E. 1984. Tidal period upwelling with Raine Island Entrance Great Barrier Reef. Journal of Marine Research 42: 787-808.

Thomson, R. E., Hickey, and LeBlond. 1989. The Vancouver Island Coastal Current: fisheries barrier and conduit. Pages 265-296 *in* R. J. Beamish and G. A. McFarlane, editors. Effects of ocean variability on recruitment and an evaluation of parameters used in stock assessment models. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences.

Thomson, R. E., LeBlond, P. H., and Emery, W. J. 1990. Analysis of deep-drogued satellite-tracked drifter measurements in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Atmosphere-Ocean 28: 409-443.

Thorsteinson, F. V. and Lensink, C. J. 1962. Biological observations of Steller sea lions taken during an experimental harvest. Journal of Wildlife Management 26: 353-359.

Traynor, J. J., Williamson, N. J., and Karp, W. A. 1990. A consideration of the accuracy and precision of fish-abundance estimates derived from echo-integration surveys. Rapports et Proces-Verbaux des Reunions Conseil International pour L'Exploration de la Mer (Copenhagen) 189: 101-111.

Trenberth, K. E. and Hurrel, J. W. 1994. Decadal atmospheric-ocean variations in the Pacific. Climate Dynamics 9: 303-319.

Trenberth, K. E. and Paolino, D. A. 1980. The Northern Hemisphere sea-level pressure data set: trends, errors, and discontinuities. Monthly Weather Review 108: 855-872.

Trillmich, F. and Ono, K. 1991. Pinnipeds and El Niño: responses to environmental stress. Springer Verlag. Berlin.

Trites, A. W. 1990. Thermal budgets and climate spaces: the impact of weather on the survival of Galapagos (*Arctocephalus galapagoensis Heller*) and northern fur seal pups (*Callorhinus ursinus L.*). Functional Ecology 4: 753-768.

Tully, J. P. and Barber, F. G. 1960. An estuarine analogy in the sub-arctic Pacific Ocean. Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada 17: 91-112.

Tyler, A. V. and Kruse, G. H. 1996. Conceptual modeling of brood strength of red king crabs in the Bristol Bay region of the Bering Sea. High latitude crabs: biology, management, and economics. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, AK-SG-96-02.

Tyler, A. V. and Kruse, G. H. 1997. Modeling workshop on year-class strength of Tanner crab, *Chionoecetes bairdi*. Juneau, Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Regional Information Report No. 5J97-02.

Underwood, A. J. and Denley, E. J. 1984. Paradigms, explanations and generalizations in models for the structure of intertidal communities on rocky shores. Pages 151-180 *in* D. Simberloff and et al., editors. Ecological communities: conceptual issues and the evidence. Princeton University Press, Princeton.

USFWS. unpublished data. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Anchorage, Alaska.

USGS. unpublished data. Anchorage, Alaska.

Valiela, I. 1995. Marine ecological processes, Second ed. Springer-Verlag. New York.

Van Pelt, T. I., Piatt, J. F., Lance, B. K., and Roby, D. D. 1997. Proximate composition and energy density of some North Pacific forage fishes. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology A118: 1393-1398.

Van Scoy, K. A., Olson, D. B., and Fine, R. A. 1991. Ventilation of North Pacific intermediate water: the role of the Alaskan gyre. Journal of Geophysical

Research 96: 16801-16810.

van Tamelen, P. G., Stekoll, M. S., and Deysher, L. 1997. Recovery processes of the brown alga, *Fucus gardneri* (Silva), following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill: settlement and recruitment. Marine Ecology Progress Series 160: 265-277.

VanBlaricom, G. R. 1987. Regulation of mussel population structure in Prince William Sound, Alaska. National Geographic Research 3: 501-510.

VanBlaricom., G. R. 1988. Effects of foraging by sea otters on mussel-dominated intertidal communities. Pages 48-91 *in* G. R. VanBlaricom and J. A. Estes, editors. The community ecology of sea otters. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Vastano, A. C., Incze, L. S., and Schumacher, J. D. 1992. Environmental and larval pollock observations in Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography 1: 20-31.

Vaughan, S. L., Moores, C. N. K., and Gay, S. M. 2001. Physical processes influencing the pelagic ecosystem of Prince William Sound. Fisheries Oceanography

Vermeer, K. and Westrheim, S. J. 1984. Fish changes in diets of nestling rhinoceros auklets and their implications. Pages 96-105 in D. N. Nettleship, G. A. Sanger, and P. F. Springer, editors. Marine birds: their feeding ecology and commercial fisheries relationships. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Vermeer, K., Sealy, S. G., and Sanger, G. A. 1987. Feeding ecology of Alcidae in the eastern North Pacific Ocean. Pages 189-227 in J. P. Croxall, editor. Seabirds: feeding ecology and role in marine ecosystems. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

von Huene, R. W., Shor, Jr. G. G., and Malloy, R. J. 1972. Offshore tectonic features in the affected region. Pages 266-289 *in* The great Alaska earthquake of 1964, vol. 6: oceanography and coastal engineering. National Research Council, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

von Ziegesar, O., Ellis, G., Matkin, C. O., and Goodwin, B. 1986. Repeated sightings of identifiable killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in Prince William Sound, Alaska, 1977-1983. Cetus 6: 9-13.

Wang, J., Meibing, J., Patrick, E. V., Allen, J. R., Mooers, C. N. K., Eslinger, D. L., and Cooney, R. T. 2001. Numerical simulations of the seasonal circulation patterns, and thermohaline structures of Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography

Wang. 1992. Interaction of an eddy with the continental slope. WHOI-92-40.

Ward, A. E. 1997. A temporal study of the phytoplankton spring bloom in Prince William Sound, Alaska. University of Alaska,Fairbanks.

Ware, D. M. 1991. Climate, predators and prey: behavior of a linked oscillating system. Pages 279-291 *in* T. Kawasaki, S. Tanaka, Y. Toba, and A. Tanaguchi, editors. Long-term variability of pelagic fish populations and their environments. Pergamon Press, Tokyo.

Warren, B. A. 1983. Why is no deep water formed in the North Pacific? Journal of Marine Research 41: 327-347.

Warren, B. A. and Owens, W. B. 1985. Some preliminary results concerning deep northern-boundary in the North Pacific. Progress in Oceanography 14: 537-551.

Warwick, R. M. 1993. Environmental impact studies in marine communities: pragmatical considerations. Australian Journal of Ecology 18: 63-80.

Warwick, R. M. and Clarke, K. R. 1993. Comparing the severity of disturbance: a meta-analysis of marine macrobenthic community data. Marine Ecology Progress Series 92: 221-231.

Weingartner, T. 2000. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Welch, D. 2001. Canada Department of Fisheries, Pacific Biological Station.

Welch, D. W., Ward, B. R., Smith, B. D., and Eveson, P. 1. 1998. Influence of the 1990 ocean climate shift on British Columbia steelhead (*O. mykiss*) and coho (*O. kisutch*) populations. in G. Holloway, P. Muller, and D. Henderson, editors. Biotic impacts of extratropical climate variability in the Pacific: proceedings 'Aha Huliko'a Hawaiian winter workshop. University of Hawaii, Honolulu.

Welschmeyer, N. A., Strom, S., Goerjcke, R., DiTullio, G., Belvin, L., and Petersen, W. 1993. Primary production in the subarctic Pacific Ocean: project SUPER. Progress in Oceanography 32: 101-135.

Wendell, F. E., Hardy, R. A., and Ames, J. A. 1986. An assessment of the accidental take of sea otters, Enhydra lutris, in gill and trammel nets. Marine Resources Technical Report 54. California Department of Fish and Game, Long Beach.

Westlake, R. L. and O'Corry-Crowe, G. 1997. Genetic investigation of Alaskan harbor seal stock stricture using mtDNA. Pages 205-234 in Annual report: harbor seal investigations in Alaska, editor. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Anchorage.

Wheeler, P. A. and Kokkinakis, S. A. 1990. Ammonium recycling limits nitrate use in the oceanic Subarctic Pacific. Limnology and Oceanography 35: 1267-1278.

Whitledge, T. 2000. Institute of Marine Sciences, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, Alaska.

Whitney, F. A., Wong, C. S., and Boyd, P. W. 1998. Interannual variability in nitrate supply to surface waters of the northeast Pacific Ocean. Marine Ecology Progress Series 170: 15-23.

Whittaker, L. M. and Horn, L. H. 1982. Atlas of Northern Hemisphere extratropical cyclonicactivity, 1958-1977. Madison, Department of Meteorology, University of Wisconsin.

Willette, M., Sturdevant, M., and Jewett, S. 1997. Prey resource partitioning among several species of forage fishes in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Pages 11-29 in Forage fishes in marine ecosystems: proceedings of the international symposium on the role of forage fishes in marine ecosystems. Alaska Sea Grant College Program, University of Alaska, Fairbanks.

Willette, T. M., Cooney, R. T., and Hyer, K. 1999. Predator foraging-mode shifts affecting mortality of juvenile fishes during the subarctic spring bloom. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56: 364-376.

Willette, T. M., Cooney, R. T., Patrick, V., Thomas, G. L., and Scheel, D. in press. Ecological processes influencing mortalities of juvenil pink salmon (Oncorhynchus gorbascha) in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography.

Williamson, N. J. and Traynor, J. J. 1984. In situ target-strength estimation of Pacific whiting (*Merluccius productus*) using dual-beam transducer. Journal Du Conseil Conseil International Pour L'Exploration De La Mer 41: 285-292.

Willis, J. M., Pearcy, W. G., and Parin, N. V. 1988. Zoogeography of midwater fishes in the subarctic Pacific. Pages 79-142 in T. Nemoto and W. G. Pearcy, editors. The biology of the subarctic Pacific. Tokyo.

Willmott, A. J. and Mysak, L. A. 1980. Atmospherically forced eddies in the northeast Pacific. Journal of Physical Oceanography 10: 1769-1791.

Wilson, D. E., Bogan, M. A., Brownell, Jr. R. L., Burdin, A. M., and Maminov, M. K. 1991. Geographic variation in sea otters, Enhydra lutris. Journal of Mammalogy 72: 22-36.

Wilson, J. G. and Overland, J. E. 1986. Meteorology. Pages 31-54 *in* D. W. Hood and S. T. Zimmerman, editors. The Gulf of Alaska physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.

Winston, J. 1955. Physical aspects of rapid cyclogenesis in the Gulf of Alaska. Tellus 7: 481-500.

Witherell, D. 1999a. Status and trends of principal groundfish and shellfish stocks in the Alaska exclusive economic zone, 1999. Anchorage, North Pacific Fishery Management Council.

Witherell, D. 1999b. Status and trends of principal groundfish and shellfish stocks in the Alaska exclusive economic zone, 1999. Anchorage, North Pacific Fishery Management Council.

Witherell, D. and Kimball, N. 2000. Status and trends of principal groundfish and shellfish stocks in the Alaska EEZ, 2000. Anchorage, North Pacific Fishery Management Council.

Wolfe, R. J. and Hutchinson-Scarbrough, L. B. 1999. The subsistence harvest of harbor seal and sea lion by Alaska Natives in 1998. Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Juneau.

Wootton, J. T. 1994. The nature and consequences of indirect effects in ecological communities. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 25: 443-466.

Xie, L. and Hsieh, W. W. 1995. The global distribution of wind-induced upwelling. Fisheries Oceanography 4: 52-67.

Xiong, Q. and Royer, T. C. 1984. Coastal temperature and salinity observations in the northern Gulf of Alaska, 1970-1982. Journal of Geophysical Research 8061-8068.

Yankovsky, A. E. and Chapman, D. C. 1997. A simple theory for the fate of buoyant coastal discharges. Journal of Physical Oceanography 27: 1386-1401.

Yeardley, Jr. R. B. 2000. Use of forage fish for regional streams wildlife risk assessment: relative bioaccumulation of contaminants. Environmental Monitoring and Assessments 65: 559-585.

York, A. E. 1994. The population dynamics of northern sea lions, 1975-1985. Marine Mammal Science 10: 38-51.

York, A. E., Merrick, R. L., and Loughlin, T. R. 1996. An analysis of the Steller sea lion metapopulation in Alaska. Pages 259-292 *in* D. R. McCullough, editor. Metapopulations and wildlife conservation. Island Press, Washington, DC.

Zador, S. G. and Piatt, J. F. 1999. Time-budgets of common murres at a declining and increasing colony in Alaska. Condor 101: 149-152.

Zheng, J. and Kruse, G. H. 2000a. Recruitment patterns of Alaskan crabs and relationships to decadal shifts in climate and physical oceanography. ICES Journal of Marine Science 57: 438-451.

Zheng, J. and Kruse, G. H. 2000b. Recruitment patterns of Alaskan crabs and relationships to decadal shifts in climate and physical oceanography. ICES Journal of Marine Science 57: 438-451.

6. CONCEPTUAL FOUNDATION

In This Chapter

- Explanation and role of the conceptual foundation
- Identification and interaction of key ecological factors
- Description of the central and supporting hypotheses

6.1 Introduction

The conceptual foundation is an idea, or model, of how the marine ecosystem in the GOA works. It is based on the key ecological concepts below and on the scientific background provided in Chapter 5. This chapter provides five primary topics of information:

1. Explanation of the role of the conceptual foundation in the GEM program.
2. Introduction of some key ecological concepts to explain generally how natural forces and human actions affect populations of organisms and biodiversity in marine ecosystems.
3. Illustration of how the particular conditions in the GOA appear to affect ecosystem production patterns from the coastal watersheds out to the center of the GOA. Examples of these conditions are large inputs of nutrient-poor fresh water, strong atmospheric low pressure in winter, persistent coastal downwelling, and presence of gyres and eddies

The conceptual foundation focuses on how the marine ecosystem in the GOA works.

4. Discussion of how regional ecological differences, such as those between PWS and Lower Cook Inlet, may arise as a result of local differences in the interaction between physical forces (tides, winds, and currents), geography, oceanography, and human uses.
5. Presentation of ideas about how multi-annual and multi-decadal changes in natural and human use factors may produce long-term changes in populations of valued animals.

6.2 Role of the Conceptual Foundation in GEM

In Figure 19, the relationship of the conceptual foundation to the other GEM program elements and activities is depicted. Building on the mission and goals established by the Trustee Council, the foundation encapsulates the Trustee Council's understanding of how the GOA operates as an ecological system and how its

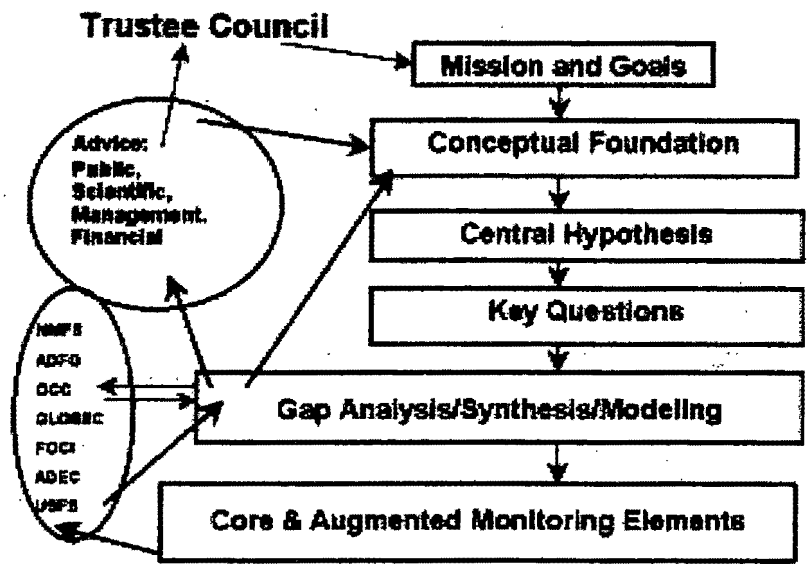


Figure 19. Selecting monitoring elements starts with the mission and goals established by the Trustee Council, as expressed in the conceptual foundation, which is regularly updated by new information from a variety of sources.

valued populations of animals are regulated. Therefore, the conceptual foundation is at the philosophical and scientific center of the GEM program.

The conceptual foundation is the product of ongoing synthesis and modeling, and the first iteration, presented in this chapter, is based on the scientific background in Chapter 5. The conceptual foundation is not static; it changes as the understanding of the GOA marine ecosystem changes. Therefore, the conceptual foundation is an integral element in the adaptive management of the GEM program and in marine science. The central GEM hypothesis is derived from the conceptual foundation, and the central hypothesis in turn prompts key questions that the program elements answer. It is expected, then, that as the GEM program and allied efforts improve understanding of how the GOA ecosystem works, new syntheses and modeling efforts will allow the conceptual foundation to be updated and modified to better reflect the realities of nature and man's place in it. The basic understanding of the control of changes in productivities of biological resources is summarized in the central hypothesis that the conceptual foundation supports.

6.2.1 Hypothesis and Questions for Monitoring and Research

In summarizing current ideas of how human actions and natural forces change living marine resources, the conceptual foundation provides a model of reality. Testing this model requires framing the hypotheses and questions that are the foundation for any monitoring and research program. As fully developed in Section 6.6, the intellectual framework of the GEM program is a hierarchy composed of a central hypothesis, a central question developed from the hypothesis, key questions that relate the central question to habitat types, specific questions relating to the key questions, and ultimately, testable hypotheses based on the specific questions. (see Overview)

The central hypothesis and the central and key questions are presented below, to provide context for reviewing the information on current monitoring and research in the GOA that follows (Chapter 7). Specific questions for each key question, the next level of detail in the hierarchy of questions, are presented in Chapter 8. The information needed to answer specific questions and to better understand associated ecological processes provide the starting points for implementing the monitoring program (Chapters 9 to 11). Note that the current hierarchy of questions does not include testable hypotheses. The process of implementation starts at the level of specific questions that are to be developed into testable hypotheses during the scientific advisory process (Chapter 11).

6.3 Key Ecological Concepts

All animals and plants in the oceans ultimately rely on energy from the sun or, in some special cases, on chemical energy from within the earth. The amount of solar energy converted to living material determines the level of ecosystem production (total amount of living material and at what rate it is produced). As a rule of thumb, populations of individual species (such as salmon, herring, and harbor seals) cannot exceed about

10% of the biomass of their prey populations (about the average conversion of prey to predator biomass). Therefore, the amount of energy that gets incorporated into living material and the processes that deliver this material as food and energy to each species are key factors influencing reproduction, growth, and death in species of concern. Increases in prey, other factors such as habitat being equal, generally allow populations to increase through growth and reproduction of individual members. At the same time, there are factors that lead to decreases in populations–decreases in suitable habitat, decreases in growth and reproduction, and increases in rate of removal (death) of individuals from the population. As a result, the combined effects of natural forces and human actions that determine food supply (bottom-up forces), habitat (bottom-up and top down forces), and removals (top-down forces) determine the size of the population of any animals of concern by controlling reproduction, growth, and death.

6.3.1 Control of Primary Production

The vast majority of the energy that supports ecosystems in the GOA comes from capture, or fixation, of solar energy in the surface waters. How much of this energy is captured by plants in the ocean's surface layer and watersheds and passed on ultimately determines how much biomass and production occur at all levels in the ecosystem. Capture of solar energy by plants in the oceans and watersheds and the conversion of solar energy to living tissue (primary production) depends on several interacting forces and conditions that vary widely from place to place, season to season, and year to year as well as between decades. Needless to say, without a clear understanding of how these changes from place to place and from time to time occur, it will never be possible to understand the most important aspects of ecological change in the GOA. The process of capturing solar energy is explained below.

First, because usable sunlight only penetrates a few hundred feet into the ocean, primary production occurs only in this relatively shallow photic zone. In watersheds, cloud cover and shading play a larger role in variability of productivity. Nominally the photic zone extends to 100 m or deeper below the surface, but the depth varies according to water clarity and angle of the sun to the water surface. Second, plants that fix this energy, by using it to make simple sugars out of carbon dioxide and water, depend on nutrients, which are absorbed by the plants as they grow and reproduce. Solar energy that is not captured by plants in the ocean warms the surface waters, making it less dense than the water beneath the photic zone, which causes layering of the water masses. A continuous supply of nutrients to the surface waters is necessary to maintain plant production. Likewise, terrestrial plants depend on nutrients carried from the ocean by anadramous fish. Because the deep water of the GOA is the main reservoir of nutrients for shallow waters, and apparently also an important source for watersheds, the processes that bring nutrients to the surface and into the watersheds are key to understanding primary, therefore ecosystem, productivity. Changes in nutrient supply on time scales of days to decades and space scales from kilometers to hundreds of kilometers have important impacts on primary production, generating perhaps as much as a thousand-fold differences in the amount of solar energy that is captured by the living ecosystem. Nutrient supply from the deep water is influenced by the properties of the shallower water above (mainly because of the decreasing density of the water toward the surface). Nutrient supply is also influenced by physical forces that can overcome the density differences between deep and shallow water–namely, wind acting on the water surface and tidal mixing. For watersheds, nutrient supply apparently depends strongly on biological transport of marine nitrogen by salmon, which die and release their nutrients in freshwater.

As demonstrated in the scientific background in Chapter 5, the knowledge of nutrient supply in the GOA, both how it occurs and how it may be changed on multi-year and multi-decadal scales is very rudimentary. As the energy of the wind and tides mixes surface and deeper water, it not only brings nutrients to the surface layers, but also mixes algae that fix the solar energy down and out of the photic zone, which tends to decrease primary production. Therefore, other factors being equal, continuous high primary production in the spring-summer growing season is a balance between enough wind and tidal mixing to bring new nutrients to the surface, but not so much wind or tidal mixing that would send algal populations to deep water. The seasonal changes in downwelling, solar energy, and water stratification that set up the annual plankton bloom are described in Section 5.6 of the scientific background. As noted in that section, however, it is not well understood how differences in physical forces from year to year and decade to decade change primary production many fold in any particular place.

6.3.2 Change in Populations and Production of Valued Species

Although production at the base of the food web ultimately determines ecosystem productivity, the abundance of any particular population depends on three things affecting the population: immediate food supply (prey), removals (mortality), and habitat.

Increases in food supply will translate to population increase, all other factors being equal. The allocation of energy in each individual is key to growth of the population it belongs to. Food supply is converted into population biomass through growth and reproduction of individuals in specific favorable habitats. Therefore, factors in the habitat such as water temperature, distribution of prey, and contaminants that can influence the allocation of food energy to the following will influence the population size: chasing and capturing prey, keeping body temperature maintained (for homeotherms), growth, and reproduction.

Removals are all the processes that result in loss of individuals from the population, or mortality. These processes include death from contamination, human harvest, predation, disease, and competition. For example, harvest of a large proportion of the largest and most fecund fish in a population will soon decrease the population, as would a virulent virus or the appearance of a voracious predator in large numbers.

Also included under the category of removals is any factor that negatively affects growth or reproductive rate of individuals, because such factors can decrease population size. Contaminants are considered potential removals because of the following possible effects:

- Causing damage that makes energy utilization less efficient and requires energy for repairs;
- Interfering with molecular receptors that are part of the regulatory machinery for energy allocation; and
- Damaging immune systems that make disease more likely; and
- Outright killing organisms at high concentrations.

6.4 Interactions of Key Ecological Factors

6.4.1 From Watersheds to the Central Gulf

The examination of how these key concepts fit into the real ecosystem of the GOA relies on the key ecological factors of total physical forcing and primary productivity as well as food, habitat, and removals as the main theoretical controls on the ecosystem and its animal populations. Total annual primary productivity, natural controls on populations, and human influences change from the edge of watershed to the central GOA. These changes are related to the physical processes and geographic features depicted in Figure 20, a cross section of the GOA from the top of the eastern ringing mountains out past the continental shelf slope. Some key biological features are also depicted in this figure.

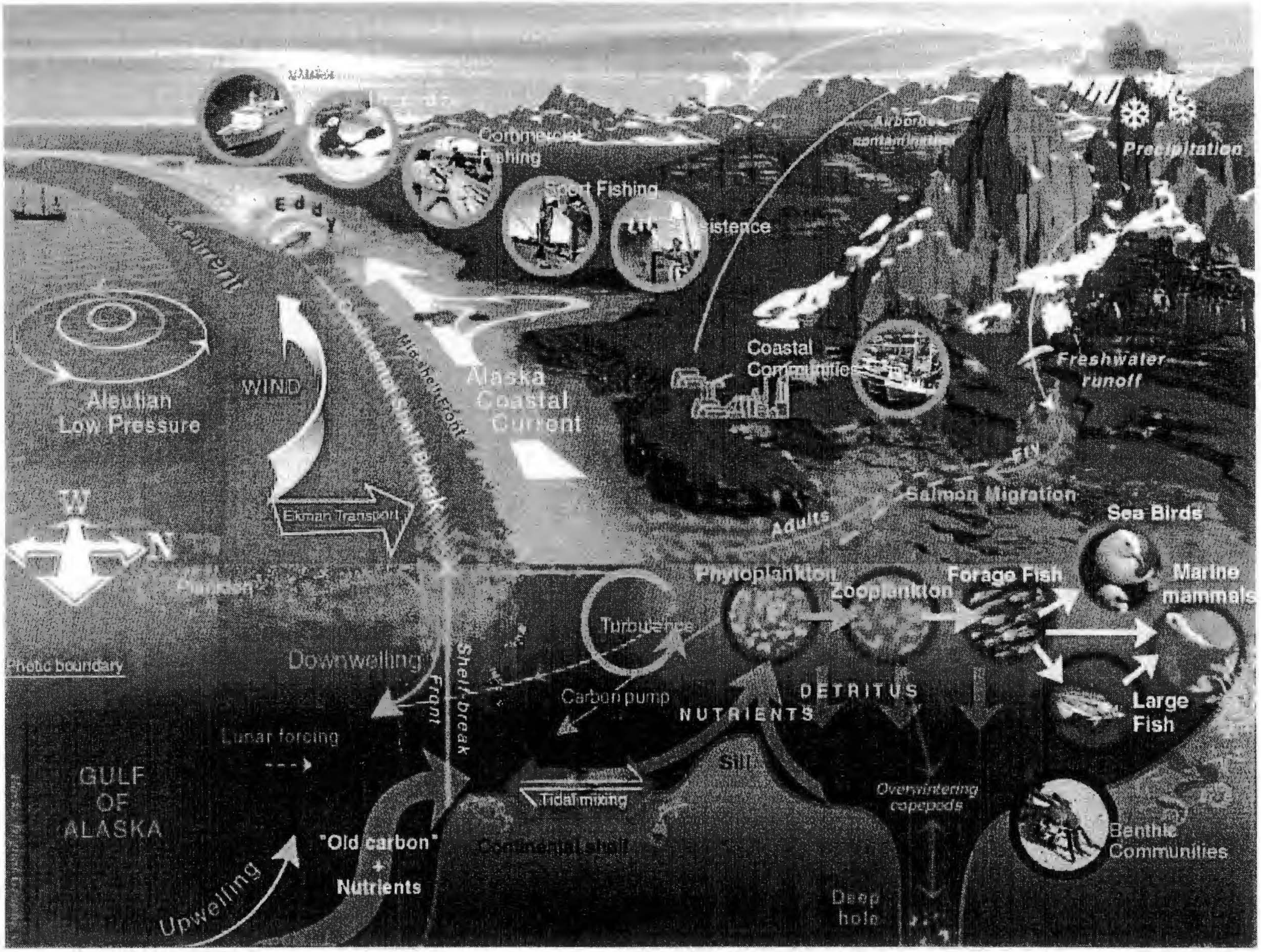


Figure 20. Diagram of the northern GOA showing connections among plants and animals, natural forces, and human actions. (J. Allen Alaska Digital Graphics)

6.4.2 Watersheds

Watersheds are linked by geochemical cycles and by common climatic forcing to the marine ecosystem. Input of terrestrial carbon contributes to the carbon budget. of the oceans. In addition, the incorporation of carbon dioxide by marine plants acts as a pump that potentially sequesters amounts of carbon for long periods of time in the oceans.

6.4.2.1 Physical Forcing and Primary Production

Primary natural forces are precipitation and insolation. Watersheds depend on import of marine nutrients by anadromous fish and other animals. Therefore, maintenance of healthy salmon runs and populations of terrestrial animals that feed in the nearshore marine environment is key to healthy watershed ecosystems. Woody debris and vegetation from land are also imported to the marine environment, providing a carbon source and habitat for some species. The common effects of climate also link these two systems. Fresh water from coastal watersheds contributes huge amounts of fresh water to the GOA and makes possible the ACC–the single most dominant and integrating feature of the physical environment on the continental shelf.

6.4.2.2 Food, Habitat, and Removals of Valued Species

Human activities in the watersheds that remove natural vegetation can result in soil erosion and its attendant effects on stream and coastal marine life. Fresh water can carry contaminants to the marine environment. Sources of these contaminants can be of local origin–sewage and septic wastes, industrial and military wastes, motor vehicles, and oil from spills–or imported from distant sources and carried across the Pacific Ocean by atmospheric processes.

6.4.3 Nearshore

The nearshore is technically a part of the ACC regime in most places, except arguably in some embayments, such as the fjord systems in northern PWS. But, because of the importance and vulnerability of the intertidal and shallow subtidal areas and the dependence of so many valued species on nearshore habitat, it is treated separately here from the ACC.

6.4.3.1 Physical Forcing and Primary Production

The productivity of nearshore marine communities depends on both fixed algae and some other vascular plants in shallow water, as well as free-floating phytoplankton (Table 16). Nutrient supply to fixed plants is not well characterized, but presumably is controlled by oceanographic processes and seasonal cycles of water turnover on the inner shelf as well as some contributions from stream runoff. This process of nutrient supply is essentially the same as for nearshore phytoplankton. Ultimately, as mentioned in Section 5.5, the run up of deepwater from the central GOA onto the shelf and some poorly characterized processes for cross-shelf transport of the nutrients are critical to both growth of fixed and floating nearshore algae. The nearshore waters can be depleted of nutrients during the

Table 16. RepresentativeTrophic Groups of the Northern Gulf of Alaska Arranged in Descending Order by Trophic Level.

Group name	Trophic Level	Biomass (t km^{-2} · year^{-1})	P/B (yr^{-1})	Q/B (yr^{-1})
Orcas	4.98	0.003	0.050	8.285
Sharks	4.81	0.700	0.100	2.100
Pacific halibut	4.59	0.677	0.320	1.730
Small cetaceans (porpoises)	4.52	0.015	0.150	29.200
Pinnipeds (harbor seal & sea lion)	4.45	0.066	0.060	25.550
Lingcod	4.33	0.077	0.580	3.300
Sablefish	4.29	0.293	0.566	6.420
Arrowtooth flounder adult	4.25	4.000	0.220	3.030
Adult salmon	4.17	1.034	6.476	13.000
Pacific cod	4.14	0.300	1.200	4.000
Arrowtooth flounder juvenile	4.01	0.855	0.220	3.030
Avian predators	3.89	0.002	5.000	36.500
Seabirds	3.78	0.011	7.800	150.60
Deep demersals fish (skates and flatfishes)	3.78	0.960	0.930	3.210
Pollock age 1+	3.76	7.480	0.707	2.559
Rockfish	3.74	1.016	0.170	3.440
Baleen whales	3.65	0.149	0.050	10.900
Salmon fry 0-12 cm	3.51	0.072	7.154	62.800
Nearshore demersal fish (greenling and sculpin)	3.35	4.200	1.000	4.240
Squid	3.26	3.000	3.000	15.000
Eulachon	3.25	0.371	2.000	18.000
Sea otters	3.23	0.045	0.130	117.000
Deep epibenthos	3.16	30.000	3.000	10.000
Capelin	3.11	0.367	3.500	18.000
Adult herring	3.10	2.810	0.540	18.000
Pollock age 0	3.07	0.110	2.340	16.180
Shallow large epibenthos	3.07	3.100	2.100	10.000
Invert-eat bird	3.07	0.005	0.200	450.500
Sandlance	3.06	0.595	2.000	18.000
Juvenile herring	3.03	13.406	0.729	18.000
Jellies	2.96	6.390	8.820	29.410
Deep small infauna	2.25	49.400	3.000	23.000
Near omni-zooplankton.	2.25	0.103	7.900	26.333

Table 16. RepresentativeTrophic Groups of the Northern Gulf of Alaska Arranged in Descending Order by Trophic Level.

Group name	Trophic Level	Biomass (t km^{-2} $year^{-1}$)	P/B (yr^{-1})	Q/B (yr^{-1})
Omni-zooplankton	2.25	24.635	11.060	22.130
Shallow small infauna	2.18	51.500	3.800	23.000
Meiofauna	2.11	**4.475**	4.500	22.500
Deep large infauna	2.10	28.350	0.600	23.000
Shallow small epibenthos	2.05	26.100	2.300	10.000
Shallow large infauna (clams, etc.)	2.00	12.500	0.600	23.000
Near herbi-zooplankton	2.00	0.136	27.000	90.000
Herbi-zooplankton	2.00	30.000	24.000	50.000
Near phytoplkton	1.00	**5.326**	190.000	0.000
Offshore phytoplankton	1.00	**10.672**	190.000	0.000
Macroalgae/eelgras	1.00	125.250	5.000	0.000
Inshore detritus	1.00	3.000	-	-
Offshore detritus	1.00	4.500	-	-

NOTES: Bold values were calculated by the Ecopath software.

P/B is production/biomass.

[redacted]

Source: After Table 74 Okey and Pauly 1998 [redacted] growing season if the warm surface layers where primary productivity is drawing down nutrients is not mixed with deeper waters by wind and tidal action. Within-season variability in primary production, therefore, appears to depend on the previous late summer run up of deepwater onto the shelf, some poorly described cross-shelf transport processes, and within-growing season wind and tidal mixing.

Cloud cover is likely also very important in regulating the amount of solar energy reaching the ocean surface. Nearshore turbulence, which is the result of the prevailing climate and tidal action, promotes the growth of algae and phytoplankton. These plants are the food supplies for filter-feeding molluscs, such as clams and mussels, that are such important sources of food for a variety of nearshore animals, such as sea otters and sea ducks. Climate also directly affects intertidal and subtidal animals through changes of temperature, water salinity, and ice formation. Ice formation is an important source of mortality and reduced growth of intertidal algae and some animal populations in some situations. It is suspected that bottom-up forcing through variability of primary production is an important influence on intertidal invertebrate communities on the scale of decades, but there are no long-term data sets to examine this supposition. If wave action is too intense, it can limit population growth; for example, waves during storms often throw large amounts of herring eggs (embryos) onto the beach where they die.

In addition to these natural factors, human use of the nearshore zone (such as for cooling, reception of eroded soil, and physical disruption of attached plants) and human accidental releases of toxic materials have the potential to affect nearshore primary production. At the present time, it appears that the influences of natural forces on basin and regional scales in nearshore ecosystem productivity are overwhelming and that human influences are negligible, except in local areas (such as harbor contamination).

6.4.3.2 Food, Habitat, and Removals of Valued Species

A large number of nearshore animal populations respond to both bottom-up and top-down natural forcing as well as to human factors. Bottom-up forcing appears to have more documented effects on such populations as herring, pollock, shrimp, crab, salmon, and seabirds than has been documented for infaunal and intertidal animals. There are good examples of control of populations by removals (top-down influences), and many of these relationships, such as that between sea urchins and otters, are cited in Section 5.7. Disease possibly influences some populations, such as Viral Hemorrhagic Septicemia virus effects on Pacific herring in PWS.

The intertidal and nearshore benthos is particularly vulnerable to human use through harvesting of various invertebrates, trampling, release of contaminants, road and home construction, and harvest-related soil erosion. At the present time, impacts of such activities appear to be localized only, because of the dispersed nature of human impacts along the vast coastline of the northern GOA. These sentinel populations may need to be monitored more closely, however, as Alaska's population and use of the nearshore zone expands in the future.

6.4.4 Alaska Coastal Current

As noted above, the domain of the ACC in many cases starts at the shoreline and extends out to a frontal area several tens of kilometers onto the continental shelf. The inshore boundary of this current system is not precisely defined in this subsection because the nearshore aspects of the ecosystem have been covered above.

6.4.4.1 Physical Forcing and Primary Production

Because the ACC is a buoyant, low-salinity, eastern boundary current fed essentially by a line-source of fresh water along the length of the Alaska coastline, it offers a unique opportunity to study basin-scale physical forcing of biological production. Although one characteristic of the ACC is the draw-down of nutrients during the growing season to levels that are undetectable, the in-season variability, clearly driven by patterns in the aforementioned wind mixing, is very significant. A promising model developed by Eslinger et al. (2001) is capable of tracking the in-season variability of plankton production based on the physic al characteristics of the water column and the wind field. The extent to which patterns of seasonal wind mixing is the major contributor to longer-term variability in primary productivity is not clear. Tidal mixing likely contributes, as do other potential mechanisms that transport deep-water nutrients into shallow waters; for example, late-summer relaxation of Ekman transport and up-canyon currents.

Annual variability of nutrient supply likely has a great influence on long-term variability in primary production. For example, this influence would be consistent with the relationship between the Bakun upwelling index and pink salmon marine survival rates up to 1990 (see Section 5.6) and the differences observed between the volumes of settled plankton in the 1980s and the 1990s (E, Brown, unpublished).

Another physical phenomenon that apparently affects biological production in the water column is eddies. Eddies have been documented, for example, in Shelikof Strait and greatly influence retention of larval pollock in a favorable environment. Beyond their study in the FOCI program, not much is known generally about eddies in the ACC and their biological influences. There are also eddies in Katchemak Bay, some of which are stratified at the surface by freshwater inputs that may similarly benefit pelagic species there and off Kayak Island southeast of PWS. Finally, the southerly and easterly winds that predominate during most of the year drive offshore water inshore, Ekman transport, carrying offshore planktonic organisms close to shore and providing potential sources of food for nearshore organisms, such as juvenile pink salmon.

Finally, the outer edge of the ACC often forms a front with the water masses seaward of it. This front is characterized by strong convergence of offshore and inshore water masses and significant downward water velocities. It appears at times to concentrate plankton, nekton, fish, and birds, and is probably an important site for trophic interactions.

6.4.4.2 Food, Habitat, and Removals of Valued Species

Many of the types of natural and human influences that affected the nearshore species apply also to the ACC. This similarity is due in part to the fact that many species cross between the nearshore environment and deeper waters. Bottom-up forcing appears to be of great importance, because areas of the ACC with high levels of chlorophyll a during the growing season and vigorous vertical mixing, such as Lower Cook Inlet, also support large populations of fishes, seabirds, and marine mammals. The ACC is the main domain in which the productive fisheries of the GOA are prosecuted for both pelagic and benthic species. Consequently, human influences are potentially quite large aspect of removals. Other human influences include contaminants (possibly) and long-term global warming.

6.4.5 Alaska Current and the Subarctic Gyre

6.4.5.1 Physical Forcing and Primary Production

In the Alaska Current and the subarctic gyre, forcing by winds associated with the Aleutian Low pressure system have a profound effect on production and shoreward transport of plankton. Production and shoreward transport of plankton is determined by the following:

- Upwelling at the center of the subarctic gyre;
- Depth of the mixed layer (freshwater and solar energy input set up the mixed surface layer where primary production takes place);
- Possible upwelling of nutrients along the continental slope and at the shelf break where the shelf break front may direct upwelled water toward the surface; and
- Formation of eddies along the shelf break that may incubate plankton in a favorable environment for production and be mechanisms of exchange between offshore and shelf water masses. Individual eddies may persist for months and are therefore potentially important in any one growing season.

The contrasts in biological production and shoreward transport of plankton between intense and relaxed Aleutian Low pressure conditions in the Alaska Current region and the subarctic gyre are profound. In periods with more negative atmospheric pressure that is keyed by the northeastern movement of the ALP into the GOA in winter, the following interrelated physical changes are observed:

- Acceleration of the cyclonic motion of the Alaska Current and subarctic gyre;
- Increased upwelling in the middle of the subarctic gyre (and possibly along the continental shelf);

- Entrainment of more of the west wind drift (southerly portion of the subarctic gyre) northward into the GOA, rather than into the California Current system; Warmer surface-water temperatures;
- Increased precipitation and fresh water runoff from land;
- Freshening of the surface layer;
- Increased winds and Ekman transport; and
- Increased onshore downwelling.

These phenomena are thought to cause the following biological changes:

- The result of the shallower mixed surface layer is that the spring plankton production is likely higher (remember that nutrients may not limiting in the subarctic gyre).
- Greater standing crops of zooplankton and nekton that have been observed are probably made possible by the higher productivity of the phytoplankton.
- More food is available for the fish that feed on plankton and nekton, such as salmon.
- Salmon populations track mean atmospheric pressure for the wintertime sea surface on scales of decades.

In addition to the multi-decadal oscillations of atmospheric pressure, climate changes manifested in the northern GOA also include periodic El Niños and the long-term warming of the oceans. El Niños have been associated with successful recruitment of a series of groundfish species, such as pollock, as well as some die-off of seabirds. Because the El Niño phenomenon appears to be manifested solely in warming of the upper 200 m of the ocean, its biological effects are probably mediated through water stratification and its relationship to primary production and growth of larval fish.

6.4.5.2 Food, Habitat, and Removals of Valued Species

The Alaska Current is centered over the shelf break, an area of high biological activity. The high concentrations of plankton observed at the shelf break, whether they result from accumulation of plankton originating further offshore, in situ production, or both, provide a rich resource for a variety of organisms and their predators. It is not clear that juvenile salmon feed in this regime, but adults of all species certainly do. Other prominent organisms include sablefish, myctophids (lantern fish), sea lions, some seabirds, and whales. Well-developed benthic communities exist on the outer shelf, shelf beak, and continental slope, including commercially exploited populations of shrimp, crab, cod, halibut, and pollock. Some fishing activities, such as bottom trawling, have the potential to do habitat damage and possibly limit populations of animals associated with the sea bottom. Issues associated with the balance between production and removals of commercially important species are of the utmost societal importance in Alaska and further ecological information, modeling, and synthesis centered on the Alaska Current regime is necessary.

6.5 Regional Changes in Key Ecological Factors

In general, regional differences in populations of fishes, birds, and marine mammals in the northern GOA are well known, but the underlying interacting ecological factors that give rise to these differences are not as well understood. In this section, some of the observed regional differences and some potential reasons underlying them are advanced. These explanations of regional differences are based on incomplete or piecemeal evidence, but this speculation is important because it may lead to further study and analysis, and to new understanding. Comparative analysis of interacting factors in several regions may better clarify the role of various geographic features, physical forcing, and biological consequences in the northern GOA, as was emphasized in relation to seabirds (Section 5.9). Because there is so much homogeneity in the ACC, in particular, what happens in PWS, along the Kenai Peninsula, in Outer and Middle Cook Inlet, and in the Shelikof Strait may well represent four different field experiments in the same body of water.

One of the most prominent regional contrasts is different levels of ecosystem productivity apparent in Lower Cook Inlet and PWS. It is relatively clear from satellite measurements of surface-water chlorophyll a and the large populations of forage fishes, seabirds, and marine mammals that occur there that the Lower Cook Inlet area is extremely productive in the summer growing season relative to PWS. Satellite data for the sea surface temperatures indicate that cold deep water, which is presumably also rich in plant nutrients, is on the surface whenever images are available, and in satellite images taken at the same times, PWS appears to have warmer surface water. The strong mixing that brings deeper water to the surface in this area is probably largely tidal in nature. Vigorous mixing is encouraged by the following:

- The local geography and oceanography, such as the large tide range;
- The large volume of water that is exchanged with each tidal cycle; and
- The narrow entrances to Outer Cook Inlet relative to the area of Cook Inlet.

Another regional difference on a somewhat smaller scale occurs within Cook Inlet itself. In Cook Inlet, studies of forage fish abundance and seabird populations at Gull Island on the eastern side and Chisik Island on the western side provide an interesting contrast that strongly suggests physical forcing on seabird populations. At Gull Island, populations of all major seabirds have been increasing during the last 20 years, and at Chisik Island the opposite trend has occurred. This difference appears to be caused by marine-influenced conditions near Gull Island where the food web probably has much greater access to deep-water nutrient sources. At

Chisik Island, however, the system is strongly influenced by nutrient-poor, silty freshwater runoff from the major glacial rivers of northern Cook Inlet, and only meager populations of forage fish exist within the foraging range of most species. It appears that with a warmer climate and more runoff, the dynamic balance between fresher water coming down the western side of Cook Inlet and saltier offshore water entering Stevenson and Kennedy entrances has been shifted to make Chisik Island less productive and Gull Island more productive. Eddies, which have been known to exist for some time near Gull Island in Kachemak Bay, have recently been shown to provide a less-dense surface lens in which forage fish favorable to seabirds reside.

Another example of shaping important differences in ecological production by regional differences in geography and physical forcing is the eddy system in Shelikof Strait. As mentioned above, this system has been extensively explored and modeled during the FOCI program. This eddy retains larval pollock in relatively favorable conditions for growth, and allows them to eventually contribute to the important pollock fishery in the northern Gulf.

The following have demonstrated important subregional ecological differences between northern and southern PWS as well as eastern and western PWS:

- The Trustee Council's SEA program;
- Hatchery production records; and
- Other studies, such as those carried out on kittiwake reproduction.

The pattern of some differences may have changed on a decadal scale. The following regional differences are apparent in PWS:

- Residence time of water in different portions of PWS, with longer residence time in the northern portions of the sound that have more restricted water circulation;
- Degree of incursion of the ACC into the sound, which appears to vary annually;
- Glacial runoff, which is greater in the north and east; and
- Extent of subtidal habitat, which is greater in the eastern portions of PWS.

6.6 Central Hypothesis, Central Question, and Key Questions by Habitat Type

6.6.1 Central Hypothesis

The central hypothesis: Natural forces and human actions working over global to local scales bring about short term and long lasting changes in the biological communities that support birds, fish, shellfish and mammals. Natural forces and human actions bring about change by altering relationships among defining characteristics of habitats and ecosystems such as heat and salt distribution, insolation, biological energy flow, freshwater flow, biogeochemical cycles, food web structure, fishery impacts, and pollutant levels.

The central hypothesis states widely held, but largely unproven, beliefs about what drives changes in living marine-related resources in time and space. Current speculations supported by limited observations are that forcing by winds, precipitation, predation, currents, natural competitors for food and habitat, fisheries, and pollutants change living marine-related resources over different scales of time and space through alteration of critical properties of habitats and ecosystems.

Having an appreciation for the scales of time and space over which the processes responsible for biological production occur is essential for designing monitoring and research intended to detect and understand changes in the ecosystem. To understand the composition and extent of ecosystems, it is necessary to ask and answer questions about the distances and time associated with the variation in the biological and physical phenomena. As stated eloquently by Ricklefs (1990) (p. 169), "Every phenomenon, regardless of its scale in space and time, includes finer scale processes and patterns and is embedded in a matrix of processes and patterns having larger dimensions." Indeed, spatial and temporal scales are part of the definitions of physical and biological processes such as advection and growth. Taking account of spatial and temporal scales is critical to studying linkages between natural forces biological responses (Francis et al. 1998).

6.6.2 Central and Key Questions

The central hypothesis raises questions about how natural forces and human actions interact to cause changes in productivity across the habitats of the GOA. Forces of change act both locally and at distance, with both transient and long-lasting effects. The Trustee Council vision for the GEM program (Section 1.1) seeks fundamental understanding of the degree to which changes in production of plants and animals in the key habitats of GOA is controlled by natural environmental forces as opposed to human actions. Converting the central hypothesis to this question gives the following central question:

- What are the relative roles of natural forces and human actions, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long-lasting fluctuations changes in the biological communities that support birds, fish, shellfish and mammals in the four key habitats of the GOA?

  Where the four key habitat types are (1) watersheds, (2) intertidal-subtidal, (3) ACC, and 4) offshore, including the continental shelf break and Alaska Gyre, as more precisely defined elsewhere.

The four key questions given below are specific adaptations of the central question to habitat types. Finding answers to the central and key questions will require a very long-term program of monitoring and research. In most cases, it is expected that successively more sophisticated approaches to answering key questions will be phased in as the program builds over the initial 5 to 10 years. (See Chapter 10). In addition, finding answers to key questions will require long-term monitoring supported by synthesis and research. The results of the synthesis and research will both help refine the approach to the later phased-in activities and identify an approach to long-term monitoring that will answer the key questions. Synthesis and research are therefore an integral part of overall program strategy to answer key questions (See Chapter 8).

6.6.3 Key Questions by Habitat Type

Key questions are designed to explore the means by which natural forces and human actions may drive biological responses over different scales of time and space. The four habitat types provide points of reference for studying the relations among species in spatially and ecologically separated habitats. The intent is to implement monitoring that can, in the long term, help understand the relationships between productivity or community structure of a habitat and the other three habitats.

Watershed Key Question (see Section 5.3). What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as climate, and human actions, such as habitat degradation and fishing, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long-lasting changes in marine-related biological production in watersheds?

Intertidal-subtidal Key Question (see Section 5.7). What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as currents and predation, and human actions, such as sediment and pollutant discharge, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long-lasting changes in community structure and dynamics of the intertidal and subtidal habitats?

Alaska Coastal Current Key Question (see Sections 5.4.3). What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as the variability in the strength, structure and dynamics of the ACC, and human actions, such as fishing and pollution, in causing local and distant changes in production of phytoplankton, zooplankton, birds, fish, and mammals?

Offshore (Outer Continental Shelf and Alaska Gyre) Key Question. What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as changes in the strength of the Alaska Current and Alaksan Stream, mixed layer depth of the gyre, wind stress and downwelling, and human actions such as pollution, in determining production of carbon and its shoreward transport?

The types of information available to answer the key questions are considered next in Chapter 7. Specific additional information needs for answering the key questions are addressed in Chapter 8. A selection of related hypotheses and models of the agents and origins of biological changes from the scientific literature (see Chapter 5 for references) is offered for comparison to the central hypothesis.

6.7 Supporting Models and Hypotheses

The central hypothesis is a general explanation of what controls biological productivity for wide ranges of species and geography. Other specific hypotheses about how natural forces and human actions control biological productivity have been advanced in the literature, as covered in the scientific background (Chapter 5) for species and groups of species. The conceptual foundation accommodates multiple models and hypotheses as specific versions of the central hypothesis.

Key questions to be resolved by monitoring, synthesis, and retrospective analyses are the relative importance of specific hypotheses for explaining changes in productivities of particular species in particular localities. The relative importance of natural forces and human actions in affecting changes in productivities of birds, fish, and mammals in watersheds, the intertidal zone, and nearshore and offshore areas is largely unknown. The following are the leading hypotheses of mechanisms that control biological productivity throughout the GOA.

6.7.1 Match-Mismatch

The essence of the match-mismatch hypothesis is as follows:

- Populations of organisms are adapted to certain environmental conditions.
- When those conditions change rapidly, predator and prey populations may not track in the same way.
- As a result, transfer of energy into the higher levels of the food web is compromised.

This hypothesis has been proposed by Mackas to explain changes in production with the slow shift to earlier emergence of *Neocalanus* copepods at ocean Station P in the last several decades. (Mackas et al. 1998) The match-mismatch hypothesis was also invoked by Anderson and Piatt to explain ecological changes observed in a long time series of small-mesh trawl sampling around Kodiak Island and the Alaska Peninsula (Anderson and Piatt 1999).

6.7.2 Pelagic-Benthic Split

Eslinger et al. (Eslinger et al. 2001) suggested that strong inshore blooms of spring phytoplankton that occur in conditions of strong stratification put more biological production into the benthic ecosystem, in contrast to weaker–but more prolonged blooms–that occur in cool and windy growing seasons. Under the latter conditions, it has been proposed that biological production is more efficiently used by the pelagic ecosystem and that presumably relatively less of the production reaches the benthos. It is conceivable that during a series of years in which one condition is much more prevalent than the other, food might be reallocated between pelagic-feeding and benthic-feeding species. Or, strong year classes of particular long-lived species might result either from conditions of strong stratification causing more biological production or weaker blooms, leading to dominance of the system by certain suites of species.

6.7.3 Optimum Stability Window

Gargett (1997) proposed that there is a point in the range of water stability below which water is too easily mixed downward, resulting in less than maximum productivity, and above which the water is stratified too much and resists wind mixing. It was proposed that the fluctuating differences in salmon production between the California Current and subarctic gyre domains are ultimately the result of these two systems being on different parts of this response curve at different times.

6.7.4 Physiological Performance and Limits

A number of explanations for long-term change more simply propose that the abundance of certain species, mainly fish, is a direct response to their physiological performance in different temperatures. Under this hypothesis, the changes in dominance of cod-like fishes and crustaceans that were seen in eastern Canada around 1990 and in the northern GOA around 1978 were initially a response to warm (ascendancy of gadids) or cold (ascendancy of crustaceans) water temperatures. In other words, the main agents of change are the direct effects of warmer water temperatures acting on physiological tolerance, rather than the combined effects of freshwater input, winds, and temperature affecting ecological processes.

6.7.5 Food Quality

The food quality hypothesis is also referred to as the junk food hypothesis. It attributes declines of many organisms of higher trophic levels observed in the last several decades (harbor seals, sea lions, and many seabirds) to the predominance of suites of forage species that have low energy content (less lipid) than previous food sources; for example, gadids and flatfishes. Consistent with this hypothesis is evidence from the Trustee Council's APEX program, which showed that it takes about twice as much herring as pollock to raise a kittiwake chick to fledging during the nesting season. With the relative rarity of capelin and sand lance in the diets of seabirds in PWS during the last several decades, it seems that many of the population declines might be at least partially attributable to the role of these fatty fish in seabird diets. The change in food sources has been advanced for marine mammal populations that have been in decline.

6.7.6 Fluctuating Inshore and Offshore Production Regimes

This plan provides the first presentation of the model consisting of fluctuating inshore and offshore production regimes. Although this model is closely related to the Gargett hypothesis of optimum stability window, it proposes that under the same set of atmospheric forcing conditions opposite production effects are seen inshore and offshore. Figure 21 illustrates some features of this model.

FIGURE 21 HAS NOT BEEN PREPARED YET

The model was developed as a result of observing during the last several decades that populations of many seabirds, harbor seals, and sea lions, which forage mainly in inshore waters, have been declining while marine survival of salmon and high levels of offshore plankton and nekton suggested that offshore productivity was very high. It is proposed that the various manifestations of climate forcing have combined since about 1978 (positive PDO) to make the ocean more productive offshore. Characteristics of the offshore ocean include more upwelling of deep nutrients and a mixed surface layer that is shallower and more productive. These same climatic conditions are proposed to have made the inshore areas of the GOA less productive. During the positive PDO, greater freshwater supply (precipitation on the ocean and terrestrial runoff) results in greater-than-optimal nearshore stratification. Also during the positive PDO, more wind is not enough to overcome the stratification during the growing season, but does inhibit the relaxation of downwelling. Therefore, fewer nutrients are supplied to the inshore regime from the annual run up of deep water onto the shelf. During a negative PDO, the opposite pattern in biological response results from a colder, less windy, and drier maritime climate.

6.7.7 Incremental Degradation

Marine environments around urbanized areas (Los Angeles, Puget Sound, Boston Harbor, San Francisco Bay, and New York Bight) and watershed systems (Columbia River Basin and San Joaquin River) have highly altered ecosystems that contain invasive exotic species, individuals impaired by contamination, and fish populations that have been highly altered by the combined effects of various human alterations. Although much of this degradation took place before the national will turned toward a sustainable natural environment, it appears that this degradation took place through a long period of time and as a result of the combined impacts of many different human uses. To this day, no regional programs track the combined effects of all human activities.

6.8 References

Anderson, P. J. and Piatt, J. F. 1999. Community reorganization in the Gulf of Alaska following ocean climate regime shift. Marine Ecology Progress Series 189: 117-123.

Eslinger, D., Cooney, R. T., McRoy, C. P., Ward, A., Kline, T., Simpson, E. P., Wang, J., and Allen, J. R. 2001. Plankton dynamics: observed and modeled responses to physical factors in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography in press

Francis, R. C., Hare, S. R., Hollowed, A. B., and Wooster, W. S. 1998. Effects of interdecadal climate variability on the oceanic ecosystems of the northeast Pacific. Fisheries Oceanography 7: 1-21.

Gargett, A. 1997. Optimal stability window: A mechanism underlying decadal fluctuations in north Pacific salmon stocks. Fisheries Oceanography 109-117.

Mackas, D. L., Goldblatt, R., and Lewis, A. G. 1998. Interdecadal variation in developmental timing of Neocalanus plumchrus populations at Ocean Station P in the subarctic North Pacific. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 55: 1878-1893.

Ricklefs, R. E. 1990. Scaling patterns and process in marine ecosystems. Pages 169-178 in K. Sherman, L. M. Alexander, and B. D. Gold, editors. Large marine ecosystems: patterns, processes and yields. American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D.C.

7. CURRENT INFORMATION GATHERING

In This Chapter

- Use and compilation of the gap analysis database
- Overview of the database content
- Projects relevant to the GEM program

Editorial notes: Needs a map of the GOA showing the locations of the most important ongoing marine science projects. Needs a description of monitoring projects in the database that are directed at human activities, following the outline of human activities in Chapter 2. Some of the information under GAP Analysis: Summary could be abstracted to tables or histograms. Projects of Interest to GEM needs further editing.
"Projects of interest to GEM" section refers to Table of titles of gap analysis database projects that needs to be prepared for the appendix. After discussion we decided we still need this for the reference of the reviewers and serious readers (such as us).

7.1 The Gap Analysis Database: Introduction

The conceptual foundation in Chapter 6 has been largely shaped by currently available scientific information. Much of this information is derived from the monitoring and research activities conducted in the GOA and adjacent waters during the past 100 years. Information from these activities has been included in a database titled "Ongoing and Historical Monitoring and Research Activities in the Gulf of Alaska and Adjacent Waters." This database is referred to as the "gap analysis database" because it is used as a tool to assess past and current activities to set priorities and promote collaboration in filling important "gaps" in information, while avoiding duplication. Compiling this comprehensive database is a challenge in itself, given multiple funding sources and the dynamic nature of various appropriations processes, as well as uncertainties about the relationships among various programs and projects.

The database includes both ongoing and historical projects concerned with information gathering, processing, and applications in resource management and other areas of marine science. Projects in the database include readily identifiable research and monitoring activities, such as the NMFS biennial (triennial) trawl survey, the International Pacific Halibut Commission longline survey, and the National Weather Service data buoy network. These activities may occur in single or multiple localities. The record for each project includes information on project purpose, types of data, expected project duration, contact information, Web site, and latitude and longitude for field activities. Not all categories of information in each record are complete, but a description of the basic functions of each project is available in each record. Because the "project" was not intended to be a standard unit for defining effort in marine research, the broad analysis below should be considered a qualitative comparison of the relative amounts of effort devoted to each category. The database is available in File Maker Pro, but can be made available in other formats, such as Excel and Access.

7.2 The Gap Analysis Database: Summary

Projects in the gap analysis database have been categorized as either monitoring or synthesis and research. For the purposes of the gap analysis, monitoring is routine data gathering based on assumptions about ecosystem behavior or how the measures capture system behavior (a conceptual model). Monitoring is not expected to be completed within a fixed time frame. Examples of monitoring measurements are salinity, temperature, concentration of DDT, and populations of species at seabird colonies. For the purposes of the gap analysis, synthesis and research is defined as a time-limited activity that investigates relationships among ecosystem components with the use of data according to a specific experimental design. The synthesis and research category includes retrospective analysis, modeling, ecosystem process studies, and data management and information transfer. Each general activity category is further classified into six areas of study:

1. Birds, fish, and shellfish;
2. Physical and biological oceanography;
3. Freshwater water quality;
4. Contaminants;
5. Mixed studies that combine areas; and
6. Other.

7.2.1 Monitoring

The majority (58%) of 279 projects in the gap analysis database as of May 2001 are classified as monitoring functions. Most of the monitoring functions address commercially, culturally, or socially important large animals, as identified below in percentages of all projects in the database:

- 20% fish and shellfish;
- 9% mixed studies;
- 7% mammal; and
- 4% seabird.

The balance of the monitoring projects are devoted exclusively to the small plants and animals and the physical and chemical measurements, shown below as percentages of all projects in the database:

- 15% physical oceanography with some chemical and biological;
- 1% freshwater;
- 1% biological oceanography;
- 1% contaminants; and
- < 1% other.

Monitoring projects for fish and shellfish are largely directed at single species or closely related aggregates of species such as salmon, halibut, rockfish, and crab. Mixed studies combine large animals, smaller fish, plankton, and sometimes contaminants, although detecting trends in the abundance of large animal species appears to be the primary purpose of the mixed surveys. Physical oceanography projects are dominated by satellite telemetry.

The ADF&G fields the largest number of fish and shellfish projects in the northern GOA, primarily for salmon and crab and, to a lesser extent, rockfish and other species. Long annual time series data collected by ADF&G are available from ADF&G for salmon and crab catches and for salmon spawners (escapements) in most major watersheds. Long annual time series exist for trawl survey data for shrimp, groundfish, and crab. Other substantial salmon data sets are age, weight, and length of adult salmon in catches. Other ADF&G projects record characteristics such as genetics, presence of disease, and other biological data.

More detailed information is available in Appendix ___ and the gap analysis database.

7.2.2 Synthesis and Research

About 42% of the remaining projects in the gap analysis database are synthesis and research activities. These activities are listed below as percentages of all projects in the database:

- 22% data management and information transfer;
- 11% retrospective analysis;
- 5% modeling; and
- 3% ecosystem process studies.

The synthesis and research activities are further defined below as numbers of projects, because the small number of projects in some categories makes comparison of percentages problematic.

Data Management and Transfer

- 21 physical oceanography and atmospheric data;
- 2 benthic intertidal;
- 1 biological oceanography;
- 8 bird;
- 5 contaminant;
- 7 fish;
- 8 mammal;
- 6 mixed tissue archives for large animals and biological and physical data; and
- 2 freshwater and watershed oriented.

Retrospective Analysis

- 6 physical oceanography;
- 8 mixed (physical and biological);
- 1 mammal;
- 1 human use (subsistence);
- 9 fish;
- 2 contaminant;
- 2 bird;
- 1 biological oceanography; and
- 1 benthic intertidal.

Modeling

- 1 benthic intertidal;
- 3 mammal;
- 1 mixed (coupled biophysical); and
- 8 physical oceanography.

Ecosystem Process Studies. Relatively few (nine) ecosystem process studies are currently ongoing in the GOA. Four are being conducted in Glacier Bay in the more southern end of the GOA. Others are more relevant, looking at oceanographic forcing of primary productivity and productivities of fish.

7.3 Projects of Interest to GEM

The federal government is the primary funding source for the current information gathering programs of interest to the development of the GEM program, with substantial funding also provided by state government, foreign governments, and non-governmental organizations. The work is conducted within programs and projects too numerous to list here; however, a reference on the specific agencies and programs is provided in Appendix ___. Relevant projects cover three broad categories:

1. Bird, fish and mammal data and some human impacts associated with their harvests, collected by the primary fish and wildlife resource management entities;
2. Biological and other oceanographic observations, collected as part of major research efforts; and
3. Physical and chemical characteristics of waters and habitats collected by the primary state and federal agencies providing environmental monitoring.

Information on birds, fish, and mammals in watersheds and the nearshore marine areas is relatively abundant. Because data were collected through time for a variety of purposes and with a variety of methods, however, the usefulness for a long-term program such as the GEM program will need to be assessed on a case-by-case basis. Ongoing programs collecting animal data of particular interest to the GEM program are continuous, annual time series (in excess of 50 years) on commercial species such as salmon, fur, seals and halibut, and shorter time series (some discontinuous) of around 30 to 50 years on other species of fish and shellfish, seabirds, and marine mammals. Observations on marine-related terrestrial animals and vegetation are available from grid surveys in the Chugach National Forest.

The longest continuous-time series of physical oceanographic measurements (temperature and salinity) in the GEM region is located outside the mouth of Resurrection Bay near Seward. Shorter time series of other variables have been collected at this location, known as Gulf of Alaska 1 (GAK1), by the Institute of Marine Science (IMS), University of Alaska Fairbanks (UAF), during the last three decades. Other ongoing oceanography programs initiated within the last 20 years provide important data sets. The Fisheries and Oceanography Coordinated Investigations (FOCI), initiated in the 1980s, was the first program in the western GOA to model physical oceanographic processes to understand changes in annual abundance of a marine fish species, pollock. Initiated in the 1990s, the Ocean Carrying Capacity (OCC) program is collecting data on the distribution of juvenile salmon on the continental shelf in the GOA and Bering Sea. Also initiated in the 1990s, the Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics (GLOBEC) program combines retrospective studies of existing data with observations of plankton, physical and chemical oceanography, and juvenile salmon abundance in PWS and the adjacent continental shelf and shelf break. GLOBEC is of particular interest to the GEM program because it seeks to understand how natural forces bring about changes in biological productivity, including that of salmon.

Other longer time series of observations of biological and physical oceanography from ongoing programs in the marine environment include the work of the Japan Fisheries Agency, which has been taking oceanographic observations in the GOA since the 1950s. Observations of the distributions of North American and Asian stocks of salmon and catches of groundfish species (pollock and cod) in the GOA by the International North Pacific Fisheries Commission and its successor, the North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission (NPAFC), are extensive; however annual time series are not all complete. Although located very far to the south in the GOA, Canada's Ocean Station P continues to provide a continuous record of oceanographic observations now more than five decades long.

Daily time series (some discontinuous) of oceanographic and atmospheric data relevant to GEM planning are available, with the most observations from the past decade. An array of buoys in the northern GOA operated by the National Weather Service (NWS) and the National Oceanographic Data Center of NOAA provides atmospheric and physical oceanographic measurements of relevance to GEM planning. In addition, the satellite remote sensing projects of both NOAA and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration provide cloud cover and sea surface observations throughout the GEM region.

Of immediate interest to GEM are ongoing projects to characterize the physical and chemical characteristics of waters and habitats collected by the primary environmental monitoring concerns U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), ADEC, and EPA. Long-time-series measurements of freshwater runoff from stream gauges in major rivers of Southcentral Alaska are available from USGS, although the future of this program appears to be in doubt. ADEC has ongoing time series of water quality in the GEM region and is responsible for implementation of the EPA stations for the marine environmental monitoring and assessment program (EMAP) in the northern GOA.

8. DEFINITION OF GEM INFORMATION NEEDS

In This Chapter

- Summary of general gaps in marine science
- Definition of four main habitat types integral to the GEM program
- Starting points for development of information needs for each habitat type

Editorial note: Refers to Appendix (C) table listing titles of projects in gap analysis database.

8.1 Introduction

Chapter 7 summarizes the database of current and historical monitoring and research projects in the GOA and adjacent waters, and highlights a number of data sets that will be of great value in developing the GEM program. This chapter provides a "gap analysis" of information needed to answer the key questions of the conceptual foundation described in Chapter 6. Those questions are designed to promote better understanding of the origins and time-space scales of variability in marine production and fluctuations of key marine-related species in the GEM region. The questions, and information needed to answer them, are still very broad. To provide a more meaningful gap analysis, the key questions have been further expanded into multiple specific questions for each of the four representative habitat types: watersheds, intertidal-subtidal, Alaska Coastal Current (ACC), and offshore. The specific questions are then followed by a description of the information needed to answer them. Critical ecological processes are also suggested for each habitat type to provide further context for the specific questions and information needs. Together, these information needs will form the starting point for developing specific hypotheses and designing the monitoring and research components necessary to test them as described in Chapter 10.

The reader is advised to consider the questions and information needs below as the starting points for the process of implementation. All concepts for specific information needs are subject to further development through the scientific advisory process described in Chapter 11. The advisory process is expected to include workshops and other meetings to gather the advice of experts in science, public policy, management, and user group concerns. Opportunities for data acquisition and partnerships are discussed in Chapter 10.

8.1.1 General Information Gaps in Marine Science

Relatively little information has been gathered for species of plants and animals that are physically small and unsuitable for commerce and subsistence (see Chapter 7 and Appendix C). Consequently, substantial information gaps still exist for the basic life histories and biology of broad assemblages of species and communities that are outside the realm of human trade. The rule of thumb is that the amount of scientific information available is inversely proportional to the remaining energy and biomass at each trophic level **(Need xc figure here).** An especially large gap exists for basic information on zooplankton species and benthic invertebrates that provide a vital link between primary producers and fish, birds, and mammals that constitute the higher trophic levels. Additionally, how natural forces and human actions control productivities of valued living marine resources is still poorly understood, although information on the natural forces of climate and physical oceanography is steadily increasing primarily through satellite telemetry.

8.1.2 Representative Habitat Types

Four habitat types, representative of the GEM region, are used to better organize the GEM program: watersheds, the intertidal-subtidal areas, the ACC, and the offshore areas (the continental shelf break and the Alaska Gyre). These habitats are composed of identifiable, although not rigid, collections of characteristic microhabitats, resident and migratory species, and physical features. The physical locations are described below:

- Watersheds–freshwater and terrestrial habitats from the mountains to the extent of the rivers' plumes;
- Intertidal-subtidal areas–brackish and salt-water coastal habitats that extend offshore to the 20-m depth contour;
- ACC–a swift coastal current of lower salinities (25 to 31 psu) typically found within 35 km of the shore; and
- Offshore–the continental shelf break (between the 200-m and 1,000-m depth contour) and the Alaska Gyre in waters outside the 1,000-m depth contour.

8.2 Watersheds

8.2.1 General Watershed Information Needs

The key question for watershed habitats is: What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as climate, and human actions, such as habitat degradation and fishing, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long lasting changes in marine-related biological production in watersheds?

Long-term monitoring of marine-related productivity in watersheds is needed before the long-term effects of human actions and other natural forces on productivity can be understood. Current monitoring activities and historical records make it possible to detect changes in productivity of prominent species within watersheds that are subject to relatively high levels of human actions, such as the Kenai River. Understanding the causes of changes is not possible, because lack of basic measurements prevents separating the effects of changes in marine productivity from the effects of other factors such as human actions and natural biological and geological forces. Evidence of the significant role of marine nutrients in determining the productivity of watersheds is growing; however, monitoring of these linkages in the northern GOA is nonexistent to weak, based on the information gathering projects described in the database (see Appendix C_). Measurements of human actions in watersheds are widely available; however, accumulation of persistent organic pollutants may be of interest at some point in the future as it relates to control of production of plants and animals.

In addition, although there is substantial evidence of the potential role of the micronutrient iron in controlling marine productivity, the degree to which watersheds may be contributing iron to marine food webs in the GOA is not being measured. The nature of flows of marine nutrients into watersheds, and the flow and distribution of freshwater micronutrients (such as iron), and carbon from the watersheds into the marine environments remain poorly understood in the GOA. Filling watershed information gaps would address long-term questions about how the transport of marine nutrients, terrestrial micronutrients, carbon, and fresh water contribute to changes in productivity and community structure in watersheds and the marine environment.

8.2.2 Specific Watershed Questions and Information Needs

Three specific watershed questions and the related information needs are presented below.

W-1. What are levels of marine-related nutrients in watersheds and how do the annual inputs of marine nutrients vary?

Specific Information Needs: Levels of nitrogen-stable isotopes in freshwater plants and animals, and feasibility of studying sources of precursors of reduced iron in watersheds with marine access.

W-2. What is the annual variability in precipitation and runoff in Alaska watersheds bordering the northern GOA? (Same question applies to intertidal-subtidal and ACC habitats.)

Specific Information Needs: Annual precipitation and runoff for all watersheds flowing into the northern GOA. In some cases, where gaps exist, it may be possible to use marine salinity data to supplement precipitation and stream flow measures in estimating total freshwater run off from land to the GOA. Input of the amount of fresh water entering the GOA from northern British Columbia and Southeast Alaska would also be needed to use marine salinity as a proxy for freshwater runoff.

W-3. What are the levels of persistent organic pollutants entering and leaving watersheds along marine-related pathways?

Specific Information Needs: Levels of persistent organic pollutants such as PCBs in anadromous species as adult immigrants and as juvenile emigrants of the watersheds.

8.2.3 Watershed Processes

The watershed processes identified as of interest to the GEM program are those involved in linkages between terrestrial and marine variability, such as biogeochemical cycles.

8.3 Intertidal and Subtidal

8.3.1 General Intertidal and Subtidal Information Needs

The key question for intertidal and subtidal habitats is: What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as currents and predation, and human actions, such as sediment and pollutant discharge, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long-lasting changes in community structure and dynamics of the intertidal and subtidal habitats?

Long-term monitoring is needed to identify how human actions can change the community structure of the intertidal and subtidal areas. Present monitoring activities may make it possible to detect changes in community structure that are the result of a combination of human actions and natural forces in some localities; however, no program now produces the measurements sufficient to determine the extent to which changes were due to human actions. Evidence of the increasingly important role of human actions in changing the community structure of shallow nearshore environments is growing; however, monitoring that is structured to separate human and natural effects in areas of growing human impacts is sporadic. Monitoring is needed to measure the natural variability of the intertidal-subtidal areas at places and times that support detection of the effects of human actions. Simultaneous monitoring of currents and nutrients, bottom substrates, species composition, and other important natural forces in areas with differing degrees of chronic human activity is needed. Filling intertidal-subtidal information gaps would begin to address the long-term questions of how human actions combine with natural forces to cause changes in productivity and community structure in intertidal-subtidal environments.

8.3.2. Specific Intertidal and Subtidal Question and Information Needs

One specific intertidal and subtidal question and several related information needs are presented below.

I-1. What is the variability of selected plant and animal populations in the intertidal and subtidal zones?

Specific Information Needs:

- Variability in numbers and diversity of fixed algae and invertebrates in several regions: PWS, Kachemak Bay, and Kodiak Island.
- Relative availability of larval dispersal stages.
- Measures of the cycling of carbon, nutrients, and contaminants in key species such as *Fucus*.
- A detailed map of intertidal plant biomass during the growing season on a wide spatial scale.
- Monitoring of clam populations.
- Measurements of population processes of sea otters.
- Identification and measurement of human impacts of concern.

8.3.3 Intertidal and Subtidal Processes

Processes in the intertidal and subtidal habitat of interest to the GEM program relate to variability in community structure and plant biomass of selected populations and processes affecting populations.

8.4 Alaska Coastal Current

8.4.1 General ACC Information Needs

The key question for ACC habitats is: What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as the variability in the strength, structure and dynamics of the ACC, and human actions, such as fishing and pollution, in causing local and distant changes in production of phytoplankton, zooplankton, birds, fish and mammals?

Long-term monitoring activities to detect seasonal changes in the ACC have permitted a general, large-scale understanding of circulation and lower trophic level productivity in the ACC, but current monitoring does not permit the changes in the ACC to be related to the changes in community structure or productivities in intertidal-subtidal areas and watersheds. Long-term monitoring is needed to measure the natural seasonal and interannual variability of the ACC at locations that are likely to permit evaluation of these relationships. Changes in annual production of some fish stocks are highly correlated with physical changes in the ACC, but ideas about the basis for these apparent relations cannot be evaluated from current monitoring activities. Filling ACC information gaps would begin to address the long-term questions of how human actions combine with the transport of marine nutrients, terrestrial micronutrients, carbon, and fresh water to contribute to changes in productivity and community structure in watersheds and the marine environment.

8.4.2 Specific ACC Questions and Information Needs

Seven specific ACC questions and related information needs are presented below.

A-1. What is the annual variability of strength, location and dynamics of the ACC?

Specific Information Needs: Measurements of variability in temperature and salinity with depth, on time scales of from days to multiple decades at locations sufficient to understand seasonal-scale variability at localities sufficiently widely dispersed to understand large-scale structure, including intrusion into bays.

A-2. What is the variability in the supply of deepwater nutrients to the photic zone of the ACC and their concentrations in that zone on time and space scales appropriate to understanding annual primary production?

Specific Information Needs: Measurements of, or proportional to, macronutrients and micronutrients at appropriate spatial scales.

A-3. What is the variability in chlorophyll a concentrations and phytoplankton species composition in the photic zone of the ACC on time and space scales appropriate to understanding annual primary production?

Specific Information Needs:

- Chlorophyll a.
- Information on phytoplankton species composition.

A-4. What is the variability of zooplankton biomass and species composition in the ACC on time and space scales appropriate to understanding annual primary and secondary production?

Specific Information Needs: Information about zooplankton biomass and species composition.

A-5. What is the variability in the availability of forage fish to higher trophic levels (birds, fish, mammals) in the ACC?

Specific Information Needs:

- Analyses of the diets of selected higher-trophic-level organisms (birds, mammals, large predatory fish).
- Analyses of selected higher-trophic-level organisms (birds, mammals, large predatory fish) for fatty acid composition in relation to diet.

A-6. What are the major factors affecting long-term changes in sea bird populations?

Specific Information Needs: Annual colony and chick productivity counts of appropriate species in selected GOA colonies.

See also information needs for Question 5 above.

A-7. What are the major factors affecting long-term changes in harbor seal populations?

Specific Information Needs:

- Annual surveys of molting population in selected GOA haul-outs.
- Fatty acid profiles of individual animals and scat analysis surveys in selected GOA haul-outs.

8.4.3 Alaska Coastal Current Processes

Processes in the ACC of interest to the GEM program relate to variability in the current structure and dynamics, nutrient supply, and selected populations and processes affecting populations.

8.5 Offshore: The Outer Continental Shelf and Oceanic Waters

8.5.1 General Offshore Information Needs

The key question for offshore habitats is: What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as changes in the strength of the Alaska Current and Alaskan Stream, mixed layer depth of the gyre, wind stress and downwelling, and human actions, such as pollution, in determining production of carbon and its shoreward transport?

Long-term information gathering is needed on the effect of the open ocean gyre on the natural variability in seasonal and annual productivity of the continental shelf and ACC. Past information gathering is sufficient to suggest that a strong relationship between gyre and inner waters has existed at times. The gyre-continental shelf-ACC relationship appears to be based on movement of nutrients–detritus and plankton. Current information gathering, however, does not provide the long-term data sets needed to detect changes in the gyre that may be related to changes in the ACC, intertidal-subtidal areas, or watersheds. The same changes in annual production of certain fish stocks that are highly correlated with physical changes in the ACC also appear to be correlated with changes in the gyre, but ideas about the apparent relations between fish stocks, the ACC, and the gyre cannot be evaluated from current information gathering. Filling information gaps on the gyre would begin to address the long-term questions of how oceanic productivities and processes in the GOA may contribute to changes in productivity and community structure in watersheds and the marine environment.

8.5.2 Specific Offshore Questions and Information Needs

Five specific offshore questions and related information needs are presented below.

O-1. What is the annual variability in the production of zooplankton in the offshore areas?

Specific Information Needs: Abundance of zooplankton on time and space scales appropriate to understanding annual production.

O-2. How are the supplies of inorganic nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, and other nutrients essential for plant growth in the euphotic zone annually influenced by climate-driven physical mechanisms in the GOA?

Specific Information Needs: Measurements of inorganic nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, and other nutrients on time and space scales appropriate to understanding annual variability.

O-3. What is the role of the Pacific High pressure system in determining the timing and duration of the movement of dense slope water onto and across the shelf to renew nutrients in the coastal bottom waters?

Specific Information Needs: Synoptic information on sea level pressure and horizontal and vertical structure of density and nutrients on the outer continental shelf and Alaska Gyre in relation to the ACC on appropriate time and space scales.

O-4. Is freshwater runoff a source of iron and silicon that is important to marine productivity in the offshore and adjacent marine waters?

Specific Information Needs: Levels of biologically available silicon and iron from offshore water in relation to the ACC on appropriate time and space scales.

O-5. Does iron limitation control the species and size distribution of the phytoplankton communities in the offshore areas?

Specific Information Needs: Levels of biologically available iron and species composition and size distribution of the phytoplankton communities from offshore water on appropriate time and space scales.

8.5.3 Offshore Processes

Processes of interest to the GEM program in the offshore habitat are variability in the strength and location of the Alaska Current and Alaskan Stream, gyre activity, and primary and secondary production.

9. DEFINITION OF KEY COMPONENTS AND STRATEGIES

In This Chapter

- Relationships and functions of tools for implementing the GEM program
- Strategies for program implementation
- The ongoing role of gap analysis

9.1 Key Components of the GEM Program

The key components are the tools to be used to implement the GEM program. The GEM program components of synthesis, research, monitoring, modeling, and data management and information transfer are common to most programs for assessment of living marine resources ([Myers et al. 2000]). For organizational purposes, retrospective analysis and process studies are treated as forms of research. As a common toolset for monitoring and research, the components are closely related, and their functions sometimes overlap.

9.1.1 Synthesis

The starting point for developing the GEM program is synthesis, because all good science ultimately involves synthesis. In the words of biologist, E. O. Wilson (1998):

> We are drowning in information while starving for wisdom. The world henceforth will be run by synthesizers, people able to put together the right information, think critically about it, and make important choices wisely.

Synthesis builds on and updates current understanding of the northern GOA. It brings together existing data from any number of disciplines, times, and regions to evaluate different aspects of the GEM program central hypothesis, key questions, and related ideas. Synthesis has three broad uses. First, it is used to provide direction for developing hypotheses to be tested and, combined with research and monitoring, to update and refine the conceptual foundation. Second, it is used as a tool–for example, in workshops, meetings, or publications–to inform stakeholders and the public about the developing understanding of the factors responsible for change in the marine environment. And third, synthesis is used to solve resource management problems, by identifying new applications of existing information or by identifying opportunities to solve existing problems through collection of new information. Synthesis is a logical place to begin the cycle of monitoring and research, but once used to initiate a project or component, it logically becomes a companion to research.

For the purposes of the GEM program, synthesis is defined separately from research and from retrospective analysis, a form of research. Synthesis differs from research in the requirement that synthesis be interdisciplinary or concerned with multiple habitat types, or both. Synthesis brings together existing data from any number of disciplines, times, and regions to evaluate the central hypothesis, key questions, specific questions, and related ideas and is usually supported by various forms of retrospective analysis (discussed below). The results of synthesis and research are often used together to solve problems.

9.1.2 Research

Research collects relatively short time series of observations to evaluate some specific aspect of the monitoring program or some testable hypothesis relating to the central hypothesis with fixed limits on project duration. It may build on or use existing data and it may also build models. Testing current understandings through research provides the basis for making changes to the monitoring program and associated components such as modeling, data management, and information transfer.

Retrospective analysis is a specialized form of research that uses existing time series data to evaluate a testable hypothesis or other question of similar specificity relating to monitoring. Statistical modeling often supports retrospective analysis, and retrospective analysis contributes to building numerical models and to synthesis. Research, in the form of *process studies,* plays a vital role in moving beyond the correlative relationships that arise from the monitoring efforts to understand the underlying mechanisms. Process studies develop information on the mechanisms through which energy and matter are transferred across varying scales of time and space. This critical deeper understanding is essential to provide a framework and substance for the numerical modeling and synthesis. Large-scale process studies may encompass ecosystem-level processes occurring across multiple trophic levels, water masses, and habitat types, whereas small-scale studies may deal with mechanisms as specific as the digestion rates of individual animals. Processes such as predation, nutrient transport, and heat transfer are critical to understanding changes in living marine-related resources. Process studies support model building by defining relationships among individuals and species and between phenomena such as primary production and physical forcing. Process studies also contribute to other forms of research, such as retrospective analysis, and to synthesis.

The short-term end point for GEM program synthesis and research is implementation of core monitoring activities. The roles of research and synthesis in the GEM program are first to support implementation of monitoring, and second to give the monitoring program the capacity for change once it is established.

The continuing roles for synthesis and research, as supported by modeling, are to promote understanding of the relationships among and within the broad habitat types of the ecosystems, plant and animal species, physical and chemical oceanographic processes, and climate in the GOA. Continual refinement and testing of hypotheses, synthesis across geographic areas and species, and modeling of biological and physical processes are expected

9.1.3 Monitoring

Monitoring is the action of taking long-time-series observations at times and places designed to test hypotheses based on current understandings. Monitoring is essential to detecting and understanding change, because it provides the starting point for synthesis, various forms of research, modeling, and information transfer. How often and where to sample are important aspects of detection, and therefore, key considerations in the design of monitoring. They must be appropriate to the hypotheses being analyzed.

Monitoring in the GEM program will be organized into core monitoring and partnership monitoring. Core monitoring is fully supported by the GEM program, and partnership monitoring is partially supported.

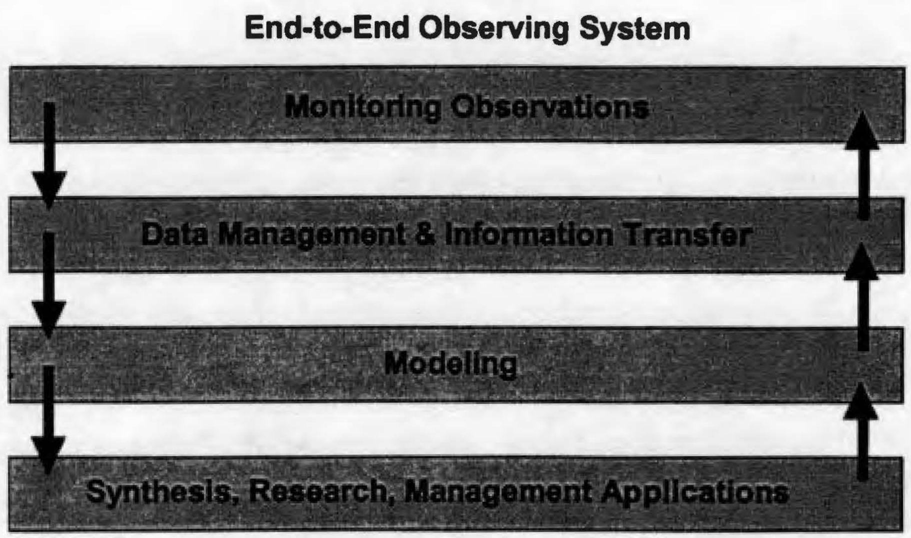
The end point for monitoring is a geographically distributed network gathering data on the state of the marine ecosystem that is transformed into information for user groups through application of synthesis, research, modeling, data management, and information transfer. Monitoring will use spatially structured survey methods.

9.1.4 Modeling

Models are tools for organizing data and telling a story. Modeling is used to make the relationships between the parts and processes of the ecosystem clear, and models can be written in a variety of media as verbal, visual, statistical, or numerical models. In the GEM program, the specific purposes of modeling are to help accomplish the following:

- Inform, communicate, and provide common problem definition;
- Identify core variables and relationships;
- Set priorities;
- Improve and develop experimental (monitoring) designs; and
- Improve decision-making and risk assessment.

Modeling is closely related to the other components of the GEM program, but especially to monitoring and data management (see Malone figure). Modeling, monitoring, and data management strategies need to work in concert for each to be fully effective. Modeling is a pivotal link between monitoring and data management and information transfer on the one hand, and synthesis and research on the other. Modeling feeds back information to the monitoring program in recommendations on how the monitoring system can be made more effective, and it interprets data for the use of synthesis and research activities. Approaches to modeling for the purposes of the GEM program and current modeling efforts are considered in more detail in Chapter 12. The discussion below provides a brief introduction to definitions and strategies for modeling in the GEM program.



"Malone Figure" The End-to-End Observing System showing the relations among components of the GEM program (monitoring observations, data management and information transfer, modeling, synthesis and research) and management applications. (Adapted from Tom Malone [U.S. GOOS Steering Committee 2000].

As defined for the purposes of the GEM program, a model may be expressed in verbal, visual, statistical, or numerical languages. Verbal models are also known as "qualitative" and "conceptual"; statistical models are also known as "correlative" and "stochastic"; and numerical models are also known as "deterministic" and "mechanistic." Note that "prediction," "simulation," and "analysis" are not types of models, but uses of models. For example, the use of any kind of statistical or numerical model to reproduce the behavior of a process, such as population growth, is known as simulation (see Chapter 12). The different media for models are explained below.

- Verbal models come in different degrees of precision, from low-precision, narrative explanations of how physical and biological factors combine to produce birds, fish, and mammals (the conceptual foundation, Chapter 6), to highly precise statements known as testable hypotheses.

- Visual models, such as xdFigure ___ of the conceptual foundation, are graphic images of verbal models.
- Statistical models and related mathematical techniques promote understanding of whether verbal models are worth considering further. By comparing combinations of measurements, such as fish growth rates at different water temperatures, statistical methods show the likelihood of relationships among phenomena, but not how or why phenomena are related.
- Numerical models are mathematical translations of verbal models describing how and why phenomena are related. Numerical models often rely on established principles of how and why phenomena are related from physics, chemistry, and biology.

All four types of models will be used in the GEM program. In the near-term, however, models of biological phenomena are expected to be mostly verbal, visual, and statistical, whereas models of physical and chemical phenomena are likely to be primarily numerical, in addition to being verbal and statistical.

Models are tools not only for understanding, but also for predicting change. Models organize and analyze monitoring observations of plants and animals, natural forces, and human actions. With the use of the mathematics of modeling, short-term predictions can be made about how a particular aspect of the ecosystem works. The ultimate demonstration of understanding of a phenomenon, however, is longer-term prediction. Covering the vast distance between current understanding and predicting changes in the productivity of living marine-related resources on longer time scales (weeks, months, and years) will require thousands of small steps in understanding. This progression will necessarily take a long time. Because of the time required, identifying the relationship between current understanding and probable changes in resource productivity is a reasonable goal for a long-term program such as the GEM program.

The long-term modeling end points for GEM monitoring, synthesis, and research are working biophysical models that make managers, policy makers, and resource users aware of changes in natural resources, help them understand the human and natural origins of these changes, and give them some idea of what to expect in the future.

9.1.5 Data Management and Information Transfer

Data management is the process of acquiring in the field, receiving in the office, formatting, and storing data; providing quality control and assurance; and developing and managing databases. It includes the development of information products based on interpreted data and the delivery of these products, including development of user interfaces. The short-term objective of data management in the GEM program is to gain control of the data acquired with EVOS funds. Many of these data are in danger of being lost as the passage of time leads to loss of project personnel and institutional memory. The long-term end point for GEM data management is to serve as the connection between monitoring and the other components and end users such as harvesters and managers.

GEM data management is a program support function intended to accomplish the following:

1. Support cross-disciplinary integration of physical, biological, and traditional knowledge within a structured, decision-making framework;
2. Support synthesis, research, and modeling that evaluate testable hypotheses on the roles of natural forces and human actions in controlling biological production; and
3. Lay the groundwork for future use of distributed, Web-based analysis and management tools as the monitoring program becomes fully operational.

By necessity, the data incorporated into the GEM program will derive from a variety of sources and formats, which may contain spatial and temporal components, and which will include retrospective data sets and traditional knowledge. Incorporation of these data into regional models and decision-making systems will require tools for data ingestion and query, especially to facilitate modeling (see Malone figure). Because the output from the GEM program will be used by people from a wide variety of disciplines, backgrounds, and professional associations, the user interface must be easy to understand and accessible through a distributed network, such as the Internet. Synthesis and research will need to incorporate data not directly collected by the GEM program, such as satellite remote-sensing information and fishery catch data.

Rapid transfer of information to end users will require GEM program management (Chapter 11) to adopt data management and acquisition policies that move data from the point of collection to the point of distribution in a timely fashion. Although the data must flow through the system as quickly as possible, quality control and assurance procedures and the prerogatives of scientists to publish interpretations of the data need to be respected. One approach that may prove useful is the establishment of "peer reviewed" data sets that allow the scientists involved to receive credit for their efforts in the publications of other scientists who may use the data. All other concerns notwithstanding, the decisions about control and distribution of data collected under the GEM program rest with the Trustee Council.

The long-term end point for data management and information transfer is a system that manages the rapid and efficient flow of data and information based on core monitoring projects to end users, and that facilitates the flow of data and information to and from partners in the GEM program and other sources to GEM program projects and users.

9.2 Strategies for Implementation

The scientific strategy of the GEM program uses a central hypothesis and key questions from the conceptual foundation to establish the initial direction for the program. From this starting point, the GEM program follows a path of synthesis, research, and monitoring to detect, understand, and, eventually, predict changes in living marine-related resources of the GEM region. As shown in the table below, the strategy calls for modeling and data management to closely support synthesis and research.

The way to achieve prediction in the long term is to build a body of knowledge on how and why the productivity of living marine-related resources changes through time. Synthesis is used to build and maintain a coherent and comprehensive understanding of the current state of knowledge. Research tests current understandings. Monitoring activities take long-time-series observations at times and places designed to test hypotheses based on current understandings. And at all stages of the program, an ongoing gap analysis demonstrates when it is possible to take advantage of the work of others (xeFigure).

The basic sequence of activities for establishing the monitoring network is envisioned as follows:

Synthesis → Research → Monitoring

Concurrent programs of modeling and data management would support the sequence of synthesis, research, and monitoring. Table 17 illustrates this implementation strategy.

Table 17. Strategy for Implementing a Monitoring Network

Example of building a monitoring activity for the GEM program in 5 fiscal years through synthesis and research, supported by concurrent modeling and data management.

	Monitoring Activity			Data
Fiscal Year	**Core**	**Partners**	**Model**	**Management**
2003	Synthesis Research	Monitor	Verbal(c)	Prototype
2004	Synthesis Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c)	Coordination (c) Archiving(c)
2005	Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical prototype (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2006	Research Monitor	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2007	Monitor Research	Monitor	Numerical (p)	Archiving (c) Distribution (p)

Notes:

c = core (GEM program supported) activity

p = partnership (jointly supported) activity

The implementation strategy shown in Table 17 uses the basic components of the program in a series of three steps that lead gradually to the identification and establishment of a long-term monitoring program. The first step is increased synthesis of existing information, continuing the process started in preparing the scientific background (Chapter 5) and in conjunction with exploratory research projects that build on current synthesis. The GEM program is now at this step, with ongoing synthesis and preliminary research expected to continue through Fiscal Year (FY) 2002. The initial synthesis activities, including modeling, would support identification and development of testable hypotheses. Initial research activities would explore the feasibility of measuring candidate variables at various localities in the watershed, nearshore, and offshore. Initial synthesis in the nearshore and offshore areas would rely heavily on past and developing information from research and monitoring programs such as SEA, FOCI, OCC, and GLOBEC (see Section 7.3 in Chapter 7 and xaAppendix ___), and on past and ongoing monitoring and research in the watersheds under ADF&G, USFWS, U.S. Forest Service (USFS), and others.

The second step, to be initiated in FY 03, combines continuing synthesis with research that examines opportunities for core monitoring in PWS, the outer Kenai Peninsula, Lower Cook Inlet, Kodiak, and adjacent waters. All research projects are initiated for a fixed duration; however, some of these initial projects might be considered "pilot monitoring" projects that could be extended indefinitely if results of retrospective analyses, workshops, modeling studies, synthesis, and other preparatory research show continuation is warranted.

The third step is full implementation of a long-term monitoring program. As identified by the preparatory synthesis, research, and modeling, each core monitoring activity would collect data on a number of core variables that support evaluation of testable hypotheses. Partners may fund additional measurements at the location of core monitoring activities. For example, with proper planning it is usually possible to add monitoring equipment to moorings without disrupting existing activities for data acquisition. It may also be advantageous for partners to incorporate core monitoring locations into their own transects and other surveys. The actual number of core monitoring activities at full implementation at the end of FY 07 will depend on how much funding is available and the needs demonstrated by the results of retrospective analyses, workshops, modeling studies, synthesis, and other preparatory research.

9.3 Gap Analysis: An Ongoing Strategy for Implementation

The identification of information needs, or gap analysis, was an important part of the process of identifying the starting points for monitoring and research (Chapter 10), and it will continue to be an important part of implementation. In the process of starting the GEM program, the available information (Chapter 7) was compared to the information relevant to answering the key questions (Chapter 6) to see what information was missing (Chapter 8). This process will continue during implementation; however, the more general key questions will be replaced by increasingly specific questions.

It is important to have a clear understanding of how the nature of the question determines the nature and outcome of the gap analysis. The gap analysis has three essential parts:

1. A question;
2. Identification of information necessary to answer the question; and
3. A survey of relevant available information.

The gap analysis concludes with a comparison of Parts 2 and 3. The question, Part 1, is fundamental to the gap analysis. To proceed, a gap analysis must start with a question. A general question calls for a general gap analysis, and a more detailed question calls for a more detailed gap analysis. The survey of all relevant information and the specific information needed to answer the question are defined by the question.

As the GEM program moves from general questions about what controls biological production within habitats and the connections among production in these habitats toward testable hypotheses, the gap analysis will become highly specific. With the use of a "core scientific committee process" (Chapter 11), testable hypotheses will be developed during the second half of FY 02. More detailed gap analysis will be done when the process reaches the level of testable hypotheses, with highly specific questions, in FY 03.

A continuing gap analysis, supported by a continuously updated database of current and historical information-gathering projects in the GOA and adjacent areas, is essential to implementation and operation of the GEM program. This analysis will be key to finding new partners for monitoring activities, identifying new opportunities for research and synthesis, and providing increasing opportunities for collaboration, without risking duplication.

The immediate end point of the gap analysis strategy is a database that supports identifying information needs in the short term, as core monitoring variables and locations are selected. In the longer term, the supporting database will become a valuable tool for resource managers, policy makers, other scientists, stakeholders, and the general public.

9.4 References

Myers, K. W., Walker, R. V., Carlson, H. R., and Helle, J. H. 2000. Synthesis and review of U.S. research on the physical and biological factors affecting ocean production of salmon. Pages 1-9 in J. H. Helle, Y. Ishida, D. Noakes, and V. Radchenko, editors. Recent changes in ocean production of Pacific salmon. North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission Bulletin , Vancouver.

U.S. GOOS Steering Committee. 2000. Third meeting of the U.S. GOOS steering committee June 29-30, 2000 Huntington Beach, California. U.S. GOOS.

Wilson, E. O. 1998. Consilience: the unity of knowledge. Vintage Books, A Division of Random House, Inc. New York.

10. MONITORING PLAN AND RESEARCH AGENDA

In This Chapter

- Elements of the phased approach to monitoring
- Use of synthesis, research, modeling, and data management to develop and refine monitoring activities
- Fiscal Year 2002 agenda for activities

10.1 Introduction

The monitoring program developed by the Trustee Council and its partners is intended to be the "flagship" of the GEM program. The monitoring program is the heart of the GEM program and will be maintained even if funding levels vary. Synthesis, research, modeling, and data management will all be used to develop and refine monitoring activities. A phased approach is envisioned during a 5-year period, from FY 03 to FY 07, and will incorporate these elements:

- Use of the *key question* for each habitat as the starting point for performing the necessary synthesis and research for developing testable hypotheses.
- A table showing a *proposed schedule and strategy for implementation*, FY 03 to FY 07, for core and partnership activities, models, and data management.
- Lists of probable or *"candidate" partners* that are actively doing related monitoring or research in the broad habitat type.
- *Candidate core monitoring activities* recommended based on the conjunction of partnership opportunities and opportunities for measuring biological and physical quantities related to the key question and information gaps.
- *Candidate core variables* recommended based on approaches suggested by the literature reviewed in the scientific background (Chapter 5).

Following a discussion of data management, this chapter discusses the above monitoring program elements for each habitat type. The key questions were introduced in Chapter 8.

10.2 Data Management

Because data management functions and products are generic to all habitat types, the suggested implementation strategy provided in this section is applicable for all four habitat types. Core data management will be prototyped in FY 03 as core synthesis and research projects are initiated and partnerships formed. The first core function is to establish coordination among parties as soon as possible, but no later than FY 04, by means such as file transfer protocol (ftp) sites, Web sites, and e-mail forwarding lists. As data from core and partnership research projects are produced, around FY 04, archiving of data will be essential to serve research needs. A partnership system of data distribution will be designed to make information products readily available to partners and other user groups. The ultimate goal for all broad habitat types will be an end-to-end system, in which a monitoring network provides data to models and other applications that provide services to a variety of end users, including the ongoing GEM synthesis, research, and modeling itself.

10.3 Watersheds

10.3.1 Key Question

What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as climate, and human actions, such as habitat degradation and fishing, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long-lasting changes in marine-related biological production in watersheds?

10.3.2 Schedule

Development of watershed monitoring activity will be led by a core synthesis effort in FY 03, building on preparatory core research in FY 02 to establish an approach to measuring levels of marine influence in animals and plants of the watersheds. Core synthesis will assist in developing hypotheses by about FY 04 that can be tested and refined by core research in FY 05 and FY 06. At least one core monitoring station will be initiated by FY 06, but may not be fully operational until FY 07.

Table 18 presents the proposed schedule and strategy for implementation.

Editorial comment: Want to keep the table for each broad habitat type until an alternative is clearly identified. Tables are similar, but there are key differences that depend on the existing state of knowledge in each habitat type.

Table 18. Proposed Implementation Strategy for Watershed Habitat

	Monitoring Activity			
Fiscal Year	**Core**	**Partners**	**Model**	**Data Management**
2003	Synthesis Research	Monitor	Verbal(c)	Prototype
2004	Synthesis Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c)	Coordination (c) Archiving(c)
2005	Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical prototype (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2006	Research Monitor	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2007	Monitor Research	Monitor	Numerical (p)	Archiving (c) Distribution (p)

Notes:

c = core (GEM program supported) activity

p = partnership (jointly supported) activity

Candidate partners: ADF&G, USFWS (Kenai Natural Wildlife Refuge [KNWR]), USGS, EPA, ADEC, USFS, Cook Inlet Keeper (CIK), Alaska Department of Natural Resources (ADNR), and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW)

Candidate core monitoring activities: Kenai River watershed, Karluk River watershed

Candidate core variables: isotopes of nitrogen in aquatic and riparian plants and animals, precursors of reduced iron in water, and anadromous fish

10.3.3 Candidate Partner Activities

Partner activities in FY 03 are expected to be the supporting monitoring programs already in place, such as enumeration of animals and plants; water quality monitoring; existing hydrology models, including annual and seasonal runoff; and permitting of human impacts such as resource harvests and land development. Starting in FY 04, partners will be encouraged to assist in funding research to further site selection. This activity will extend through FY 06, terminating after the monitoring station is fully operational. Because an analogous research program is under way at Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW), that agency may be willing to share information and the costs of process studies of mutual interest.

10.3.4 Models

Models of the relationship between marine productivity and watershed productivity (Finney et al. 2000) are supposed to be verbal as of FY 03. Statistical modeling to describe the strength of relations among variables and power analysis to guide sampling should start in FY 04, continuing through the evaluation of the initial monitoring station in FY 06. The end point of modeling will be a numerical model of the geochemistry of the core variable(s) in the watershed to the boundary of the interidal-subtidal areas. This model will be initiated in about FY 05 and operational (in some sense) by FY 07. It is recognized that a number of partner monitoring activities in addition to the core activity will be needed to create parameters for a numerical model. If numerical modeling proves intractable, statistical modeling would be extended in the interim.

10.3.5 Candidate Core Monitoring Activities

Candidate core monitoring activities will be chosen to build on existing long time series of data collected by candidate partners. The Kenai and Karluk rivers are two likely candidates. For the Kenai River watershed, three decades of data on adult salmon returns to the spawning grounds of the watershed can be used as estimates of marine influence. In addition, salmon catch data span more than five decades. The proximity to Anchorage places the Kenai River watershed under heavy pressure from human activities and impacts, many of which are documented by government regulators. Multiple candidate partners have extensive programs in place to monitor vegetation, terrestrial animals, limnology, and other variables of potential relevance to the key question. The Karluk River watershed is unique in having a published record of more than 300 years of changes in marine influence in general, and marine nitrogen in particular (Finney et al. 2000). In addition the candidate partners have collected more than eight decades of counts of salmon returns for the watershed.

10.3.6 Candidate Core Variables

Isotopes of nitrogen in plants and animals and sources of reduced iron are candidates for core variables, based on work described in the scientific background under marine-terrestrial connections (Section 5.3) and chemical oceanography (Section 5.5). In watersheds of the GEM region, where nitrogen limits productivity, marine nitrogen from anadromous species, principally salmon, could be an important driver of watershed productivity. Phosphorus and iron from salmon may also be important to watershed productivity, but direct measures of the origin of these elements are not available. (Indirect measures might be; for example, phosphorus or iron concentration per gram of fish times average fish weight times return number.) A decade of work on the role of iron in primary productivity in marine areas suggests that geophysical and biological processes in watersheds may contribute to marine productivity. Processes in the watersheds may limit marine productivity by controlling the availability of precursors of reduced iron.

10.4 Intertidal and Subtidal

10.4.1 Key Question

What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as currents and predation, and human actions, such as sediment and pollutant discharge, as distant and local factors, in causing short-term and long lasting changes in community structure and dynamics of the intertidal and subtidal habitats?

10.4.2 Schedule

Development of the intertidal and subtidal monitoring activities is expected to begin with a planning workshop in FY 02 and an intense core synthesis effort in FY 03 that involves extensive preparatory core research. The inherently high variability of the community structure of the intertidal and subtidal habitat–and its vulnerability to the effects of predation and human degradation–may make it difficult to develop a design that can separate human actions from natural forces, forestalling implementation of initial monitoring until FY 06.. Core synthesis is planned to provide hypotheses by about FY 05 that can be tested and refined by core research in FY 06 and FY 07. Plans call for at least one core monitoring station to be initiated by FY 06, but it may not be fully operational until FY 07.

Table 19 presents the proposed schedule and strategy for implementation.

Table 19. Proposed Implementation Strategy for Intertidal-Subtidal Habitat

	Monitoring Activity			
Fiscal Year	Core	Partners	Model	Data Management
2003	Synthesis Research	Monitor	Verbal(c) Statistical(c)	Prototype Coordination (c)
2004	Synthesis Research	Monitor Research	Verbal(c) Statistical(c)	Coordination (c) Archiving(c)
2005	Research	Monitor Research	Verbal(c) Statistical(c)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2006	Research Monitor	Monitor Research	Statistical(c)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2007	Monitor Research	Monitor	Statistical(c) Numerical prototype (p)	Archiving (c) Distribution (p)

Notes:

c = core (GEM program supported) activity

p = partnership (jointly supported) activity

Candidate partners: ADF&G (Kachemak Bay National Estuarine Research Reserve [KBNERR]), NOAA (National Ocean Service and UAF), Cook Inlet Regional Citizens Advisory Council (CIRCAC), Prince William Sound Regional Citizens Advisory Council (PWSRCAC), USFS, EPA-ADEC EMAP), Alyeska Pipeline Service Company

Candidate core monitoring activities: Kachemak Bay (Lower Cook Inlet), Green Island (PWS)

Candidate core variables: substrate type and distribution, species composition and distribution, recruitment

10.4.3 Candidate Partner Activities

Partner activities in FY 03 will be the supporting monitoring programs already in place, such as monitoring of individual species for basic biology and contaminant loads, surveys of species composition and distribution, surveys of substrates, and measurements of physical oceanography (see Table 19). Starting in FY 04, partners will be encouraged to assist in funding research to further site selection. These activities will extend through FY 06, terminating after the monitoring station is fully operational in FY 07.

10.4.4 Models

Models of changes in community structure of the intertidal-subtidal areas in response to human actions and natural forcing are expected to be primarily verbal from FY 03 to FY 05. Statistical modeling, particularly power analysis to guide sampling, is expected to be operable as soon as FY 03, because of experience gained in the EVOS coastal habitat program and related damage assessment and restoration work. Statistical modeling will continue through the evaluation of the initial monitoring station in FY 06. The end point of a numerical model to combine physical forcing and human actions for describing community structure is a very ambitious undertaking for a core activity within a 5-year time frame and may not be feasible at all without substantial partner support.

10.4.5 Candidate Core Monitoring Activities

Candidates for core monitoring activities will be selected based on substantial partnering opportunities, chances for human activities and impacts, and logistics. Likely candidates are Kachemak Bay in Lower Cook Inlet and Green Island in PWS. Kachemak Bay is close to the city of Homer and is becoming a developed recreational destination. In addition, the bay has the presence of coastal habitat assessment programs already in place within the Kachemak Bay National Estuarine Research Reserve (KBNERR), as well as nearby moorings taking oceanographic measurements. The USFS has a long-term ecological monitoring site at Green Island, which is still seeing effects from the 1989 oil spill. A new weather station is being installed nearby at Applegate Rocks, and additional oceanographic moorings in nearby Montague Strait are likely.

10.4.6 Candidate Core Variables

Community structure in the intertidal and subtidal areas is determined by substrate type and amount, as well as by physical oceanographic features, such as wave action. Species composition and distribution are fundamental to determining community structure, as is the recruitment rate of key species such as barnacles, mussels, and clams, depending on substrate.

10.5 Alaska Coastal Current

10.5.1 Key Question

What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as the variability in the strength, structure, and dynamics of the ACC, and human actions, such as fishing and pollution, in causing local and distant changes in production of phytoplankton, zooplankton, birds, fish, and mammals?

10.5.2 Schedule

Development of ACC monitoring will require a period of synthesis and research that involves collaboration between physical and biological scientists to decide on how to best detect changes in annual and seasonal production and transfer of energy to higher trophic levels. The determination of what physical-chemical processes are most important to measure for primary and secondary production will require a synthesis that combines existing physical and biological information and hypotheses. Specific seasonal questions such as what controls the timing, duration, and magnitude of the spring bloom on the inner continental shelf need to be carefully cast as testable hypotheses before committing to long-term monitoring. Having the SEA, APEX, GLOBEC Northeast Pacific National Estuary Program (NEP), FOCI, OCC, and NPAFC programs precede and parallel the GEM program is extremely fortuitous for development of this component. The experience and lessons from these programs will be extremely beneficial in helping GEM build its core monitoring components. For these reasons, development of ACC monitoring activity will begin with a core synthesis effort that is closely coordinated with the ongoing research and monitoring efforts mentioned above.

Understanding how best to measure biological productivity and trophic transfer in the ACC will take longer to develop than the approach to physical measurements, which could be developed in a relatively short period of time. The long-term observation program being carried out in PWS and across the shelf in the northern GOA under GLOBEC started in 1997 and will extend through 2004. Intense process studies are scheduled for 2001 and 2003. It will take some time to distill the large amount of information available from such studies and other programs to the point of recommending a full suite of core biological measurements for core GEM program monitoring in the ACC.

Table 20 presents the proposed schedule and strategy for implementation.Table 20. Proposed Implementation Strategy for Alaska Coastal Current Habitat

Fiscal Year	Monitoring Activity: Core	Monitoring Activity: Partners	Model	Data Management
2003	Synthesis Research	Monitor	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (c)
2004	Synthesis Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving(c)
2005	Research	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical prototype (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2006	Research Monitor	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (c) Archiving (c) Distribution (p)
2007	Monitor Research	Monitor	 Numerical (p)	Archiving (c) Distribution (p)

Notes:

c = core (GEM program supported) activity

p = partnership (jointly supported) activity

Candidate partners: UAF (IMS, School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences [SFOS]), U.S. Department of Interior (DOI) (National Park Service [NPS], USFWS, USGS), North Pacific Research Board (NPRB), NOAA (NMFS/National Ocean Service [NOS]), EPA-ADEC EMAP

Candidate core monitoring activities: GAK1, Hinchinbrook Entrance, Montague Strait

Candidate core variables: temperature, salinity, fluorescence, plankton, forage species

10.5.3 Candidate Partner Activities

NOAA's interest in the ACC continues to be high, as demonstrated through its participation in the GLOBEC and OCC programs and some continuing work in the FOCI program in Shelikof Strait. It is almost certain that the GAK1 station and line, maintained and monitored by the University of Alaska and in place now for decades, will play a central role in future monitoring of the physical structure of the ACC based on temperature and salinity measures. Recently added biological measures, including chlorophyll a, will likely be maintained and supplemented. Other opportunities for partnerships include GLOBEC's more recently established stations from PWS across the continental shelf and one of the lines used in the FOCI program in the Shelikof Strait. The USGS, which has an established set of seabird monitoring colonies spaced at about 500-km intervals around the GOA and into the Bering Sea, is another strong candidate for a partner. Close coordination with methods of the colonial seabird program of the USFWS Alaska Maritime Refuge is envisioned to make seabird data consistent around the coast of Alaska. For measuring forage species variability, population abundance data from the ADF&G on Pacific herring in PWS and also for populations at Kodiak Island and in

Kamishak Bay, although not complete, may be useful. Starting in FY 04 and extending through FY 06, partners will be encouraged to assist in funding research to further site selection for monitoring the ACC.

Plankton measurements (settled volume) are now being taken by potential partners at six hatcheries in PWS. On the basis of past correlations of plankton-settled volume with annual pink salmon returns and decadal-scale herring abundance, these data could provide information about productivity of the ACC system of relevance to multiple species under certain conditions. Extension of the "plankton watch" to hatcheries in other areas and local communities throughout the northern GOA may be a worthwhile and potentially economical way to maintain long-term data sets and archives of plankton. Other opportunities to collect samples and analyze plankton communities may include cruises with net and hydroacoustic sampling, as well as satellite images. Also of possible merit are the use of ships that offer opportunities; for example, the continuous plankton recorder is recommended to be deployed on oil tankers traveling from Valdez to Long Beach under EVOS sponsorship in FY 02. Certainly any satellite images of the sea surface that measure chlorophyll a concentrations provide very useful synoptic pictures, even taking into account the limitations that cloud cover and lack of subsurface data present. Decisions will be made with the guiding philosophy of collecting data of relatively low frequency in space and time so that decadal scale change can be resolved.

Perhaps the largest challenge for the ACC habitat will be developing monitoring activities to measure variability in forage fish populations and associated predator populations. Some options for exploration of partnerships for assessing forage fish abundance and associated phenomena include the following:

- Larval surveys building on the databases and archived specimens from the FOCI program.
- Use of forage fish occurrence in the stomachs of large fish collected in the sport fishery–or in some of the large fishery assessment programs conducted by NOAA and ADF&G–as an index of relative abundance. (The Trustee Council sponsored a successful study of these occurrences of forage fish in the sport fishery for halibut out of Homer.)
- Small mesh trawl surveys conducted by ADF&G around Kodiak Island and Lower Cook Inlet to assess shrimp abundance. (A large database from this program extends for some locations back to the 1960s for a large variety of species on the inner shelf.)
- Aerial surveys with the use of conventional photography or other sorts of imaging (such as LIDAR) of shallow water aggregations of juveniles or adults.
- Hydroacoustic sensors mounted on various ships of opportunity and fixed moorings.

- Analysis of food items brought back to the nests of colonial seabirds (such as puffins) as an indication of the relative abundance of various forage fish species in particular areas.
- Other net sampling programs that may be under way or contemplated.

10.5.4 Models

Several hydrographic and circulation models have been or are being developed for the ACC (see also Chapter 12 and Appendix B). A circulation model workshop is planned in FY 02 to consider approaches most likely to be useful to the GEM program. Models of the relationship of marine planktonic production to water column structure have been developed in the EVOS SEA program (Eslinger et al. 2001) and are expected to eventually be further developed under the GEM program.

The GLOBEC nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton (NPZ) 1-D and 3-D models are a suite of coupled biological-physical models concerned with the coastal region of the GOA. They are addressing effects of concern to the GEM program in the ACC and offshore: cross-shelf transport, upstream effects, local production, and conditions conducive to suitable juvenile salmon rearing habitat.

Models of particular interest from the FOCI program are the 1-D and 3-D versions of the Shelikof NPZ models, and the GOA Walleye Pollock Stochastic Switch Model (SSM) (see Chapter 12 and Appendix B). The Shelikof NPZ models are a set of coupled (biological and physical) models designed to examine hypotheses about pollock recruitment in the Shelikof Strait region (see Chapter 12 and Appendix B). The Pollock SSM is a numerical simulation of the process of pollock recruitment. Of particular interest to the GEM program is the identification by the SSM of three specific agents of mortality: wind mixing, ocean eddies, and random effects. Ecopath models developed by Okey, Pauly, and others at the University of British Columbia are also of interest, especially for PWS, but also for the GOA continental shelf and slope (excluding fjord, estuarine, and intertidal areas) (see Appendix B).

10.5.5 Candidate Core Monitoring Activities

It appears that the physical oceanographers have developed a level of understanding about inner-shelf dynamics that will allow the GEM program to identify a core set of measurements, locations, and frequencies that address questions relevant to the GEM program. A core monitoring activity based on the partnership at the GAK1 station is likely. Others may be added in FY 04 to FY 07 as identified by synthesis and the results of other programs (GLOBEC and FOCI stations and moorings) and as funding allows. Full core monitoring in the ACC may not be fully operational until FY 07.

10.5.6 Candidate Core Variables

The key variables in measuring the productivity of the ACC are temperature, insolation, salinity, fluorescence, and abundance of key forage species, including fish and zooplankton.

10.6 Offshore: Outer Continental Shelf and Oceanic Waters

10.6.1 Key Question

What are the relative roles of natural forces, such as changes in the strength of the Alaska Current and Alaskan Stream, mixed layer depth of the gyre, wind stress, and downwelling, and human actions, such as pollution, in determining production of carbon and its shoreward transport?

10.6.2 Schedule

As with the ACC portion of the program, results of GLOBEC research need to be carefully considered before implementation of long-term monitoring in this broad habitat type. . This deliberate approach is reflected in the emphasis on synthesis for this habitat type in the early years of the proposed schedule and strategy for implementation (Table 21).

Table 21. Proposed Implementation Strategy for Offshore Habitat

	Monitoring Activity			
Fiscal Year	**Core**	**Partners**	**Model**	**Data Management**
2003	Synthesis	Monitor Research	Statistical(c)	Coordination (p)
2004	Synthesis	Monitor Research	Statistical(c)	Coordination (p) Archiving(p)
2005	Synthesis	Monitor Research	Statistical(c) Numerical prototype (p)	Coordination (p) Archiving (p) Distribution (p)
2006	Synthesis	Monitor?	Statistical(c) Numerical (p)	Coordination (p) Archiving (p) Distribution (p)
2007	Synthesis	Monitor?	 Numerical (p)	Archiving (p) Distribution (p)

Notes:

c = core (GEM program supported) activity

p = partnership (jointly supported) activity

Candidate partners: NPRB, NOAA (NMFS/NOS), Canadian Department of Fisheries and Oceans (CDFO), Japan Fishery Agency.

Candidate core monitoring activities: GLOBEC stations, Valdez-Long Beach Line

Candidate core variables: nutrients, detritus and plankton, temperature, and salinity.

10.6.3 Candidate Partner Activities

Support of partners in existing monitoring projects may be necessary to obtain sufficient information for design of a monitoring program. Because of the expense of initiating most offshore sampling programs, careful selection of partners and the use of long-term, low-frequency data gathering will be key strategies for understanding decadal-scale changes in this environment. Current efforts to apply the continuous plankton recorder (CPR) technology on ships of opportunity in the GOA offer partnership opportunities. Extension of existing ships of opportunity programs to include measurement of variables of interest to the GEM program is also a possibility.

10.6.4 Models

The GLOBEC NPZ 1-D and 3-D models are discussed above in Section 10.5.4. A broader model addressing NPZ for the entire North Pacific is the North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography (NEMURO). Fluxes of nitrogen, silicon, and carbon will be tracked (see Appendix B).

10.6.5 Candidate Core Monitoring Activities

A reasonable oceanographic program in the ACC can probably be extended across the shelf break with the use of existing GLOBEC, FOCI, and OCC sampling stations, moorings, and transects. The use of the Valdez-Long Beach line with oil tanker-mounted fluorescence and zooplankton sampling gear appears to be an attractive strategy for long-term, low frequency sampling over large spatial scales.

10.6.6 Candidate Core Variables

Particularly crucial aspects of the offshore environment are physical processes and attendant biological responses at the shelf break and front (for example, extent of deep-water intrusion onto the shelf in the late summer and fall); the mixed layer depth in the Alaska Gyre in the spring-summer; and Ekman transport of offshore production onshore. Measurements of basic variables are essential to understanding the role of these offshore aspects in affecting productivity of other habitats. These variables include temperature, salinity, nutrients, detritus, and plankton.

10.7 Research Agenda in Support of Monitoring

The "research agenda" is a list of past and potential Trustee Council activities that the subcommittees and work groups within each habitat type (Chapter 11) can use to develop a plan of action in FY 02 and beyond. Table 22 summarizes the planned and potential activities of FY 02 that are of interest in establishing the research agenda for GEM implementation. Tables 23 and 24 summarize activities funded by the Council in FY 01 and FY 00 that are of potential interest to GEM implementation.

Table 22. Fiscal Year 2002 Funded and Deferred Activities for the GEM Program
Listed with project number if assigned and titles of activities.

Habitat Type	Synthesis and Workshops	Research	Modeling
Watersheds	02612–Kenai River Marine-Terrestrial Links	02649–Reconstructing sockeye 02667–Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources Ecosystem Monitoring Program (CEMP) 02668–Water Quality Database	
Intertidal-Subtidal	02395–Workshop on intertidal monitoring	02556–Mapping intertidal 02538–Herring stock identification 02210–Youth Area Watch	
ACC	Workshop on modeling circulation	02340–GAK1 02552 Exchange between PWS and GOA[a] 02614–Physical data from tankers 02671–Ships opportunity in Lower Cook Inlet 02584–Airborne remote sensing 02561–Community based forage fish sampling 02404–Archival tag testing 02538–Herring stock identification 02210–Youth Area Watch	02603–Ocean Circulation Modeling[a]
Offshore	Workshop on modeling circulation	02614–Physical data from tankers 02624–Ships opportunity CPR (Continuous Plankton Recorder)	02603–Ocean Circulation Modeling[a]

[a]Funding decision deferred to 12/01

Editorial note: We definitely want to include Tables for FY 00 and FY 01 for studies that were done for "GEM transition and synthesis"

Table 23. Fiscal Year 2001 Funded Activities for the GEM Program
Listed with project number if assigned and titles of activities.

Habitat Type	Synthesis and Workshops	Research	Modeling
Watershed			01391–Cook Inlet Information System 0145–Data System for GEM
Intertidal-Subtidal		01385–Kachemak Bay Monitoring 01210–Youth Area Watch	01391–Cook Inlet Information System 01455–Data System for GEM
ACC		01340–GAK1 01552–Exchange between PWS and GOA 01404–Archival tag testing 01210–Youth Area Watch	01389–3-D Ocean State Simulation Modeling 01391–Cook Inlet Information System 01455–Data System for GEM
Offshore			01389–3-D Ocean State Simulation Modeling 01391–Cook Inlet Information System 01455–Data System for GEM

Table 24. Fiscal Year 2000 Funded Activities for the GEM Program
Listed with project number if assigned and titles of activities.

Habitat Type	Synthesis and Workshops	Research	Modeling
Watersheds		00567 Contaminants monitoring	01391 Cook Inlet Information System 00455 Data System for GEM
Intertidal-Subtidal	00374 Herring recommendations	00210–Youth Area Watch 00501 Seabird monitoring protocols 00509 Harbor seal experimental design 00510 Intertidal monitoring recommendations 00567 Contaminants monitoring	01391 Cook Inlet Information System 00455 Data System for GEM
ACC	00374 Herring recommendations	01340–GAK1 00552 Exchange between PWS and GOA 00210–Youth Area Watch 00493 Sampling strategies for GOA trawl survey 00501 Seabird monitoring protocols 00567 Contaminants monitoring	01391 Cook Inlet Information System 00455 Data System for GEM
Offshore		00567 Contaminants monitoring	01391 Cook Inlet Information System 00455 Data System for GEM

10.8 References

Eslinger, D., Cooney, R. T., McRoy, C. P., Ward, A., Kline, T., Simpson, E. P., Wang, J., and Allen, J. R. 2001. Plankton dynamics: observed and modeled responses to physical factors in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Fisheries Oceanography in press

Finney, B. P., Gregory-Eaves, I., Sweetman, J., Douglas, M. S. V., and Smol, J. P. 2000. Impacts of climatic change and fishing on Pacific salmon abundance over the past 300 years. Science 290: 795-799.

Notice: This version of 07/06/01 of the chapter on program management is a preliminary draft that has not been through the editorial process. It is subject to substantial change and it is offered for the purposes of initiating a discussion on program management only.

Chapter 11: Program Management

In this chapter

- A draft process for program inviting, reviewing, approving and adopting projects
- Preliminary definitions of the processes for getting advice from experts and the public
- Preliminary data management and information transfer policies

11.1 Introduction to Program Management

The GEM monitoring and research activities and the policies of the Trustee Council are implemented and administered by a supporting staff (see GEM Program Management Outline Figure). The staff is responsible for maintaining the GEM Program Document (GPD), issuing the Invitation, and implementing the Work Plan (WP), as periodically approved by the Trustee Council. The Trustee Council and the staff receive advice on science and policy matters, including review of monitoring and research activities, from experts and from the public. Expert and Public Advisory bodies are established and supported by the Council to serve the GEM Proposal Evaluation Process (PEP) and other needs. As necessary for issuing the Invitation, for implementation of the WP and maintenance of the GEM Program Document, the staff collaborates with all concerned public and private parties.

11.1.1 GEM Program Document (GPD)

The GPD explains the purposes and policies of the program and what it expects to accomplish (see Chapters 1 - 3), and it establishes the historical and contemporary contexts of scientific knowledge and surrounding issues of concern to the Trustee Council (see Chapters 4 - 5). Key parts of the GPD are the Conceptual Foundation (see Chapter 6), the Current Information Gathering (see chapter 7), and the Monitoring Plan (see Chapter 10). In the future the GPD is expected to be periodically reviewed and adopted by the Trustee Council (see Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process).

11.1.2 Invitation

The invitation calls for proposals to implement the GPD approved by the Council. The Expert and Public Advisory bodies help frame the Invitation through an annual process of consultations and workshops that add precision to the specific questions posed in the monitoring plan.

The invitation serves to focus the proposals received on purposes relevant to the Council's mission and goals. By communicating the types of information required in proposals, and the criteria to be used for evaluating proposals, it is also the first step in implementing the programmatic goals and policies of the Council (see Chapters 1 - 3). Programmatic goals are purposes the Council wishes to achieve in addition to evaluating testable hypotheses related to the GPD, such as promoting community involvement, developing resource management applications, and leveraging of funds from other sources.
(see Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process).

11.1.3 GEM Proposal Evaluation Process (PEP)

Proposals submitted in response to the invitation during an open period go through a series of steps that determine whether they become part of the Work Plan (Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process). It is envisioned that the proposals as submitted will be part of a Proposal Database. The proposals will answer specific questions that allow the staff, experts, and the public to understand not only how the proposed activity would contribute to information gathering, but also how it contributes to meeting programmatic goals and policies of the Council (see Chapters 1 - 3), such as for promoting community involvement, developing resource management applications, evaluating testable hypotheses related to the GPD, and leveraging of funds from other sources.
(see Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process).

11.1.3.1 PEP: Staff Screening

Staff screening ensures that each proposal contains the information needed for peer and public review, as well as for review and adoption by the Council. Proposals forwarded to the Peer Review are certified as having answered the questions asked in the proposal submission process, however no judgments are made by staff at this stage on the quality or sufficiency of the responses. Proposals not having submitted the required information will be returned to the author with a list of the missing items, and may be re-submitted in a timely manner.

Staff screening also involves flagging each proposal which involves members of the Subcommittees and Working Groups so that they will not be solicited for peer review. The titles, abstracts and contact information for participants for proposals that pass screening in the time allotted would be posted on the web, and a means for receiving public comment over the web and in the mail would be provided. A post card mailing would announce availability of paper copies of proposal titles and abstracts and contact information on request.
(see Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process).

11.1.3.2 PEP: Peer Review

After screening proposals are forwarded (electronically) to the Subcommittee indicated in the proposal to start the peer review process. The Subcommittee Chair arranges for three peer reviews to be prepared and submitted directly to the GEM staff. The Subcommittee Chair sends the staff a copy of the confirmation of the acceptance of the review, and the staff is responsible for all follow up, tracking the peer review to its end point, keeping the Subcommittee Chair in the loop. When the expertise or time cannot be found among Subcommittee members to do the peer review, as may often be the case, the Subcommittee Chair locates the appropriate reviewers from outside the Subcommittee with help from the Co-Chair and other members (perhaps from a Working Group member or institutional contacts). Peer reviewers respond to a set of questions regarding the general scientific competence of the proposal such as sufficiency of literature cited and other questions related to the understanding of the problem, adequacy of experimental design, likelihood that objectives can be achieved, whether sufficient or excess time and material resources have been requested, and so forth. Questions of how the proposal would "fit in" to the overall scientific program, as described in the GPD, would not be addressed at this level in order to make the pool of peer reviewers as large as possible. A peer reviewer would not have to be familiar with the GPD in order to review a proposal. If a peer review cannot be completed within the time allotted, the proposal would be carried over to the next cycle of approval, if the author so desires.

The staff forwards the reviews and proposals for those that have received three peer reviews within the time allotted to the Core Committee and the Public Advisory Group. The Chair of each body arranges for a minimum of one review for each proposal from among the membership, excluding from the review process for a particular proposal any member who is a participant in the proposal. The Chairs send the staff a copy of the confirmation of the acceptance of the review, and the staff is responsible for all follow up, tracking the review to its end point, keeping the Subcommittee Chair in the loop. Reviewers respond to a series of questions regarding how the proposal would fulfill scientific needs in the monitoring and research program, and meet programmatic goals, and implement the policies established by the Council. Any member may volunteer to do more than the assigned reviews, and they should be encouraged to do so.

The Chairs would each draft a report on the proposals that would be discussed, modified and adopted at a meeting after the end of the review process. The report would summarize the committee's perspectives on progress in program implementation, highlighting any proposals of particular interest or merit. The report would enter the Council Review process at its initiation and become part of the record.

11.1.3.3 PEP: Staff Review

The staff is responsible for preparing an "overall staff" recommendation to the Council on each proposal, which would consist of three parts, science, policy and fiscal impacts. The Chief Scientist's recommendation would address a series of points regarding the competency and need for the project. The policy recommendations would address attainment of programmatic goals and effects on policy implementation. Fiscal impacts would address impact on overall budgets for the life of the project. The overall staff report would enter the Council Review process at its start and become part of the record. (must be completed within two months after review)

11.1.3.4 PEP: Council Review Process

After having had six months to become generally familiar with the proposal package (via the web, or by mail) the Council starts its review with a record consisting of the overall staff recommendation (policy and science), the Expert and Public Advisory Reports, and the public comments received over the six month open comment period. This period is to allow the Council members to study the recommendations and to request additional information.

11.1.3.5 PEP: Council Adoption

The Council would adopt or reject proposals. Proposals adopted would become part of the Work Plan.

11.1.4 Work Plan

The WP documents the current contractual activities that implement the program. As projects for monitoring and research are adopted by the Council and implemented, they become part of the WP, and when a project is terminated it is removed from the WP. The Council is asked to adopt new groups of projects into the WP, not to adopt an entirely new WP as is now done.

11.1.5 Expert Advice

The expert advice process, as supported by the staff, provides review of proposals and testable hypotheses that proposals need to address, for each of the four habitat types (see. The core committee through its Chair provides a recommendation on each project proposal to the GEM Chief Scientist who recommends the project to the Council. A staff report and recommendation addressing the adherence of the project to the programmatic goals, impact on current and out-year budgets, and the administrative standing of the principal investigators is made for each proposal. Conflicts between Chief Scientist recommendations and staff recommendations are not anticipated, because the criteria for these two types of recommendations are different, so the recommendations address different issues. As trustees, the Council may adopt, reject or ask for further consideration of a proposal at its discretion.
The Council would meet regularly (two or three times a year?) to consider proposals.

11.1.5.1 Core committee, subcommittees and work groups

The subcommittees are organized around the four broad habitat types, watershed, intertidal and subtidal, Alaska Costal Current, and offshore (Outer continental shelf and Alaska gyre), connected by a core committee of reviewers (Figure Mon Plan 1).

11.1.5.2 Purpose

The first purpose of the core committee is to provide leadership to the subcommittees and work groups to identify and develop testable hypotheses relevant to the key questions subject to the constraints established by the goals and policies of the Trustee Council. The second purpose of the core committee is to support the subcommittees and work groups in the process of implementing core monitoring stations and identification of core variables. The third purpose of the core committee is to work in concert with the subcommittees and work groups to identify and recommend for invitation syntheses, models, process studies, and other research activities necessary to support monitoring and research. Lastly the core committee members, along with the subcommittee and work group members assist the Chair by locating peer reviewers and by conducting timely peer review of responses to invitations for proposals.

The first purpose of the subcommittees is to identify and implement core monitoring stations and variables that are relevant to the key questions and testable hypotheses, as subject to the constraints established by the goals and policies of the Trustee Council. The other purposes of the subcommittees are to respond to requests from the Chair for recommendations on testable hypotheses in their broad habitat type, items for invitation in their broad habitat type, and peer reviewers in their broad habitat type, and to conduct peer review on items in their broad habitat type, as requested by the Chair.

The only purpose of the work group is to develop specific products and peer reviews in response to the request of the Chair. Examples of products are the precise language inviting a particular synthesis, modeling, or research project. The work groups are intended to provide products needed by the Subcommittees and core committee, under the coordination and direction of the Chair.

11.1.5.3 Membership on Expert Committees

The core committee is composed of emeritus and senior scientists selected primarily for expertise and leadership in a field of study. The majority of the core committee members would not be principal investigators for GEM projects. A member of the GEM staff would be a permanent member of the core committee. Institutional and professional affiliations are of secondary interest in selecting members, since connections to PICES, NPAFC, and Council agencies need to be observed. Core members may commonly serve as Subcommittee members, and rarely serve as work group members.

The subcommittee is composed senior and other working scientists selected primarily for disciplinary expertise and familiarity with the broad habitat type (watersheds, intertidal-subtidal, ACC, offshore). Institutional and professional affiliations are of secondary interest in selecting members, since connections to PICES, NPAFC, and Council agencies need to be observed. Chairs of subcommittees are members of the core committee.

The work group is composed of experts chosen to solve a particular problem in a finite amount of time.

Expert Advisory Bodies' Functions

Functions		Core Committee	Subcommittees	Work Groups
Refine key questions		X		
Define/refine specific questions, core variables, testable hypotheses		X	X	X
Coordinate core monitoring			X	X
Suggest research areas		X	X	X
Suggest synthesis		X	X	X
Convene workshops		X		
Work Plan Review		X		
Peer Review			X	X

11.1.6 Public Advice

Public advice is essential to the Council's GEM program (see Figure GEM Proposal Evaluation Process). As is the case with the Expert Advisory process, the Public Advisory Process has direct access to the Council, and to the Staff, through standing committees, and public meetings, including workshops.

11.2 Data Management and Information Transfer Policies

Data management and information transfer options and procedures are considered in detail in Chapter 13. As a regional program with goals of cooperation, coordination and integration with existing marine science programs, data policies are to be compatible with and similar to existing norms for state, federal and nongovernmental marine science programs. Whenever possible, existing norms will be adapted or adopted for use by the Council. Standards adopted by the Federal Geospatial Data Committee (FGDC), GLOBEC, and the EPA's Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program are considered guidelines for developing GEM data policies. From basic beginnings, data policies will evolve to support GEM projects as they are implemented (see Chapter 10). Our working definitions are that "data" are basic observations on the state of the system, and "information" is data processed to be intelligible to, and of immediate use to specialists or the public.

The GEM data policies incorporate eight broad elements and supporting parts:

1. GEM has a commitment to the maintenance and long-term availability of data.
2. Full and open sharing of data at low cost after verification and validation
3. Timely availability of data
   3.2 Depending on the type of data, it will be available to the Council from almost immediately to 12 months
   3.3 All data will be available publicly within 24 months
   3.4 All data will be made available on the GEM public web site
   3.5 All data will be identified with a citation
4. Participants will adhere to the GEM data collection and storage standards
5. Citations will be provided to the GEM Bibliography
6. Active participation in the GEM web site is encouraged for all participants
7. All data will be copied to the designated storage facility for long-term archiving
8. The text of a data use statement is to be included in the invitation, attached to proposals, and in the letter of grant award.

11.2.1 Maintenance and long-term availability of data
The Trustee Council has a commitment to maintaining and making available data collected with its funds.

11.2.2 Full and open sharing of data at low cost after verification and validation
Data collected at public expense needs to be freely available in a useful form to anyone who wants it at reasonable cost.

11.2.3 Timely availability of data
In the interests of allowing scientists who design experiments to collect data to get proper credit for their efforts, and to meet the need to insure that data are reasonably error free and precisely described before distribution, some delay between data collection and distribution .

11.2.4 Participants will adhere to the GEM data collection and storage standards
Whenever standards for collection of data have been established by scientific disciplines need to be observed in all cases when data are collected. Data need to be stored and transmitted to the Council in established formats.

11.2.5 Citations will be provided to the GEM Bibliography
When publications in journals or books are made using data collected at Council expense, the Council should receive credit in the publication, and the citation should be provided to the Council for its bibliography.

11.2.6 Active participation in the GEM web site is encouraged for all participants
The web is a basic tool of communication for communication of data and information collected at council expense. Participants in Council funding are encouraged to provide links to their own web sites, or to post their materials on the Council's web site describing their activities for the Council.

11.2.7 All data will be copied to the designated storage facility for long-term archiving The Council intends that all data collected at its expense will become part of a long-term data archive such as the National Ocean Data Center.

11.2.8 The text of a data use statement is to be included in the invitation, attached to proposals, and in the letter of grant award.
Recipients and potential recipients of GEM funding agree to abide by the Council's data management and information transfer policies as a condition of participating in the process of proposal consideration, award of funding, project conduct and completion.

Three Figures follow

Program Management Outline

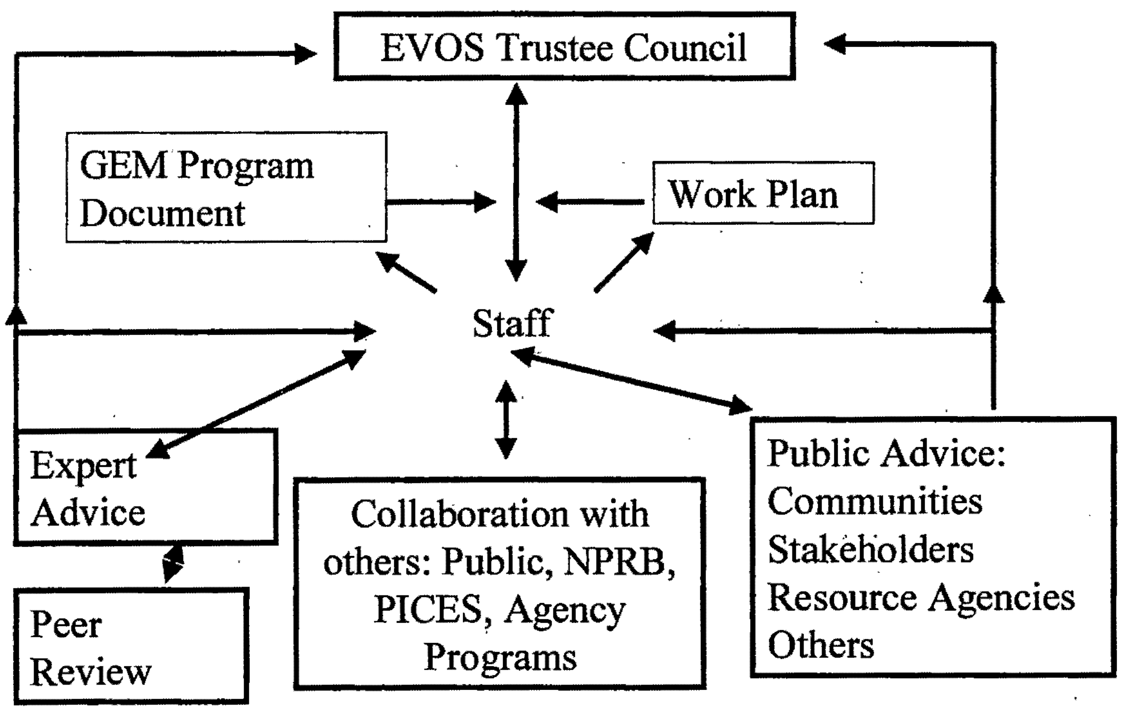


Figure Mon Plan 1. GEM Core Monitoring Committee Structure, and relation to subcommittees and working groups

Chair, Core Scientific Committee

Core Scientific Committee (standing)

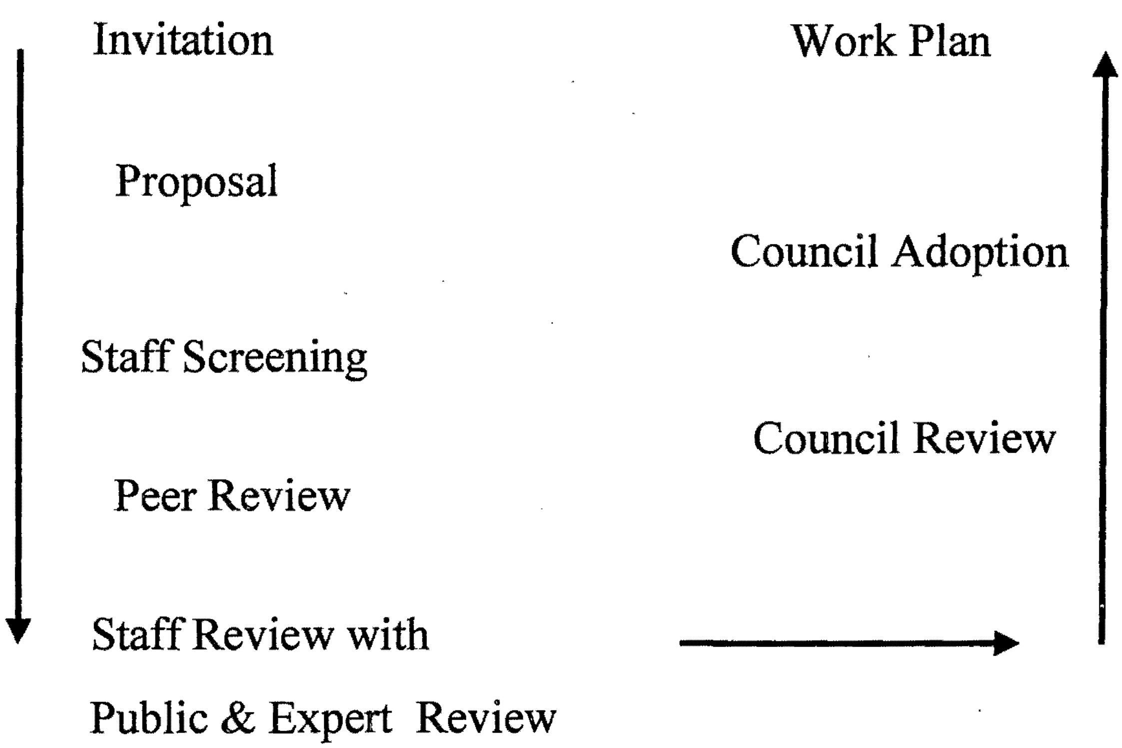
Scientific Subcommittees (standing)

Watersheds, Intertidal-Subtidal, Alaska Coastal Current, Offshore

Scientific Working Groups (limited duration)

Examples: Synthesis on measuring reduced iron, ACC Synthesis, Modeling nitrogen geochemistry

GEM Proposal Evaluation Process



12. MODELING

In This Chapter

- Goals of gathering and analyzing data with models
- Use of a hierarchal strategy in decision-making
- Modeling strategies and methods

Editorial notes:

Figures 1 and 2 - Gretchen uses these to illustrate conceptual foundation. If these appropriately describe foundation, we should use them -- or something similar-- in chapter 6, not in this chapter. Figure 3 looks ok for modeling chapter.

12.1 Purposes of Modeling

The ultimate goal of both gathering data and developing models is to increase understanding. Pickett et al. (1994) ([Pace 2001] p. 69) define this goal, in the realm of science, as "an objectively determined, empirical match between some set of confirmable, observable phenomena in the natural world and a conceptual construct."

A model-Pickett's "conceptual construct"-is useful if it helps people represent, examine, and use hypothetical relationships. Data-Pickett's "confirmable, observable phenomena in the natural world"-can be analyzed with statistical tools such as the following:

- Analyses of the variance (ANOVAs), regressions, and classification and regression trees (CARTs);
- Mathematical tools such as Fourier transforms or differential equations; and
- Qualitative models such as engineering "free body" diagrams, network diagrams, or loop models.

Fundamental goals of statistical or mathematical analyses are to develop correlative, and perhaps even causal, relationships and an understanding of patterns and trends. In particular, there is a need to distinguish between random variability, noise, and patterns or trends that can be used to explain and predict.

In other words, the goal of gathering and analyzing data is to improve our conceptual and analytical models of the world, and the goal of developing models is to represent and examine hypothetical relationships that can be tested with data.

One of the most useful applications of even relatively simple statistical and conceptual models is in experimental design that permits investigating the possible roles of various parameters and their interactions, ranking the relative importance of uncertainties that may need to be resolved (Fahrig 1991, Oosterhout 1998), and estimating impacts of sample size and observational error (Botkin et al. 2000, Carpenter et al. 1994, Ludwig 1999, Meir and Fagan 2000). Statistical models assess how the variability in one or more kinds of data relates to variability of others. To answer the "why" and "how" questions, however, mechanistic models can be used to develop and test hypotheses about causes and effects (Gargett et al. 2001). (Mechanistic in this use is intended to describe the philosophy of mechanism, especially explaining phenomena through reference to physical or biological causes.) For monitoring and modeling to be useful for solving problems, they must contribute to improving decision-making (Botkin et al. 2000, Hilborn 1997, Holling 1978, Holling and Clark 1975, Ralls and Taylor 2000).

Toward this end, one goal of the GEM program is to use models predictively to assist managers in solving problems. It is important that expectations be realistic, however. The mechanisms that drive ecological systems, particularly those related to climate and human activities, are not currently well enough understood for predictions about natural systems to be reliably successful. It is not unreasonable to expect that predictive models that managers will be able to use to produce at least short-term reliable forecasts will eventually be developed, but advances in decision-support models will require a long-term commitment to advancing understanding on which those decision-support models will ultimately have to be based.

Prediction is, however, an important goal of a modeling program even in the short run, because science advances with the development and testing of predictive hypotheses. Mechanistic studies are essential to advancing understanding, but carrying out these studies requires defining cause-effect or predictive hypotheses, and then testing those predictions against subsequent data or events with analytical models.

The fundamental goal of the GEM program is to identify and better understand the natural and human forces that cause changes in GEM species. This research goal has a pragmatic purpose that can only be served, in the end, by linking correlative and mechanistic studies with the predictive needs of decision makers. Decision-making, prediction, and understanding are inevitably linked, and maintaining that link can help keep a research program focused on its ultimate objectives, and help it to avoid narrow inquiry and the distractions of small temporary problems (Pace 2001).

An often-overlooked benefit provided by the process of developing a model is that it can, and probably should, facilitate communication among researchers, managers, and the public.

To summarize, in the GEM program, the specific purposes of modeling are as follows:

- Inform, communicate, and provide common problem definition;
- Identify key variables and relationships;
- Set priorities;
- Improve and develop experimental (monitoring) designs; and
- Improve decision-making and risk assessment.

12.2 Hierarchical Framework

It is critical that the GEM program develop a hierarchical modeling strategy to ensure that short-term, smaller-scale decisions about monitoring and modeling studies will be consistent with the conceptual foundation and GEM program goals. Smaller-scope research studies to test particular hypotheses and develop correlative relationships must fit within a larger synthesis framework connecting the more narrowly focused research disciplines. Deductive studies to relate empirical data to synthetic constructs are just as important as inductive studies to elucidate general principles, and it is important that researchers keep straight whether they are investigating the meaning of the data, given the theory, or the validity of the theory, given the data. Neither can be done unless modeling, monitoring, and data management strategies are developed together.

As described in Section 9.1.4 of Chapter 9, models for the purposes of the GEM program may be verbal, visual, statistical, or numerical. Statistical models are also known as "correlative" and "stochastic," and numerical models are also known as "deterministic" and "mechanistic." Note that "prediction," "analysis" and "simulation" are terms that describe the use of models, and not necessarily their type (see Chapter 9). The modeling hierarchy of the GEM program will provide links between observations and explanations, development of theory and design of experiments, and advancement of science and the practice of management. The "top" of this hierarchy, the conceptual foundation, is the source of questions and hypotheses to be explored. Statistical, analytical, and simulation models will be developed explicitly to link the "confirmable, observable phenomena in the natural world" to the "conceptual construct," as Pickett put it (Pace 2001, p. 69).

For example, a visual model of the conceptual foundation is shown in an influence diagram in Figure 1, which shows the forces of change on the left and the objects of ultimate interest that are subject to change on the right. In between the two are the intervening elements and relationships on which the human and natural forces act. It is the nature of the connections among these physical and ecological elements that is hypothesized to bring about the changes that the GEM program seeks to understand. Therefore, these connections should provide the overall modeling structure.

This conceptual model is linked to the monitoring plan through the variables defined as "essential to monitor" in the conceptual foundation, illustrated in a network diagram in Figure 2. The analytical relationships between the monitored variables of Figure 2 and the conceptual foundation represented by Figure 1, are developed and investigated with statistical and analytical tools, called models.

The ultimate goal of GLOBEC's Northeast Pacific modeling appears to be a suite of computer models that represents an entire conceptual foundation. The way this is framed in programs like GLOBEC, the North Pacific Marine Science Organization (called PICES), and Global Ocean Observing System (GOOS) (see Section 12.7, "Survey of Modeling") is as linked physical and biological models representing the physical and biological worlds over time and space (marine as well as terrestrial). The NRC describes this idealized goal as follows: (Committee to Review the Gulf of Alaska Ecosystem Monitoring Program et al. 2001, p. 16):

> Develop a whole-ecosystem fishery model as a guide to think about what needs to be monitored. Such a model would use current and historical data to relate yields to climate data and contaminant levels and might stress biological and physical endpoints (zooplankton/phytoplankton blooms, macrofauna populations) and climate and physical oceanography endpoints, in conjunction with modeling.

Such a conceptual framework can stimulate heated arguments, creative debate, and perhaps synthesis among researchers who have tended to work in somewhat independent fields with different theoretical foundations and languages (Zacharias and Roff 2000). On a pragmatic level, however, it is too general to help decision makers choose to fund one proposal over another.

A feasible way to proceed from what can be done now is through an iterative process framed by the conceptual foundation (Figure 3). The conceptual foundation should be the explicit source of hypothetical correlative and cause-and-effect relationships. Those relationships should be stated as hypotheses, and should be used to determine what needs to be measured and when, where, and how. If the monitoring and modeling plans are developed within this framework, the measurements can be compared to model predictions, the results can be used to update the scientific background and the monitoring plan, and the iteration can continue. This evolutionary process or adaptive feedback loop is illustrated in Figure 3.

12.3 Defining and Evaluating Modeling Strategies

Modeling efforts of the GEM program for the short term will be developed as part of a long-term strategy defined by goals of the GEM program.

To begin with, the modeling strategy must be consistent with GEM programmatic goals (Chapter 1). They can be summarized to indicate that GEM modeling should accomplish the following:

- Focus on filling gaps, thus avoiding duplication of efforts or "reinventing the wheel;"
- Emphasize synthesis;
- Depend as much as possible on already existing programs;
- Maintain focus on the key questions; and
- Emphasize efficiency.

In developing a specific management strategy, it is often useful to think of it as a decision framework (Keeney 1992), and to start by defining an ideal. For example, to satisfy GEM program goals efficiently, an ideal model would arguably require input data that are relatively easy to measure, readily available, and reliable indicators of change. The cause-effect theory that drives the modeled system or species behavior would be based not only on statistically valid correlative studies, but also on plausible and well-developed mechanistic studies and their resulting theoretical constructs. The model would produce credible predictions under plausible scenarios, and would help answer questions and raise new ones.

This ideal model would be easy for other scientists and managers to comprehend, and it would be readily available for others to deconstruct, test, and critique. The overarching conceptual model would be modularized so that components of it could be developed and tested relatively quickly by experts from multiple disciplines. Ideally, data already available could be used to test and validate the components and their interactions, and could allow quick learning that could be used to redirect the modeling and monitoring strategies. Sensitivity analysis of the components, and the interactions between the components, would be a highly productive source for subsequent model and monitoring plan development. Model structure would be flexible and have robust mechanisms for assimilating new data and revising model structure. As a result, short-term progress toward the long-term goals could be achieved and documented.

A modeling strategy is the roadmap that provides the means for achieving the ultimate modeling goals. An idealized model like the one described above is a useful step toward defining the attributes of an efficient, workable strategy. Development of such an idealized model can produce a useful communication tool. Table 25identifies preliminary objectives and attributes derived from this idealized model that could be used to evaluate modeling strategies.

Table 25 Potential Objectives and Attributes for Use in Evaluation of Modeling Strategies

Objective or Attribute	Supported by models that help...
Relevance to key questions and hypotheses of the GEM program	Identify key variables and relationships
	Characterize uncertainty and noise, impacts of process and observation error
	Elucidate general principles rather than narrow, unique focus driven by short-term perceived crisis
Contribution to future model development	Inform, communicate, develop common problem definitions
	Set priorities, clarify relative impacts of variables and relationships
	Improve and develop experimental (monitoring) designs
	Prioritize and elucidate impacts of uncertainties in data and in model structure and assumptions
	Increase utility of using simpler models to identify key variables and relationships to use in future models by ___
	Advance the state of the art; for example, increase available methodologies by borrowing from other fields, particularly engineering and medicine, tools such as neural nets, genetic algorithms, CARTs, other kinds of regression (Jackson et al. 2001)
Efficiency of approach	Synthesize, exploit, and integrate existing data and existing programs whenever possible; for example, from oceanographic programs such as NOAA, OCSEAP, GLOBEC, and GOOS
	Identify and exploit uniqueness of GEM program opportunity; for example, no one else is doing it because it requires a very long time frame
	Elucidate links between things that are easy to measure and key indicators of change, whatever they might be
	Elucidate links between correlations (which are usually easier to develop) and explanatory mechanisms (which are usually more difficult)
Maintenance and development of program support	Accessibility of models to end users, other modelers
	Contribution to data management, data assimilation effort
	Contribution to solving problems for resource managers and regulators

12.4 Modeling Methods

The modeling "niche" of the GEM program will be defined in part by a gap analysis, particularly focused on where it fits with established major regional programs, especially those of GLOBEC, GOOS, and PICES. A very brief summary of the modeling approaches for these programs is provided in Section 12.7, "Survey of Modeling."

The relationship between monitoring, models, and decision-making described here is consistent with the relationships of these programs. The purpose of this section is not to define all the other modeling efforts that might be related to the

GEM program. A useful context is provided by a table compiled for GLOBEC by Aydin of NOAA (Seattle), which summarizes North Pacific models of the Alaska Fisheries Science Center and others (see Section 12.7, Table 26 and North Pacific models in Appendix B). Correctly defining the GEM program niche is important to avoid duplication of effort and to make best use of work already being done by others.

Developing a model should be perfectly analogous to designing a controlled experiment. A useful model structure will be driven by the questions it needs to help people answer, not by the computer technology and programming expertise of model developers (although technology and expertise may impose constraints). As a general rule, useful models do not tend to be complex, in part because they must be comprehensible to be believed and used by decision makers. That said, models based on laws of physics, which can be validated against those laws and either data or scale physical models, have advanced farther than ecological models in their ability to provide useful output from highly complex models.

12.4.1 Linkages Among Models and Among Modelers

One of the most important challenges confronting GEM modelers will be to develop common languages and modeling frameworks that will allow them to resolve the temporal, mathematical, ecological, physical, and spatial sources of disconnects among the various academic paradigms. This challenge will require significant commitment to improving communication skills, developing qualitative verbal or visual models, and using intuitive problem-structuring tools that combine different modeling techniques, such as network, systems, or loop models. An additional benefit of this kind of approach is that these types of visual, qualitative models should be comprehensible to researchers from any scientific discipline, managers, and the public. The attribute of being widely comprehensible will help facilitate the support of stakeholders.

The feasibility of managing GEM as a realization of the conceptual foundation will depend in large part on the communication skills of experts in the components and linkages that make up the conceptual foundation. Establishing effective communication among experts from different organizations is a widespread problem facing systems modelers (Caddy 1995), and the GEM program may be in a good position to help advance the cause by making it possible for diverse experts to work together. Experts in these fields should bring substantial background capabilities to their work from their common language of mathematics and science learned in graduate school. The modelers of the GEM program also should be required to demonstrate the ability to work with counterparts to develop a shared systems view and conceptual models.

12.4.2 Deterministic Versus Stochastic Models

Detecting and understanding change requires that uncertainty and variability play a central role in the analyses (Ralls and Taylor 2000).

Two key questions that must be addressed by anyone trying to detect and understand change are the problems of Type I and Type II error. Type I error is "seeing" something that is not really there; and Type II error is concluding something is not there, when it really is. Dealing with these types of error in decision-making requires weighing the evidence that suspected change is caused by a (theoretically) definable pattern or trend or is "normal" process error, bservation error; or some combination. Equally important, and often overlooked, is how real indicators of change may be hidden by process or observation error or by incorrect assumptions about how things work.

Dealing with uncertainty and variability in models requires at a minimum carrying out sensitivity analysis on simple deterministic models, with particular emphasis on model structure (Hilborn and Mangel 1997). But it is often more efficient and more useful to incorporate stochasticity into simple models. Stochastic models need not necessarily be more data intensive than deterministic models. Overlooking the assumptions required in choosing a mean (or median) or geometric mean, as a representative value for a deterministic parameter is one of the most widespread, but overlooked, sources of modeling error (Vose 2000). At least stochastic modeling requires that probability distributions be explicitly defined.

Simplistic deterministic models can be every bit as misleading and improper as stochastic models (Schnute and Richards 2001), but because they are more familiar, and their single-number inputs and outputs are easier to think about than uncertainties and ranges, they may lead to false confidence on the part of decision makers. Risk assessment in most fields requires analyzing probability distributions and uncertainties, not mean trajectories (Burgman et al. 1993, Glickman and Gough 1990, Vose 2000).

One fundamental issue of interest to decision makers is often how best to prioritize research efforts. A key part of such an issue is ranking the relative impacts of uncertainties on a decision. In this case, it is possible that thoughtful sensitivity analysis carried out on a simple, deterministic model (or multiple models) may be adequate for the job, particularly as a first step in "weeding out" variables that are likely to be extraneous. But developing a stochastic version of relatively simple models may be more efficient (Vose 2000). If care is taken to distinguish between environmental or process variation and observational or functional uncertainty, then statistical tools such as analysis of variance or regression can be used to investigate the relative impacts of uncertainties (Fahrig 1991, Law and Kelton 1991, Meyer et al. 1986, Mode and Jacobson 1987a, Mode 1987b, Oosterhout 1998, Oosterhout 1996, Ruckelshaus et al. 1997, Vose 2000). This approach can be very helpful in developing analytical structures as well as modeling plans. It also lends itself well to decision analysis and risk assessment because it is similar to the "value of imperfect information" analyses widely used in risk assessment and decision analysis (Hilborn 1997, Keeney 1992, Punt and Hilborn 1997, von Winterfeldt and Edwards 1986).

12.4.3 Correlative Versus Mechanistic Models

The use of statistics-based tools such as regressions to make deterministic or probabilistic predictions will generally be easier than developing deterministic or stochastic biological models, because of a dearth of predictive "laws" of biology, let alone ecology. Statistics-based models are correlative, however, whereas cause-and-effect explanations are needed if change is to be understood and predicted reliably. Because some things are easier and more reliable to measure than others, simple models that can help develop correlative relationships between hard-to-measure parameters and easy-to-measure parameters may be of particular interest.

12.4.4 Modeling and Monitoring Interaction

Models should be developed to use and synthesize readily available data whenever possible. This approach will also help identify data needs. Similarly, whenever possible, monitoring plans should be developed to fit the models that will be used to analyze and interpret them. Data management, assimilation, and synthesis should be key considerations for both monitoring and modeling.

One useful way to incorporate data into improving an existing statistical or simulation model is with the Bayesian revision methods (Punt and Hilborn 1997, Hilborn 1997, Marmorek et al. 1996). Bayesian methods might be useful to consider with respect to the question about how much emphasis should be put on annual forecasts, because Bayesian methods lend themselves well to incorporating incoming data into previous forecasts. This entire approach also lends itself well to decision-analysis techniques.

The GEM program shares the share the view of models as tools for assimilating data and optimizing data collection as expressed for the GOOS program (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 2000, p. 36):

> A validated assimilation model can be most useful in optimizing the design of the observing subsystem upon which it depends. This underscores the mutual dependence of observing and modeling the ocean, i.e., observations should not be conducted independently of modeling and vice versa. For example the so-called "adjoint method" of assimilation can be used to gauge the sensitivity of model controls (e.g., open boundary and initial conditions, mixing parameters) to the addition or deletion of observations at arbitrary locations within the model domain. In this regard, Observation System Simulation Experiments (OSSEs) are becoming increasingly popular in oceanography as way of assessing various sampling strategies. The model is first run with realistic forcing and model parameters. The output is then subsampled at times and locations at which the observations were sampled. These simulated observations are then assimilated into the model and the inferred field compared against the original field from which the

"observations" were taken. This allows the efficacy of the assimilation scheme and sampling strategy to be evaluated (at least to the extent that the model is believed to be a reasonable representation of reality).

12.5 Evaluating Model Proposals

Model proposals should, of course, be evaluated within a decision structured framework such as that outlined above and detailed in Table 25. Proposals must also demonstrate a high probability of actually producing what they propose to produce-meeting the objectives of the GEM modeling strategy. A set of guidelines for evaluating model proposals will be developed for the GEM program in conjunction with development of the modeling objectives. As a starting point, successful proposals will provide the following:

- Define who will use the model and for what. If the proposal is to continue or expand an existing model, it should describe who is currently using it and for what. If relevant, the proposal should also identify who could be using it, for what, and why they are not able to use it now.
- Define the questions the model is supposed to answer, and directly link those questions to the key questions and hypotheses of the GEM program.
- Argue convincingly that the model structure is adequate for the purpose, and that there is not a better (cheaper, faster, more comprehensible, more direct) way to answer these questions.
- Show some kind of schematic (flowchart) that is clear, complete, and concise.
- Explain how uncertainty and variability will be represented and analyzed.
- Describe the system characteristics that will be left out or simplified and how the analysis will evaluate the impacts.
- Define data needs and show how the modeling effort will be coordinated with data assimilation and data management efforts.
- Define validation approach.
- Define how the modeling efforts will be communicated to other scientists, managers, and the public; and how input from model stakeholders will be incorporated into the effort, if appropriate.

12.6 Conclusion

Feasibility and pragmatism in a new program like the GEM program dictate that walking will have to come before running and that focused, simpler models will have to come before large-scale, multi-disciplinary models. Walking first means developing verbal and statistical models where numerical models cannot be developed because of a lack of data and understanding. Learning to run requires developing coupled numerical biophysical models that accurately portray the ecosystem. Running means using the biophysical models in a predictive sense. The models must adapt to changes in the conceptual foundation (Chapter 6), because the conceptual foundation is designed to change as new information is incorporated. Nonetheless, no matter how many improvements are made, it is probably not reasonable to expect consensus on how that conceptual foundation should be used to develop a strategic modeling policy.

In a constrained world, "consensus" in practice usually means accepting a strategy that enough decision makers find no more offensive than they can accept; optimization, on the other hand, means figuring out the tradeoffs necessary to achieve as many of the desired objectives as reasonably possible. Adopting a decision-structured approach for the modeling strategy will help ensure that it is driven by the fundamental objectives of the GEM program, that the modeling questions are defined by the conceptual foundation, and the tradeoffs can be defined, weighed, and justified.

12.7 Survey of Modeling

12.7.1 Modeling Strategies of Established Programs

This subsection provides statements summarizing modeling strategies. The information is extracted from Web sites as noted.

GOOS (Global Ocean Observing System). "Linking user needs to measurements requires a managed, interactive flow of data and information among three essential subsystems of the IOOS [Integrated Coastal Ocean Observing System]: (1) the observing subsystem (measurement of core variables and the transmission of data), (2) the communications network and data management subsystem (organizing, cataloging, and disseminating data), and (3) the modeling and applications subsystem (translating data into products in response to user needs). Thus, the observing system consists of the infrastructure and expertise required for each of these subsystems as well as that needed to insure the continued and routine flow of data and information among them."

From "Toward a National, Cost-Effective Approach to Predicting the Future of our Coastal Environment. " A Position Paper of the U.S. GOOS Steering Committee, September 2000, PROLOGUE (http://www-ocean.tamu.edu/GOOS/publications/position.html).

PICES (North Pacific Marine Science Organization)/NEMURO (North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography). "Models serve to extrapolate retrospective and new observations through space and time, assist with the design of observational programs, and test our understanding of the integration and functioning of ecosystem components. Clear differences were identified in the level of advancement of the various disciplinary models. Atmosphere-ocean and physical circulation models are the most advanced, to the extent that existing models are generally useful now for CCCC [climate change and carrying capacity] objectives, at least on the Basin scale. Circulation models in territorial and regional seas are presently more varied in their level of development, and may need some co-ordination from PICES. Lower trophic level models are advancing, and examples of their application coupled with large-scale circulation models are beginning to appear. There is a need for comparisons of specific physiological models, and for grafting of detailed mixed layer models into the general circulation models. With upper trophic level models, there are several well-developed models for specific applications, but workshop participants felt there were as yet no leading models available for general use within the CCCC program. This is an area that needs particular attention and encouragement from PICES."

From http://pices.ios.bc.ca/cccc/cccc/taskteam/modelws96.htm (Perry et al. 1997)

GLOBEC (GLOBal Ocean ECosystems Dynamics). "The physical models ... can be coupled with a suite of biological, biophysical and ecosystems models. Development of biological models should occur concurrently with development of the physical model. Four types of biological or biophysical models are recommended ... Linking outputs from each of these models will allow the examination of ecosystem level questions regarding top down or bottom up controls in determining pelagic production in the Bering Sea."

From http://globec.oce.orst.edu/groups/nep/reports/rep16/rep16.bs.model.html).

12.7.2 Core Variables for Modeling

Table 26 shows spatial domains, currencies, inputs, and outputs for models.

Table 26. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency
Single-species stock assessment models that include predation	Across EBS and GOA Pollock distributions	Fisheries data and predator biomass	Pollock population and mortality trends—number at age (and biomass at age)
Bering Sea MSVPA	The modeled region is the EBS shelf and slope north to about 61°N	Fisheries, predator biomass, and food habits data. This model requires estimates of other food abundance supplied by species outside the model.	Age-structured population dynamics for key species—numbers at age
BORMICON for the Eastern Bering Sea	The model is spatially explicit with 7 defined geographic regions that have pollock abundance and size distribution information.	Temperature is included and influences growth and consumption.	Spatial size distribution of pollock
Evaluating Alternative Fishing Strategies	U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone	Gear-specific fishing effort, including bycatch	Biomass of managed fish species
Advection on larval pollock recruitment	Southeast Bering Sea Shelf	OSCURS surface currents (wind-driven).	Index of pollock recruitment
Shelikof Pollock IBM	Western GOA from just southwest of Kodiak Island to the Shumagin Islands, shelf, water column to 100 m	From physical model: Water velocities, wind field, mixed-layer depth, water temperature, and salinity, Pseudocalanus field (from NPZ model)	Individual larval characteristics such as age, size, weight, location, life stage, hatch date, consumption, respiration
GLOBEC NPZ 1-D and 3-D Models	Water column (0-100 m) Coastal GOA from Dixon Entrance to Unimak Pass, 100 m of water column over depths < 2000 m 5-m depth bins x 20 km horizontal grid	Irradiance, MLD Temperature, diffusivity, bottom depths, water velocities (u, v, w	Diffusivity, ammonium, nitrate, detritus, small and large phytoplankton, dinoflagellates, tintinnids, small coastal copepods, neocalanus, and euphausiids (nitrate and ammonium): mmol/m^3 (all else): mg carbon/m^3
Steller Sea Lion IBM	Should be applicable to any domain surrounding a specific sea lion rookery or haul-out in the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands, or GOA	The main input will be a 3D field of prey (fish) distribution, derived either from hypothetical scenarios or (later) modeled based on acoustic data	Individual sea lion characteristics such as age, location, life stage, and birth date are recorded. Caloric balance is the main variable followed for each individual.

Table 26. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency
Shelikof NPZ Model, 1-D and 3-D Versions	Water column (0-100 m), GOA from southwest of Kodiak Island to Shumagin Islands. 1-m depth bins for 1-D version; 1 m depth x 20 km for 3-D version	Irradiance, MLD, temperature, bottom depths, water velocities (u, v, w).	Nitrogen, phytoplankton, Neocalanus densities, Pseudocalanus numbers/m-3 for each of the 13 stages (egg, 6 naupliar, 6 copepodite)s
GOA Pollock Stochastic Switch Model	Shelikof Strait, Gulf of Alaska	Number of eggs to seed the model. Base mortality, additive and multiplicative mort. Adjustment parameters for each mort. Factor.	Number of 90-day-old pollock larvae through time
NEMURO	Ocean Station P (50°N 145°W), Bering Sea (57.5°N 175°W), and Station A7 off the east of Hokkaido island, Japan (41.3°N 145.3°W)	15 state variables and parameters, including 2 phytoplankton, 3 zooplankton, and multiple nutrient groups	Ecosystem fluxes are tracked in units of nitrogen and silicon.
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 1 Ecopath	500,000 km^2 in EBS south of 61°N	Biomass, production, consumption, and diet composition for all major species in each ecosystem	Balance between produced and consumed per area biomass (t/km^2). Future work will explore energy (kcal/km^2) and nutrient dynamics.
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 2 Ecopath	500,000 km^2 in eastern Bering Sea south of 61°N		
Western Bering Sea Shelf Ecopath	300,000 km^2 on western Bering Sea shelf		
Gulf of Alaska Shelf Ecopath	NPFMC management areas 610, 620, 630, and part of 640		
Aleutian Islands, Pribilof Islands Ecopath	Not determined		
Prince William Sound Ecopath	Whole Prince William Sound		

Table 26. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency

Source: Table 2 in "North Pacific Models of the Alaska Fisheries Science Center and selected others," compiled by Kerim Aydin.

Notes:
BORMICON = Boreal Migration and Consumption Model
EBS = Eastern Bering Sea
GLOBEC = Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics
GOA = Gulf of Alaska
km = kilometer
kcal = kilo calorie
m = meter
MLD =
mmol = millimolar
MSVPA = Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis
NEMURO = North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography
NPFMC = North Pacific Fisheries Management Council
NPZ = nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton
OSCURS = Ocean Surface Current Simulations
t = metric ton?
YD = days of year

12.8 References

Botkin, D. B., Peterson, D. L., and Calhoun, J. M. 2000. The scientific basis for validation monitoring of salmon for conservation and restoration plans. University of Washington, Olympic Natural Resources Center. Forks.

Burgman, M. A., Ferson, S., and Akcakaya, H. R. 1993. Risk assessment in conservation biology. Chapman and Hall. United Kingdom.

Caddy, J. F. 1995. Comment - fisheries management science: a plea for conceptual change. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 52: 2057-2058.

Carpenter, S. R., Cottingham, K. L., and Stow, C. A. 1994. Fitting predator-prey models to time series with observation errors. Ecology 75: 1254-1264.

Committee to Review the Gulf of Alaska Ecosystem Monitoring Program, Polar Research Board, Board on Environmental Studies and Toxicology, and The National Research Council. 2001. The gulf ecosystem monitoring program: first steps toward a long-term research and monitoring plan. Interim report. Washington, D.C., National Academy Press.

Fahrig, L. 1991. Simulation methods for developing general landscape-level hypotheses of single-species dynamics. Pages 417-442 in M. G. Turner and R. H. Gardner, editors. Quantitative methods in landscape ecology: the analysis and interpretation of landscape heterogeneity. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Gargett, A. E., Li, M., and Brown, R. 2001. Testing mechanistic explanations of observed correlations between environmental factors and marine fisheries. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58: 208-219.

Glickman, T. S. and Gough, M. 1990. Readings in risk. resources for the future. Washington D.C.

Hilborn, R. 1997. Statistical hypothesis testing an decision theory in fisheries science. Fisheries 22: 19-20.

Hilborn, R. and Mangel, M. 1997. The ecological detective: confronting models with data. Princeton University Press. Princeton.

Holling, C. S. 1978. Adaptive environmental assessment and management. John Wiley and Sons. Chichester.

Holling, C. S. and Clark, W. C. 1975. Notes towards a science of ecological management. Pages 247-251 in W. H. van Dobben and R. H. Lowe-McConnell, editors. First international congress of ecology. Dr W. Junk B.V. Publishers, The Hague, Netherlands.

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission. 2000. Strategic design plan for the coastal component of the Global Ocean Observing System (GOOS). Paris, UNESCO.

Jackson, D. A., Peres-Neto, P. R., and Olden, J. D. 2001. What controls who is where in freshwater fish communities - the roles of biotic, abiotic, and spatial factors. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58: 157-170.

Keeney, R. 1992. Value-focused thinking. Harvard University Press. London.

Law, A. M. and Kelton, W. D. 1991. Simulation modeling and analysis. McGraw-Hill. New York.

Ludwig, D. 1999. Is it meaningful to estimate a probability of extinction? Ecology 80: 298-310.

Marmorek, D. R., Anderson, J. J., Bashan, L., Bouillon, D., Cooney, T., Derison, R., Dygert, P., Garrett, L., Giorgi, A., Langness, O. P., Lee, D., McConnaha, C., Parnell, I., Paulsen, C. M., Peters, S., Petrosky, C. E., Pinney, C., Schaller, H. A., Toole, C., Weber, E., Wilson, P., and Zabel, R. W. 1996. Plan for analyzing and testing hypotheses (PATH): final report on retrospective analyses for fiscal year 1996. Vancouver, ESSA Technologies.

Meir, E. and Fagan, W. F. 2000. Will observation error and biases ruin the use of simple extinction models? Conservation Biology 14: 148-154.

Meyer, J. S., Ingersll, C. G., McDonald, L. L., and Boycé, M. S. 1986. Estimating uncertainty in population growth rates: jackknife vs. bootstrap techniques. Ecology 67: 1156-1166.

Mode, C. J. and Jacobson, M. E. 1987a. On estimating critical population size for an endangered species in the presence of environmental stochasticity. Mathematical BioSciences 85: 185-209.

Mode, C. J. a. M. E. J. 1. 1987b. A study of the impact of environmental stochasticity on extinction probabilities by Monte Carlo integration. Mathematical BioSciences 83: 105-125.

Oosterhout, G. 1998. PasRAS: a stochastic simulation of chinook and sockeye life histories. Eagle Point, Decision Matrix, Inc.

Oosterhout, G. R. 1996. An evolutionary simulation of the tragedy of the commons. Systems Science. Portland State University, Portland.

Pace, M. L. 2001. Prediction and the aquatic sciences. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58: 63-72.

Perry, R. I., Yoo, S., and Terazaki, M. 1997. MODEL Task Team Report, Workshop on Conceptual/Theoretical Studies and Model Development. Sidney, B.C. Canada, North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES).

Pickett, S. T. A., Kolasa, J., and Jones, C. G. 1994. Ecological understanding. Academic Press. San Diego.

Punt, A. E. and Hilborn, R. 1997. Fisheries stock assessment and decision analysis: the Bayesian approach. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 7: 35-63.

Ralls, K. and Taylor, B. L. 2000. Introduction to special section: better policy and management decisions through explicit analysis of uncertainty: new approaches from marine conservation. Conservation Biology 14: 1240-1242.

Ruckelshaus, M., Hartway, C., and Jareuva, P. 1997. Assessing the data requirements of spatially explicit dispersal models. Conservation Biology 11: 1298-1306.

Schnute, J. T. and Richards, L. J. 2001. Use and abuse of fishery models. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 58: 10-17.

von Winterfeldt, D. and Edwards, W. 1986. Decision analysis and behavioral research. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge.

Vose, D. 2000. Risk analysis: a quantitative guide. John Wiley and Sons. Chichester.

Zacharias, M. A. and Roff, J. C. 2000. A hierarchical ecological approach to conserving marine biodiversity. Conservation Biology 14: 1327-1334.

"The marine ecosystem in the northern Gulf of Alaska (GOA) depends on the energy flow, biogeochemical cycling and food web structure. Natural changes and human activities bring about changes in the populations of birds, fish, shellfish and mammals by altering these connections" (p. 2).

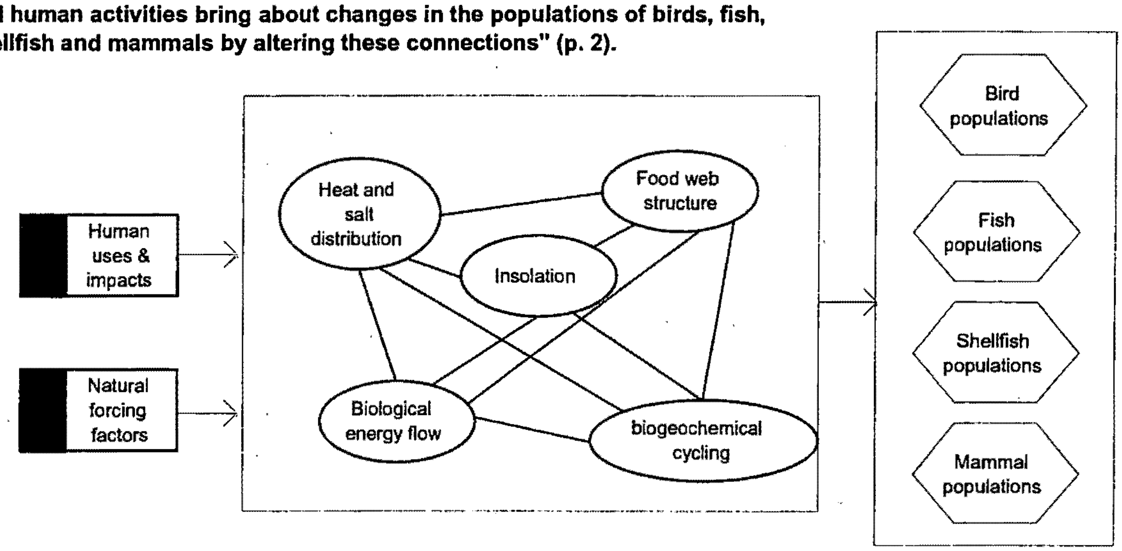


Figure 1. Influence diagram illustrating GEM draft Conceptual Foundation.

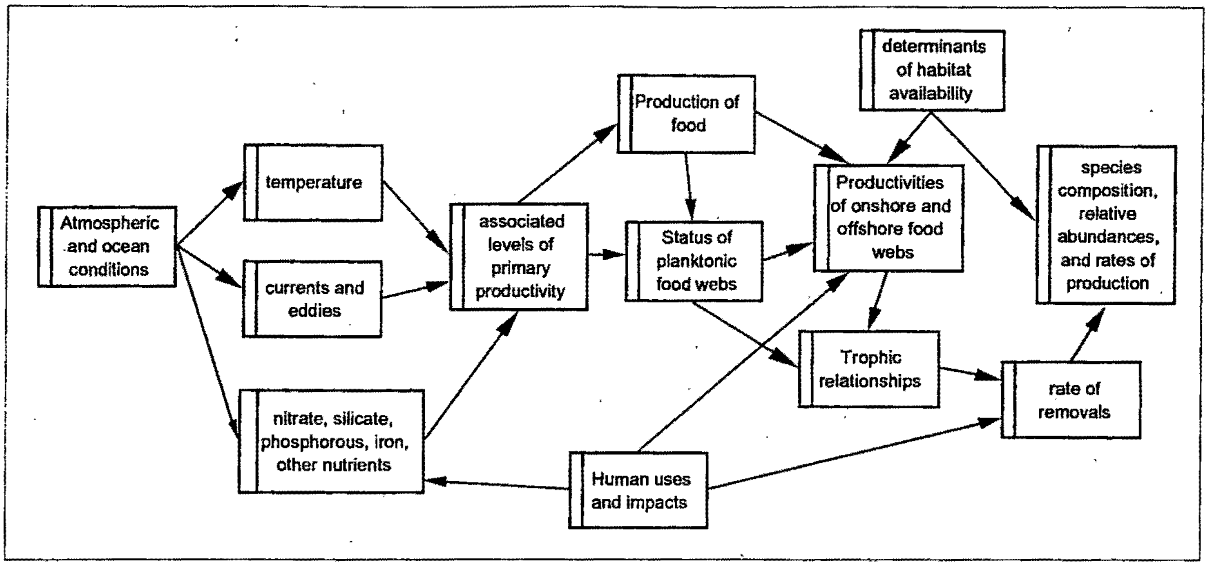


Figure 2. Linkages among system attributes the Conceptual Foundation identified as "essential" to monitor.

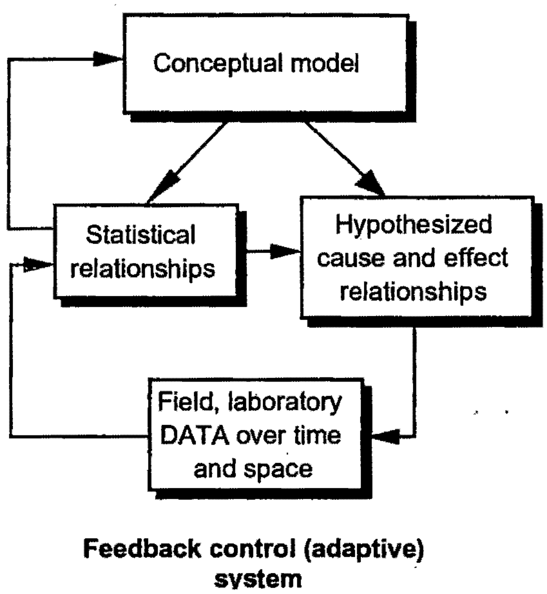


Figure 3. Feedback control system linking the Conceptual Foundation, monitoring, and modeling efforts

NOTE: These figures have not been edited. The illustrations willl need to be provided for use in revising text style for conisistency.

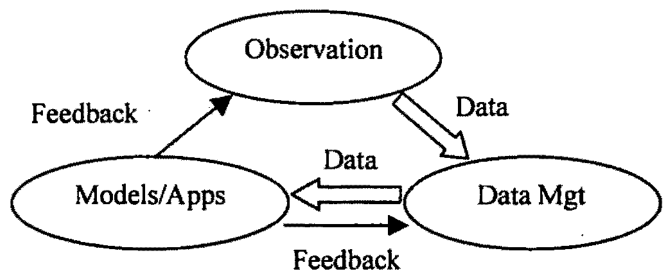
Notice: This is a preliminary draft that has not been through the editorial review process. It is subject to substantial change and revision, and it is posted for the sake of fostering discussion on data management and information transfer issues.

Editorial note: References GOOS document, a NASA document, and several web sites. The web sites are included inline but may need to be moved to a bibliography.

Chapter 13: Data Management and Information Transfer

The Role of Data Management

The data management component of GEM will receive the data and meta-data from the field, provide quality control of the meta-data, store and manage the data, and provide mechanisms for retrieving those data. It will include the systems necessary to automate as much of that procedure as possible and the programs needed to create the custom data products that will be provided to the modeling and applications components. As such the data management system for GEM fits well into the definition established by C-GOOS (GOOS 2000).

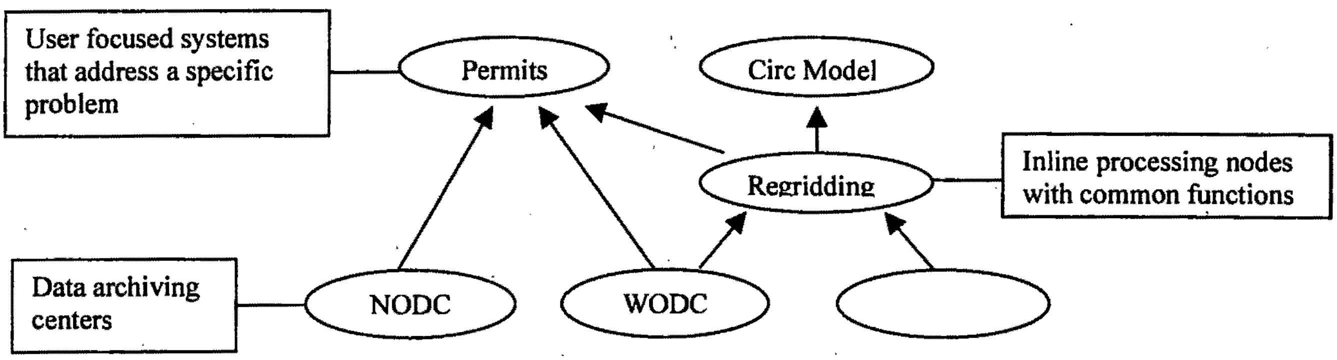


The GOOS model is a general description of an end-to-end system that is based on the tripod of observation, data management, and models and applications with the data management component acting as the intermediary between the observational component and the applications. Data flows from observation through the management system to the modeling and application component. In turn, the applications component informs and refines the both the design of the observational component and the design of the data management system. The monitoring plan may be altered to include new data and/or regions that are identified during the modeling phase as key to understanding the natural system. The interfaces and data products distributed by the data management system will also be refined with feedback from the applications.

Scientific data management systems have grown rapidly since the advent of the World Wide Web. Initially, projects or groups that collected or archived data made those available over the web through a simple interfaces based on the navigation of links. These supply-oriented systems reflect the structure of the data that was made available by providing links to lists of datasets by years, dataset name, or variable name. Many of these are still in wide use although newer systems include more sophisticated search options such as spatial and temporal selection. However, these systems make few assumptions about the intended user community and it becomes the users responsibility to locate, evaluate, integrate, and preprocess the data into a form that is suitable for the target application.

As the applications that use scientific data become more sophisticated, and the community is able to access and integrate large amounts of data to address a single problem, new data systems will be built that are address the data needs of specific user applications. The output of these systems will be higher order products such as maps, graphs, visualizations, and data in interoperable formats. NASA has funded some projects with a demand-oriented focus (ESIP NRA) and in the future more user communities will find ways to build these types of targeted systems.

The landscape of data product delivery will likely include large archives that supply data in a raw or partially pre-processed form. Application oriented sites will accesses data from these archive sites through a high bandwidth connection and may use intermediate sites, which provide value added services that are not available from the originating archive (see diagram). Common data services available at the archive or through intermediate sites will include subsetting, reformatting, reprojection, regridding or aggregation.



Although predicting the evolution and the impact of the web on scientific data delivery is speculative at best, the landscape of future data systems needs to be evaluated in order to understand the role of the data management component during the extended life span of GEM. Initially, GEM will act as both a data archive and a user focused delivery system, accepting and archiving data from the observational component and creating products that are customized to meet the needs of the habitat specific applications. During this phase, GEM will establish the procedures for assuring the quality of the data that is submitted to the archive as well as the operational details of ingesting data and making it available. As the archive grows, older datasets will be moved to the National Ocean Data Center (NODC) for permanent storage. GEM will continue to maintain a meta-database that provides a data search interface to locate and access GEM data that is maintained by the originating project, the GEM archive, or the data archive at NODC.

Over the long term, however, GEM will likely turn over the entire archiving task to a center such as NODC that is better equipped to maintain the data for extended periods of time. This is only possible after the data flow between the observational component and the applications component has been established and the tools and structures are in place to build the custom data products from a distributed set of data archives. GEM will retain the meta-database and continue to provide custom data products and services to set of targeted users.

Characterizing the data within GEM

Within the data management component, data is classified by the operations that must be applied to it during the archive and retrieval cycle. This classification often cuts across the content-based classifications used during data analysis. While biologic data is more often collected by observation or laboratory work and physical data is frequently measured by instrument there are significant exceptions. A satellite image of ocean color that contains biologic variables will have more in common, in a data management context, with the physical variables in a Synthetic Aperture Radar image than to the phytoplankton results collected from the settled volume of a bottle sample. The settle volume could include both physical and biologic results but be retained by the data management system as a single data holding. The meta-data and processing that is associated with the chemical and biologic data from the bottle sample will be nearly identical, as will the processing and meta-data associated with both types of satellite imagery.

GEM will be collecting and processing a wide range of data from different collection and recording techniques that place different challenges to quality control and assurance. In order to classify these differences for the data management component, data can be separated into broad categories that reflect the handling and storage requirements. These data categories include:

- **Observational** data collected or recorded by an individual
- **Measured** data collected by an instrument and stored in formatted files
- **Modeled** data generated by a running computer model
- **Geographic** or reference data used by a Geographic Information System
- **Remotely Sensed** image data taken from a satellite or aerial platform

The criteria used to characterize these data types are:

- **Interoperability:** how easily the data can be used in alternate applications
- **Consistency:** the degree of similarity between the data for different points
- **Size of file:** the size of the data for a single instance
- **Number of files:** the number of instances that make up the dataset
- **Repeatability:** whether or not the same data can be re-sampled
- **Lag time:** the length of time needed between collection and submission
- **Alternate sources:** whether the data is maintained at multiple sites
- **Meta-data:** The content and/or format of the meta-data

Observational

Observational data are collected by human observation, lab results, and manual data entry. These data include species counts and locations, and can include a large number of ad hoc observations of conditions or unrelated sightings. These data are manually entered and capture a person's observations or calculations, which makes them less consistent, often complex, generally low volume, and occasionally error prone. The observations are not repeatable and the formats are not customarily interoperable. The lag time between collection and submission can be long if extensive lab or manual work is involved. The meta-data describe the collection and or processing location and sometimes the conditions. These data are often in a database managements system (DBMS) or a spreadsheet, which forces a level of consistency that allows automated processing upon retrieval. Examples of observational datasets from the GEM habitat themes (see chapter 10) include:

Wetlands

- Lab results for stream chemistry
- Plant and animal observations from field study
- Isotopes of N and levels of P, Si, Fe from lab

InterTidal/SubTidal

- Species counts for substrate classification
- Lab results for chemical/biological oceanography

Alaska Coastal Current

- Lab results for chemical/biological oceanography
- Species counts for zooplankton
- Diet composition for nekton
- Nekton measurements from net tows
- Bird surveys

OCS/Alaska Gyre

- Lab results for chemical/biological oceanography
- Species counts for zooplankton
- Bird and Mammal surveys

Measured

These data are mostly measurements of physical variables such as air temperature or salinity but they may also include biologic variables as in the case of the acoustic measurements of the biomass of nekton or zooplankton. These data are usually stored in files with formats that are set by the collection instrument. The data files are consistent across the dataset but have a low level of interoperability with other systems. The fact that data collection is automated means that size of the files and the number of the files can be large. Little special processing is involved, usually, so the lag time between collection and submission does not need to be long. The meta-data includes instrument details and conditions and the data formats are standard enough to allow customized processing during retrieval. Example from the GEM themes include:

InterTidal/SubTidal

- Physical oceanographic variables

Alaska Coastal Current

- Lidar measurements
- Hydro-acoustic plankton or nekton surveys
- Fluorescence measurements

OCS/Alaska Gyre

- Physical oceanography
- Hydro-acoustic plankton or nekton surveys
- Fluorescence measurements

Modeled data

Numeric, and to some degree statistical models, can generate a significant amount of data. As an example the circulation model can provide a snapshot of ocean current vectors across the GEM region, at many depths, for time steps as small as 10 minutes. Other models produce smaller result sets but often these results are used by other models as input and must be cataloged and delivered by the data management component. However, unlike most other datasets these data can be recreated and often are as the model matures. These data are consistent across the data set, can represent a high volume of data, and are not generally interoperable. The lag time between data generation and data submission (and even use) can be very short. The meta-data needs to describe the classification and version of the model and may need to include relevant input parameters. The meta-data may be used to track the lineage of the output data including the references to the input data and, if relevant, the models that created those input data. The modeled output data for GEM is not yet defined.

Geographic

These data are the reference data used by Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and include base layers such as elevation (bathymetry) and shorelines but can also include soil types or habitat characterization. These data formats are rarely used to store data collected by a project but are frequently employed to display the information in the spatial context of a map. These data are usually interoperable across different systems and may be stored at several different locations. The meta-data is focused on the spatial definition and may include information about the resolution or precision of the data. GEM will not generally be ingesting these data from projects but it may store reference information in this format, which is also a prime candidate as a format for custom data products created by the data management component.

Remotely Sensed

Remotely sensed imagery can come from satellite or aerial platforms. These are generally large files and may be used on a regular based by the analysis being conducted by GEM but images from NASA or NOAA may not need to be archived if they can be retrieved again from the source. Arial photography has also been used by EVOS projects to capture the spatial distribution of nekton in Prince William Sound. These images along with satellite images may in some cases be archived by GEM and provided to the application component. These data will require a large amount of storage and are quite interoperable with GIS and image analysis tools. The meta-data describe the instrument and platform and often include details of the image quality and the spatial reference system. Examples in the GEM themes could include:

Wetlands
- LandSat images of watersheds
- MODIS imagery
- Aerial photography

InterTidal/SubTidal
- Ocean color imagery from SeaWiFS
- Aerial photography

Alaska Coastal Current
- Ocean color imagery from SeaWiFS
- MODIS ocean products

OCS/Alaska Gyre
- Ocean color imagery from SeaWiFS
- MODIS ocean products

Impact on GEM

Although the data standards set by GEM will be similar across the datasets in a given type, each dataset will have its own set of standards and QC and ingest processing. As the GEM data management component becomes active, new datasets will be added to the archive. For each new dataset, GEM will set data standards and create the software to perform the QC against those standards. The data management plan will outline what needs to be in place before a new dataset can be added to the GEM archive and the GEM data manager will oversee the process of adding a new data

As each collection effort is funded and organized, a plan that outlines the data inventory and its submission schedule will be established. In addition, the plan will include the procedures for performing the QC process and how discrepancies will be resolved.

Characterizing the GEM user community

Over its lifetime, GEM will serve a large and diverse user community with needs that will vary from simple data download to the creation of tailored data products. In most cases meeting the requirements of particular user groups will require detailed analysis and the creation of tailored products but generalizations can be made about the types of applications that GEM will provide data for.

The user groups interested in each application will have different levels of data analysis and data reduction capabilities and each will need to search for GEM data with different criteria. Some applications require regular or periodic access to GEM data and others are irregular or sporadic. The largest discriminator between the applications, however, is the type of data products that GEM will create them and the level of processing that will go into creating those products. These applications of GEM are relevant for all four of the main GEM themes: watersheds, intertidal, Alaska coastal current, and the Alaska gyre.

1. **Basic research and analysis** is perhaps the most fundamental application of GEM data. This will be done by researchers who are collecting data for GEM and by other researchers that are investigating the GEM region. In general this community will have a good understanding of GEM data and will be searching for specific variables within a region of interest. Access is less likely to be irregular but research applications expect access to data as soon as it can be made available and so FTP or file-download of the original data will generally be sufficient.

2. **Modeling** is also a critical application of GEM data. Verbal and visual models will be drawn from research applications but statistical and numeric models will require access to customized data products that are tailored to meet the needs of the model as closely as possible. Most of the search criteria may be saved by the system and may be reused on a regular basis in order to execute the model with the most recent set of parameters. The types of preprocessing could include reformatting, spatial or temporal aggregation, regridding, and re-projection.

3. **Resource management** applications will increase in number over time and may become a common use of GEM data. These applications will require a separate set of product than the modeling applications. Management applications will be both periodic and sporadic and the product may include reports, graphs or maps. Examples include regular stock analysis reports that are used by fisheries managers

set catch limits, or irregular access to watershed data that would be relevant to permit requests.

4. **Public outreach** encompasses several different applications that GEM will be supporting to varying degrees over its life span. These include providing public information about the state of the ecosystems that are being studied by GEM as well as supplying visibility into the general administration of the GEM program. Other outreach activities will include supporting educational programs and possibly emergency response. These applications can be supported with maps and graphs that describe various aspects of the central GEM themes. Access is likely to be quite irregular and may be accomplish through the creation of a few standard maps and graphs on a regular basis.

Supporting GEM applications with user interfaces

In order to support these applications, GEM will initially provide three different modes of access. Although this will change over time the design will include basic search and download, tailored product creation and display, and open map access. For the most part, basic search and download will support research applications, tailored products will be used by both modeling and management applications, and open map access will support public outreach applications. Together these three modes of access characterize many of the scientific data delivery systems available on the web.

Basic search and download is currently the most common method of accessing data on the web. Many projects have an interface that makes some level of search available and then allows data to be downloaded by clicking through to an ftp site or a web page containing data links. Examples include CIIMMS (http://info.dec.state.ak.us/ciimms/), which been used successfully to provide basic access to meta-data and data relating to Cook Inlet and other systems such as GLIMPSE (http://lternet.edu/data/), EMAP (http://www.epa.gov/emap/index.html), and Beija-flor (http://beija-flor.ornl.gov/lba/) which provide basic access for the NSF Long Term Ecological Research program, the EPA Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program, and the Large Scale Biosphere-Atmosphere Experiment in Amazonia sponsored in part by NASA. In addition the GLOBEC program provides basic data download through its own database (http://globec.whoi.edu/globec-dir/data-access.html).

Although these systems provide different types of search criteria and each has a different orientation they all provide access to meta-data and, in most cases, the actual data collected by the program. GEM can use one of these systems or something very similar to provide access to data soon after it is submitted to GEM. Research applications are often focused on specific variables and regions and these basic systems meet the majority of those needs. In addition, a basic search and download tool will provide the minimum access to GEM data and may support the other applications including modeling, resource management, and public outreach. Although budgetary constraints may require that the creation of custom map and data products be cut back, the basic search and download functions will be supported as long as data is collected and archived by GEM.

The meta-database maintained in order to support the basic search and download functions would also support access to remote database services that are funded by or relevant to GEM. Remote databases like the EVOS hydrocarbon database and other databases maintained by the group that is conducting the data collection effort will be included in the GEM meta-database for searching purposes. The data will then be available through the remote web site set up to support those data.

Map creation systems such as the Open GIS Consortium's Web Mapping Server (WMS) (http://www.opengis.org/techno/specs/01-047r2.pdf) and the ArcIMS system (http://www.esri.com/software/arcims/index.html) from the Environmental Systems Research Institute (ESRI) make preprocessed maps available to users over the web. Both of these systems provide maps to web browsers and to freely available viewers. Because the WMS protocol is not tied to any particular vendor it has been enjoying rapid acceptance and deployment in a wide range of applications and in the future, the use of WMS in educational and outreach applications is likely to be very large.

Once GEM has identified a set of standard map products that would be useful to the public or to particular educational programs, they will be available through one of these Internet map protocols. These products will likely include base maps and general information maps but might also include regular maps of the Alaska gyre or currents that affect the GEM habitats. Web sites designed to support the educational program or the public interests will display these maps and may, over time, support more complicated map viewers that can access and overlay maps from other sites that are relevant to the goal of the web site.

Data products tailored to specific modeling and resource management applications will be the most useful facet of the GEM data distribution and also the most expensive to create. It is not possible to create a single data distribution system that meets the wide range of user needs in modeling and resource management. Therefore, GEM will prioritize the products that are needed by particular groups and create them in sequence. These products will be designed with the close involvement of the specific user community to which they are targeted and initially they may need to be created with a significant amount of manual effort. However, once automated, a separate web-based interface can be created that will be used by the target user group to create and download these products on a regular (or irregular) basis. Over time, after many of these products have been designed and the distribution of them automated, certain common functions will emerge and GEM will begin to build a library of data processing utilities.

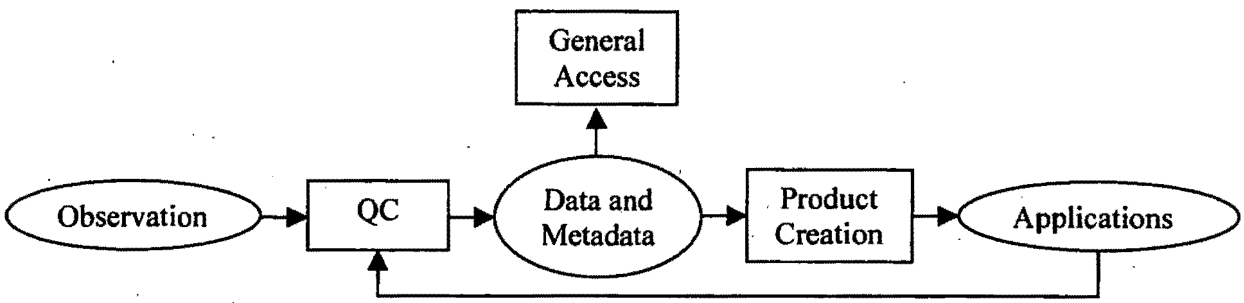
Examples of modeling products include the reformatting and regridding of data to match the execution grid and time steps of the model. Non-GEM data may be pulled from another site and integrated into data product and several different products may be generated at a time to meet the needs of a single modeling application. The creation of a suite of products may be done by hand and it may require that GEM start with algorithms that were written by the modeling group itself. However, after the modeling group has used the products successfully several times, the process of creating the products could be automated and a simple interface built to allow the group to create and download the product. If the requirements for the product were clear enough, the manual step may be bypassed.

For resource management applications, a report or spreadsheet used to manage fish stocks may require access to several different datasets and the extraction and integration of different variables. Unless the report is already in existence it may require several attempts before a truly useful product can be created. Once this is accomplished, the process could be automated and the resource management office could trigger the report through a simple interface created for that product. In this way the application component of GEM will feedback information and tailor the design of the data management component.

Over time, GEM will create a wide range of products to meet the specific needs of the GEM modeling and resource management communities. The creation of each product will involve GEM staff and the interaction with the target user group. Depending upon the scope of the effort for each product, several tailored products could be created for the modeling and resource management community each year. These products coupled with the basic search and download and with the web-based map delivery services will support a wide range of both specific and general data distribution needs.

The structure of the GEM data system

The GEM data management system will address the issues related to the data types supplied by the observational component and the demand placed by the applications component. As such the data management system is positioned in-between the other two components and must develop and maintain an interface to both. In addition, modeling and map creation applications will generate new data that will also be archived and delivered by the GEM data system.



Supply side support

In order to support the ingestion of data from the observational component of GEM, the data management system must provide quality control (QC) of the meta-data (and to some degree the data) and quality assurance of the data and the meta-data. Quality control will ensure that the meta-data comply with GEM standards and that valid values are supplied in format that can be used to store that data in the GEM archive. Values such as station identifier, date, and latitude and longitude need to be valid or fall within a reasonable range. In general, each data type will have unique issues and GEM will create new QC procedures and programs, although over time some of the QC algorithms can be shared across data types. GEM will also need to provide quality control on some of the data values such as species identification, but the submitter will do the most of the quality control for the data itself. The validation provided by the data management component is done to ensure that data can be found and retrieved using an accepted set of search criteria.

Quality assurance includes the design of the quality control processes and documentation of the quality control activity. The data management component of GEM will not be able to provide the quality control over the most of the data but it can ensure that the documentation of the submitters' quality control is available along with the data. The data management system will also provide quality assurance of the meta-data.

Demand side support

On the applications side of the data management system, software modules will create the custom data products and standard maps. These routines will not be developed all at once when the system is deployed but over time as the archive is populated with data and the user demands become clear. Custom routines will integrate third party software where possible. These external routines may be Commercial Off The Shelf (COTS) software or they come from the growing library of free software available over the web. These custom routines will pull datasets from the GEM archive and from other relevant data sources and provide preprocessing. Examples of the types of operations include:

- **Reformatting:** Often, raw data may need to be reorganized in order to be usable by an application. As an example, an application may need multiple observations pulled into a single output file containing only those variables of interest from a subset of stations. This file may also need to be ordered by date or species and written out in a comma-separated file that can be manipulated by a spreadsheet. Other output formats may include GIS, image analysis formats or special binary formats for visualization applications.

- **Aggregation or subsetting:** Modeling applications often need summary or averaged data and so datasets may need to be merged or clipped to capture the temporal or spatial region of interest completely. Some file formats support clipping but many of these routines will be tailored to the input data. Aggregation routines may come from the application space or they may simple average or sum calculations.

- **Projection:** Data is usually collected with latitude/longitude coordinates and some regional models use a map projection that preserves spatial relationships more accurately for the region. Satellite data and other data may need to be projected or reprojected into a specific map projection for the application. Software is available to perform some of these reprojection operations from both commercial and freeware sources.

- **Map creation and visualization:** Some data products may be best represented in the spatial context of a map or a graph. The generation of these maps or the creation of a multidimensional or graph oriented visualization require data extraction reduction and rendering. There are a large number of software utilities available to assist in this process and they will be integrated into single utility to create the custom product.

Most custom data product will require a user interface to allow the entry of parameters and to trigger the creation of the product. In most cases these will be simple web pages that support various pull down menus to select input or display parameters. Simple interfaces that are designed to support one or two data products are easier to use and maintain. Although over time GEM will support a large number of custom products, and interfaces may need to be merged to reduce the overall maintenance load.

Meta-database support

The core of the data system will be the meta-database and a data storage component. The meta-database contains the descriptive information and is used to integrate the access to the data by supporting cross dataset searching. The ability to search for all datasets within a given spatial or temporal range or all datasets containing particular variables requires a single meta-database. The QC routines will ensure that the meta-data submitted to GEM meets the standards necessary to support cross dataset search. No dataset will be added to the system unless it can be located using a search of this meta-database.

The meta-database maintained by GEM will also support access to remote GEM archives that are maintained by individual researchers. GEM will also evaluate whether to ingest meta-data about datasets that are relevant to the GEM system but are not directly supported by GEM. The ongoing gap analysis conducted by GEM will continue to reveal datasets and data collection activities that compliment the GEM mission and one of the GEM goals is to integrate with those projects. The data management system will reflect this integration by allowing users to locate relevant data that may not be archived by GEM.

Most search and download systems include some level of meta-database support. GEM will evaluate the use of these existing systems and the evaluation criteria will include the structure of the meta-database. Although an existing meta-database structure may be found to suite the needs of GEM, the population and use of the meta-database will be the central activity of the GEM data system and any existing system will need to be modified.

Data storage

The storage of the data in files or in another storage mechanism is a separate function of the data system that in time will require a significant amount of storage space. The meta-database will contain pointers to the data itself, which may physically be in a separate storage facility. The evolution of large archive technology has been rapid over the last few years but GEM will be able to postpone the use of tape or optical media for several years until the space requirements demand it. GEM will evaluate the use of an external site to store the data as well as the use of GEM computing hardware. Unlike the search of the meta-database that places a heavy computational burden on resources while returning a small amount of data, accessing the data itself requires no significant computation but can return a large amount of data. Therefore the network connectivity is also an evaluation criterion for the data storage subsystem.

The format of the data files will be defined by the GEM data management plan and become a GEM standard. Although the QC procedures will not validate the scientific quality of the data, these programs will need to validate the format of the data. Data product creation routines require that input data files are in a recognizable format and contain data in a format that can be processed automatically.

GEM administrative support

Managing the projects funded by and associated with GEM requires a project-oriented database (see Chapter 11 Program Management). The administrative information includes the original proposal, comments submitted by the review panel, status reports and notes, and the final report. This information will be valuable over the long term as the data collected by the project is evaluated in retrospect. The proposals and reports will contain the original hypotheses as well as the problems that were encountered during data collection. Future researchers will use this project genesis to understand the original goals of the project and issues that might affect data quality.

Much of these administrative data are in the public record and will be made available over the web. The GEM meta-database will include the project specification so that the data submitted by the project can be displayed along with the administrative details. This link between the administration of the project and the data submitted would also allow GEM to evaluate whether all the data for a given project has been submitted.

APPENDIX A. FISH AND INVERTEBRATE SPECIES FROM 1996 TRAWL SURVEY OF THE GULF OF ALASKA

The tables below provides the common and scientific names of fish and invertebrate species encountered during the 1996 Gulf of Alaska bottom trawl survey. The maximum depth of sampling was 500 meters.

Fish Species

Family	Species Name	Common Name
Lamnidae	*Lamna ditropis*	salmon shark
Squalidae	*Squalus acanthias*	spiny dogfish
	Somniosus pacificus	Pacific sleeper shark
Rajidae	*Raja binoculata*	big skate
	Bathyraja interrupta	Bering skate
	Raja rhina	longnose skate
	Bathyraja trachura	black skate
	Bathyraja parmifera	Alaska skate
	Bathyraja aleutica	Aleutian skate
Chimaeridae	*Hydrolagus colliei*	spotted ratfish
Bothidae	*Citharichthys sordidus*	Pacific sanddab
Pleuronectidae	*Atheresthes stomias*	arrowtooth flounder
	Atheresthes evermanni	Kamchatka flounder
	Hippoglossus stenolepis	Pacific halibut
	Hippoglossoides elassodon	flathead sole
	Lyopsetta exilis	slender sole
	Eopsetta jordani	petrale sole
	Parophrys vetulus	English sole
	Microstomus pacificus	Dover sole
	Glyptocephalus zachirus	rex sole
	Limanda asper	yellowfin sole
	Platichthys stellatus	starry flounder
	Psettichthys melanostictus	sand sole
	Lepidopsetta cf. sp. *bilineata*	northern rock sole
	Lepidopsetta bilineata	southern rock sole
	Isopsetta isolepis	butter sole

Fish Species

Family	Species Name	Common Name
Pleuronectidae (continued)	*Pleuronectes quadrituberculatus*	Alaska plaice
Agonidae	*Sarritor frenatus*	sawback poacher
	Xeneretmus leiops	smootheye poacher
	Bathyagonus pentacanthus	bigeye poacher
	Bathyagonus nigripinnis	blackfin poacher
	Podothecus acipenserinus	sturgeon poacher
	Aspidophoroides bartoni	Aleutian alligatorfish
	Hypsagonus quadricornis	fourhorn poacher
Ammodytidae	*Ammodytes hexapterus*	Pacific sand lance
Anarhichadidae	*Anarrhichthys ocellatus*	wolf-eel
Anoplopomatidae	*Anoplopoma fimbria*	sablefish
Argentinidae	*Nansenia candida*	bluethroat argentine
Bathylagidae	*Leuroglossus schmidti*	northern smoothtongue
Bathymasteridae	*Bathymaster caeruleofasciatus*	Alaskan ronquil
	Bathymaster signatus	searcher
Chauliodontidae	*Chauliodus macouni*	Pacific viperfish
Clupeidae	*Clupea pallasi*	Pacific herring
Macrouridae	*Albatrossia pectoralis*	giant grenadier
	Coryphaenoides cinereus	popeye grenadier
Cottidae	*Thyriscus anoplus*	
	Icelinus borealis	northern sculpin
	Icelinus tenuis	spotfin sculpin
	Gymnocanthus pistilliger	threaded sculpin
	Gymnocanthus galeatus	armorhead sculpin
	Artediellus sp.	
	Malacocottus zonurus	darkfin sculpin
	Hemilepidotus hemilepidotus	red Irish lord
	Hemilepidotus jordani	yellow Irish lord
	Hemilepidotus papilio	butterfly sculpin
	Triglops forficata	scissortail sculpin
	Triglops scepticus	spectacled sculpin
	Triglops pingeli	ribbed sculpin
	Triglops macellus	roughspine sculpin

Fish Species

Family	Species Name	Common Name
Cottidae (continued)	*Myoxocephalus polyacanthocephalus*	great sculpin
	Myoxocephalus jaok	plain sculpin
	Dasycottus setiger	spinyhead sculpin
	Psychrolutes paradoxus	tadpole sculpin
	Nautichthys pribilovius	eyeshade sculpin
	Nautichthys oculofasciatus	sailfin sculpin
	Rhamphocottus richardsoni	grunt sculpin
	Hemitripterus bolini	bigmouth sculpin
	Eurymen gyrinus	smoothcheek sculpin
	Icelus spiniger	thorny sculpin
Trichodontidae	*Trichodon trichodon*	Pacific sandfish
Gadidae	*Microgadus proximus*	Pacific tomcod
	Gadus macrocephalus	Pacific cod
	Theragra chalcogramma	walleye pollock
Hexagrammidae	*Ophiodon elongatus*	lingcod
	Pleurogrammus monopterygius	Atka mackerel
	Hexagrammos octogrammus	masked greenling
	Hexagrammos stelleri	whitespotted greenling
	Hexagrammos decagrammus	kelp greenling
Cyclopteridae	*Aptocyclus ventricosus*	smooth lumpsucker
	Eumicrotremus birulai	round lumpsucker
	Eumicrotremus orbis	Pacific spiny lumpsucker
	Careproctus melanurus	blacktail snailfish
	Careproctus gilberti	smalldisk snailfish
	Paraliparis sp.	
Melamphaeidae	*Poromitra crassiceps*	crested bigscale
Melanostomiidae	*Tactostoma macropus*	longfin dragonfish
Merluccidae	*Merluccius productus*	Pacific hake
Myctophidae	*Stenobrachius leucopsarus*	northern lampfish
	Diaphus theta	California headlightfish
	Lampanyctus ritteri	broadfin lanternfish
	Lampanyctus jordani	brokenline lampfish
Paralepidae	*Paralepis atlantica*	duckbill barracudina

Fish Species

Family	Species Name	Common Name
Osmeridae	*Thaleichthys pacificus*	eulachon
	Hypomesus pretiosus	surf smelt
	Mallotus villosus	capelin
	Spirinchus thaleichthys	longfin smelt
Salmonidae	*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*	chinook salmon
	Oncorhynchus kisutch	coho salmon
	Oncorhynchus gorbuscha	pink salmon
	Oncorhynchus keta	chum salmon
	Oncorhynchus nerka	sockeye salmon
	Salvelinus malma	Dolly Varden
Cryptacanthodidae	*Cryptacanthodes giganteus*	giant wrymouth
Stichaeidae	*Lumpenus maculatus*	daubed shanny
	Lumpenus sagitta	snake prickleback
	Lumpenella longirostris	longsnout prickleback
	Chirolophis decoratus	decorated warbonnet
	Poroclinus rothrocki	whitebarred prickleback
Zaproridae	*Zaprora silenus*	prowfish
Zoarcidae	*Bothrocara pusillum*	Alaska eelpout
	Lycodes palearis	wattled eelpout
	Lycodes diapterus	black eelpout
	Lycodes brevipes	shortfin eelpout
	Lycodes pacificus	blackbelly eelpout
	Lycodapus sp.	
Scorpaenidae	*Sebastolobus alascanus*	shortspine thornyhead
	Sebastes aleutianus	rougheye rockfish
	Sebastes alutus	Pacific ocean perch
	Sebastes brevispinis	silvergray rockfish
	Sebastes ciliatus	dark dusky rockfish
	Sebastes cf. sp. *ciliatus*	light dusky rockfish
	Sebastes crameri	darkblotched rockfish
	Sebastes elongatus	greenstriped rockfish
	Sebastes entomelas	widow rockfish
	Sebastes flavidus	yellowtail rockfish

Fish Species

Family	Species Name	Common Name
Scorpaenidae (continued)	*Sebastes helvomaculatus*	rosethorn rockfish
	Sebastes maliger	quillback rockfish
	Sebastes melanops	black rockfish
	Sebastes nigrocinctus	tiger rockfish
	Sebastes paucispinis	bocaccio
	Sebastes pinniger	canary rockfish
Scorpaenidae	*Sebastes polyspinis*	northern rockfish
	Sebastes proriger	redstripe rockfish
	Sebastes ruberrimus	yelloweye rockfish
	Sebastes babcocki	redbanded rockfish
	Sebastes variegatus	harlequin rockfish
	Sebastes wilsoni	pygmy rockfish
	Sebastes zacentrus	sharpchin rockfish
	Sebastes borealis	shortraker rockfish
	Sebastes reedi	yellowmouth rockfish

Source: Martin, M. H. Data report: 1996 Gulf of Alaska bottom trawl survey. 1997. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Cnidaria	*Cyanea capillata*	
	Alcyonium sp.	
	Gersemia sp.	sea raspberry
	Anthomastus sp.	
	Anthomastus sp. A	
	Anthomastus sp. B	
	Primnoa willeyi	
	Paragorgia arborea	
	Callogorgia sp.	
	Stylatula sp.	slender seawhip
	Pavonaria finmarchica	
	Ptilosarcus gurneyi	

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Cnidaria (continued)	*Metridium senile*	
	Liponemis brevicornis	
	Stylaster brochi	
	Cyclohelia lancellata	
	Errinopora sp.	
	Plumarella sp. 1	
	Thouarella sp.	
	Fanellia compressa	
	Muriceides sp.	
	Amphilaphis sp.	
	Arthrogorgia sp.	
Annelida	*Cheilonereis cyclurus*	
	Eunoe nodosa	giant scale worm
	Eunoe depressa	depressed scale worm
	Serpula vermicularis	
	Carcinobdella cyclostomum	striped sea leech
Arthropoda	*Balanus evermanni*	giant barnacle
	Balanus rostratus	beaked barnacle
	Pandalus jordani	ocean shrimp
	Pandalus borealis	northern shrimp
	Pandalus tridens	yellowleg pandalid
	Pandalus platyceros	spot shrimp
	Pandalus goniurus	humpy shrimp
	Pandalus hypsinotus	coonstripe shrimp
	Pandalopsis dispar	sidestripe shrimp
	Eualus macilenta	
	Lebbeus groenlandicus	
	Crangon communis	twospine crangon
	Crangon dalli	ridged crangon
	Crangon septemspinosa	sevenspine bay shrimp
	Argis dentata	Arctic argid
	Sclerocrangon boreas	sculptured shrimp
	Argis lar	kuro argid

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Arthropoda (continued)	*Pasiphaea pacifica*	Pacific glass shrimp
	Pasiphaea tarda	crimson pasiphaeid
	Cancer magister	Dungeness crab
	Cancer oregonensis	Oregon rock crab
	Cancer gracilis	graceful rock crab
	Pinnixa occidentalis	pea crab
	Oregonia gracilis	graceful decorator crab
	Chorilia longipes	longhorned decorator crab
	Chionoecetes tanneri	groved tanner crab
	Chionoecetes bairdi	bairdi tanner crab
	Chionoecetes angulatus	triangle tanner crab
	Hyas lyratus	Pacific lyre crab
	Pagurus brandti	sponge hermit
	Pagurus aleuticus	Aleutian hermit
	Labidochirus splendescens	splendid hermit
	Pagurus confragosus	knobbyhand hermit
	Pagurus dalli	whiteknee hermit
	Pagurus kennerlyi	bluespine hermit
	Pagurus ochotensis	Alaskan hermit
	Pagurus rathbuni	longfinger hermit
	Pagurus tanneri	longhand hermit
	Elassochirus tenuimanus	widehand hermit crab
	Pagurus capillatus	hairy hermit crab
	Elassochirus cavimanus	purple hermit
	Elassochirus gilli	Pacific red hermit
	Lopholithodes foraminatus	box crab
	Acantholithodes hispidus	fuzzy crab
	Lithodes aequispina	golden king crab
	Hapalogaster grebnitzkii	
	Rhinolithodes wosnessenskii	rhinoceros crab
	Paralithodes camtschaticus	red king crab
	Paralithodes platypus	blue king crab
	Placetron wosnessenskii	scaled crab

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Arthropoda (continued)	*Pugettia* sp.	kelp crab
	Munida quadrispina	
Mollusca	*Tochuina tetraquetra*	giant orange tochui
	Tritonia diomedea	rosy tritonia
	Chlamylla sp.	
	Cranopsis major	
	Natica clausa	arctic moonsnail
	Natica russa	rusty moonsnail
	Polinices pallidus	pale moonsnail
	Colus herendeenii	thin-ribbed whelk
	Volutopsius harpa	left-hand whelk
	Volutopsius fragilis	fragile whelk
	Beringius kennicottii	
	Beringius undatus	
	Neptunea amianta	
	Neptunea pribiloffensis	Pribilof whelk
	Neptunea lyrata	lyre whelk
	Plicifusus kroyeri	
	Volutopsius callorhinus	
	Aforia circinata	keeled aforia
	Fusitriton oregonensis	Oregon triton
	Bathybembix bairdii	
	Cidarina cidaris	
	Buccinum plectrum	sinuous whelk
	Buccinum scalariforme	ladder whelk
	Arctomelon stearnsii	Alaska volute
	Modiolus modiolus	northern horsemussel
	Mytilus edulis	blue mussel
	Chlamys rubida	reddish scallop
	Patinopecten caurinus	weathervane scallop
	Yoldia scissurata	crisscrossed yoldia
	Yoldia thraciaeformis	broad yoldia
	Nuculana sp.	

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Mollusca (continued)	*Limopsis akutanica*	Akutan limops
	Musculus niger	black mussel
	Musculus discors	discordant mussel
	Astarte crenata	crenulate astarte
	Tridonta borealis	boreal tridonta
	Cyclocardia ventricosa	stout cyclocardia
	Cyclocardia crebricostata	many-rib cyclocardia
	Clinocardium nuttallii	Nuttall cockle
	Clinocardium ciliatum	hairy cockle
	Clinocardium californiense	California cockle
	Mactromeris polynyma	Arctic surfclam
	Siliqua sp.	
	Serripes groenlandicus	Greenland cockle
	Serripes laperousii	broad cockle
	Pododesmus macroschisma	Alaska falsejingle
	Opisthoteuthis californiana	flapjack devilfish
	Octopus dofleini	giant octopus
	Rossia pacifica	eastern Pacific bobtail
	Berryteuthis magister	magistrate armhook squid
Echinodermata	*Evasterias troschelii*	
	Evasterias echinosoma	
	Orthasterias koehleri	
	Leptasterias hylodes	
	Rathbunaster californicus	
	Pycnopodia helianthoides	
	Stylasterias forreri	
	Lethasterias nanimensis	
	Pedicellaster magister	
	Poraniopsis inflata	
	Henricia sanguinolenta	
	Henricia leviuscula	
	Leptasterias polaris	
	Gephyreaster swifti	

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Echinodermata (continued)	*Hippasteria spinosa*	
	Pseudarchaster parelii	
	Mediaster aequalis	
	Ceramaster japonicus	red bat star
	Ceramaster patagonicus	orange bat star
	Luidia foliata	
	Solaster endeca	
	Solaster dawsoni	
	Solaster stimpsoni	
	Solaster paxillatus	
	Crossaster borealis	
	Crossaster papposus	rose sea star
	Lophaster furcilliger	
	Pteraster tesselatus	
	Pteraster militaris	
	Pteraster obscurus	
	Diplopteraster multipes	
	Asterias amurensis	purple-orange seastar
	Ctenodiscus crispatus	common mud star
	Leptychaster pacificus	
	Dipsacaster borealis	
	Luidiaster dawsoni	
	Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis	green sea urchin
	Strongylocentrotus franciscanus	red sea urchin
	Strongylocentrotus pallidus	white sea urchin
	Allocentrotus fragilis	orange-pink sea urchin
	Brisaster latifrons	
	Echinarachnius parma	Parma sand dollar
	Gorgonocephalus caryi	
	Asteronyx loveni	
	Ophiura sarsi	
	Amphiophiura ponderosa	
	Ophiopholis aculeata	

Invertebrate Species

Phylum	Species/Taxon Name	Common Name
Echinodermata (continued)	*Parastichopus californicus*	
	Molpadia intermedia	
	Pentamera lissoplaca	
	Bathyplotes sp.	
	Cucumaria fallax	
	Stichopus japonicus	
	Psolus fabricii	
Porifera	*Suberites ficus*	hermit sponge
	Aphrocallistes vastus	clay pipe sponge
	Mycale loveni	tree sponge
	Halichondria panicea	barrel sponge
	Myxilla incrustans	scallop sponge
	Hylonema sp.	fiberoptic sponge
Bryozoa	*Eucratea loricata*	feathery bryozoan
	Flustra serrulata	leafy bryozoan
Brachiopoda	*Terebratalia transversa*	
	Terebratulina unguicula	
	Laqueus californianus	
Chordata	*Styela rustica*	sea potato
	Boltenia sp.	
	Halocynthia aurantium	sea peach
	Aplidium sp.	
	Synoicum sp.	
	Molgula retortiformis	sea clod
	Molgula grifithsii	sea grape

Source: Martin, M. H. Data report: 1996 Gulf of Alaska bottom trawl survey. 1997.
U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

APPENDIX B. NORTH PACIFIC MODELS OF THE ALASKA FISHERIES SCIENCE CENTER AND SELECTED OTHER ORGANIZATIONS

Descriptions of Model Hypotheses

Descriptions compiled by Kerim Aydin (Kerim.Aydin@noaa.gov). A list of references is provided at the end.

Single-Species Stock Assessment Models That Include Predation

So far we have developed two of these models: one for Eastern Bering Sea pollock (Livingston and Methot 1998) and one for Gulf of Alaska pollock (Hollowed et al. 2000). We might develop one for Aleutian Islands Atka mackerel in the future. The purpose of these models is to better understand the sources and time trends of natural mortality for pollock by explicitly incorporating predation mortality induced by their major predators into an age-structured fish stock assessment model. We have learned that not only is natural mortality at younger ages much higher than that for adults, but that it varies across time, depending on time trends in predator stocks. This finding about mortality has given us better ideas of what influences predation has on fish recruitment through time and helps us to separate predation and climate-related effects on recruitment. We can better show the demands of other predators such as marine mammals for a commercially fished stock and how it might influence the dynamics of that stock (although we still need to make progress in understanding the effects on the marine mammals).

Bering Sea Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis (MSVPA)

We now have a multispecies virtual population analysis (MSVPA) model for the Bering Sea (Livingston and Jurado-Molina, 2000). This model includes predation interactions among several commercially important groundfish stocks and also predation by arrowtooth flounder and northern fur seal on these stocks. This model can give us a better idea of the predation interactions among several stocks. We can use outputs from this type of model to help us understand what the possible multispecies implications are of our single-species-oriented fishing strategies. Results from these forecasting exercises show that a particular fishing strategy may have the opposite effect of the intended effect if multispecies interactions are taken into consideration. We have also done multispecies forecasting with this model by using different hypotheses about regime shifts and associated fish recruitment patterns.

Boreal Migration and Consumption Model (BORMICON) for the Eastern Bering Sea

We have an initial version of a spatially explicit model of pollock movement and cannibalism in the Eastern Bering Sea. We hope to better understand the differences in spatial overlap of predators and prey and how that affects the population dynamics of each. The model we have modified for the Bering Sea is one being used in other boreal ecosystems, BORMICON (Boreal Migration and Consumption Model). Migrations are prescribed currently with the hope that we can prescribe movement based on physical factors in the future. The influence of spatial overlap of cannibalistic adult pollock with juveniles on the population dynamics of pollock is investigated. Hypotheses about larval drift positions and the resulting overlap and cannibalism are also being explored. This model could be linked in the future to an individual-based larval pollock model and to a nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton model that could prescribe zooplankton abundance by area as alternate food for adults and as the primary food for juveniles.

Analytical Approach to Evaluating Alternative Fishing Strategies with Multiple Gear Types

The analytical approach for simulating current groundfish management in the North Pacific U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone involves considering interactions among a large number of species (including target, nontarget, and prohibited) areas, and gear types. To evaluate the consequences of alternative management regimes, modeling was used to predict the likely outcome of management decisions by using statistics on historical catch of different species by gear types and areas. Management of the Alaska groundfish fisheries is complex, given the large numbers of species, areas, and gear types. The managers schedule fisheries openings and closures to maximize catch subject to catch limits and other constraints. These management actions are based on expectations about the array of species likely to be captured by different gear types and the cumulative effect that each fishery has on the allowable catch of each individual target species and other species groups. Management decisions were simulated by an in-season management model that predicts capture of target and nontarget species by different fisheries based on historical catch data by area and gear type. The groundfish population abundance for each alternative regime was forecast for a 5-year period beginning from the present. This approach provides a reasonable representation of the current fisheries management practice for dealing with the multi-species nature of catch in target fisheries.

In addition to the model and its projected results, agency analysts also used the scientific literature, ongoing research, and the professional opinion of fishery experts in their respective fields to perform qualitative assessments.

Influence of Advection on Larval Pollock Recruitment

This model investigates the environmental relationship between surface advection during the post-spawning period (pollock egg and larval stages) and pollock survival. Wespestad et al. (1997) found that during years when the surface currents tended north-north westward along the shelf that year class strength was improved compared to years when currents were more easterly. They used the OSCURS surface advection model to simulate drift. Subsequently (Ianelli et al. 1998), their analysis was extended to apply within a stock assessment model. The model uses surface advection during a 90-day period to determine the "goodness" of the advective field for juvenile pollock.

Shelikof Pollock Individual-Based Model (IBM)

This IBM Model was designed to run in conjunction with the 3-D physical model (SPEM) and the Shelikof nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton model. Its purpose is to examine, at a mechanistic level, hypotheses about recruitment of pollock in Shelikof Strait, especially as they refer to transport, growth ,and (somewhat) mortality of pollock from spawning through the fall of the 0-age year.

Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics (GLOBEC) Nutrient-Phytoplankton-Zooplankton (NPZ) 1-D and 3-D Models

This modeling effort (the 3-D NPZ model coupled with a physical model of the circulation of the region) is designed to test hypotheses about the effect of climate change/regime shifts on production in the coastal region of the Gulf of Alaska, including effects on cross-shelf transport, upstream effects, local production, and effect on suitability of the region as habitat for juvenile salmon.

Steller Sea Lion Individual-Based Model (IBM)

This IBM model will be designed to examine how sea lion energy reserves change, through foraging and bioenergetics, depending on the distribution, density, patchiness, and species composition of a dynamic prey field (as influenced by factors such as potential local depletion by fishing). It should be applicable to any domain surrounding a specific sea lion rookery or haul-out in the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands, or Gulf of Alaska. Lion characteristics such as age, location, life stage, and birth date are recorded. Caloric balance is the main variable followed for each individual.

Shelikof Nutrient-Phytoplankton-Zooplankton (NPZ) Model, 1-D and 3-D Versions

This NPZ model was designed to produce a temporally and spatially explicit food source (Pseudocalanus stages) for larval pollock, designed to be input to the pollock IBM model. This set of coupled (biological and physical) models was designed to be used to examine hypotheses about pollock recruitment in the Shelikof Strait region.

Gulf of Alaska Walleye Pollock Stochastic Switch Model

This model was designed as a mathematical representation of a conceptual model presented in Megrey et al. 1996. It is a numerical simulation model of the recruitment process. A generalize description of stochastic mortality is formulated as a function of three specific mortality components considered important in controlling survival (random, caused by wind mixing events, and caused by prevalence of oceanic eddies). The sum total of these components, under some conditional dependencies, determines the overall survival experienced by the recruits.

North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography (NEMURO):

This model was designed to represent the minimum state variables needed to represent a generic nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton (NPZ) marine ecosystem model for the North Pacific. Ecosystem fluxes are tracked in both units of nitrogen and silicon. Carbon flux process equations have been recently added. The purpose of the model is to examine the effects of climate variability on the marine ecosystem through regional comparisons by means of using the same ecosystem model structure and process equations.

Mass-Balance Ecosystem Models (Ecopath) for North Pacific Regions of Interest (Multiple Models)

Mass-balance food web models provide a way for evaluating the importance of predator-prey relationships, the roles of top-down and bottom-up forcing in modeled ecosystems, and the changes in ecosystem structure resulting from environmental perturbations (natural or anthropogenic). Additionally, the models may provide a way to compare natural predation mortality with respect to predator biomass and fishing levels, and determine the quality of data available for a given system.

Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Ecopath Model 1. Although many of these models were done in the past for the Alaska region, the most up-to-date published model is the effort by Trites et al. (1999) for the Eastern Bering Sea. These models are highly aggregated across age groups and species groups and best highlight our gaps in understanding of how ecosystems function and our lack of data on certain ecosystem components. Walleye pollock is broken into two biomass groups: pollock ages 0 to 1 and pollock age 2 and older. This model is useful for testing ecosystem hypotheses about bottom-up and top-down forcing and to examine system level properties and energy flow among trophic levels. The Eastern Bering Sea model extent includes the main shelf and slope areas north to about 61° N and excludes near-shore processes and ecosystem groups.

Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 2 and Western Bering Sea Shelf Ecopath Model. The second Eastern Bering Sea Shelf model breaks down the earlier model into more detailed species groupings to tease apart the dynamics of individual species, especially in the commercially important groundfish. Spatial extensions to the model include subdividing into inner, middle, and outer biophysical domains. The model will be calibrated with respect to top-down and bottom-up forcing with the use of "checkpoint" food webs for several years in the 1990s, the 1979 to 1998 time series of trawl data, and Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis (MSVPA)/other assessment analyses. The primary purpose of this model is to investigate the relative role of natural and anthropogenic disturbances on the food web as a whole. A Western Bering Sea Shelf model, built as a joint U.S.-Russian project, is currently being completed.

Gulf of Alaska, Continental Shelf, and Slope (Excluding Fjord, Estuarine, and Intertidal Areas) Ecopath Model. Throughout the 1990s there have been extensive commercial fisheries in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA) for groundfish, as well as crab, herring, halibut, and salmon. Removals of both target species and bycatch by these (and historical) fisheries have been suggested as a possible cause for the decline of the western stock of Stellar sea lions, which are now listed as endangered species. An Ecopath/Ecosim model for the GOA could test the hypothesis that fishery removals of groundfish and bycatch during the 1990s has contributed to the continued decline of Stellar sea lions.

In addition, a community restructuring, in which shrimp populations declined dramatically and commercial fish populations increased between the 1960s and the 1990s, may have taken place, according to small mesh trawl surveys conducted by the National Marine Fisheries Service and Alaska Department of Fish and Game. An additional hypothesis, which could be tested with this model, is that this trophic reorganization has had a negative impact on marine mammal and bird populations in the GOA. Finally, the effects of an apparent increase in shark populations on their prey and the relative importance of these effects in the whole system could be evaluated with an Ecopath model.

The Aleutian Island and Pribilof Islands Ecopath Models. While the Eastern Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska model may capture broad-scale dynamics of widespread fish stocks, their scale is too large to address local depletion. This issue may be important for island-based fish such as Atka mackerel, and may be critical for determining the effect that changes in the food web may have on the endangered Steller sea lion. This smaller-scale Ecopath model will be used in conjunction with larger-scale models to examine the possibility of linking the models across scales.

Prince William Sound Ecopath Models. An Ecopath model of Prince William Sound (PWS) was constructed by a collaboration of experts from the region during 1998-1999 (Okey and Pauly 1999). The Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Trustee Council funded this effort for the purpose of "ecosystem synthesis." The project was coordinated by the University of British Columbia Fisheries Centre and overseen by the National Marine Fisheries Service Office of Oil Spill Damage Assessment and Restoration. Prince William Sound is well defined geographically; spatial definition of the system consisted of drawing lines across Hinchenbrook Entrance, Montague Strait, and smaller entrances. The time period represented by the model is 1994 to 1996, s the post-spill period with the broadest and most complete set of ecosystem information. This food web model consists of 48 functional groups ranging from single ontogenetic stages of special-interest species to highly aggregated groupings. A variety of hypotheses are being addressed with the PWS model—most relate to the 1989 Exxon Valdez Oil Spill and the fisheries in the area.

Table 1. Model Areas Time Period, Contact Person, and Model Status

Model Name/ Model Region	Time Period	Contact	Status
Single-species stock assessment models that include predation	EBS: 1964-95 GOA: 1964-97 (Annual)	Patricia Livingston	Working
Bering Sea MSVPA	1979-98 3 Months (quarterly)	Patricia Livingston Jesus Jurado-Molina	Working
BORMICON for the eastern Bering Sea	1979-97 1 Month	Patricia Livingston	Planning/ construction
Evaluating Alternative Fishing Strategies	Current	Jim Ianelli	Working
Advection on larval pollock recruitment	90 Days of Larval Drift 1970s-present	Jim Ianelli	Working
Shelikof Pollock IBM	YD 60-270 Daily	Sarah Hinckley	Working
GLOBEC NPZ 1-D and 3-D Models	YD 60-270 (eventually year-round). Daily	Sarah Hinckley	In progress
Steller Sea Lion IBM	Summer or Winter, Minutes to Days	Sarah Hinckley	Planning/ Construction
Shelikof NPZ Model, 1-D and 3-D Versions	YD 60-270 (eventually year-round). Daily	Sarah Hinckley	In progress
GOA Pollock Stochastic Switch Model	32 years (replicates) Daily	Bern Megrey	Working
NEMURO	1 Full Year, Daily	Bern Megrey	In progress
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 1 Ecopath	1950s and early 1980s Annual	Patricia Livingston	Completed
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 2 Ecopath	1979-1998 Annual	Kerim Aydin	In progress
Western Bering Sea Shelf Ecopath	Early 1980s Annual	Kerim Aydin Victor Lapko	In progress
Gulf of Alaska Shelf Ecopath	1990-99 Annual	Sarah Gaiches	In progress
Aleutian Islands, Pribilof Islands Ecopath	1990s-2000s Annual	Patricia Livingston Lorenzo Ciannelli	Proposed
Prince William Sound, Ecopath	Pre- and Post 1989 oil spill Annual	Tom Okey	Completed

Notes:
BORMICON = Boreal Migration and Consumption Model
EBS = Eastern Bering Sea
GLOBEC = Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics
GOA = Gulf of Alaska
MSVPA = Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis
NEMURO = North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography
NPZ = nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton
YD = days of the year

NOTE: THE FOLLOWING TABLE IS ALSO TABLE 26 IN CHAPTER 12. REVISIONS SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO THAT TABLE AND CAN BE DUPLICATED HERE.

Table 2. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency
Single-species stock assessment models that include predation	Across EBS and GOA Pollock distributions	Fisheries data and predator biomass	Pollock population and mortality trends—number at age (and biomass at age)
Bering Sea MSVPA	The modeled region is the EBS shelf and slope north to about 61°N	Fisheries, predator biomass, and food habits data. This model requires estimates of other food abundance supplied by species outside the model.	Age-structured population dynamics for key species—numbers at age
BORMICON for the Eastern Bering Sea	The model is spatially explicit with 7 defined geographic regions that have pollock abundance and size distribution information.	Temperature is included and influences growth and consumption.	Spatial size distribution of pollock
Evaluating Alternative Fishing Strategies	U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone	Gear-specific fishing effort, including bycatch	Biomass of managed fish species
Advection on larval pollock recruitment	Southeast Bering Sea Shelf	OSCURS surface currents (wind-driven).	Index of pollock recruitment
Shelikof Pollock IBM	Western GOA from just southwest of Kodiak Island to the Shumagin Islands, shelf, water column to 100 m	From physical model: Water velocities, wind field, mixed-layer depth, water temperature, and salinity, Pseudocalanus field (from NPZ model)	Individual larval characteristics such as age, size, weight, location, life stage, hatch date, consumption, respiration
GLOBEC NPZ 1-D and 3-D Models	Water column (0-100 m) Coastal GOA from Dixon Entrance to Unimak Pass, 100 m of water column over depths < 2000 m 5-m depth bins x 20 km horizontal grid	Irradiance, MLD Temperature, diffusivity, bottom depths, water velocities (u, v, w	Diffusivity, ammonium, nitrate, detritus, small and large phytoplankton, dinoflagellates, tintinnids, small coastal copepods, neocalanus, and euphausiids (nitrate and ammonium): mmol/m^3 (all else): mg carbon/m^3
Steller Sea Lion IBM	Should be applicable to any domain surrounding a specific sea lion rookery or haul-out in the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands, or GOA	The main input will be a 3D field of prey (fish) distribution, derived either from hypothetical scenarios or (later) modeled based on acoustic data	Individual sea lion characteristics such as age, location, life stage, and birth date are recorded. Caloric balance is the main variable followed for each individual.

Table 2. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency
Shelikof NPZ Model, 1-D and 3-D Versions	Water column (0-100 m), GOA from southwest of Kodiak Island to Shumagin Islands. 1-m depth bins for 1-D version; 1 m depth x 20 km for 3-D version	Irradiance, MLD, temperature, bottom depths, water velocities (u, v, w).	Nitrogen, phytoplankton, Neocalanus densities, Pseudocalanus numbers/m-3 for each of the 13 stages (egg, 6 naupliar, 6 copepodite)s
GOA Pollock Stochastic Switch Model	Shelikof Strait, Gulf of Alaska	Number of eggs to seed the model. Base mortality, additive and multiplicative mort. Adjustment parameters for each mort. Factor.	Number of 90-day-old pollock larvae through time
NEMURO	Ocean Station P (50°N 145°W), Bering Sea (57.5°N 175°W), and Station A7 off the east of Hokkaido island, Japan (41.3°N 145.3°W)	15 state variables and parameters, including 2 phytoplankton, 3 zooplankton, and multiple nutrient groups	Ecosystem fluxes are tracked in units of nitrogen and silicon.
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 1 Ecopath	500,000 km^2 in EBS south of 61°N	Biomass, production, consumption, and diet composition for all major species in each ecosystem	Balance between produced and consumed per area biomass (t/km^2). Future work will explore energy (kcal/km^2) and nutrient dynamics.
Eastern Bering Sea Shelf Model 2 Ecopath	500,000 km^2 in eastern Bering Sea south of 61°N		
Western Bering Sea Shelf Ecopath	300,000 km^2 on western Bering Sea shelf		
Gulf of Alaska Shelf Ecopath	NPFMC management areas 610, 620, 630, and part of 640		
Aleutian Islands, Pribilof Islands Ecopath	Not determined		
Prince William Sound Ecopath	Whole Prince William Sound		

References

Hollowed, A., J. N. Ianelli, and P. Livingston. 2000. Including predation mortality in stock assessments: A case study for Gulf of Alaska pollock. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 57:279-293.

Ianelli, J.N., L. Fritz, T. Honkalehto, N. Williamson and G. Walters 1998. Bering Sea-Aleutian Islands Walleye Pollock Assessment for 1999. *In*: Stock assessment and fishery evaluation report for the groundfish resources of the Bering Sea/Aleutian Islands regions. North Pac. Fish. Mgmt. Council, Anchorage, AK, section 1:1-79.

Livingston, P.A. and R.D. Methot. 1998. Incorporation of predation into a population assessment model of eastern Bering Sea walleye pollock. P. 663-678. In: Fishery Stock Assessment Models. Alaska Sea Grant College Program Publication AK-SG-98-01. 1037p.

Livingston, P.A. and J-J. Jurado-Molina. 2000. A multispecies virtual population analysis of the eastern Bering Sea. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 57:294-299.

Megrey, B.A., A.B. Hollowed, S.R. Hare S.A. Macklin and P.A. Stabeno. 1996. Contributions of FOCI research to forecasts of year-class strength of walleye pollock in Shelikof Strait, Alaska. Fish Ocean. 5:189-203.

Okey, T. A. and D. Pauly. 1999. A mass-balanced model of trophic flows in Prince William Sound: de-compartmentalizing ecosystem knowledge. Pp. 621-635 In: S. Keller (ed.). Ecosystem approaches for fisheries management. University of Alaska Sea Grant, Fairbanks.

Trites, A.W., P. Livingston, S. Mackinson, M.C. Vasconcellos, A.M. Springer, and D. Pauly. 1999. Ecosystem change and the decline of marine mammals in the eastern Bering Sea: Testing the ecosystem shift and commercial whaling hypotheses. Univ. British Columbia, Fisheries Centre Research Reports 1999, Vol. 7.

Wespestad, V.G., L.W. Fritz, W.J. Ingraham, and B.A. Megrey. 1997. On Relationships between Cannibalism, climate variability, physical transport and recruitment success of Bering Sea Walleye Pollock, *Theragra chalcogramma*. ICES International Symposium, Recruitment Dynamics of exploited marine populations: physical-biological interactions. Baltimore, MD, Sept 22-24.

Table 2. Model Spatial Domains, Currencies, Inputs, and Outputs

Model Name/ Model Region	Model Spatial Domain	Inputs	Outputs/Currency

Source: Table 2 in "North Pacific Models of the Alaska Fisheries Science Center and selected others," compiled by Kerim Aydin

Notes:
BORMICON = Boreal Migration and Consumption Model
EBS = Eastern Bering Sea
GLOBEC = Global Ocean Ecosystem Dynamics
GOA = Gulf of Alaska
km = kilometer
kcal = kilo calorie
m = meter
MLD =
mmol = millimolar
MSVPA = Multispecies Virtual Population Analysis
NEMURO = North Pacific Ecosystem Model for Understanding Regional Oceanography
NPFMC = North Pacific Fisheries Management Council
NPZ = nutrient-phytoplankton-zooplankton
OSCURS = Ocean Surface Current Simulations
t = metric ton
YD = days of year

APPENDIX C. GULF ECOSYSTEM MONITORING AND RESEARCH (GEM) DATABASE: LIST OF PROJECT TITLES BY ORGANIZATION

Note that projects shared among agencies may be listed more than once.

Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC)

184 Monitoring Programs for Paralytic Shellfish Poison (PSP) in King Crab, Dungeness Crab and Tanner Crab
236 Certified Shellfish Beaches
239 Contaminated Sites Database
240 Leaking Underground Storage Tank (UST) Sites in Alaska

Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG)

153 Sonar Enumeration of Returning Adult Salmon
154 Catalog of Waters Important for the Spawning, Rearing or Migration of Anadromous Fishes
155 Groundfish Port Sampling
156 Whiskers (Seals and Sea Lions)
157 Harbor Seal Survey
158 Weirs and Counting Towers for Enumeration of Returning Adult Salmon, Escapement
159 Aerial / Foot Surveys of Spawning Streams, Salmon Escapement
160 Fry / Smolt Outmigration
161 Salmon AWL (Age, Weight. Length)
162 Rockfish Assessments - Southeast Alaska
163 Rockfish Habitat Study - Southeast Alaska
164 Rockfish Jig Survey - Historical Dataset, 1980-1984
165 Sablefish Assessments, Southeast Alaska
166 Catch Sampling - Southeast Alaska (Rockfish, Sablefish, Lingcod), Prince William Sound and Lower Cook Inlet (Rockfish, Sablefish, Pacific Cod, Pollock), Kodiak and Aleutian Islands (Rockfish)
167 Fish Tickets for Shoreside Landings
168 Limnology - Lower Cook Inlet
169 Herring Dive Surveys - Prince William Sound and Southeast Alaska
170 Herring Aerial Surveys - Statewide
171 Herring Catch Sampling - Statewide
172 Pot Surveys - Southeast Alaska King Crabs
173 Trawl Surveys - Prince William Sound, Lower Cook Inlet, and Alaska Peninsula for King and Tanner Crabs
174 Dive Surveys - Southeast Alaska Clams, and Sea Cucumbers
175 Shellfish Dockside Sampling - Statewide
176 Shellfish Catch Enumeration - Statewide
177 Trident Basin Water Temperature

178 Shellfish Onboard Observers
179 Kodiak Red King Crab Tags
180 Gulf Pot Surveys - Crabs
181 Shrimp Trawl Surveys
183 Subsistence Harvest
185 Scallop Dredge Survey - Prince William Sound and Cook Inlet
186 Tanner Crab (Cook Inlet), King Crab (Cook Inlet), Dungeness Crab (Prince William Sound), and Pot Shrimp (Prince William Sound) Tagging - Historical Data Sets
187 Fish Pathology Disease History Database
188 Coded Wire Tag Database
189 Atlas to the Catalog of Waters Important for the Spawning, Rearing, or Migration of Anadromous Fishes
190 Sport Fish Weirs and Sonars
191 Coded Wire Tagging (CWT) of Hatchery and Selected Wild Salmonid Stocks
192 Oil Spill Health Task Force
193 Sociopolitical Consequences of Offshore Oil Development
194 Community Profile Database
195 Population Survey of Organochlorine Contaminants in Alaskan Steller Sea Lions
196 Steller Sea Lion Surveys
197 Su-Hydro Beluga Whale Survey
235 Kitoi Bay Monitoring
254 Enumeration and estimation of commercial salmon harvests
255 Enumeration and estimation of sports salmon harvests
256 Shelikof Strait bottomfish trawl survey
276 Community Pattern Assessment
282 Abundance and Trend of Harbor Seal Populations: Haulout patterns and movement
283 Abundance and Trend of Harbor Seal populations: Index site counts at Tugidak Island
285 Harbor Seal Habitat
286 Health and Condition of Harbor Seal populations
287 Food Habits of Harbor Seals
288 Life History/General Biology of Harbor Seals
289 Vital Rates of Harbor Seals
291 Measuring Abundance and Trend of Harbor Seal Populations: Glacial Survey Methodology

ADFG and National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)

282 Abundance and Trend of Harbor Seal Populations: Haulout patterns and movement
291 Measuring Abundance and Trend of Harbor Seal Populations: Glacial Survey Methodology

ADFG and National Marine Mammals Lab (NMML)

288 Life History/General Biology of Harbor Seals
289 Vital Rates of Harbor Seals

Alaska Department of Health and Social Services (ADHSS)

182 Use of Traditional Foods in a Healthy Diet in Alaska: Risks in Perspective

198 Twenty Years of Trace Metal Analysis of Marine Mammals: Evaluation and Summation of Data from Alaska and Other Arctic Regions

Alyeska Service Corporation

253 Valdez Arm Environmental Monitoring

Center for Alaskan Coastal Studies

270 Coast Walk program for Kachemak Bay

Cook Inlet Keeper

237 Lower Kenai Peninsula Watershed Health Project

238 Citizens Environmental Monitoring Program (CEMP)

Faculty of Fisheries Hokkaido University (Japan)

292 Cruise of the T/S *Oshoro Maru* in the Gulf of Alaska

Fisheries and Oceans Canada

225 Line P / Station P

228 High Seas Salmon Program

229 A continuous plankton recorder monitoring program for the eastern North Pacific & southern Bering Sea (also UAF 257)

International Pacific Halibut Commission (IPHC)

030 Pacific Halibut Stock Assessment

Moss Landing Marine laboratories (MLML)

200 Dissolved Iron Data Set for the World Ocean from Moss Landing Marine Laboratories

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)

031 Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor (SeaWiFS)

032 Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectrometer (MODIS)

033 Earth Observing System Data Information System (EODIS)

034 Advanced Earth Observation Satellite - NASA Scatterometer (ADEOS-NSCAT)

035 Sensory Intercomparison and Merger for Biological and Interdisciplinary Oceanic Studies (SIMBIOS)

036 Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR)

037 Advanced Earth Observing Satellite (ADEOS) II - Sea Winds 1B

038 AIRS/AMSU/MHS

039 EOS - ALT

040 Quick Scatterometer (QuikSCAT) - SeaWinds Instrument

041 TOPEX/Poseidon

042 Coastal Zone Color Scanner (CZCS)

National Environmental Satellite, Data and Information Service (NOAA—NESDIS)

005 General Circulation and Tide Measurements / Model Output for the Coastal U.S.
007 Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR)
044 Sea Surface Temperature 14 Km Analysis (Local-Scale) from NOAA Series AVHRR Data
045 Arctic and Southern Ocean Sea Ice Concentration
046 Global Temperature Salinity Profile Pilot (GTSPP) Program Database
047 NOAA Marine Environmental Buoy Database
048 Sea Surface Temperatures at Gulf of Alaska Light Stations (1959-1967)
049 U.S. Coastal Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) Data Products
050 Robinson-Bauer Numerical Atlas of Monthly Surface Layer
051 Intertidal Organisms and Habitats (F030) Data (1974-1980)
052 Herring Survey Population Density and Distribution (F057) Data (1976-1977)
053 Marine Birds of Coastal Alaska and Puget Sound (F031, F033, F034, F038, F040, F041)
054 The 14-km SST Fields from the NOAA TIROS/N Satellite Series
231 Sea Level Data, Wind Speed, and Significant Wave Height from Satellite Altimetry

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NOAA--NIST)

111 National Biomonitoring Specimen Bank (NBSB)
112 Benthic Survey and Mussel Watch
279 Marine Monitoring Quality Assurance Program

National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA--NMFS)

008 Fishes of Alaska (book)
009 Winter Assessment of Shelikof Strait Spawning Pollock
010 North Pacific Domestic Groundfish Observer Database
011 Steller Sea Lion Count Database
012 Pacific Salmon Genetic Database Development
018 NMFS Longline Survey of the Aleutian Region, Bering Sea, and Gulf of Alaska
019 Life History Monitoring of Pink Salmon Biology
020 North Pacific Ocean Salmon Ecology
021 Retrospective Studies
022 Monitoring
055 Long Term Population Monitoring of Natural Populations of Seven Species of Salmonids
056 Comparisons of Walleye Pollock, Theragra chalcogramma, Harvest to Steller Sea Lion, Eumetopias jubatus, Abundance in the Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska
057 Annual Survey of Cook Inlet Beluga Whales
058 Biennial Survey of Eastern North Pacific Ocean Gray Whales
059 Abundance of Pelagic Delphinids and Harbor Porpoise off the Coast of Alaska
060 MMPA Harbor Seals minimum population estimates
061 Sablefish Longline Survey
062 Ichthyoplankton Database
063 West Gulf of Alaska Pacific Cod Survey
064 Gulf of Alaska Biennial Survey (formerly Gulf of Alaska Triennial Survey)

065 Japan-US Cooperative Longline Survey of the Aleutian Region, Bering Sea, and Gulf of Alaska (also includes the data from the ongoing NMFS longline survey conducted in same general area)
066 Bycatch, Utilization, and Discards in the Commercial Groundfish Fisheries of the Gulf of Alaska,m Eastern Bering Sea, and Aleutian Islands
067 Shellfish and Groundfish Pathogens
068 Shelikof Strait FOCI
069 Gulf of Alaska Thornyhead Rockfish Stock Assessment
070 Ocean Surface Current Simulator (OSCURS)
071 North Pacific Foreign Fishery Groundfish Observer Database
072 Marine Mammal Protection/Endangered Species Acts Compliance
073 Cook Inlet Set and Drift Gillnet Marine Mammal Observer Project
074 Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program (MMHSRP) Data Base
075 National Marine Mammal Tissue Bank (NMMTB)
077 Alaska Marine Mammal Stock Assessments
078 Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments
079 Master Oceanographic Observational Data Set (MOODS); Extensive Oceanographic Profile Data, All Oceans
080 Genetic Stock Identification (GSI) of Pacific Salmon in Mixed Stock Fisheries
081 Marine Invertebrate Pathology
082 Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program (MMHSRP) - Monitoring and Quality Assurance
083 Fin Rot
084 Fish Pathology
085 U.S. Commercial and Recreational Fisheries Statistical Data from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service, Fisheries Statistics and Economics Division
086 West Coast Upwelling Indices Data Files
103 Bering Sea FOCI
137 Checklist for Bird Observations from the Eastern North Pacific Ocean, 1955 - 1967
226 Rockfish Genetic Database Development
245 Chiniak Bay Current Meter Mooring
246 Hatch timing of Tanner crabs (Chionoecetes bairdi) in Kodiak
247 Trident Basin (Kodiak) Extended Water temperature and Secchi Depth
248 Womens Bay Dive Logs and Crab Observations
249 Eastern Bering Sea Temperature Monitoring
268 Pavlof Bay Temperature Recording Mooring
269 Pavlof Bay Annual Shrimp Trawl Survey
277 Biomonitoring Component of the MMHSRP
278 Stranding Network--Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program
280 Marine Mammal Analytical Quality Assurance
284 Stock Identification of Harbor Seal populations
290 Human Interactions with Harbor Seals

National Ocean Service (NOAA—NOS)

001 National Status and Trends Data Base
023 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Retrospective Analysis of Growth Rate and Recruitment for Sablefish, Anoploma fimbria, from the Gulf of Alaska and the California Current System
024 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Analysis of Ichthyoplankton Abundance, Distribution, and Species Associations in the Western Gulf of Alaska
025 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Long-term Variability in Salmon Abundance in the Gulf of Alaska and California Current Systems
026 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: A Retrospective Study of Top Predator Trophic Positions, Productivity, and Growth in the Gulf of Alaska for 1960-75 and 1975-90
027 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Patterns, Sources and Mechanisms of Decadal-Scale Environmental Variability in the Northeast Pacific: A Retrospective and Modeling Analysis
028 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Remote Sensing of the Northeast Pacific: Retrospective and Concurrent Time Series Analysis Using Multiple Sensors on Multiple Scales
029 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Physical-Chemical Structures, Primary Production and Distribution of Zooplankton and Planktivorous Fish on the Gulf of Alaska Shelf
043 Marine Mammals of Coastal Alaska Data (1976-1991): Census (F025); Activity (F026): Pathology (F127)
087 Fish Kills in Coastal Waters: 1980-1989
088 Development of an Ecological Characterization of the Kachemak Bay Watershed
089 Sea-Viewing Wide Field-of-View Sensor (SeaWiFS) - Algorithms
090 National Benthic Surveillance Project
091 Mussel Watch Project
092 Specimen Banking Project
093 Using Cytochrome P450 to Monitor the Aquatic Environment: Initial Results from Regional and National Surveys. Marine Environmental Research. 34: 195-
094 Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) - Algorithms
199 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Retrospective Analysis of Northeast Pacific Microzooplankton
224 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Coupled Bio-Physical Models for the Coastal Gulf of Alaska
233 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Coupled Bio-physical Models for the Coastal Gulf of Alaska
234 GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program: Retrospective Analysis of Northeast Pacific Microzooplankton: A Window on Physical Forcing of Food Web Structure
251 Kachemak Bay National Estuarine Research Reserve KBNERR

National Weather Service (NOAA—NWS)

004 Buoy Observations
095 Coastal-Marine Automated Network (C-MAN)
096 Moored Buoys
097 SeaBreeze CD-ROM

Ocean and Atmospheric Research (NOAA—OAR)

006 The Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set (COADS)
098 Distribution an Elemental Composition of Suspended Matter in Alaskan Coastal Waters
099 Long-Term Variations in Alaskan Salmon Abundance Determined from Sediment Core Analysis
100 On Exchange of Water Between the Gulf of Alaska and the Bering Sea through Unimak Pass
101 Gulf of Alaska CTD Data Collected under the Environmental Services Data and Information Management (ESDIM) Data Rescue
102 Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska Winds (1946-1982)
104 Revised: Analysis of Allozyme Variation in Asian and Alaskan Pink Salmon
105 Intra-and Interspecific Genetic Variation of mtDNA in Rockfish (Sebastes)
106 Physical-Chemical Structures, Primary Productivity and Distribution of Zooplankton and Planktivorous Fish on the Gulf of Alaska Shelf: A GLOBEC Monitoring Proposal Project: Energetics Project
107 Historical Analysis of Sockeye Scales
108 Retrospective Analysis of the Effects of Trawling on Benthic Communities in the Gulf of Alaska and Aleutian Island Region
109 Long-Term Variations in Alaskan Sockeye Salmon Abundance
110 Monitoring Transport in the Alaska Coastal Current: A Feasibility Study

National Science Foundation

113 Improvement in the Curation of the University of Alaska Frozen Tissue Collection
114 A Flora of the Benthic Marine Algae of Alaska: Phase 1, An Inventory of the Existing Collections
115 Flux and Fate of Sediment and Water from Small Mountainous Rivers to the Continental Margin: the Gulf of Alaska Example.
116 Gulf of Alaska Recirculation Study (GARS)
117 Upper Ocean Circulation in the Subpolar and Northern Subtropical Pacific

Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission (PSMFC)

232 Salmonid Coded Wire Tag Database

Prince William Sound Regional Citizens' Advisory Council (PWSRCAC)

241 Long-Term Environmental Monitoring Program

Prince William Sound Science Center (PWSSC)

201 Long-term Killer Whale Database

U.S. Department of the Interior (DOI)

002 Age and Length Characteristics of Rainbow Trout in Selected Streams
003 Alaska Seabird Inventory and Monitoring Plan
013 Sea Otter Biomonitoring Program
014 Seabird Tissue Archival and Monitoring Project (STAMP)
015 Bald Eagle Database

016 Coastal Studies
017 Hydrologic Data Collection and Investigations
076 Alaska Marine Mammal Tissue Archival Project (AMMTAP)
118 Forage Fish Assessment of the Cook Inlet Oil and Gas Development-Affected Areas
119 Kachemak Bay Experimental and Monitoring Studies
120 The Alaskan Frozen Tissue Collection and Associated Electronic Database: A Resource for Marine Biotechnology
121 Spring Survey of Steller's Eiders in the Gulf of Alaska
122 Monitoring and Evaluating Effects on Seabird Colonies in Potential Oil and Gas Development Areas
123 Sediment Quality in Depositional Areas of Shelikof Strait and Outermost Lower Cook Inlet
124 Mapping of Cook Inlet Tide Rips Using Local Knowledge and Remote-Sensing Imagery Techniques
125 Historical Data Sets for Prince William Sound Ecosystem: Implications of Changing Climate
126 Ecological Processes Underlying the Large Spatial and Temporal Variance in Distribution and Abundance of Species in Glacier Bay. Part 1: The Spatial Distribution of Small Schooling Fish and Associated Predators in Glacier Bay, and Their Relationship to Oceanographic and Bathymetric Parameters
127 Seabird Population Dynamics and Food Supply: Assessing Long-Term Changes in Alaska Marine Ecosystem
128 Prince William Sound Ecosystem Initiative
129 Harbor Seal Monitoring in Glacier Bay National Park and Preserve
130 Pacific Coho Salmon Study
131 Marine Mammal Marking, Tagging and Reporting Program
132 Sea Otter Stock Assessment
133 Alaska Seabird Inventory and Monitoring Plan - Annual Monitoring Sites
134 Beringian Seabird Colony Catalog
135 Wintering Marine Bird and Mammal Surveys
136 Nongame Migratory Bird Project - Boat Survey Data in Bays and Sounds
139 Genetics Research for Characterizing Alaskan Salmonid Populations
140 Seasonal Movements and Pelagic Habitat Use of Alaska Seabirds Determined by Satellite Telemetry
141 Fishes of Alaska
142 Design and Implementation of a Seabird Monitoring Database for the North Pacific
143 Assessment of Sea Otter Population Status in Alaska
144 Ecological Processes Underlying the Large Spatial and Temporal Variance in Distribution and Abundance of Species in Glacier Bay. Part 1: The Spatial Distribution of Small Schooling Fish and Associated Predators in Glacier Bay, and Their Relationship to Oceanographic and Bathymetric Parameters
145 Population Status and Ecology of Shorebirds in Alaska
146 Using Genetic Markers to Determine Population Status and Management Strategies of Mammals
147 Pelagic Seabird Atlas of the North Pacific

149 IHN Virus Strain Differentiation and Field Epidemiology in Salmonids
150 Watershed Ecosystem Studies
151 Marine Geology of Benthic Biohabitats in Glacier Bay, Alaska
152 Cook Inlet Basin Study Unit
223 Alaska Seabird Inventory and Monitoring Plan - Periodic Monitoring Sites
227 Population Ecology of Seabirds on Middleton Island, Alaska
230 Process Structuring Coastal Marine Communities in Alaska: DOI Trust Resources
242 National Wetlands Inventory (NWI)
243 Pelagic Distribution and Abundance of Seabirds and Marine Mammals
244 Seabird Population Dynamics and Food Supply: Assessing Long-Term Changes in Alaska Marine Ecosystem
252 Management of Subsistence Resources in Alaska
271 Alaska Seabird Colony Catalog Database
272 Subsistence Harvest of Migratory Birds
273 Distribution and Abundance of Kittlitz's Murrelets and Black Oystercatcher in western PWS
274 Harbor seal surveys on the coast of Kenai Fjords National Park, 1979 to 1998
275 Human Impacts on Nesting Shorebirds on the Coast of Kenai Fjords National Park
281 Assessment of Sea Otter Population Status in Alaska

U.S. Global Change Research Program (USGCRG)

214 Repeat Hydrography and Special Analysis Centre
215 One-Time Survey: Cruise 17N
216 Subsurface Floats
217 Surface Drifting Buoys
218 Joint Archive for Shipboard Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers (ADCP)
219 Upper Ocean Thermal Data
220 Sea Surface Salinity
221 Surface Meteorological Data and Surface Fluxes
222 Tide Gauges

United Nations (UN)

210 Permanent Service for Mean Sea Level (PSMSL) and Global Sea Level Observing System (GLOSS)
211 Ships of Opportunity Program (SOOP): Low Density Expendable Bathythermograph Network (XBT)
212 Array for Real-Time Geostrophy (ARGO)
213 Pacific Basinwide Extended Climate Study (P-BECS)

University of Alaska Fairbanks (UAF)

202 Data set for the NOAA Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer Satellite (AVHRR)
203 Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) Imagery From UAF HRPT (High Resolution Picture Transmission) Station
204 MSL-622 Satellite Oceanography Project

205 Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska Fairbanks Database; Physical, Chemical, Biological and Geological Data
206 Isotope Ratio Studies of Marine Mammals in Prince William Sound
207 GAK 1 TIME SERIES
257 A continuous plankton recorder monitoring program for the eastern North Pacific & southern Bering Sea
258 A basin-wide retrospective analysis of growth and survival patterns in pink and chum salmon
259 Pilot study on the use of airborne lidar and digital imagery for surveys of epipelagic fish and associated biological features in the southeastern Bering Sea and North Pacific Ocean
260 Assessing the physiological stress of Steller sea lions using fecal hormone analysis
261 Determining survival and long-term foraging behavior of juvenile Steller sea lions through implanted, satellite-linked mortality transmitters
262 Availability and use of prey by Steller sea lions in the Kodiak area
263 Process modeling of the Alaska Coastal Current
264 Physical forcing of marine productivity: monitoring moorings on the Gulf of Alaska shelf
265 Estimating seabird diets using fatty acids: protocol development and testing of ReFER hypotheses as tested in the Bering Sea
266 A cooperative effort between Alaska Native people & federal agencies on marine mammal & bird stranding
267 Harbor seal biological sampling: expanding the scope of the subsistence archival project Cook Inlet, Kodiak, Aleutian Islands

University of Miami

208 University of Miami TIROS-N-NOAA AVHRR Level 1b

University of Rhode Island

209 University of Rhode Island Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) Level 1b

U.S. Department of Agriculture—Forest Service (USFS)

250 Grid Survey System

APPENDIX D. NORTH PACIFIC RESEARCH BOARD DESK REFERENCE ON NORTH PACIFIC MARINE SCIENCE

North Pacific Research Board

Desk Reference on North Pacific Marine Science

July 2001

Prepared by

Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Trustee Council
645 G Street Suite 401
Anchorage, AK 99501
907-278-8012
www.oilspill.state.ak.us

Table of Contents

Glossary of Existing Agency Programs and Projects

Introduction

Most major information-gathering programs of the NPRB area are divisible into three major categories: large animals or macrofauna (birds, mammals, fish, shellfish), oceanography (physical, chemical, geological and biological) and human use (land and water use, water quality, contaminants). The Alaska Department of Fish and Game, the U.S. Department of the Interior and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's National Marine Fisheries Service are the primary monitoring agencies for macrofauna. Sampling efforts for macrofauna are typically focused on regional or smaller areas, including PWS, Cook Inlet, Kodiak and the Alaska Peninsula. The National Aeronautics and Space Administration and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration are the primary sources of oceanographic data, including data on zooplankton, phytoplankton and primary productivity. Notably absent are monitoring or assessment programs for large plants, such as kelp and other large marine algae. Oceanography programs often include the NPRB region as part of a larger program. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, U.S. Forest Service, Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation and Alaska Department of Natural Resources all monitor certain human uses of lands and waters and the impacts of human use on resources, as do several nongovernmental organizations.

A summary of the major programs conducted by the United States, State of Alaska, transboundary organizations and nongovernmental organizations follows. These programs have been incorporated into a database, which will include projects that are actively collecting data as well as projects that are no longer active. Inactive projects contain considerable valuable historical information relevant to the production of plants and animals in the NPRB region. Section H contains a reference list of commonly used acronyms and web site links for these programs and others.

State of Alaska

Alaska Department of Community and Economic Development (ADCED)

Each year, the department's Division of Tourism publishes Alaska Visitor Arrivals and the Alaska Visitor Industry Economic Impact Study. These studies are based on secondary data. No field surveys have been conducted since the 1993-1994 Alaska Visitor Statistics Program III.

Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation (ADEC)

The Division of Air and Water Quality (AWQ) is concerned with public health and environmental problems throughout Alaska. The Year 2000 statewide water quality assessment is a project to describe the nature, status and health of Alaska's waters, and to identify restoration and protection needs. The AWQ also monitors ambient water quality through the State Water Discharge Permits and Certification program and the Non-Point Source Water Pollution Control program. Discharge permits, such as that for the Alyeska Marine Terminal in Valdez, require that the permitee monitor both surface water and ground water for such contaminants as petroleum, PCBs and heavy metals. Monitoring data from about 3,000 sites statewide (1,000 of which are in the oil spill region) are stored in the Contaminated Sites Database. The Non-Point Source Water Pollution Control program keeps a list of "impaired water bodies," that is, water bodies that do not meet state water quality standards. ADEC also funds non-point source water pollution monitoring projects with funds authorized by Congress under Section 319 of the Clean Water Act and administered by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

ADEC has awarded EPA 319 funds to several citizen-based monitoring programs, such as the Cook Inlet Keeper's water monitoring program in lower Cook Inlet, the Kenai Watershed Forum, and wetlands studies by the Nature Conservancy. In partnership with other agencies, ADEC is developing a bioassessment project in the Cook Inlet bioregion. This project seeks to develop protocols for water sampling that are better suited to conditions in Alaska than the current sampling protocols.

ADEC is a partner in implementing the EPA's Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP) in southcentral Alaska (2001) and southeastern (2002). The purposes of the EMAP program are to provide a comprehensive report card on the status of the ecological resources nationwide and to detect trends in these resources.

ADEC and ADNR are partners with the EVOSTC in the development of the regional information system known as The Cook Inlet Information Management and Monitoring System (CIIMMS). CIIMMS is a project, funded by the Trustee Council, to develop a website for finding, contributing and sharing information for the Cook Inlet watershed region. CIIMMS is intended to support monitoring, management and restoration of natural resources, in addition to data sets and software relevant to understanding the ecological status of this region.

The Division of Environmental Health routinely tests and certifies clams from commercially harvested shellfish beaches and shellfish farms for paralytic shellfish poisoning (PSP). The division also monitors PSP in king crab in PWS and in Dungeness crab and Tanner crab in PWS, Cook Inlet and Kodiak Island. The Contaminated Sites program monitors superfund sites, abandoned military sites and other contaminated sites throughout the state.

Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG)

The Division of Commercial Fisheries does substantial monitoring of salmon and other anadromous fish species, herring, crabs, shrimp and several other invertebrate species, and some species of mammals. ADFG is responsible for the NPRB region portion of the Coded Wire Tag database, which contributes to understanding ocean distributions of salmon. The department's point of sales (fish ticket) information supports understanding of abundance and distribution of salmon, crabs, herring, and other species. ADFG has extensive historical information on the distribution of some species of crab and shrimp in the NPRB region. ADFG has archives of scales and size at age from salmon and herring that enable understanding of historical marine growth regimes.

An extensive archive of genetic data on chum, sockeye and other species of salmon is being assembled by ADFG in cooperation with NMFS and agencies of nations participating in the North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission (NPAFC). The data enhance understanding of the oceanic distribution of salmon, and thereby contribute to understanding oceanic regime shifts. ADFG also conducts genetic research on crabs, some rockfish, herring, and pollock.

The ADFG and cooperating regional aquaculture associations also collect some physical and biological oceanographic data, such as Kodiak nearshore sea surface temperatures, Kitoi Bay zooplankton biomass (Kodiak), and PWS zooplankton settled volumes.

The ADFG Subsistence Division's Whiskers database on subsistence harvest of marine mammals is part of a larger NOAA sponsored program. In addition, the Wildlife Conservation Division monitors harbor seals in cooperation with NMFS.

The Sport Fish Division conducts port sampling of groundfish for information about the recreational effort, catch and harvest of rockfish, lingcod and halibut in the northern NPRB region. This project consists of catch sampling and angler interviews. The Subsistence Division collects data on subsistence fish and shellfish harvest. The Habitat Division monitors the effect of certain activities on anadromous fish streams. Since 1990, the division has been monitoring compliance with the Alaska Forest Practices regulations on private land. Since 1998, the Habitat Division has been researching the effects of stream crossing structures on fish habitat and fish passage on the Kenai Peninsula. Note that most ADFG marine programs serve to provide information to NOAA programs.

Alaska Department of Health & Social Services (ADHSS)

The Division of Public Health has conducted several retrospective studies of contamination in subsistence foods. One study examined 20 years of data on trace metal analysis in marine mammals and another examined the occurrence of contaminants in subsistence foods, with an emphasis on methylmercury, cadmium and PCB levels.

Alaska Science and Technology Foundation (ASTF): The ASTF was established in 1988 by the Governor and the State of Alaska Legislature. It's purpose is "to promote and enhance, through basic and applied research and the development and commercialization of technology, economic development and technological innovation in Alaska; public health; telecommunications; and the sustained growth and development of Alaskan scientific and engineering capabilities."

Alaska Department of Natural Resources (ADNR)

The ADNR monitors certain uses of land and resources on state lands and waters. The Division of Oil and Gas performs field inspections of activities on state oil and gas leases. The Division of Forestry monitors compliance with the terms of state timber sales. The Division of Parks and Outdoor Recreation tracks use of state-owned recreation facilities such as campgrounds, cabins and parking facilities. Periodically, staff inspects these facilities. The Division of Mining, Land and Water issues aquatic farming permits, shore fishery leases and other permits and leases for use of state-owned tidelands and uplands. The Division maintains statistics on the number of applications submitted and issued and monitors compliance with terms and conditions of permits and leases.

University of Alaska

The university has extensive programs that are relevant to NPRB. Four federally and state supported programs within the university system are expected to provide the International Arctic Research Center substantial expertise and information of interest: the School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, the Sea Grant Program, the National Underwater Research Program, and the Institute of Social and Economic Research.

Institute of Marine Science (IMS) School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences: Scientists associated with IMS have compiled much of the historical data relevant to the NPRB program. IMS produced the comprehensive review (Rosenberg 1972) in preparation for the extensive and intensive environmental studies sponsored by the Minerals Management Service in the 1970s (Hood and Zimmerman 1986). The IMS maintains a historic database of oceanographic measurements from the NPRB region, and it currently operates the R/V Alpha Helix, a 133-foot research vessel, for the National Science Foundation.

Pollock Conservation Cooperative Research Center (PCC) School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences (SFOS): The SFOS operates the PCC Research Center that was established in February 2000 and seeks to improve knowledge about the North Pacific Ocean and Bering Sea through research and education, focusing on the commercial fisheries of the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands. For the 2000 funding cycle, the PCC Research Center is especially interested in trying to improve knowledge through research and education relating to climate regime shifts and interannual variability in the Bering Sea ecosystem; the recovery of the Steller sea lion, including the identification of factors contributing to its decline; bycatch in the fisheries (for example, bycatch of salmon); and the impact of fishing activities on ecosystem dynamics and the diversity and abundance of target and non-target species. Funding for the PCC Research Center is provided by members of the PCC, a fishing cooperative of companies that operate catcher/processors in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands pollock fishery.

International Arctic Research Center (IARC): IARC promotes international collaboration in global change research in the arctic. In the science plan for IARC, key elements are understanding the relative contributions of natural and manmade causes to climate change, understanding what to measure in order to detect changes, and predicting the impacts of change on humans. The IARC Research Framework has eight themes, four of which are relevant to the NPRB program: 1) detection of contemporary changes, 2) arctic paleoclimatic and paleoenvironmental reconstructions, 3) impacts, consequences of change and education, and 4) integration of research on a regional scale.

United States Government

Federal Partnership Programs

Marine Environmental Health Research Laboratory (MEHRL): MEHRL is an interdisciplinary environmental laboratory operated by NOAA, NIST, the University of Charleston, the Medical University of South Carolina, and the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources. It is a model of state-federal cooperation in marine environmental research dedicated to providing the information needed to sustain the health, productivity and diversity of marine resources. The interdisciplinary program is designed to provide answers to complex problems surrounding the health of coastal marine resources.

National Ice Center (NIC): The National Ice Center is a multi-agency operational center partnered by the Department of Defense (Navy--Naval Ice Center), the Department of Commerce (NOAA—National Weather Service and National Environmental Satellite Data Information Service), and the Department of Transportation (U.S. Coast Guard). NIC ice data are a key part of the U.S. contribution to international global climate and ocean observing systems.

National Oceanographic Partnership Program (NOPP): NOPP is a legislatively-mandated collaboration of 12 U.S. government agencies designed to promote cooperative activities among government, academia, and industry for the advancement of ocean science, technology and education. The Program is chaired by top-ranking officials from the U.S. Navy, NSF, Department of Energy, U.S. Coast Guard, Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, NOAA, NASA, EPA, USGS, MMS, and the Office of Management and Budget. NOPP is preparing The Ocean Observations Task Team report: "An Integrated Ocean Observing System: A Strategy for Implementing the First Steps of a U.S. Plan". NOPP has agreed to be a partner with the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation to help implement the Census of Marine Life (CoML) and specific studies that are relevant to the common research interests and goals of the CoML and the U.S. oceanographic agencies.

Interagency Federal Programs

Interagency Arctic Research Policy Committee (IARPC) is the coordinating body for federal agencies charged with implementing Arctic research and monitoring, some of which may occur in the northern Gulf of Alaska. IARPC is chaired and operated by the National Science Foundation (NSF), the lead federal agency responsible for implementing Arctic research policy. The IARPC helps set priorities for future Arctic research, and it works with the State of Alaska and the Arctic Research Commission to develop and establish an integrated national Arctic research policy to guide federal agencies in developing and implementing their research programs in the Arctic.

Marine Protected Areas (MPAs) are an intergovernmental program designed to strengthen the protection of U.S. ocean and coastal resources. The Departments of Commerce and the Interior assisted by other federal agencies are working to strengthen and expand a national system of MPAs by working closely with state, territorial, local, tribal, and other stakeholders. An MPA is defined as, "any area of the marine environment that has been reserved by Federal, State, territorial, tribal, or local laws or regulations to provide lasting protection for part or all of the natural and cultural resources therein."

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)

NASA's Earth Science Enterprise remote sensing missions provide a wealth of information that support ocean programs at a fundamental level. Regarding sea level, the TOPEX/Poseidon and Jason-1 altimetry missions will provide high quality sea level estimates for interpretation in climate studies. Sea surface height (SSH) data provide information about the ocean geostrophic flow-field near surface and when assimilated into an ocean circulation model, in the interior ocean as well. SSH data also provide a measure of upper ocean heat and haline variability. NASA and CNES have combined forces to build and operate altimetric missions for obtaining high accuracy SSH data since August 1992. Jason-1 will be the follow-on mission to TOPEX/Poseidon and is slated for launch in May 2000.

Seawinds instruments on the QuikSCAT and ADEOS-II satellites provide estimates of vector wind over the ocean. Wind stress is the primary mechanical forcing function of the ocean circulation. Remote sensing observations of surface winds are the only way to assure a truly global coverage of wind data over the ocean and to assure that meteorological models provide high-quality wind-stress fields. NASA launched its Seawinds scatterometer on the QuikSCAT mission in mid-1999 to provide 25-km resolution of vector surface winds over 90% of the ice-free ocean each day. A second Seawinds instrument is slated for launch in late 2000 on the Japanese ADEOS-2 satellite.

Sea surface temperature is now delivered operationally using a combination of AVHRR data from NOAA satellites and in situ data for calibration. NASA's new technology delivering sea surface temperature includes the MODIS instrument on EOS AM and PM platforms and microwave (all-weather) temperatures from the NASA/NASDA Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission.

The concentration of chlorophyll in the upper ocean layer can be deduced from relatively small contrasts in ocean color. While absolute calibration of such contrast measurements carried out with different instruments may be a challenge, easily observable fast space-time variations provide valuable insight into the dynamics of primary production and the processes that control it. Such ocean color measurements will be provided more or less systematically by a number of satellite missions and operational programs, including NASA/SeaWiFS, ESA/ENVISAT, NASDA/ADEOS-2, NASA/EOS AM-1 and PM-1, and eventually NPOESS (beginning around 2009).

The Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment (GRACE) satellite is slated for launch in March 2001. It will provide a high accuracy measurement of the time varying gravity field. Knowledge of the marine geoid is fundamental for using altimeter data to study the absolute ocean currents. This mission also provides information about variable deep ocean currents which is complimentary to that obtained from altimetry.

NASA is currently developing the technology to remotely sense the ocean surface salinity from low earth orbit. The scientific issues are discussed in a report of the Salinity and Sea Ice Working Group.

Sea-ice concentrations (percent aerial coverages) to a resolution on the order of 30km have been obtainable from satellites since the early 1970's using passive microwave radiometer technology. The record from the early and mid 1970's contains many large data gaps, but since Oct. 1978 is reasonably complete in terms of obtaining a consistent global sea ice coverage dataset every 1-3 days. This record demonstrates significant seasonal and interannual variability in the sea-ice cover and its dynamics. This dataset is currently being continued with the DMSP Special Sensor Microwave/Imager (SSM/I) and will be further continued with the Advance Microwave Scanning Radiometer (AMSR) on both the EOS-PM platform and the Japanese ADEOS-II platform, both scheduled for launch in the year 2000.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)

The National Marine Fisheries Service conducts programs that support the domestic and international conservation and management of living marine resources and the fisheries that depend on them. NMFS is organized around Regions that conduct management-operational activities, including some monitoring, and Centers that conduct research in support of regional needs. Centers responsible for Pacific Ocean research and monitoring within NMFS are the Alaska Fisheries Science Center, Northwest Fisheries Science Center Seattle), and the Southwest Fisheries Science Center (LaJolla). The research needs of NMFS in the Alaska Region (Juneau) and the North Pacific Fishery Management Council (Anchorage) are served by the Alaska Fisheries Science Center (AFSC) which includes the Sand Point (Seattle) Headquarters, Auke Bay Laboratory (Juneau), The Kodiak Laboratory, and the Hatfield Marine Science Center (Newport, OR). Major programs include the triennial trawl surveys for groundfish (scheduled to become biennial in 2001), annual longline surveys primarily for sablefish and rockfish, and the Ocean Carrying Capacity program with three cruises a year. Salmon and rockfish genetic stock identification programs are conducted at Auke Bay Laboratory of the Alaska Fisheries Science Center in Juneau, Alaska. Fishing vessel observer programs that collect biological information are conducted out of the AFSC.

National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) is a research organization of the AFSC that conducts research on marine mammals important to the mission of NMFS and NOAA. Geographic focus includes marine mammals off the coasts of Oregon, Washington and Alaska. Activities are information gathering and analysis, including stock assessments, life history determinations, and status and trends. Information is provided to various U.S. governmental and international organizations to assist in developing rational and appropriate management regimes for marine resources under NOAA's jurisdiction. Research programs are carried out cooperatively with other Federal, state and private sector agencies. Marine mammal survey programs include the Cook Inlet marine drift and set gillnet observer program and the Cook Inlet beluga population survey. Offshore killer whale surveys in the NPRB region are conducted by the Southwest Fisheries Science Center as part of a coast-wide program.

NMFS, in conjunction with the states and other federal agencies (USGS and NIST), conducts the National Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program, which collects and analyzes tissue samples from stranded marine mammals for histopathology, contaminants and disease. NMFS also routinely observes fish sampled in resource surveys for the presence of tumors or lesions that may show high levels of contaminants in the environment. Human uses of fisheries are monitored through the Fisheries Statistics and Economics Division, which maintains U.S. commercial and recreational fisheries statistical data, such as pounds and dollar value of commercial landings. In the southeastern U.S. coastal states, NMFS cooperates with the Food and Drug Administration to conduct a Seafood Inspection Program that includes monitoring the level of toxic dinoflagellate, *Pfiesteria piscicida*, and related water quality properties that might pose a threat to human health and the ecosystem.

NMFS partners with other federal and state agencies and academic institutions to support ecosystem programs. Several of the programs collecting ecosystem information including data on physical and chemical oceanography, phytoplankton, zooplankton and forage fishes are: the California Cooperative Fisheries Investigation (CalCoFI) off Southern California; the Marine Monitoring and Assessment Program (MARMAP) in the Northwest Atlantic; SEAMAP in the Southeast U.S.; and the Fisheries Oceanography Coordinated Investigations (FOCI; NOAA's OAR is also a partner) in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea. These programs furnish fundamental information on abundance and distribution of marine fish and invertebrates, and environmental changes which affect them.

Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research (OAR)

OAR consists of 12 laboratories nationwide. The office's activities include a complex of geophysical, oceanographic and macrofauna monitoring and evaluation activities that involve NMFS and other NOAA personnel.

Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory (PMEL) in Seattle focuses on coastal and open ocean observations and modeling to improving understanding of the physical and geochemical processes operating in the world oceans. PMEL's fisheries oceanography program (FOCI), which is a collection of NOAA research programs attempting to understand the influence of environment on the abundance of various commercially valuable fish and shellfish stocks in Alaska waters and their role in the ecosystem, has a project in Shelikof Strait between Kodiak and the Alaska Peninsula. This and other NPRB region monitoring projects are partnered with NMFS' Alaska Fisheries Science Center, under its Resource Assessment and Conservation Engineering (RACE) program. PMEL also conducts retrospective fisheries and oceanographic studies and the rescue and dissemination of older data collected by PMEL scientists. PMEL operates the El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) Observing System, which supports NOAA's climate prediction mission, primarily on seasonal to interannual time-scales. NOAA's environmental satellite systems, with region and basin-wide observations of sea surface temperature and surface wind speed, are supplemented by the ENSO Observing System. Seventy moorings in the tropical Pacific (called the Tropical Atmosphere-Ocean or TAO array) provide surface atmospheric and ocean mixed-layer observations. Several hundred global Lagrangian drifting buoys in all the major ocean basins; a volunteer observing ships (VOS) expendable bathythermograph (XBT) program of about 40 commercial ships; and a network of tide gauges complete the ENSO system. The resulting data are used to initialize climate models, verify model results, and monitor the evolution of the upper ocean.

Other observing systems maintained by NOAA that are still in the developmental stage, include a shipboard thermosalinograph effort; the Trans-Pacific Profiler Network, consisting of ten profilers in the equatorial Pacific; a Pacific upper-air sounding network on islands and ships in the Pacific; the Pan American Climate Studies Sounding Network of enhanced atmospheric observations; an ocean carbon-ocean tracer hydrographic program to determine global distributions of key chemical, biological, and physical tracers; a submarine cable providing estimates of Florida Current transport; a Voluntary Observing Ship CO2 program of semiautomated systems to monitor CO2; an Atlantic Ocean pilot project (called PIRATA) of 12 buoys in the tropical Atlantic; and an Atlantic profiling float array to study processes important in establishing SST variability.

Another of OAR's 12 labs, the Climate Diagnostics Center, holds the Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set (COADS) with surface marine data since 1854. OAR's Arctic Research Office partners with the University of Alaska Fairbanks to run the Cooperative Institute for Arctic Research (CIFAR) in Fairbanks. Proposals are being solicited in FY 2001 for research on: (1) climate variability and change in the Arctic, and (2) Bering Sea productivity. These funds will be made available from the Department of Commerce/NOAA through the Arctic Research Initiative, which started in FY 97. NOAA's Office of Ocean Exploration (OE) was founded in 2001 under the Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research (OAR) to meet four challenges 1) Mapping at new scales emphasizing regions not previously observed, 2) Exploring ocean dynamics and interactions at new scales, 3) Developing new technologies, and 4) Reaching out in new ways to stakeholders.

National Ocean Service (NOS)

This branch of NOAA is the Nation's principal advocate for coastal and ocean stewardship through partnerships, and supports the science and information needed for the proper balance between environment and economics. In cooperation with the National Science Foundation, NOS supports oceanographic research in the NPRB region, providing about half the support for the Northeast Pacific subprogram of the US GLOBEC. Substantial projects of the GLOBEC program are retrospective analyses and monitoring studies. NOS oversees the newly established Kachemak Bay National Estuarine Research Reserve and its Kachemak Bay Ecological Characterization study. The system of 25 estuarine reserves nationwide monitors physical, chemical and biological parameters in order to depict, track and forecast long-term changes and short-term variability in the resources of these areas. NOS also conducts the National Status and Trends Program which measures levels of toxic contaminants, including trace metals, pesticides, petroleum hydrocarbons, and other toxic organic contaminants and their effects on fish and shellfish. This national program currently includes NPRB region samples in the Mussel Watch contaminants project and formerly included the Benthic Surveillance Project in Alaska. Specimens are held in the Specimen Banking Project at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (see NIST, below).

NOS conducts a number of projects nationally that do not have a presence in Alaska, but may be relevant to Alaska conditions or programs, and could be potential sources of funding for future efforts. One example is NOAA's National Water Level Network along the nation's ocean and Great Lakes shorelines, which includes almost 200 continuously operating water level measurement systems. At five extremely busy harbor entrances, NOS operates Physical Oceanographic Real-Time Systems (PORTS). These systems include acoustic Doppler current profilers with anemometers, packet radio transmission equipment, a data acquisition system and an information dissemination system.

Alliance for Coastal Technologies (ACT) is committed to developing an active partnership with state and regional managers and private industry who deal with the need for effective use of sensor technologies in monitoring coastal environmental natural resources

National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service (NESDIS)

NESDIS holds most of the historical information gathered by NOAA agencies and current satellite, oceanographic, and buoy data, global climatological data, and sea ice information. Much of the information is stored at the National Oceanographic Data Center (NODC), the National Climate Data Center (NCDC), and the National Geophysical Data Center (NGDC). These three data centers cooperate with NASA, the National Weather Service, and many international agencies to provide global information such as sea surface temperature, wind speeds and vectors, biological productivity, salinity, absolute sea height, and other types of observations. NODC is a major partner in the Global Ocean Observing System (GOOS).

NESDIS has a role in ensuring national security, since it serves as the operational and command authority for the Defense Department's Defense Meteorological Satellite Program. NOAA's environmental satellite data are shared in near real-time through an agreement with the Department of Defense in support of the Air Force and the Navy's global and regional weather and ocean forecasting model prediction services. During national emergencies (both military and natural hazards response), NOAA enhances local environmental satellite coverage through its polar orbiting satellites worldwide. For emergencies affecting the western hemisphere, images from NOAA's geostationary satellites are enhanced.

National Weather Service (NWS)

NWS collects weather, hydrologic and climate data for coastal and ocean areas. The National Data Buoy Center has over 100 buoys and several Coastal Marine Automated Network (C-MAN) shore-based stations, some of which are based in Alaska. The center has real-time weather and oceanographic data and cooperates with NODC to provide historical monitoring data.

National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)

The NIST cooperates with USGS, NMFS, and NOAA's Office of Protected Resources in maintaining and operating the National Biomonitoring Specimen Bank. Archiving of biological samples for future analysis, and creation and maintenance of databases on specimen samples are NIST specialties.

National Science Foundation (NSF)

The National Science Foundation is a quasi-independent U.S. government agency supporting science and engineering programs worth over $3.3 billion per year. Program areas of potential interest to NPRB are Polar Research, Geosciences, and Biology. NSF also contributes funding for GLOBEC, FOCI and other projects of interest to NPRB.

Technology, instrument development, and infrastructure have been funded by NSF over the last several years. The ALVIN submersible, the best known and one of many ocean observing instruments sponsored by NSF, is continually upgraded to provide state-of-the-art, long times-series, deep ocean observations.

Three observatories: the Hawaii Undersea Geo-Observatory (HUGO)-automated submarine volcano observatory; the Hawaii-2 Observatory (H2O)-broad-band seismometer; and the Long-term Ecosystem Observatory (LEO-15)-broad array of sensing systems are currently involved in technological developments.

A fiber optic cable connecting a series of sea floor nodes capable of supporting real-time transmission of data and images from hundreds of instruments is a design concept being pursued with the National Ocean Partnership Program (NOPP). Another program initiated in 1996 by NSF was Deep Earth Observatories on the Seafloor (DEOS) for observations beyond the reach of fiber optic cables.

A five-year look at the global density and property field of the ocean was obtained from the World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE). Numerous hydrographic sections were repeated during the experiment at regular intervals to address overall structure, meridional overturning, and transport through particularly important "choke points." The Atlantic Climate and Circulation Experiment (ACCE), a study conducted during WOCE between Greenland and latitudes below the equator using independent subsurface profiling floats, is the model for the Array for Real-time Geostrophic Oceanography (ARGO).

The Argo Ocean Profiling Network is an international effort to collect and share information on the temperature, currents, and salinity of the world's oceans. Such information may be used to improve predictions of weather events such as El Niño and La Niña on our seasonal climate. Each float is programmed to sink a mile into the ocean, drifting at that depth for about 10 days, then slowly rise, measuring temperature and salinity through the layers as it makes its way to the surface. At the surface, data is transmitted to a communications satellite and the probe begins another cycle. Each float is designed to last 4-5 years. Argo floats can be deployed from ships or by aircraft. NOAA and the Office of Naval Research through the National Oceanographic Partnership Program fund the U.S. contribution to ARGO. NOAA, Scripps Institution of Oceanography, University of Washington, and Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution are implementing ARGO. Scientists have determined that 3,000 floats are needed for the full global observing array. The goal is to have the entire array of floats drifting and bobbing throughout the world's ice-free oceans by 2003.

Early in the next decade ARGO will furnish a major portion of the database for the Global Ocean Data Assimilation Experiment (GODAE). The large number of independent floats released under ARGO, supported by NSF, is planned as a part of the long-term climate research program. In addition to ARGO, Global Eulerian Observations (GEO) will provide diagnostic and verification of the Lagrangian measurements, greatly decreasing their uncertainties, and lead to more accurate portrait of global heat fluxes.

In 1977, the Oceanic Flux Program (OFP), the first continuous time-series particle flux in the deep ocean was inaugurated at Hydrostation S. The observation that the particulate flux to depth was not constant but seasonally dependent on the plankton production cycle amazed the oceanographic community.

In 1988, as a part of U.S. JGOFS, several stations in the North Pacific, North Atlantic and near Bermuda, were funded by NSF to collect (oceanic time-series) to provide a greater understanding of the oceans' role in global and climate change. The stations in the North Pacific and near Bermuda have become prototypes for other national and international oceanic time-series observatories.

The principle goal of the Carbon Retention In A Colored Ocean Program (CARIACO), instituted in 1995, was studying the relationship between surface biogeochemical processes and the fluxes of carbon and nutrients in a continental margin setting influenced by seasonal upwelling.

The U.S. GLOBEC Northwest Atlantic-Georges Bank Program is intended to assimilate the population dynamics of major species on the Bank in terms of their relationship to the physical environment, predators and prey. The ultimate goal is to be able to forecast changes in the distribution and abundance of these species as a result of changes in their physical and biotic environment as well as to predict how their populations might respond to climate change. Continuing observations will be essential in the foreseeable future. A similar U.S. GLOBEC Northeast Pacific Program (NEP) has initiated a study of the effects of past and present climate variability on the population ecology and population dynamics of marine biota and living marine resources.

NSF has funded studies of existing ocean and coastal data sets, including the Continuous Plankton Recorder Surveys and the California Cooperative Fisheries Investigations (CalCoFI).

NSF has also helped to sponsor a series of workshops to gather all the historical data surrounding major fish stock explosions and crashes, subjecting them to extensive modeling exercises in an effort to prove or disprove the many speculative hypotheses established to explain them.

For several years studies in the Great Barrier Reef have focused on coral and algae, as have the ecology of reefs in relation to El Niño events in the eastern tropical Pacific, rocky shore sites along Northern Massachusetts and the outer coast of Washington State. These studies were expanded to include Long-Term Ecological Research (LTER) in Land/Ocean Margin Ecosystems. The network includes freshwater and tidal forcings and geomorphology, watershed land-use types, and aquatic and terrestrial biogeographic provinces and climatic regions. These programs have been useful in measuring coastal ecological system responses to ENSO and other long-term climactic variability.

Comprehending the causal linkages and covariations among the physical, chemical, and biological components of mid-ocean ridge volcanic and hydrothermal systems, and the long-term temporal evolution of these systems is an important aspect to a number of on-going and planned programs. Six areas are involved in the programs: three on the Juan de Fuca Ridge in the northeast Pacific Ocean, one on the East Pacific Rise off southern Mexico, one on the East Pacific Rise off northern Peru, and one on the Mid-Atlantic Rise south of the Azores. Through repeat visits, the programs involve long-term temporal observations and could evolve into permanent, real-time observatories in the future.

The Earth's climate system varies on time scales greater than the instrumental record, from the major changes of glacial/interglacial cycles to the recently-identified millennial cycles of the North Atlantic and the decadal oscillations of the North Pacific. Capturing the full natural variability of the system, requires highly-resolved records spanning hundreds or even thousands of years. Preservation of these "paleo" time-series are recorded in oceanic sediments and other geo-archives such as massive corals.

U.S. Arctic Research Commission (USARC)

The U.S. Arctic Research Commission was established by Congress under the Arctic Research and Policy Act of 1984 to promote Arctic research, develop national research plans, and facilitate interagency coordination within the federal government and state and local governments in Arctic research. An important resource for the USARC established by ARPA (P.L. 98-373 [1984]; amended P.L.101-609 [1990]) is the Interagency Arctic Research Policy Committee (IARPC) operated by NSF, described separately in this section. The Commission is composed of seven members appointed by the President plus the director of the National Science Foundation. USARC has produced its set of research priorities for FY 2001 that includes a renewed emphasis on the Bering Sea and a call for increased efforts dealing with climate change in the Arctic. Under the Arctic Council, the U.S. has taken the lead role in the preparation of an Arctic Climate Impact Assessment (ACIA), to be prepared by experts from all of the arctic countries and other countries with arctic interests.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA)

The mission of the Environmental Protection Agency is to protect human health and to safeguard the air, water, and land of the nation. Of particular interest to the NPRB program is the EPA's Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP), which seeks to fulfill a national mission that may be very similar to some elements of NPRB's regional charge. The purposes of the EMAP program are to provide a comprehensive report card on the status of the ecological resources nationwide and to detect trends in these resources. In addition to having common concerns, the review of the design phase of EMAP by the National Research Council (NRC 1995) is also relevant to NPRB. EMAP is a partnership between EPA and NOAA for long-term, integrated monitoring, research, and assessment to ascertain the status of our nation's ecological resources. EMAP's purpose is to develop the scientific understanding for translating environmental monitoring data from multiple spatial and temporal scales into assessments of ecological condition and forecasts of the future risks to the sustainability of our natural resources. This data supports the National Environmental Monitoring Initiative of the Committee on Environment and Natural Resources. EMAP implements monitoring programs that operate on regional scales, highlighting different ecological resource categories, over periods of several years, including five monitoring activities: (1) completion of the Mid-Atlantic Integrated Assessment Geographic Initiative; (2) initiation of the Western Pilot Geographic Initiative; (3) planning for a National Coastal Survey; (4) developing probabilistic coastal monitoring in all coastal states; and (5) establishment of an interagency (EPA, NOAA and NASA) effort to develop an intensive coastal site network of monitoring and research locations throughout the United States.

EPA also issues National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permits, which typically require that the permittee monitor discharges. Permittees include the Alyeska Marine Terminal in Valdez, seafood processors, hatcheries and logging companies. EPA also maintains a list of hazardous waste handlers under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and may require that the handlers monitor certain aspects of their activities. The RCRA list is based on those who report the handling of hazardous wastes through, for example, storage or transport. EPA also monitors Superfund sites.

EPA research laboratories and program offices support several coastal ocean observation studies. Additionally some federal, state and local governments, and private entities' projects fall under EPA's jurisdiction.

EPA maintains observations to ensure compliance with legislative mandates and regulatory requirements. Protection of marine ecosystems from the adverse effects of the disposal of dredged materials and treated wastewater encouraged development of Ocean Dumping and Ocean Discharge Programs. Possible impacts include problems associated with eutrophication, pathogens and toxics that result in adverse effect on human health and biological integrity of the coastal waters, as well as habitat modification and loss. Data includes the quality of dredged materials or treated wastewater, and the physical, chemical, and biological circumstances of the marine environment surrounding the disposal or discharge area.

States are required by the National Water Quality Inventory to report water quality conditions to EPA for inclusion in the National Water Quality Inventory Reports to Congress. The water quality includes physical, chemical, and biological conditions, and is processed according to monitoring results of the water quality of waters, including estuarine and coastal waters.

The National Estuary Program (NEP) was founded by Congress to restore and preserve estuaries; the program currently includes 28 estuaries that represent 42% of the shoreline of the continental U.S. These programs are in various stages of development. Each individual estuary program inventories existing Federal, State, local and volunteer monitoring programs in their area and combines pertinent details from these on-going activities into their own monitoring plans according to EPA guidance. Each NEP is developing its own database management system.

The Chesapeake Bay Program established in 1984 by the Chesapeake Bay Executive Council, is a Bay-wide EPA/state joint effort. The program is made up of over 165 stations below the fall line, and combines the efforts of Maryland, Pennsylvania, Virginia, the District of Columbia, several federal agencies, 10 institutions, and over 30 scientists. Nineteen physical, chemical, and biological characteristics are monitored 20 times a year in the main stem of the bay and its many tributaries. A volunteer citizen monitoring program was started in 1985.

The Great Lakes National Program combines several Federal, state, tribal, local, and industry partners in an integrated, ecosystem approach to protect, maintain, and restore the chemical, biological, and physical integrity of the Great Lakes. The program monitors Lake ecosystem data; manages and provides public access to Great Lakes data; and helps communities address contaminated sediments in their harbors.

The Gulf of Mexico Program is made up of many State and local monitoring projects. An integrated coastal monitoring and assessment program for the Gulf of Mexico is currently being designed, with four main focus areas: excessive nutrient enrichment; public health associated with seafood consumption and recreational use; habitat loss; and non-indigenous species introduction.

The Clean Water Action Plan, a new initiative, is an ambitious multi-agency proposal to speed the restoration of our nation's waterways. One important component is development of a Coastal Research Strategy involving integrated studies of coastal waters and a public report on the condition of the nation's coastal waters in 2000.

U.S. Department of the Interior (USDOI)

Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS)

The Alaska Maritime National Wildlife Refuge (AMNWR) monitors ten seabird colonies annually, four of which are in the NPRB region. The AMNWR also monitors other sites on a periodic basis largely dependent upon availability of funds.

The Office of Subsistence Management is entering its second year of the Federal Subsistence Fishery Monitoring Program. The program is directly administered by the Fishery Information Services Division, which consists of staff with expertise in both fisheries and social sciences, and funds studies that gather, analyze and report information needed for subsistence fisheries management on federal lands in Alaska. Funded studies focus on three information types: Traditional Ecological Knowledge, Subsistence Fishery Harvests, and Fishery Stock Status/Trends. Most studies contribute to developing the capabilities and expertise of agencies, local communities and rural residents to participate in subsistence fishery resource management. For purposes of management and research, Alaska federal subsistence fisheries have been grouped into 10 regions. Each region has an Advisory Council consisting of local residents who represent the geographic and cultural diversity of that region. In addition to providing recommendations on policies, Advisory Councils also identify study needs and make recommendations on project proposals for their region.

Minerals Management Service (MMS)

The MMS provides substantial support for projects related to the potential effects of oil and gas exploration and recovery that are largely conducted by other agencies and contractors. Studies envelop a wide range of resources such as sediment quality, seabird monitoring, mapping of riptides, Cook Inlet forage fish and others. MMS has funded a varied range of project types for many years. The University of Alaska Fairbanks and the MMS have joined to form the Alaskan Coastal Marine Institute (CMI). The purpose of the CMI is to provide matching MMS funding for research in Alaska on coastal, marine and human environmental issues pertaining to offshore mineral exploration and extraction. Researchers must secure at least one dollar of non-federal matching funds for every dollar from the CMI. Projects should address the Beaufort Sea and secondarily Cook Inlet/Shelikof Strait.

U.S. Geological Survey (USGS)

The Biological Research Division's (BRD) Alaska Biological Science Center maintains a seabird database and a pelagic seabird atlas. The Alaska Biological Science Center (Biological Resources Division, U.S. Geological Survey) is the lead biological science agency for the Department of the Interior (DOI) in Alaska, where it conducts research on wildlife and their habitats on Federal public lands and waters. Federal public lands in Alaska cover a geographic area equivalent to the all of the Eastern seaboard from Maine through Florida and include nearly all of the country's National Wildlife Refuges (88%) and most of its National Park lands (65%). Clients of ABS include the National Park Service, Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Land Management, and Minerals Management Service. Responsibilities also include providing scientific information essential for resource management decisions for DOI trust species such as migratory birds, marine mammals, and anadromous fish species.

BRD cooperates with many other projects from several agencies to obtain the contents of this database. In addition, since the 1970s BRD has had an extensive seabird-monitoring project at Middleton Island, the Marine Biological Station. BRD also is in the process of assembling the Pacific Seabird Monitoring Database. The Alaska Marine Mammals Tissue Archival Project (AMMTAP) and the Seabird Tissue Archival Monitoring Project (STAMP) are probably the most significant contaminants studies in Alaska.

The Water Resources Division of the USGS in Alaska maintains the Cook Inlet Basin Study Unit, part of the National Water Quality Assessment program (NAWQA), which examines trends in water quality over a nine-year period. Measurements are made to determine water chemistry in streams and aquifers; the quantity of suspended sediment and the quality of bottom sediments in streams; the variety and number of fish, benthic invertebrates and algae in streams; and the presence of contaminants in fish tissues. The Water Resources Division also maintains a long time series of measurements of groundwater and freshwater runoff for various stations in Alaska.

The Geologic Division has the capability to produce high-resolution maps of the sea floor through its Marine and Coastal Geology Program in Menlo Park, California.

U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA)

U.S. Forest Service (USFS) has substantial responsibility for controlling and directing the impacts of human uses. The USFS conducts occasional surveys of recreational use in PWS. These surveys are not conducted on a regular basis and are therefore not intended to serve as a long-term monitoring instrument. The USFS also reports on use of campgrounds, visitor centers and other facilities operated by the agency in the NPRB region. The Forest Service has extensive experience in watershed analysis and planning for ecosystem-based management. Extensive experience in developing scientific information relevant to balancing multiple uses of public lands and waters is available for planning monitoring and research.

U.S. Department of the Navy (USDN)

Ocean observations collected by the U.S. Navy were originally developed around two objectives due to national security reasons (1) Up-to-date forecasts for open ocean waves, weather and ice flow patterns for the safety of fleet operations, and (2) the Cold War requirement for open-ocean temperature, salinity and sound velocity measurements to support sonar performance in the tracking of Soviet ballistic-missile submarines. The national security-supported ocean observation system has, therefore, included heavy emphasis on open-ocean temperature, salinity, winds and ice observations. Several elements included in that system are: expendable temperature probes, used by navy ships and aircraft to take bathyermograph (XBT) measurements around the globe during fleet operations using probes that measure temperature with water depth as the probe falls through the water column: and satellite temperatures of the sea surface taken by infrared satellite sensors.

National security requires real-time global data and the Navy acts as a national Core Processing Center for sea surface temperature (SST) data from various satellites and disseminates the data to civil and military users worldwide. Other types of satellite measurements are used in remote areas where ship and buoy measurements are not readily available. Satellite altimetry measures the height of the sea surface roughness to infer winds. Products include sea-surface topography, currents, eddies, wave heights, and surface wind-speed and direction.

Drifting buoys are deployed yearly by the Navy with hourly feedback via satellite. They measure surface atmospheric pressure, air and sea surface temperature, winds and wave, and surface currents, that provide excellent "ground-truth" for satellite observations, as well as water temperature with depth, and "ambient" (background) noise levels that support Nave sonar operations.

The National Ice Center receives information from the Navy, NOAA, and the Coast Guard on global, regional, and local sea-ice analyses and forecasts, including ice edge, concentration, drift and thickness, for military and civil users. Ice observations come from U.S. and European satellites, U.S. and Canadian ice reconnaissance flights, and from specially instrumented buoys placed each year through the Arctic ice.

A dedicated fleet of Navy ships has collected the following data for years: water depth, bottom type, tides and currents or "hydrographic" data in coastal areas worldwide to improve and update nautical charts; deepwater bathymetry (water depth) and gravity measurements to support strategic submarine operations; physical oceanography (temperature, salinity, sound velocity), ambient noise, seafloor structure and sediment type to support sonar performance and acoustic surveillance arrays; and a wide range of other observations (water clarity, biolumninesence, currents, magnetics) that affect naval operations.

The Navy's national security needs for ocean data are now focused not only in the open ocean but also increasingly on the coastal waters of the world. They are a significant supporter of a national academic research fleet, funding both worldwide basic ocean observations and applied research projects. Data from the open ocean through coastal waters, the surf zone, and over the beach are all required to sustain modern naval operations. Because of the greater variability, shallow coastal waters require more observations in time and space. Of particular interest are water depth, sea surface temperature and temperature at depth, bottom type, waves, tides, currents, and coastal ambient (or background) noise. While the main national security requirements for coastal ocean observations are in sensitive areas overseas, the diversity of environments in U.S. coastal waters provides many analogues of coastal systems overseas. For this reason, national security needs must play a significant role in design of the coastal observing system. Navy home-porting, and coastal training, test and exercise functions in U.S. waters require expanded observations.

The U.S. Naval Observatory (USNO) is the basic source of information on the effect of astrophysics on climate change. The Earth's orbit, its orientation in space, and its angle of inclination toward the sun, as measured by the USNO, all play important roles in determining climatic conditions. The USNO is the world's leading authority in the areas of measuring day length, celestial observing, and other fundamental astronomy.

U.S. Department of Transportation (USDOT)

U.S. Coast Guard (USCG)-- USCG ocean data buoys take synoptic meteorological and oceanographic measurements for both the National Data Buoy Center and the National Ice Center. They also provide a number of other ocean or lake observations. The USCG operates a Vessel Traffic Service (VTS) for nine United States coastal ports. Each VTS is a service of active waterways management using advanced technology such as radar, closed circuit TV, differential GPS (DGPS), and VHF-FM radio communications. In addition, the VTS also receives information from various sources on predicted vessel movements, hazards to navigation, aids to navigation discrepancies, and other information of interest to VTS users. The VTS involves individuals off the vessel that receive, process, and communicate information related to the safe navigation of a waterway with a primary focus of public safety and protection of the environment. This information is communicated in general public advisories or in the form of specific recommendations to assist a vessel in avoiding hazardous conditions early on. VTS does not usually interfere with the vessel's sailing route.

Sea ice and icebergs are monitored by the International Ice Patrol (IIP), which is supported by 17 member nations and operates in the North Atlantic under the provisions of the U.S. Code and the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS). It monitors iceberg danger near the Grand Banks of Newfoundland during the ice season, and advises ships of safe and efficient navigation routes. The USCG International Ice Patrol sets drifting buoys for the use of iceberg/sea ice prediction. The observations of position and sea surface temperature are reported via satellite eight times per day. The IIP obtains water temperature profiles from AXBTs deployed by Coast Guard aircraft and sea surface temperature data made available by commercial ships. These data are sent to the Navy. The National Ice Center provides sea-ice analyses and forecasts using data from satellites, aircraft reconnaissance flights, and arctic buoys received from the USCG, NOAA and the Navy. USCG Polar icebreakers provide a number of oceanographic observations in the Arctic and Antarctic to Navy, NIMA, and/or NOAA databases. The reports include ocean temperature, salinity, bathymetry, and marine mammal data.

USCG cutters send weather information to the Navy and NOAA. Coast Guard stations also send meteorological data to NOAA for use in analyses and forecasts.

U.S. Department of Energy (USDOE)

The Department of Energy, Biological and Environmental Research (DOE-BER) is funding peer-reviewed research in marine biology and oceanography relating to the impact of anthropogenic CO2 on global warming. DOE also encourages technological developments that support new global ocean observational capabilities. Examples of specific programs include:

- Marine Biotechnology - the application of the tools of modern molecular biology to linkages of carbon and nitrogen cycles.
- Synthesis of Global CO2 Data (with NOAA) - development of tools and models to synthesize the existing data set on ocean CO2, and related parameters.
- Quality Assurance of CO2 Survey Data - QA/QC and dissemination of CO2 data through the Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center.
- Carbon Sequestration in the Ocean - establishment of center(s) of excellence as part of the Climate Change Technology Initiative.

Intergovernmental Organizations

Bristol Bay Marine Mammal Council (BBMMC)/Bristol Bay Native Association (BBNA)

The BBMMC was formed in 1995 by the thirty-one member tribes of the BBNA and works closely with marine mammal organizations to best utilize our resources and avoid redundancy in monitoring efforts.. The larger body is governed by a seven member Executive Council which consists of one representative from each of the five sub-reg8ions of Bristol Bay and two at-large members. The general membership and the Executive Council are a accurate representation of the people from each sub-region. The Executive Council can come together and discuss the marine mammal concerns of each sub-region and look for ways to resolve those concerns..

The BBMMC recognizes the dynamic nature of the marine ecosystem and the difficulties associated with large scale research efforts. To best use limited funding, the BBMMC supports the expansion of successful programs to the Bristol Bay region that currently exist in other regions of Alaska:

- Harbor seal biosampling program;
- Harbor seal harvest monitoring;
- ArcView mapping of projects; and,

- Consensus building among Bristol Bay area villages.

Pacific Coastal Salmon Recovery Program

The U.S. Congress, recognizing the need to assist states and tribes with Pacific Coastal Salmon Recovery, appropriated funds for the states of Alaska, Washington, Oregon and California, as well as the treaty fishing tribes in the Pacific Northwest.

This is a cooperative program that assists the States in fulfilling responsibilities under the Pacific Salmon Treaty by providing administrative, management, and applied research support to the States treaty Indian tribes to meet the needs of the Pacific Salmon Commission and U.S. international commitments under the treaty.

Since implementation of the Pacific Salmon Treaty in 1985, the States of Washington, Oregon, Idaho, and Alaska have provided the necessary support to and have been involved with the Pacific Salmon Commission in accordance with the treaty. Alaska has provided and continues to provide technical support necessary for supporting and enhancing the U.S. position on Yukon River salmon, Taku and Stakine river salmon and salmon fisheries in ongoing negotiations with Canada. In fiscal year 1999, four awards were made. It is anticipated that eight awards will be made in fiscal years 2000 and 2001. For the Pacific Coast Salmon Recovery Program, it is anticipated that five awards will be made in fiscal years 2000 and 2001.

The State of Alaska intends to apply the salmon funds over a five-year period to address salmon issues in Southeast Alaska, east of Cape Suckling. The general project areas are:

- *Research and Monitoring*: the focus is on important salmon producing streams and systems - uplands through estuaries, wild salmon stocks, transboundary rivers, and identification of habitat stewardship and restoration priorities;
- *Habitat Stewardship and Restoration*: the focus is on on-the-ground fish passage remediation projects on state, local, Native and private lands with initial focus on Coho, Chinook, and sockeye watersheds adversely impacted by human practices, and ensuring important habitat is not degraded;
- *Improve Economics of SEAK Fishing*: the focus is on the broad range of projects to mitigate impacts of Pacific Salmon Treaty on fisherman and fishing communities in SE Alaska; and,
- *Cooperative Programs*: the focus is on cooperative or joint projects with Pacific Northwest tribes, tribal entities, Canada, and/or Pacific Northwest states on salmon habitat or stocks of common concern.

Nongovernmental Organizations

Alaska Beluga Whale Committee (ABWC)

The ABWC was formed in 1988 to promote conservation and management of beluga whales, obtain better harvest information and to provide a means of better communication between beluga hunters, biologists and agencies.

The ABWC brought together representatives from beluga hunting communities in Alaska; local, state and federal governments; and beluga researchers to discuss conservation issues, the biology of belugas, and the needs for additional information. They initiated a program to obtain reliable harvest data, prepare a beluga management plan, and to encourage beluga research.

To date, the ABWC has accomplished the following:

- adopted the Alaska Beluga Whale Management Plan;
- signed a Co-management Agreement for Western Alaska Beluga Whales;
- obtained harvest information from ABWC members since 1988 and supported harvest monitoring and sampling;
- conducted aerial surveys: Norton Sound, Bristol Bay, and the Chukchi Sea;
- funded genetic stock ID study using samples from hunters in which the results support genetic discreteness of five stocks;
- supported contaminant studies of belugas in the eastern Chukchi Sea and Cook Inlet;
- produced newsletters informing coastal residents and others about important beluga research and management activities; and ,
- successfully satellite tagged belugas in the Chukchi Sea in 1998 and 1999 and started a pilot program in Norton Sound.

Alaska Eskimo Whaling Commission (AEWC)

The mission of the AEWC is to provide leadership, guidance and coordination in the administration and implementation of policies and programs established by the AEWC Board of Commissioners, and the successful implementation of the AEWC-NOAA Cooperative Agreement as it relates to the whaling captains and crew members that make up the AEWC in the ten subsistence whaling communities. The AEWC was formed in 1977 to represent the whaling communities in an effort to convince the U.S. Government to take action to preserve the Eskimos subsistence hunt of bowhead whales and its purpose is:

- to preserve and enhance a vital marine resource, the bowhead whale, including protection of its habitat;
- protect Eskimo subsistence bowhead whaling;
- protect and enhance the Eskimo culture, traditions, and activities associated with the Bowhead whales , and subsistence bowhead whaling; and,
- to undertake research and educational activities related to bowhead whales.

The following goals were established to carry out these purposes:

- ensure that the hunt of the bowhead whale is conducted according to the AEWC Management Plan in a traditional, non-wasteful manner;

- promote extensive scientific research on the bowhead whale so as to ensure the continued health of the bowhead whale stock; and,
- communicate to the outside world the facts pertaining to the subsistence bowhead whale hunt, the manner in which it is conducted, the Eskimo=s knowledge of the whale, and the centrality of the hunt to the cultural and nutritional needs of the Eskimos.

Aleut Marine Mammal Commission (AMMC)

The Aleut Marine Mammal Commission (Commission) is formed primarily for the following purposes:

- to encourage and implement self-protection and self-regulation of marine mammal use by coastal Alaska natives who utilize this resource by involving Native users in the decision making process;
- to provide education and information to the public, appropriate management agencies and other interested parties;
- to represent its member coastal Alaska native communities in reviewing and commenting on regulatory changes or resource development which may effect marine mammals;
- to promote conservation of marine mammals for use by Alaska Natives;
- to be involved in all phases of scientific, biological and other research programs involving marine mammals;
- to actively participate in the formulation of, and/or implementation of harvest monitoring efforts and protection of the marine mammal population; and,
- to encourage the Aleut Marine Mammal Commission, government of the United States, and other nations and indigenous groups to cooperate in exchanging information that contributes toward improved management of marine mammal populations.

Currently, the Commission includes representatives from the communities of Nikolski, Atka, Unalaska, Akutan, False Pass, Nelson Lagoon, King Cove, Sand Point, and Cold Bay. The Commission gathers and disseminates local knowledge regarding the Steller sea lion and other marine mammals in the Aleutian Islands and along the Alaska Peninsula. Information will include but is not limited to:

- the current level of subsistence take in these communities;
- historical perspectives on subsistence harvests;
- changes in mammal populations and local marine environments; and,
- information on the historical and current distribution of marine mammals.

The goal of the Commission is to provide information on subsistence harvest, particularly Steller sea lions, which will assist state and federal agencies in the management and conservation of the species.

Alaska Native Harbor Seal Commission (ANHSC)

The ANHSC is a tribal consortium organized by Native Communities within the range of the harbor seal founded with support from the Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Trustee Council, the National Marine Fisheries Service, and other sources. The ANHSC region extends along the Pacific coast form southeast Alaska to the western tip of the Aleutian Island Chain. The region encompasses six coastal areas represented by six ANCSA regional corporations including Southeast Alaska, Cook Inlet, Chugach, Kodiak, Bristol Bay and Aleut.. The overall purpose of the ANHSC is to strengthen and increase the role of Alaska Natives in resource policy decisions affecting harbor seals and to maintain their cultural uses. The goals of the ANHSC include:

- educating and informing the public and western scientists on the traditional and contemporary relationship between harbor seals and Alaska Natives;
- informing western scientists about the type and extent of knowledge held by the local people about the harbor seal;
- involving Alaska Natives directly in harbor seal research; and,
- involving Alaska Natives in the management of harbor seals through Co-management as provided for in Section 119 of the Marine Mammal Protection Act.

In April of 1999 ANHSC and NMFS finalized and signed a co-management agreement for Harbor seals in Alaska that delineates shared roles and responsibilities of each of the parties in harbor seal management. The goal and primary objective for the ANHSC continues to be to develop a solid working relationship between the Federal government and the Tribal Governments as represented by the ANHSC. The co-management committee is comprised of 3 Alaska Natives, and 3 NMFS people has been established. Staff will:

- work with involved villages to implement the guidelines of the agreement through village codes and ordinances;
- be responsible for the complimentary programs such as outreach and education; and,
- act as a liaison between villages, the plannerrs and the federal agencies through the co-management process.

Alaska Sea Life Center (ASLC)

ASLC is located in Seward is a regional center for research on marine life, including mammals, sea birds, and fish. University and government scientists who need to learn how to care for marine resources use the laboratories, salt-water tanks, and marine aviaries of the Center. It is an important a regional research center for studies of the Steller sea lion The ASLC is open to the public and it offers its facilities and staff for educational purposes of the community and state.

Anchorage Waterway Council (AWC)

AWC is a nonprofit organization whose membership resides in the Municipality of Anchorage and believes that Anchorage's waterways and related habitats are a valuable resource. AWC focuses on waterways within the Municipality of Anchorage and intends to prohibit further degradation. They seek to enhance the waterways through public outreach and education, ensuring safe and productive aquatic and riparian habitat for fish, wildlife, and monitoring activities that affect the Municipality's waterways.

Census of Marine Life (CoML)

CoML is being developed as a decade-long program to promote and fund research assessing and explaining the diversity, distribution, and abundance of species in the world oceans. Related activities integral to this research include the design and implementation of innovative biological sampling techniques for the marine environment. Consultations and workshops during 1997-1998, largely funded by the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation (New York City), explored the potential benefits, issues (technical, scientific, and social), and limits of a marine Census. A broad set of precepts for the Census of Marine Life has been prepared. An international Steering Committee fosters development of coherent goals and a scientific plan for the CoML. Planning and development for the Census is expected to require 1-2 more years. Pilot field projects should take place in 2002-2004. The main field projects should occur in 2005-2008. Analysis and integration of information should culminate in 2008-2010. The Ocean Biogeographical Information System OBIS is envisioned to be a distributed network of marine biological and environmental data for use in examining the changes in diversity, distribution, and abundance of organisms over time and space. OBIS is expected to be the means by which CoML gathers and distributes its information.

Center for Alaskan Coastal Studies (CACS)

CACS is a nonprofit group whose mission includes the generation of knowledge of the marine and coastal ecosystems of Kachemak Bay through environmental education and research programs. The Center supports a Coast Walk program for Kachemak Bay annually for citizen collection of data about intertidal areas and incorporates water quality and intertidal monitoring into school education programs.

Consortium for Oceanographic Research and Education (CORE)

CORE promotes, encourages, develops, and supports efforts to advance knowledge and learning in the science of oceanography and to disseminate such knowledge to the scientific community and to the public. It serves as a coordinating body for more than 50 marine-related institutions in the United States, including universities, governmental laboratories, and non-profit aquaria. CORE is the base for the International Steering Committee for the Census of Marine Life and the Secretariat, which the Steering Committee guides. CORE also acts as the Program Office for the National Oceanographic Partnership program, NOPP.

Cook Inlet Keeper (CIK)

CIK is a nonprofit group dedicated to protecting Cook Inlet's watershed. The Lower Kenai Peninsula Watershed Health Project monitors four high value salmon streams with increasing human use. This group also trains volunteers to monitor water quality at many sites in the Cook Inlet watershed. Currently, monitoring sites are established around Kenai, Homer and Anchor Point. Parameters measured are temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, salinity, turbidity, conductance, bacteria, oxidation-reduction potential, macroinvertebrates, ortho-phosphate, apparent color and nitrate-nitrogen.

Kenai River Sportfishing Association (KRSA)

KRSA is a nonprofit organization that provides financial support for riparian zone habitat conservation and rehabilitation. KRSA works in cooperation with other organizations, such as state and federal land and fisheries management agencies, and volunteers to stabilize and revegetate banks eroded by human recreational use and housing development. KRSA has also been instrumental in widespread installation of riverfront walkways on public and private property. The walkways are constructed of open metal bar screen that allows riparian plants to grow for bank stabilization, while preventing erosion from trampling by humans and providing access for recreation.

Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute (MBARI)

MBARI is a private, non-profit research center funded by The David and Lucile Packard Foundation. It is located at Moss Landing, California, founded in 1987. In the words of its founder, David Packard, "The mission of MBARI is to achieve and maintain a position as a world center for advanced research and education in ocean science and technology, ..." MBARI's efforts cover eight research themes; 1) benthic processes, 2) midwater research, 3) upper ocean biogeochemistry, 4) MBARI Ocean Observing System (MOOS), 5) remotely operated vehicle enhancements and upgrades, new insitu instruments, infrastructure support, and information dissemination and outreach. It has two research ships, and it develops remotely operated vehicles nearby Monterey Bay. MBARI maintains offshore moorings that are equipped with ocean-monitoring instruments. Two MBARI moorings in the equatorial Pacific are part of the NOAA Tropical Atmosphere Ocean (TAO) array that plays an important role in studying the development of events in the El Nino southern Oscillation.

National Outdoor Leadership School (NOLS)

NOLS was founded in 1965 and is the leader in wilderness education. NOLS is the largest backcountry permit holder in the United States and offers courses on four other continents. NOLS is committed to the quality of courses and programs offered in the wilderness environment that serves as its classroom.

North Pacific Universities Marine Mammal Research Consortium (MMRC)

MMRC was formed with four participating institutions: the University of Alaska, the University of British Columbia, the University of Washington, and Oregon State University. The mission of the Consortium is to undertake a long-term program of research on the relation between fisheries and marine mammals in the North Pacific Ocean and Eastern Bering Sea. Studies will focus initially on the biology of the Steller sea lion and could include research on the effects of species interactions and oceanographic conditions on changes in sea lion abundance.

Partners in Science Program

M.J. Murdock Charitable Trust, Partners in Science Program sponsors high school science teachers participation in research with scientists during two summers.

Partnership for the Interdisciplinary Study of Coastal Oceans (PISCO)

PISCO is a long-term ecological consortium that consists of four universities (Oregon State University, UC Santa Cruz, Stanford University, and UC Santa Barbara) investigating the physical and biological processes of the nearshore region along the Oregon and California coasts.

The David and Lucile Packard Foundation originally funded PISCO to provide a new model for solving environmental problems faced by our seas.

Prince William Sound Aquaculture Corporation (PWSAC)

PWSAC is a private non-profit corporation founded in 1974 under state law designed to promote development and operation of salmon hatcheries with the participation of local commercial harvesters. Headquartered in Cordova, PWSAC operates four salmon hatcheries at sites throughout Prince William Sound, as well as one at the town of Paxson on the Copper River. PWSAC produces pink salmon, sockeye salmon, Coho salmon and Chinook salmon. The returning adults benefit commercial, sport fishing, personal use, and subsistence users, and also provide cost recovery to fund hatchery operations.

Using technology developed and implemented with the support of the Exxon Valdez Oil Spill Trustee Council, PWSAC annually marks all of the more than 500 million juvenile pink salmon released from its hatcheries each year. The marks permit precise estimation of the proportion of hatchery salmon harvested, which permits protection of wild salmon during hatchery harvests. The marks also permit highly precise estimates of marine survival, and detection of pink salmon of PWS origin in samples on the high seas.

Prince William Sound Oil Spill Recovery Institute (OSRI)

OSRI was authorized by the United States Congress through Section 5001 of the Oil Pollution Act of 1990 (OPA 90) and through amendments included in the Coast Guard Authorization Act of 1996. The institutional goals of OSRI recognize long-range monitoring programs as essential to assess and understand the long-range effects of Arctic or subarctic oil spills on the natural resources of Prince William Sound and its adjacent waters.

Prince William Sound Science Center (PWSSC)

PWSSC is an independent, non-profit organization devoted to implementing an ecosystem approach to research, monitoring and management of natural resources. The Science Center played an important role in implementation of the Trustee Council's ecosystem study, the Sound Ecosystem Assessment (SEA) (Section IV. A. 2.).

Regional Citizens Advisory Council (RCAC)

RCAC bodies were established following the 1989 Exxon Valdez oil spill under the federal Oil Pollution Act of 1990 (OPA 90). The act established, among other things, demonstration programs to involve local citizens in overseeing the environmental impact of oil terminals and tanker operations in two locations, Cook Inlet and PWS.

Cook Inlet Regional Citizens Advisory Council (CIRCAC) monitors the environmental impacts of terminals and tankers in Cook Inlet. The CIRCAC's environmental monitoring program includes studies of sediment chemistry, hydrocarbon accumulation, sediment toxicity and ballast water issues.

The PWS Regional Citizens Advisory Council (PWSRCAC) has conducted an environmental monitoring program for the past six years. The Long-Term Environmental Monitoring Project monitors nine sites in PWS and the NPRB region for hydrocarbons in the water, sediment and mussels. The data provide a benchmark for assessing the impacts of oil transportation and future oil spills. The study discriminates among hydrocarbons resulting from biological processes, combustion sources (pyrogenic) and petroleum products or residues from natural coal deposits (petrogenic). The PWSRCAC has also studied the risk of invasion by non-indigenous species through the discharge of ballast water, control of tanker loading vapors, ballast water influent at the Valdez Marine Terminal, and the use of caged mussels to monitor effluent from the Alyeska Ballast Water Treatment Facility.

Transboundary Organizations

Transboundary organizations coordinate information-gathering across national, provincial and state boundaries. As a result of transboundary conventions addressing fishery management, pollution control, and other matters of concern in the North Pacific, multinational and interstate management institutions have been in place for most of the twentieth century. These institutions have amassed some of the longest time series of biological observations in the North Pacific.

Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP)

The Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP) is an international circumpolar program which seeks to monitor anthropogenic pollutants in all parts of the arctic environment. Observations extend into the Bering Sea. At a meeting in Rovaniemi, Finland the nations of Canada, Denmark/Greenland, Iceland, Norway, Sweden, the Soviet Union, and the United States entered into the "Rovaniemi process" to promote arctic environmental protection. The "Rovaniemi process" produced a series of "State of the Arctic Environment" reports on potential pollutants in different parts of the arctic environment and its ecosystems in 1991. The First Arctic Ministerial Conference in Rovaniemi, Finland established international cooperation for the protection of the arctic, and led to the adoption of the Arctic Environmental Protection Strategy (AEPS). The AMAP reports contain time series data on contaminants in the areas of interest. The policy body for AMAP is the Arctic Council.

Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR)

The Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR) was founded in 1982 as part of the Antarctic Treaty System, in response to concerns that an increase in krill catches in the Southern Ocean could have a serious effect on populations of krill and other marine life, particularly on birds, seals and fish which mainly depend on krill for food.

The CCAMLR Ecosystem Monitoring Program (CEMP) is a scientific program intended to identify changes in condition, abundance and distribution of the animals within the convention area. Since it is not realistic to monitor all the animals and their interactions that make up the Antarctic marine ecosystem, species and parameters likely to be particularly sensitive to changes in food availability have been identified. Information obtained from monitoring these species is taken into account in determining the regulation of human activity so as to ensure that the conservation principles of the convention are being applied.

The parameters being studied fall into four categories: reproduction, growth and condition, feeding ecology and behavior, and abundance and distribution. Any changes found in the parameters will be because of changes either in food availability or environmental conditions. In order to identify the source of change, it is necessary to monitor krill abundance and distribution, and certain environmental parameters simultaneously with the monitoring of predators.

International North Pacific Fisheries Commission (INPFC-NPAFC)

The International North Pacific Fisheries Commission (INPFC) (1952-1993, U.S., Canada, Japan) and its successor, the North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission (NPAFC) (1993 on), coordinate research and harvest of salmon and other anadromous species above latitude 33o N outside the 200-mile zones of the signatories. Signatory nations are the United States, Canada, Japan and Russia and the cooperating nations are Poland, South Korea, and Taiwan. The INPFC published long time series of catches for principal groundfish species, crab, shrimp and herring for the signatories and cooperating nations. The INPFC statistical yearbooks (produced from 1952-1992) contain biological time series on groundfish, crabs, and marine mammals. The NPAFC statistical yearbooks (produced from 1993-1995) are the definitive source for catch, weight and hatchery releases for salmon in the North Pacific, as well as principal groundfish species, crab, shrimp, and herring.

International Pacific Salmon Fishing Commission (IPSFC-PSC)

The International Pacific Salmon Fishing Commission (IPSFC) (1937-1985) was established by the United States and Canada in 1937 to restore the sockeye salmon of Canada's Fraser River and to allocate the catches between nations. The IPSFC and its successor, the Pacific Salmon Commission (PSC), have compiled a very long time series of annual Fraser River salmon production, augmented by substantial time series of estimated sockeye salmon productivity by year of spawning. The Pacific Salmon Commission was established by the Pacific Salmon Treaty (PST) between the United States and Canada in 1986. The PSC also has time series of annual harvest and exploitation rates for selected chinook salmon populations, as well as catch and other time series data for all salmon species.

Northern Fund - Pacific Coastal Salmon Recovery Program (PSC)

The Northern Boundary and Transboundary Rivers Restoration and Enhancement Fund was established by Canada and the United States under the revised 1999 annexes to the Pacific Salmon Treaty. The Northern Fund shall be used to support the following activities:

- development of improved information for resource management, including better stock assessment, data acquisition, and improved scientific understanding of factors affecting salmon production in the freshwater and marine environments;
- rehabilitation and restoration of habitat, and improvement of natural habitat to enhance productivity and protection of Pacific salmon; and
- enhancement of wild stock production through low technology techniques rather than through large facilities with high operating costs.

The Northern Fund Committee (the Committee) is responsible for approving expenditures from the fund. The Committee consists of three U.S. and three Canadian representatives.

The Pacific Salmon Treaty's Fisheries Management and Stock Assessment are broken down into different annexes that are listed with their objectives in the sections below.

PST Transboundary Rivers Annex:

- manage the district 106, 108 and 111 commercial net fisheries in such a manner as to abide by Treaty harvest sharing arrangements;
- provide estimates of the stock composition of the sockeye salmon harvested in Subdistricts 106-41, 106-30, District 108 and District 111 gillnet fisheries for each week of the fishing season;
- estimate the number of Transboundary Stikine River sockeye harvested in Subdistricts 106-41, 106-30, District 108 and Transboundary Taku River sockeye harvested in District 111;
- collect otoliths from sockeye salmon harvested in District 108 and 111 fisheries to allow estimation of the contribution of enhancement projects to the harvest;
- estimate the escapement of sockey salmon in the Taku River on an inseason basis using mark-recapture methods;
- document the stock timing of the sockeye salmon escapements to the Taku River drainage;
- collect scale samples and associated biological data from sockeye salmon returning to the Taku River through the period of escapement for stock identification and age composition purposes;
- collect scale samples and associated biological data from sockeye slamon returning to Crescent and Speel Lakes for stock identification and age composition purposes;
- statistically reconstruct the Taku River sockeye run; and,
- represent the department of the bilateral Transboundary Technical Committee and at the Pacific Salmon Commission (PSC) meetings and prepare reports and other documents needed for accomplishing our PSC assignments.

PST Northern Boundary Annex:

- Manage District 104 purse seine fishery, prior to Statistical Week 31, for an annual harvest of 2.45 percent of the AAH of Nass and Skeena sockeye salmon in a manner consistent with arrangements negotiated under the Pacific Salmon Treaty;
- manage the Tree Point (District 101) gillnet fishery for an annual harvest of 13.8 percent of the AAH and Nass sockeye salmon in a manner consistent with arrangements negotiated under the Pacific Salmon Treaty;
- manage the Southeast Alaska troll fishery for coho salmon in a manner consistent with specific conservation provisions detailed in the June 30, 1999 revision of the Pacific Salmon Treaty and as stipulated by the Alaska Board of Fisheries;
- estimate inseason, chinook salmon harvest rates in the gillnet and purse seine fisheries so as to remain within the chinook salmon quota level for net fisheries;

- estimate the stock composition of sockeye salmon in major boundary net fisheries (District 101 purse seine and gillnet and District 104 purse seine) to nation and/or system of origin. Commercial catches and escapements on the Boundary Area need to be representatively sampled for sex, length, and scale data;
- estimate the sockeye spawning escapements to Hugh Smith and McDonald Lakes in the southern Southeast Alaska. Collect run timing information and scale and biological samples from these escapements;
- index the escapement of pick and chum salmon to selected streams in southern Southeast Alaska. Estimate observer specific counting rates and conversions between survey counts and actual escapements in these study streams;
- obtain peak survey counts of coho salmon escapements to 15 streams in southern Southeast Alaska that represent a constant proportion to the total escapement to those systems when compared across years;
- estimate the escapement, harvests, and age composition of coho salmon returning to Hugh Smith Lake; and,
- represent the department on the bilateral PSC Northern Boundary Technical Committee and at PSC meetings and prepare reports and other documents needed for accomplishing our PSC assignments.

PST Chinook Annex:

- manage the Southeast Alaska troll fishery for chinook salmon in a manner consistent with the new aggregate abundance-based management regime detailed in the June 30, 1999 revision of the Pacific Salmon Treaty and as stipulated by the Alaska Board of Fisheries;
- estimate migratory patterns, harvests, catch rates, and exploitation rates of various chinook stocks, and determine contributions of wild and hatchery stocks to commercial and recreational fisheries in Southeast Alaska;
- evaluate chinook salmon escapement goals in Alaskan and transboundary rivers and determine what information is needed to improve these estimates; and,
- represent the department at PSC meetings and prepare reports and other documents needed for accomplishing our PSC assignments. Participate in PSC technical committee activities relating to design and use of CWT statistics, abundance-based management of coastwide chinook salmon, and development and testing of the PSC chinook model.

North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES)

The umbrella transboundary organization for the North Pacific, the North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES), was established in 1992 among Canada, People's Republic of China, Japan, Republic of Korea, Russian Federation, and the United States. PICES coordinates North Pacific (above 30o N) marine information and research on topics such as the ocean environment, global weather and climate change, living resources and their ecosystems, and the impacts of human activities. In order to facilitate the exchange of information, the PICES Technical Committee on Data Exchange has links to long time series on biological, physical, and chemical oceanography, fisheries, and meteorology and marine science organizations. The long time series data set is a compilation of voluntary submissions from data sources and is therefore not exhaustive.

The International Pacific Halibut Commission (IPHC) was the first multinational fishery management organization in the North Pacific, established by the United States and Canada in 1923. The IPHC annual survey provides a long time series of standardized catch of Pacific halibut and associated species. The IPHC time series of research vessel surveys starts in 1925. It is a particularly valuable record of organisms associated with the benthos because of the scrutiny it has received as the basis for many peer reviewed publications over the years.

Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission (PSMFC)

The Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission (PSMFC) is an interstate organization created by the U.S. Congress in 1947 to coordinate fisheries issues among California, Oregon, Washington, Idaho, and Alaska. The PSMFC Regional Mark Processing Center is the keeper of the salmon coded wire tag data base, an authoritative source for time series observations on distribution of ocean catches from California to Alaska, including Canada, since 1972.

Global Climate Change Research

The United States is participating as part of a world-wide network dedicated to measuring and understanding global climate change. Global change research programs are valued in the billions of dollars, with state, national and international partners and cooperators. Four international oceanographic investigations on global climate change have elements relevant to the North Pacific. Global Ocean Ecosystems Dynamics (GLOBEC), World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE), Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (JGOFS), and Global Ocean Observing System (GOOS) each rely on the personnel, facilities and finances of the nations and organizations that participate in the transboundary organizations described above.

GLOBEC

GLOBEC is the global change program of the International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme (IGBP) of the International Council for Science. The IGBP provides an international, inter-disciplinary framework for the conduct of global change science. GLOBEC is an oceanography program that is examining a number of hypotheses that include a commercially harvested fish species, pink salmon. A key GLOBEC hypothesis is that rapid growth and high survival of pink salmon depend on cross-shelf import of large zooplankton from offshore to nearshore waters. GLOBEC is also collecting data on zooplankton species, including a copepod and several krill species. Physical processes to be examined include stratification, cross-shelf-transport, downwelling and mesoscale circulation in the NPRB region. Another part of IGBP is the Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (JGOFS), which is studying the role of the ocean in controlling climate change through the storage and transport of heat.

GOOS

The GOOS, organized by the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) of the United Nations Educational Social and Cultural Organization (UNESCO), is to be a permanent global system for collecting data, modeling and analyzing marine and ocean processes worldwide. Another IOC-sponsored program is the World Ocean Circulation Experiment

(WOCE) under the auspices of the World Meteorological Association. WOCE sponsors a large number of investigations directed at understanding the movement of water masses in the world's oceans, including the Pacific and North Pacific.

Acronyms and Web Links

ABC: Acceptable Biological Catch
ABWC: Alaska Beluga Whale Committee
ABSC (USGS): Alaska Biological Science Center (Biological Resources Division, U.S. Geological Survey)
http://www.absc.usgs.gov/research/seabird&foragefish/index.html
AC: Alaska Current
ACC: Alaska Coastal Current
ACCE: Atlantic Climate and Circulation Experiment
ACIA: Arctic Climate Impact Assessment
http://www.acia.uaf.edu
http://www.iarc.uaf.edu/structure_of_IARC.html
ADCED: Alaska Department of Community and Economic Development
ACDP: Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers
ACT: Alliance for Coastal Technologies
AEWC: Alaska Eskimo Whaling Commission
ADEC: Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation
ADFG: Alaska Department of Fish and Game
Division of Commercial Fisheries: http://www.cf.adfg.state.ak.us/cf_home.htm
Division of Habitat: http://www.state.ak.us/adfg/habitat/hab_home.htm
Division of Subsistence:
http://www.state.ak.us/local/akpages/FISH.GAME/subsist/subhome.htm
Division of Subsistence Whiskers Database
http://www.state.ak.us/local/akpages/FISH.GAME/subsist/subhome.htm
Division of Sport Fish:
http://www.state.ak.us/local/akpages/FISH.GAME/sportf/sf_home.htm
ADHSS: Alaska Department of Health & Social Services
ADNR: Alaska Department of Natural Resources http://www.dnr.state.ak.us/
Division of Parks and Outdoor Recreation: http://www.dnr.state.ak.us/parks
Division of Mining, Land and Water http://www.dnr.state.ak.us/mlw
ADEOS-II: Advanced Earth Observing Satellite-II
ADOT: Alaska Department of Transportation
AEPS: Arctic Environmental Protection Strategy
http://arcticcircle.uconn.edu/NatResources/aeps.html
AFSC: Alaska Fisheries Science Center (NOAA/NMFS)
http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/generalinfo.htm
AIS: Archival Information System
AMAP: Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme
http://www.amap.no
AMHS: Alaska Marine Highway System
AMMC : Aleut Marine Mammal Commission
AMMTAP: Alaska Marine Mammals Tissue Archival Project
AMNWR: Alaska Maritime National Wildlife Refuge
AMOS: Advanced Modelling and Observing System

AMSR: Advance Microwave Scanning Radiometer
ANHSC: Alaska Native Harbor Seal Commission
APEX: Alaska Predator Ecosystem Experiment
ARC: Atlantic Reference Center
ARCUS: Arctic Research Consortium of the United States
http://www.arcus.org
ARGO: Array for Real-time Geostrophic Oceanography
ARGO OPN: ARGO Ocean Profiling Network
http://www.argo.ucsd.edu
ARIES: Australian Resource Information and Environment Satellite
ARLIS: Alaska Resources Library and Information Service
ARMRB: Alaska Regional Marine Research Board
ARMRP: Alaska Regional Marine Research Plan
ARPA: Arctic Research and Policy Act (1984)
ASLC: Alaska SeaLife Center
http://www.alaskasealife.org/
ASP: Amnesiac Shellfish Poisoning
ASTF: Alaska Science and Technology Foundation
http://www.astf.org
ATV: All Terrain Vehicle
AUV: Autonomous Underwater Vehicle
AVHRR: Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer
AVSP: Alaska Visitor Statistics Program
AWC: Anchorage Waterway Council
http://www.anchwaterwayscouncil.org
AWQ: Division of Air and Water Quality, ADEC
BAHC: Biospheric Aspects of the Hydrological Cycle (IGBP)
BBMMC: Bristol Bay Marine Mammal Council
BBNA: Bristol Bay Native Association
BASS Task Team: Basin Scale Studies Task Team (PICES)
BCIS: Biodiversity Conservation Information System
BDY: Beach Dynamics
BIO: Biological Oceanography Committee (PICES)
BOOS: Baltic Operational Oceanographic System
BRD: Biological Resources Division
CAAB: Codes for Australian Aquatic Biota
CACGP: Commission on Atmospheric Chemistry and Global Pollution
CalCOFI: California Co-operative Fisheries Investigation program
CAOS: Co-ordinated Adriatic Observing System
CARIACO: Carbon Retention in a Colored Ocean Program
CARICOMP: Caribbean Coastal Marine Productivity
CBMP: Chesapeake Bay Monitoring Program
CCAMLR: Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources
http://www.ccamlr.org
CCC: Cod and Climate Change (ICES/GLOBEC)

CCCC: Climate Change and Carrying Capacity (PICES/GLOBEC)
CCF: One hundred cubic feet
CDFO: Canadian Department of Fisheries and Oceans
CDOM: Coloured Dissolved Organic Matter
CDQ: Community Development Quota
CEMP: CCAMLR Ecosystem Monitoring Program
http://www.ccamlr.org/English/e_scientific_committee/e_ecosystem_monitoring/e_ecosys_monitoring_intro.htm
CENR: Committee on Environment and Natural Resources
CEOS: Committee on Earth Observation Satellites
C-GOOS: Coastal Panel of GOOS
CHL: Chlorophyll
CHM: Clearing-House Mechanism of the Convention on Biological Diversity
CIFAR: Cooperative Institute for Arctic Research
http://www.cifar.uaf.edu
http://www.cifar.uaf.edu/fisheries.html
CIIMMS: Cook Inlet Information Management and Monitoring System
http://www.dnr.state.ak.us/ssd/ciimms/ciimms_sum2.html
CIK: Cook Inlet Keepers
CIMI: Computer Interchange of Museum Information
CIRCAC: Cook Inlet Regional Citizens Advisory Council
CISNet: Coastal Intensive Site Network
CLIC: Climate and Cryosphere
CLEMAN: Check List of European Marine Mollusca
CLIVAR: Climate Variability and Predictability Program
C-MAN: Coastal Marine Automated Network
CMED/GMNET: Consortium for Marine and Estuarine Disease/Gulf of Mexico Network
CMI (MMS): Coastal Marine Institute
CMM: Commission for Marine Meteorology (of WMO)
CNES: Centre National d'Etudes Spatiales (France)
COADS: Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set
http://www.cdc.noaa.gov/coads
CODAR: Coastal Radar
COLORS: COastal region LOng-term measurements for colour Remote Sensing development and validation
COMBINE: COoperative Monitoring in the Baltic Marine Environment
CoML: Census of Marine Life
http://core.ssc.erc.msstate.edu/censhome.html
CONNS: Coastal Observing Network for the Near Shore
COOP: Coastal Ocean Observation Panel
CoOP (NSF): Coastal Ocean Processes
COP: Coastal Ocean Program
CORE: Consortium for Oceanographic Research and Education
http://core.ssc.erc.msstate.edu/corehmpg1.html
COSESPO: Coastal Observing System for the Eastern South Pacific Ocean

CPR: Advisory Panel on Continuous Plankton Recorder Survey in the North Pacific (PICES)
CPTEC: Center for Weather Forecasts and Climate Studies (Brasil)
CRIS: Court Registry Investment System
CRP: Comprehensive Rationalization Program
CSCOR: Center for Sponsored Coastal Ocean Research
CSIRO: Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization
CTD: Conductivity temperature versus depth
CTW: Coastal Trapped Waves
CVOA: Catcher Vessel Operational Area
CZCS: Coastal Zone Colour Scanner
DARPA: Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency
DBCP: Data Buoy Cooperation Panel
DDE: Dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene
DDT: Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DEOS: Deep Earth Observatories on the Seafloor
DFO: Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Canada
DMS: Dimethylsulphide
DNMI: Norwegian Meteorological Institute (Det norske meteorologiske institutt)
DO: Dissolved Oxygen
DOC: U.S. Department of Commerce
DoD: U.S. Department of Defense
DODS: Distributed Oceanographic Data System
http://rs.gso.uri.edu/DODS/home/home.html
DOE: U.S. Department of Energy
DOI: U.S. Department of the Interior
DON QUIJOTE: Data Observing Network for the QuIHOTe
EA/RIR: Environmental Assessment/Regulatory Impact Review
EASy: Environmental Analysis System
EC: European Community
ECDIS: Electronic Chart and Display Information Systems
EC/IP: Executive Committee / Implementation Panel for CCCC (PICES)
ECMWF: European Center for Medium Range Weather Forecasting
ECOHAB (NSF): Ecology of Harmful Algal Blooms
EDY: Estuarine Dynamics
EEZ: Exclusive Economic Zone
EEZ(A): European Economic Zone (Area)
EFH: Essential Fish Habitat
EGB (NSF): Environmental Geochemistry and Biogeochemistry
EIOA: European Oceanographic Industry Association
ELOISE: European Land-Ocean Interaction Studies
EMAP: Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program
http://www.epa.gov.emap/
http://yosemite.epa.gov/r10/oea.nsf/1887fc8b0c8f2aee8825648f00528583/f7a660b35e5d96df882568790053fc10?OpenDocument
ENSO: El Niño Southern Oscillation

EOSDIS: EOS Data and Information System
http://spsosun.gsfc.nasa.gov/NewEOSDIS_Over.html
EPA: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
ERMS: European Register of Marine Species
ERS-1: European Remote Sensing satellite-1
ERS-2: European Remote Sensing satallite-2
ESH (NSF): Marine Aspects of Earth System History
ESP: Eastern South Pacific
ETL tools: Extraction, Transformation, and Loading tools
EU: European Union
EUMETSAT: European Organization for the Exploitation of Meteorological Satellites
EuroGOOS: European GOOS
EuroHAB: European Harmful Algae Bloom
EVOS: Exxon Valdez Oil Spill http://www.oilspill.state.ak.us/
Bibliography: http://www.oilspill.state.ak.us/Biblio/biblio.htm
Final and Annual Reports: http://www.oilspill.state.ak.us/reports/clusters.htm
F & A: Finance and Administration Committee (PICES)
FCCC: Framework Convention on Climate Change
Federal Geographic Data Committee metadata requirements:
http://www.fgdc.gov/metadata/metadata.html
Federal Subsistence Fishery Monitoring Program; Federal Subsistence Management Program
http://www.r7.fws.gov/asm/home.html
FGDC: Federal Geographic Data Committee
FIS: Fishery Science Committee (PICES)
Fishbase, FishGopher, FishNet: searchable fish databases managed by multiple organizations
FMP: Fishery Management Plan
FOCI: Fisheries Oceanography Investigations
http://rho.pmel.noaa.gov/card/long/home_page.html
F-R: Fundraising Committee (PICES)
FY: Fiscal Year
GAIM: Global Analysis, Interpretation and Modelling (IGBP)
GAK: Gulf of Alaska
GAP: Gap Analysis Program
GARP: Genetic Algorithm for Rule-set Production
GBIF: Global Biodiversity Information Facility
GC: Governing Council (PICES)
GCM: Global Climate Model
GCN: Global Core Network
GCOS: Global Climate Observing System
http://193.135.216.2/web/gcos/pub/dim_v1_1.html
GCRMN: Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network
GCTE: Global Change and Terrestrial Ecosystems (IGBP)
GEF: Global Environmental Facility
GEOHAB: Global Ecology of Harmful Algal Blooms
GEM: Gulf Ecosystem Monitoring

GEO: Global Eulerian Observations
GHL: Guideline Harvest Level
GIPME: Global Investigation of Pollution in the Marine Environment
GIS: Geographic Information System
GIWA: Global International Water Assessment
GLI: Global Imager
GLOBE: Global Learning and Observations to Benefit the Environment
http://www.globe.gov
GLOBEC: Global Climate Change
http://cbl.umces.edu/fogarty/usglobec/
GLORIA: Geological Long-Range Inclined Asdic
GLOSS: Global Sea-Level Observing System
GMBIS: Gulf of Marine Biogeographic Information System
GNP: Gross National Product
GOA: Gulf of Alaska
GODAE: Global Ocean Data Assimilation Experiment
GOES: Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellite
GOOS: Global Ocean Observing System
http://www.gos.udel.edu
GPA/LBA: Global Programme of Action for the Protection of the Marine Environment from Land-Based Activities
GPO: GOOS Project Office
GPS: Global Positioning System
GSC: GOOS Steering Committee
GTOS: Global Terrestrial Observing System
GTS: Global Telecommunications System
GUI: Graphical User Interface
HAB: harmful algal bloom
http://www.redtide.whoi.edu/hab
HABSOS: Harmful Algal Bloom Observing System
http://www.habhrca.noaa.gov
HAPC: Habitat Areas of Particular Concern
HELCOM: Helsinki Commission-Baltic Marine Environment Protection Commission
HMAP: History of Marine Animal Populations
HMS: Hydrometeorological Service
HNLC: high nitrate, low chlorophyll waters
HOTO: Health of the Oceans
HPLC: High Performance Liquid Chromatography
IABIN: Inter-American Biodiversity Information Network
IAI: Inter-American Institute
IARC: International Arctic Research Center, University of Alaska
http://www.iarc.uaf.edu/
IARPC: Interagency Arctic Research Policy Committee
http://www.nsf.gov/od/opp/arctic/iarpc/start.htm
IBOY: International Biodiversity Observation Year

IBQ: Individual Bycatch Quota
ICAM: Integrated Coastal Area Management
/ Integrated Coastal Area Management Programme
ICES: International Council for the Exploitation of the Sea
ICLARM: International Center for Living Aquatic Resources Management
ICM: Integrated Coastal Management
ICSU: International Council for Science
ICZN: International Code of Zoological Nomenclature
IFEP: Iron Fertilization Experiment Panel (PICES)
IFQ: Individual Fishing Quota
IGAC: International Global Atmospheric Chemistry Project (IGBP/CACGP)
IGBP: International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme
http://www.igbp.kva.se/
IGBP-DIS: Data and Information System (IGBP)
I-GOOS: IOC-WMO-UNEP Committee for the Global Ocean Observing System
IGOS (NASA): Integrated Global Observing System
IGOSS: Integrated Global Ocean Services System
IGS: International GPS Service for Geodynamics
IGU: International Geographic Union
IHDP: International Human Dimensions Programme on Global Environmental Change
IIP: International Ice Patrol
I-LTER: International LTER
IMS: Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska
InfoBOOS: BOOS Information System
INPFC: International North Pacific Fisheries Commission
http://www.npafc.org/inpfc/inpfc.html
IOC: Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (of UNESCO)
http://ioc.unesco.org/iyo/
IOCCG: International Ocean-Color Coordinating Group
IODE: International Oceanographic Data and Information Exchange
http://ioc.unesco.org/iode/index.htm
IOOS: Integrated Ocean Observing System
http://core.ssc.erc.msstate.edu/oceanobs.html
IPCC: Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IPHAB: Intergovernmental Panel on HABs
IPHC: International Pacific Halibut Commission
http://www.iphc.washington.edu/)
IPSFC: International Pacific Salmon Fishing Commission
IRFA: Initial Regulatory Flexibility Analysis
IRIU: Improved Retention/Improved Utilization
ITAC: Initial Total Allowable Catch
ITIS: Integrated Taxonomic Information System
ITSU: IOC Tsunami Warning System in the Pacific
IUCN: The World Conservation Union
Japanese ADEOS-2 satellite: http://seawinds.jpl.nasa.gov

JCOMM: Joint Technical Commission for Oceanography and Marine Meteorology
JDBC: Java Database Connectivity
JDIMP: Joint Data and Information Management Panel
JGOFS (NSF): Joint Global Ocean Flux Study
http://ads.smr.uib.no/jgofs/jgofs.htm
KBNERR: Kachemak Bay Ecological Characterization study
http://www.state.ak.us/adfg/habitat/geninfo/nerr/kbec/index.htm
KRSA: Kenai River Sportfishing Association
LAMP: Local Area Management Plan
LATEX: Louisiana-Texas shelf study
LEO: Long-term Ecosystem Observatory
LEO-15: Long-term Ecosystem Observatory at 15-m depth
LExEn (NSF): Life in Extreme Environments
LIDAR: Light Detection and Ranging
List of oceanographic data servers: http://gcmd.gsfc.nasa.gov/pointers/ocean.html
LLP: License Limitation Program
LMR: Living Marine Resources
LOICZ: Land-Ocean Interactions in Coastal Zone
LTER: Long-term Ecological Research (NSF) http://lternet.edu/
LUCC: Land Use/Cover Change (IGBP/IHDP)
MABNET: Man and the Biosphere Network
MARBID: Marine Biodiversity Database
MARGINS (NSF): Continental Margins
MarLIN: Marine Laboratories Information Network
MAROB: Marine Observation
MAST: Marine Science and Technology
MBARI: Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute
http://www.mbari.org/about/
MBF: One thousand board feet
MBMAP: Advisory Panel on Marine Birds and Mammals (PICES)
MBNMS: Monterey Bay National Marine Sanctuary
http://bonita.mbnms.nos.noaa.gov/research/mb_workshop/index.html
MEHRL: Marine Environmental Health Research Laboratory
http://www.cofc.edu/~grice/mehrl
MEL: Master Environmental Library
http://www-mel.nrlmry.navy.mil/
MEQ: Marine Environmental Quality Committee (PICES)
MERIS: Medium Resolution Imaging Spectrometer
MetOp: Meteorological Operational
MFS: Mediterranean Forecasting System
MMPA: Marine Mammal Protection Act
MMRC: The North Pacific Universities Marine Mammal Research Consortium
consortium@zoology.ubc.ca
MMS: Minerals Management Service
MMS OCSES: Outer Continental Shelf Environmental Studies

MPA: Marine Protected Areas (DOC/DOI)
http://www.mpa.gov
MODEL: Conceptual / Theoretical and Modeling Studies Task Team (PICES)
MODIS: Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer
MONITOR: Monitor Task Team (PICES)
MOOS: Ocean Observing System of the Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute
http://www.mbari.org/default.htm
MOS: Modular Optoelectronic Scanner
MSFCMA: Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act
MRB: Maximum Retainable Bycatch
MSY: Maximum Sustainable Yield
mt: Metric tons
NA: Northern Adriatic
NABIN: North American Biodiversity Information Network
NABIS: National Aquatic Biodiversity Information Strategy
NAML: National Association of Marine Laboratories
NAO: North Atlantic Oscillation
NASA: National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NASA/AMSR: Advance Microwave Scanning Radiometer:
http://wwwghcc.msfc.nasa.gov/AMSR/
Earth Science Enterprise: http://www.earth.nasa.gov
TOPEX/Poseiden: http://topex-www.jpl.nasa.gov
NASA/NASDA Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission:
http://ltpwww.gsfc.nasa.gov/MODIS/MODIS.html
NASA/SeaWiFS: http://seawifs.gsfc.nasa.gov
NASA/GRACE: Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment:
http://essp.gsfc.nasa.gov/esspmissions.html
NASA/Salinity and Sea Ice Working Group:
http://www.esr.org/lagerloef/ssiwg/ssiwgrep1.v2.html
Naval Oceanographic Office
http://128.160.23.51/noframe/select.products.htm
NAWQA: National Water Quality Assessment Program
NCAR: National Center for Atmospheric Research
NCDC: National Climate Data Center
http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/
NCEP: National Centers for Environmental Protection
NDBC: National Data Buoy Center
NDVI: Normalized Difference Vegetation Index
NEAR-GOOS: North East Asian GOOS
NEMO: Naval Earth Map Observer
NEODAT: Inter-Institutional Database of Fish Biodiversity in the Neotrophics
NEP: National Estuarary Program
NERR: National Estuarine Research Reserve
NESDIS: National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service
NGO: Non-governmental organization

NGOA: Northern Gulf of Alaska
NIST: National Institute of Standards and Technology
http://www.nist.gov/
NIWA: National Institute of Water and Atmosphere Research
NMFS: National Marine Fisheries Service
http://www.nmfs.gov/
NMMHSRP: National Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program
http://www.nmfs.gov/prot_res/overview/mmhealth.html
NMML: National Marine Mammal Laboratory
http://nmml.afsc.noaa.gov/AlaskaEcosystems/sslhome/FILEINFO.htm
NOAA: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOAA HAZMAT: Hazardous Materials Program
NOAA NOS: National Ocean Service
NODC: National Oceanographic Data Center
http://www.nodc.noaa.gov
NOLS: National Outdoor Leadership School
NOPP (NASA): National Ocean Partnership Program
http://core.ssc.erc.msstate.edu/NOPPpg1.html
NOPPO: National Oceanographic Partnership Program Office
NORLC: National Ocean Research Leadership Council
NORPAC: North Pacific; an informally organized group of scientists responsible for collating and publishing much of the oceanographic data collected in the North Pacific Ocean during the period of approximately 1930 to 1965. These data were published in several volumes by the University of California Press. This data set is collectively known as the NORPAC data.
NOS: National Ocean Service
http://www.nos.noaa.gov/
NPAFC: North Pacific Anadromous Fish Commission
http://www.npafc.org
http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/sci/pbs/pages/NPAFC.htm
NPFMC: North Pacific Fishery Management Council
NPDES: National Pollution Discharge Elimination System
NPO: North Pacific Oscillation
NPOESS: National Polar-Orbiting Environmental Satellite System
NPS: National Park Service
NRC: National Research Council
NRT: Near Real Time
NS&T: National Status and Trends Program
http://ccmaserver.nos.noaa.gov/NSandT/New_NSandT.html
NSF: National Science Foundation
NSIPP (NASA): Seasonal-to-Interannual Prediction Program
NURP (NOAA): National Undersea Research Program
NVODS: National Virtual Ocean Data System
NVP: Nearshore Vertebrate Predator project
NWP: numerical weather prediction
NWS: National Weather Service

http://www.nws.noaa.gov/
OAR: Office of Oceanic and Atmospheric Research (NOAA)
http://oar.noaa.gov/
OBIS: Ocean Biogeographical Information System
www.coml.org
OCC: Ocean Carrying Capacity
OCSEAP: Outer Continental Shelf Environmental Assessment Program
OCTS: Ocean Color and Temperature Scanner
OE (NOAA OAR) Office of Ocean Exploration
http://oceanpanel.nos.noaa.gov/
OECD: Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development
OFP: Ocean Flux Program
OMB: Office of Management and Budget
OOPC: Ocean Observations Panel for Climate
OOSDP: Ocean Observing System Development Panel
OPA 90: Oil Pollution Act of 1990
http://www.pwssc-osri.org/docs/opa90.html
OPR: Office of Protected Resources
http://www.nmfs.gov/prot_res/prot_res.html
ORAP: Ocean Research Advisory Panel
OSNLR: Ocean Science in Relation to Non-Living Resources
OSPARCOM: Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-east Atlantic
OSSE: Observation System Simulation Experiments
OSRI: Prince William Sound Oil Spill Recovery Institute
http://www.pwssc-osri.org/mission/mission.fr.html
OSTP: Office of Science and Technology Policy
OY: Optimum yield
PAG: Public Advisory Group
PAGES: Past Global Change (IGBP)
PAH: Polyaromatic hydrocarbons
PAR: Phosynthetically Available Radiation
PC: Publication Committee (PICES)
PCAST: President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology
PCB: Polychlorinated biphenyls
PCC: Pollock Conservation Cooperative
PDO: Pacific Decadal Oscillation
PICES: North Pacific Marine Science Organization (not an acronym)
http://pices.ios.bc.ca/
PICES Technical Committee on Data Exchange: http://pices.ios.bc.ca/data/dataf.htm
PICES Data Bases: http://pices.ios.bc.ca/data/weblist/weblist.htm
PIRATA: Pilot Research Array in the Tropical Atlantic
PISCO: Partnership for the Interdisciplinary Study of Coastal Oceans
http://www.piscoweb.org/
PMEL: Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory

http://www.pmel.noaa.gov/
PMEL Bering Sea and North Pacific Ocean Theme Page: www.pmel.noaa.gov/bering
POC: Physical Oceanography and Climate Committee (PICES)
POLDER: Polarization and Directionality of the Earth's Reflectances
POM: Princeton Ocean Model
PORTS: Physical Oceanographic Real-Time System
PORTS/VTS: PORTS/Vessel Traffic Services
PRODAS: Prototype Ocean Data Analysis System
PROFC: Programa Regional de Oceanografia Fisica y Clima
PSC: Pacific Salmon Commission
http://www.psc.org/Index.htm
PSMFC: Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission
http://www.psmfc.org/
PSMFC Regional Mark Processing Center: http://www.rmis.org/index.html
PSP: Paralytic Shellfish Poisoning
PST: Pacific Salmon Treaty
PWS: Prince William Sound
PWSAC: PWS Aquaculture Corporation http://www.ctcak.net/~pwsac/
PWSRCAC: PWS Regional Citizens Advisory Council
PWSSC: Prince William Sound Science Center
http://www.pwssc-osri.org/
QAQC: Quality Assurance and Quality Control
QC: quality control
QUIJOTE: Quickly Integrated Joint Observing Team
R&D: Research and Development
RACE: Resource Assessment and Community Ecology
RAMS: Regional Atmospheric Modeling System
RCAC: Regional Citizens Advisory Council
RCRA: Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
RDP: Ribosomal Database Project
REX: Regional Experiments Task Team (PICES)
RIDGE (NSF): Ridge Interdisciplinary Global Experiments
RMI: Remote Method Invocation
RLDC: Responsible Local Data Center
RLDC: Responsible Local Data Center
RNODC: Responsible National Oceanographic Data Center
RSN: RedSur Network
S1: Session 1 – Science Board Symposium on Subarctic gyre processes and their interaction with coastal and transition zones: physical and biological relationships and ecosystem impacts (PICES)
S2: Session 2 – BIO Topic Session on Prey consumption by higher trophic level predators in PICES regions: implications for ecosystem studies (PICES)
S3: Session 3 – Joint BIO / CCCC Topic Session on Recent progress in zooplankton ecology study in PICES regions (PICES)

S4: Session 4 – FIS Topic Session on Short life-span quid and fish as keystone species in North Pacific marine ecosystems (PICES)
S5: Session 5 – POC Topic Session on Large-scale circulation in the North Pacific (PICES)
S6: Session 6 – Joint POC / BIO Topic Session on North Pacific carbon cycling and ecosystem dynamics (PICES)
S7: Session 7 – CCCC Topic Session on Recent findings and comparisons of GLOBEC and GLOBEC-like programs in the North Pacific (PICES)
S8: Session 8 – MEQ Topic Session on Environmental assessment of Vancouver Harbour: results of an international workshop (PICES)
S9: Session 9 – MEQ Topic Session on Science and technology for environmentally sustainable mariculture in coastal areas (PICES)
SAFE: Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation Document
SAR: Synthetic Aperture Radar
SB: Science Board (PICES)
SBIA (NSF): Shelf-basin Interactions in the Arctic
SCAMIT: Southern California Association of Marine Invertebrate Taxonomists
SC(-IGBP): Scientific Committee for the IGBP
SCICEX (NSF): Science Ice Exercise
SCOPE: Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment
SCOR: Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research
SCS: South China Sea
SEA: Sound Ecosystem Assessment
SEARCH: Study of Environmental Arctic Change
SEAS: Shipboard Environmental Data Acquisition System
SeaWIFS: Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor
SEI: Special Events Imager
SEPOA: Southeast Pacific Ocean Array
SFOS: School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences
SG: Sea Grant
    http://www.nsgo.seagrant.org/
SGI: State of the Gulf Index
SHEBA (NSF): Surface Heat Budget of the Arctic Ocean
SIMBIOS: Sensor Intercomparison and Merger for Biological and Interdisciplinary Oceanic Studies
SIMoN: Sanctuary Integrated Monitoring Network
    http://www.mbnms.nos.noaa.gov/Research/simon/simon.htm
SLFMR: Scanning Low Frequency Microwave Radiometers
SO-GLOBEC: Southern Ocean Programme (GLOBEC)
SOIREE: Southern Ocean iron release experiment
    http://katipo.niwa.cri.nz/~hadfield/gust/iron
SOLAS: International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea
SPACC: Small Pelagic Fish and Climate Change (GLOBEC)
Specimen Banking Project
    http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/pubs/tm/tm16/tm16.htm
SQuID: Structured Query and Information Delivery

SSC: Scientific and Statistical Committee
SSE (NOAA): Sustainable Seas Expedition
SSF: Storm Surge Forecast System
SSH: Sea Surface Height
SSM/I: Special Sensor Microwave/Imager
SSS: Sea Surface Salinity
SST: Sea Surface Temperature
STAMP: Seabird Tissue Archival Monitoring Project
START: Global Change System for Analysis, Research and Training (IGBP)
STD: Salinity Temperature Depth recorder
STORET System (EPA)
http://www.epa.gov/owow/STORET
SWAO: South western Atlantic Ocean
TAC: Total allowable catch
TAO: Tropical Atmosphere Ocean (buoy array)
http://www.pmel.noaa.gov/toga0tao/review98/data.html
TASC: Transatlantic Study of Calanus finmarchicus (EU)
TCODE: Technical Committee on Data Exchange (PICES)
TCP: Tropical Cyclone Programme
TEMA: Training, Education and Mutural Assistance (IOC)
TOGA: Tropical Ocean and Global Atmosphere
T/P: TOPEX/Poseidon
UAA: University of Alaska, Anchorage
UAF: University of Alaska, Fairbanks
UN: United Nations
UNCED: The United Nations Conference on Environment and Development
UNCLOS: United National Convention on the Law of the Sea (Montego Bay, 1982)
UNEP: United Nations Environmental Programme
UNESCO: United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
http://ioc.unesco.org/iocweb/
UNFCCC: United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
USARC: U.S. Arctic Research Commission
USCG: U.S. Coast Guard
USDA: U.S. Department of Agriculture
USFS: U.S. Forest Service
USGCRP (NASA): U.S.Global Climate Research Program
USGS: U.S. Geological Survey
http://www.usgs.gov/
US GLOBEC (NSF): U.S. Global Ocean Ecosystems Dynamics
http://cbl.umces.edu/fogarty/usglobec/
USNO: U.S. Naval Observatory
http://www.usno.navy.mil/
VBA: Vessel Bycatch Accounting
VENTS (NOAA): Vents Program
VIP: Vessel Incentive Program

VOS: Volunteer Observing Ships
W1: Workshop 1 - MONITOR Workshop on Progress in monitoring the North Pacific (PICES)
W2: Workshop 2 - REX Workshop on Trends in herring populations and trophodynamics (PICES)
W3: Workshop 3 - MODEL Workshop on Strategies for coupling higher and lower trophic level marine ecosystem models (PICES)
W4: Workshop 4 - BASS Workshop of Development of a conceptual model of the Subarctic Pacific basin ecosystem(s) (PICES)
W5: Workshop 5 - IFEP Planning Workshop on Designing the iron fertilization experiment in the Subarctic Pacific (PICES)
W6: Workshop 6 - (BIO / MBMAP) - The basis for estimating the abundance of marine birds and mammals, and the impact of their predation on other organisms (PICES)
W7: Workshop 7 - CO2 Data Synthesis Symposium (PICES)
WAM: Wave Model
WCRP: World Climate Research Program (ICSU/IOC/WMO)
WES: Waterways Experimental Station
WESTPAC: IOC Sub-Commission for the Western Pacific
WG: Working Group (PICES)
WHOI: Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution
WMO: World Meteorological Organization
WOCE (NSF): World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WCRP)
http://www.soc.soton.ac.uk/OTHERS/woceipo/ipo.html
http://www.cms.udel.edu.woce/
WOOD: World-wide Oceans Optics Database
WODC: World Oceanographic Data Center
WWW: World Weather Watch
XBT: expendable bathythermograph
XCDT: expendable conductivity, depth and salinity devices

Relevant Scientific Research Plans

Alaska Regional Marine Research Plan (ARMRP)

A marine science planning document with a broader geographic scope, the Alaska Regional Marine Research Plan (ARMRP) (ARMRB 1993), was prepared under the U.S. Regional Marine Research Act of 1991. For all marine areas of Alaska, including the GOA, the plan provided five elements that are of interest to the NPRB: 1) an overview of the status of marine resources, 2) an inventory and description of current and anticipated marine research, 3) a statement of short- and long-term marine research needs and priorities, 4) an assessment of how the research and monitoring activities under the program take advantage of existing projects, and 5) descriptions, time tables and budgets of research and monitoring to be conducted under the program. ARMRP goals express the scientific needs of the region as of 1992, and they are still quite relevant to the NPRB effort:

- Distinguish between natural and human induced changes in marine ecosystems of the Alaska Region;
- Distinguish between natural and anthropogenic changes in water quality of the Alaska Region;
- Stimulate the development of a data gathering and sharing system that will serve scientists in the region from government, academia, and the private sector in dealing with water quality and ecosystem health issues; and
- Provide a forum for enhancing and maintaining broad discussion among the marine scientific community on the most direct and effective way to understand and address issues related to maintaining the region's water quality and ecosystem health.
- Further guidance is available from nearby ecosystems.

Bering Sea Ecosystem Research Plan

The Bering Sea has warranted a comprehensive planning effort due to concern over long-term declines in populations of high-profile species such as king and tanner crab, Steller sea lions, spectacled eiders, common murres, thick-billed murres, and red-legged and black-legged kittiwakes (DOI et al. 1998a). The vision of the federal-state regulatory agencies for the Bering Sea Ecosystem Research Plan (BSERP) (DOI-NOAA-ADFG 1998a) is "We envision a productive, ecologically diverse Bering Sea ecosystem that will provide long-term, sustained benefits to local communities and the nation." The overarching hypotheses of the plan are as follows:

- Natural variability in the physical environment causes shifts in trophic structure and changes in the overall productivity of the Bering Sea.
- Human impact leads to environmental degradation, including increased levels of contaminants, loss of habitats, and increased mortality on certain species in the ecosystem that may trigger changes in species composition and abundance.

Marine Science in the Arctic

Additional guidance for NPRB planning is available from work on the Arctic Ocean. Both the Gulf of Alaska and the Bering Sea are linked to the Arctic Ocean through atmospheric and oceanic processes. A strategic plan for arctic marine sciences has been submitted to the National Science Foundation (NSF) by the Arctic Research Consortium of the United States (Aagaard et al. 1999). The overall recommendation of Marine Science in the Arctic: A Strategy is consistent with ARMRP and BSERP: "Understanding the past and present Arctic is essential to predicting its future and to evaluating the global effects of changes in this unique region [and peripheral seas]" (Aagaard et al. 1999 page ix). Additional recommendations of particular relevance to the NPRB include expanding monitoring and research to understand the manifestation of global climate change in the Arctic from both global and regional perspectives and establishing international and interagency coordination and cooperation in developing the infrastructure for monitoring.

Scientific Legacy of the **Exxon Valdez** *Oil Spill*

Ecological knowledge gained in the decade following the oil spill forms is substantial. The Trustee Council recognized early in the oil spill restoration program the need for basic ecological information to evaluate recovery of injured species. The recovery status of each affected resource is based to the extent possible on knowledge of the resource's role in the ecosystem. The Trustee Council's scientific legacy points toward the need to understand the causes of population trends in individual species of plants and animals through time. Understanding the causes of population trends leads to the need to separate human effects from those of climate and interactions with related species.

The studies conducted by the trustee agencies and their contractors since 1989 have resulted in over 300 peer reviewed scientific publications, doctoral dissertations and theses. A current bibliography of publications sponsored by the Trustee Council is available on the council's website or on request to the Trustee Council. In addition to much specific information on the effects of oil on the biota in the spill area, the studies also provide a wealth of ecological information.

As a result of the information gathered during individual research projects and three ecosystem-scale interdisciplinary research projects, the scientific legacy of the Trustee Council includes a wide range of information. Topics covered by Trustee Council-funded studies include physical and biological oceanography, marine food web structure and dynamics, predator-prey relationships among birds, fish, and mammals, the source and fate of carbon among species, developmental changes in trophic level within species, marine growth and survival of salmon, intertidal community ecology, and early life history and stock structure in herring. (A compendium of Trustee Council projects by fiscal year, as well as a complete list of final and annual reports for projects, are available on the council's website or on request to the Trustee Council.)

The Sound Ecosystem Assessment (SEA) is the largest of three ecosystem-level projects undertaken by the Trustee Council. Over a period of seven years, SEA brought together a team of scientists from many different disciplines to understand the biological and physical factors responsible for producing herring and salmon in PWS. Final products from SEA have not yet been completed. When report writing is complete, SEA is expected to provide information on biological and physical oceanography that could be used by the Alaska Department of Fish and Game in its herring and salmon management programs. In this regard, SEA is expected to give managers a set of interacting numerical models capable of simulating the dynamic processes influencing the survival and productivity of juvenile pink salmon and herring in PWS. SEA has already provided new observations of ocean currents, nutrient levels, mixing of water masses, salinity, and temperatures. The new observations have made possible models of how physical factors influence plant and animal plankton, prey, and predators in the food web.

The two other ecological studies are also in the final stages of completion. Both are expected to provide information that will be of use to natural resource management agencies. The Nearshore Vertebrate Predator (NVP) project is a six-year study of factors limiting recovery of two fish-eating species, river otters and pigeon guillemots, and two invertebrate-eating species, harlequin ducks and sea otters. The Alaska Predator Ecosystem Experiment (APEX) is an eight-year study of ecological relations among seabirds and their prey species. The NVP project has contributed to understanding of the linkages between terrestrial and marine ecosystems by studying key species at the interface of these systems. The APEX project has contributed understandings of the critical nexus between productivities of marine bird populations and fish species. In addition, analysis of food selection by marine birds shows promise of providing abundance estimates for key fish species, such as sand lance and herring.

Reference List

Aagaard, K. D., Darby, D., Falkner, K., Flato, G., Grebmeier, J., Measures, C., and Walsh, J. 1999. Marine science in the Arctic: a strategy. Pages 1-84 A report to the National Science Foundation. Arctic Research Consortium of the United States (ARCUS), Fairbanks, Alaska.

ARMRB. 1993. Alaska Regional Marine Research Board, Alaska research plan. School of Fisheries and Ocean Sciences, University of Alaska. Fairbanks.

DOI, NOAA, and ADF&G. 1998a. Draft Bering Sea ecosystem research plan. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Commercial Fisheries Division. Juneau.

Hood, D. W. and Zimmerman, S. T. 1986. The Gulf of Alaska, physical environment and biological resources. Alaska Office, Ocean Assessments Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce. Washington, D.C.

Rosenberg, D. H. 1972. A review of the oceanography and renewable resources of the Northern Gulf of Alaska. Sea Grant Report 73-3. Fairbanks, Institute of Marine Science, University of Alaska. IMS Report R72-23.